Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88

Hamlet K. Avetissian

Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics

The QED Vacuum and Matter in Super-Strong Radiation Fields

Second Edition

Springer

Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics

Volume 88

The Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics covers in a comprehensive manner theory and experiment in the entire field of atoms and molecules and their interaction with electromagnetic radiation. Books in the series provide a rich source of new ideas and techniques with wide applications in fields such as chemistry, materials science, astrophysics, surface science, plasma technology, advanced optics, aeronomy, and engineering. Laser physics is a particular connecting theme that has provided much of the continuing impetus for new developments in the field, such as quantum computation and Bose-Einstein condensation. The purpose of the series is to cover the gap between standard undergraduate textbooks and the research literature with emphasis on the fundamental ideas, methods, techniques, and results in the field.

More information about this series at http://www.springer.com/series/411

Hamlet K. Avetissian

Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics

The QED Vacuum and Matter in Super-Strong Radiation Fields

Second Edition

Springer

Hamlet K. Avetissian
Yerevan State University
Yerevan
Armenia

Previously published as volume 120 in Springer Series in Optical Sciences,
ISBN 978-0-387-30070-2.

ISSN 1615-5653 ISSN 2197-6791 (electronic)
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics
ISBN 978-3-319-26382-3 ISBN 978-3-319-26384-7 (eBook)
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7

Library of Congress Control Number: 2015955599

Springer Cham Heidelberg New York Dordrecht London

Printed on acid-free paper

Springer International Publishing AG Switzerland is part of Springer Science+Business Media
(www.springer.com)

To my children Karo Avetisyan and Mariam Avetisyan, dedicated with my infinite love

Preface

About a decade has passed since the writing of the book "Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics." On the one hand, this is a short time period for substantial advancements in a science like physics, on the other hand, the unprecedented development of laser technologies during the last decade, specifically, the implementation of ultrashort laser sources and subcycle pulses of relativistic intensities exceeding the intra-atomic fields, have become real. This radically changes the practical situation in high energy radiation-matter physics, related in particular to the creation of superpower X-ray–γ-ray coherent sources, new type—laser–plasma accelerators of enormous energies, laser-induced nuclear fusion, production of antimatter from vacuum, etc. It is noteworthy the realization of relativistic solid-plasma-targets/nanolayers under ultrashort superintense laser pulses, making available the implementation of high brightness electron and ion beams of solid densities and high energies. In turn, the emergence of such superstrong electromagnetic fields has rapidly initiated extensive fundamental investigations in the area of Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics, revealing various new nonlinear phenomena in the fields approaching to Schwinger one for vacuum Quantum Electrodynamics (QED).

Concerning the degree of nonlinearity in strong radiation–matter interaction processes, it has been revealed that exotic cases of condensed matter possessing huge electromagnetic nonlinearity at which nonlinear effects occur at rather small intensities of exciting field compare to ordinary free–free or bound–bound transitions. The best example of such type of matter is graphene. Thus, nonlinear excitation of the Dirac sea in graphene occurs at a billion time smaller intensities of external radiation field than it is necessary for excitation of the electron–positron vacuum and, in general, for revealing of nonlinear effects in ordinary materials. Therefore, the present book was completed with the new material regarding the unique nonlinear properties of graphene in strong laser fields.

Besides, in this book we added new material concerning the relativistic quantum theory of scattering on the arbitrary potential field beyond the Born and ordinary eikonal approximations. Thus, we developed a new—Generalized Eikonal

Approximation (GEA)—in both elastic and inelastic scattering theory for spinor and scalar particles scattering on the short-range and long-range potential fields of arbitrary form, as well as in the presence of superstrong laser radiation of arbitrary intensities. The latter—Stimulated Bremsstrahlung (SB)—apart from its important role in laser-induced processes of Above-Threshold Ionization (ATI) of atoms and High Harmonic Generation (HHG), is considered here as a basic process for nonlinear absorption of superpower electromagnetic radiation in plasma.

New material has been included devoted to relativistic atoms in strong laser fields considering multiphoton excitation of atoms with high charge numbers and highly charged ions, taking into account the fine structure of relativistic atoms–ions with accompanying coherent effects; nonlinear acceleration of atoms by powerful laser pulses, as well as relativistic theory of ATI of atoms/highly charged ions and HHG on these quantum systems by laser radiation of relativistic intensities.

So, while the present book is introduced as a second edition of the monograph "Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics" published in 2006, this book includes new material with five new chapters (Chaps. 10–14), a new paragraph (5.7), and some numerical treatment of considered processes for actual nonplanar laser pulses.

Now let us introduce briefly the content of this book to the reader.

With the appearance of lasers have come real possibilities for revealing numerous nonlinear phenomena of diverse nature resulting from the interaction of strong electromagnetic field either with matter or with free charged particles. First attempts of investigators, especially experimentalists, were directed toward studying the processes of interaction of laser radiation with matter, which led to the rapid formation of a new field—Nonlinear Optics. The numerous published books on this subject are evidence of that. The situation regarding the processes of interaction of laser radiation with free charged particles (free–free transitions) is different. Whereas the experimental results on atomic systems frequently had preceded the theoretical ones, the experimental investigations on free electrons began gathering power only recently. It is enough to mention that the first experiments on the observation of multiphoton exchange between free electrons and laser radiation started in 1975 (the Cherenkov and bremsstrahlung processes), whereas due to the progress of Nonlinear Optics, the precision laser spectroscopy of superhigh resolution on atomic systems had already been established. This situation is explained by two objective factors. While the experiments on atoms require only laser devices in common laboratories, the experiments on free electron beams require accelerators of charged particles and laser laboratories, i.e., this field is a synthesis of Accelerator and Laser Physics. The second major factor is the smallness of the photon–electron interaction cross section in comparison with the photon–atom one; revealing nonlinear phenomena on free electrons, this requires laser fields of relativistic intensities (e.g., even the observation of the second harmonic in nonlinear Compton scattering). Such superpower femtosecond laser sources have appeared only recently. Hence, the time for experimental development of this branch of Nonlinear Electrodynamics—covering interaction of charged particles with laser fields of relativistic intensities—has come. In presenting the current state of the art in this field and gathering up-to-date theoretical material in this book we have pursued the goal of stimulating the laser-driven experiments on relativistic electron beams and comprehensive theoretical investigations of nonlinear electromagnetic processes in currently available coherent radiation fields of relativistic intensities.

Increasing interest in free–free transitions is connected with the realization of the two most important problems of modern physics, namely the creation of shortwave coherent radiation sources—X-ray and γ-ray lasers—and small size laser-plasma accelerators of superhigh energies. It is noteworthy that a great deal of the work on free–free transitions are related to the Free Electron Laser (FEL) problem, i.e., to the discussion of concrete schemes of relativistic electron beam radiation amplification in coherent systems, such as the undulator, and to the search for their optimization. A small number of monographs and a large number of reviews are devoted to this problem in the linear regime of amplification. However, particularly for the implementation of X-ray lasers, the most promising candidate of which at the present time is still FEL devices, the need for nonlinear mechanisms of generation of coherent radiation due to induced interaction of electron beam with strong laser fields may be crucial, compared with the current undulator-based FELs in the linear regime of amplification. On the other hand, the present FELs operate in the classical regime where the electron wave packet size over the interaction length is less than a wavelength of radiation. This means that the photon frequency shift due to the electron quantum recoil must be less than the gain bandwidth. This condition is satisfied for current FELs typically operating at optical or smaller frequencies. For the X-ray photons in expected X-ray FELs, the downshifts in frequency as well as other quantum effects become important. Thus, because of the absence of mirrors (resonator) or other drivers operable at these wavelengths, FEL systems currently under consideration for X-ray sources, operate in the so-called Self-Amplified Spontaneous Emission (SASE) regime in which the initial shot noise on an electron beam is amplified over the course of propagation through a long wiggler. In turn, large pulse-to-pulse variations arise in both output power and radiation spectrum, and quantum effects on the start-up from noise will be important.

Finally, the absence of resonators at X-ray wavelengths requires a single-pass high-gain FEL, which in the linear regime will have an extremely large size. Hence, to reach the required gain on distances much smaller than the coherent length in the linear regime of amplification, which would reduce greatly the present size of projected X-ray lasers (several kilometers), nonlinear quantum mechanisms of generation due to laser-induced coherent interaction become of prime importance. On the other hand, the inverse problem of laser-induced nonlinear FEL schemes is the problem of creation of novel accelerators of charged particles of superhigh energies—laser-plasma accelerators. Therefore, the nonlinear interaction of charged particles with strong laser fields will be considered in general aspects from the point of view of both nonlinear quantum FEL schemes and classical laser accelerator problems. At the same time, we will not overload the material of this book, the subject of which is nonlinear electromagnetic processes, with the consideration of linear schemes of FELs taking also into account the existence of well-known books by T. Marshall (1987), C. Brau (1990), H. Freund and T. Antonsen (1996), and

E. Saldin, E. Schneidmiller, and M. Yurkov (1999) devoted especially to this problem.

Besides the mentioned problems there is another important problem concerning the quantum electrodynamic vacuum in superstrong laser fields. With the appearance of superpower lasers of relativistic intensities in recent years, for which the energy of an electron acquired at a wavelength of laser radiation exceeds the electron rest energy, multiphoton excitation of the Dirac vacuum via nonlinear channels becomes real and, consequently, electron–positron pair production becomes available. It is a strongly nonlinear process in superintense laser fields, which occurs inevitably in all processes where the conservation laws for the pair production are permitted. Thus, while considering such nonlinear processes we will give special consideration to the multiphoton electron–positron pair production from superintense laser fields.

Among the considered processes and, in general, stimulated processes with the charged particles, coherent processes like Cherenkov, Compton, and undulator essentially differ due to a peculiarity that fundamentally changes the common picture of electromagnetic processes in dielectric media, and in vacuum—the presence of a second wave or an undulator. Because of the coherent character of the corresponding spontaneous radiation process (the existence of certain coherence condition for radiation) in the presence of an external electromagnetic wave a critical value of the wave field exists above which a plane wave becomes a potential barrier or well for a particle and specific threshold nonlinear phenomena arise. The latter opens new possibilities for laser acceleration and FEL, since in these regimes the induced process proceeds only in one direction: the inverse concurrent process of radiation in acceleration regime, and absorption process for the FEL regime are absent. Therefore, we expect that this book will help to direct the attention of experimentalists to nonlinear phenomena of “reflection” and capture of charged particles by a plane electromagnetic wave in Cherenkov, Compton, and undulator processes, which have been left in the shadows for more than four decades. This especially relates to the experiments on the induced Cherenkov process made at SLAC by R. Pantell and collaborators since 1975, where the laser intensities were left below the critical value for the induced nonlinear Cherenkov resonance. It was necessary to increase the laser intensity slightly to reveal the existence of critical intensity and electron shock acceleration due to the “reflection” phenomenon, proving thereby the peculiarity of the induced Cherenkov process with its nonlinear threshold nature.

It is worth emphasizing another threshold phenomenon of nonlinear cyclotron resonance in an arbitrary dispersive medium—dielectric or plasma. That is so-called electron hysteresis, which can serve as an actual mechanism for laser acceleration of charged particle beams in plasma media where the use of superpower laser fields is not restricted and significant acceleration may be reached.

As is known, the spontaneous radiation of relativistic electrons and positrons channeled in a crystal is of great interest due to two major factors: the radiation is in the X-ray and γ-ray domains, and its spectral intensity noticeably exceeds that of other radiation sources in the short-wave range. Thus, induced channeling radiation in the presence of an external wave field becomes important as a potential source for short-wave coherent radiation. On the other hand, due to the induced channeling effect the inverse process—absorption of the wave photons by the particles—will also take place leading the particles' acceleration and other coherent classical and quantum effects. As a periodic system with high coherency and having the same character as a particle motion, the crystal channel may be compared with an undulator—it is a "micro-undulator" with the space period much smaller than the undulator one. We thus give consideration to the induced channeling process in general aspects of coherent interaction of relativistic electrons and positrons with a plane electromagnetic wave in a crystal.

Concerning the consideration of induced noncoherent processes, please note that in this book we included only induced processes related to plasma media where they provide actual energy conversion between the particles and transverse electromagnetic wave and, due to nonlinear interaction, one can reach the effective outgrowth for the aforementioned problems having as origin the real energy exchange between the particles and laser beams. From this point of view SB, being an inevitable induced process in laser-plasma system, is the actual mechanism for absorption of plane electromagnetic radiation by plasma electrons at the scattering on the ions. So, it has a significant role in the problems of plasma heating, laser-plasma accelerator, as well as HHG in atomic/ionic systems through the continuum states in strong laser fields as an alternative means for implementation of coherent VUV–X-ray sources, which has witnessed significant experimental advancement in recent years. However, the consideration of these processes is beyond the scope of this book. We will consider here the relativistic SB in strong and superstrong radiation fields in regard to general aspects with nonlinear effects (nonrelativistic SB in various approximations has been considered in many books). We will also consider the case of coherent SB process in crystals, which is of relativistic nature by itself, having in mind consideration of a high-gain X-ray FEL scheme based on coherent bremsstrahlung in the crystals.

A separate chapter has been devoted to the so-called induced nonstationary transition effect based on the spontaneous transition radiation effect in a medium at the abrupt variation of its properties, to describe the nonlinear particle–strong wave interaction processes in plasma. Such a situation takes place inevitably at the interaction of superintense ultrashort laser pulses with any medium, which instantly turns into plasma. It is thus of certain interest to study the nonlinear processes at the formation of laser plasma. This process may also be of great interest in astrophysics related to conversion of electromagnetic radiation frequencies in nonstationary plasma, in particular formation of hard γ-quanta of relativistic energies, electron–positron pair production, and other nonlinear processes at the abrupt variation of the matter properties in high energy cosmic objects.

In order not to overload the reader, the references on a given subject are presented separately in each chapter. My apologies go to all authors whose works are not covered in this book. We included only the ones that are most directly related to this book.

Indeed, the problems discussed in this book do not exhaust the frame of induced nonlinear phenomena at the interaction of charged particles or condensed matter with strong and superstrong electromagnetic radiation. By considering a certain class of induced processes, we have aimed at revealing the principal features of nonlinear behavior of a particle/matter–strong wave interaction in laser-induced processes, which are of primary importance for the implementation of contemporary problems, the most significant of which are creation of powerful X-ray–γ-ray lasers, laser-plasma accelerators, and production of high density antimatter from superintense laser fields of ultra-relativistic intensities. And if the presentation of relativistic nonlinear theory of interaction of charged particles, QED vacuum, condensed matter, and specific quantized systems with strong and superstrong electromagnetic fields are helpful to specialists in this field, then the publication of this book will be justified.

In closing, I would like to thank Dr. G. Mkrtchian for assistance in preparation of the manuscript, and Dr. Tom Spicer, Senior Physics Editor, Springer-Verlag New York, for his efforts in the publishing of this book.

Yerevan, Armenia Hamlet K. Avetissian

Contents

Chapter 1
Interaction of a Charged Particle with Strong Plane Electromagnetic Wave in Vacuum

Abstract What can we expect from particle–strong wave interaction in vacuum? It is well known that the radiation or absorption of photons by a free electron in vacuum is forbidden by the energy and momentum conservation laws, which means that the real energy exchange between a free electron and plane monochromatic wave in vacuum is impossible, isn't it? Then, is it worth considering the interaction of a free electron with strong monochromatic wave in vacuum? In other words, what can we expect from the strong wave fields in nonlinear theory with respect to the weak ones described by the linear theory? For example, what are the changes in cross section of the major electrodynamic process of electron–photon interaction, that is, Compton effect (which in the one-photon approximation within quantum electrodynamics is described by the Klein–Nishen formula) at a high density of incident photons? Lastly, how strong should a wave field be for revelation of nonlinear effects in vacuum? What are the criteria of the strong field? To answer these questions one must first study the dynamics of a charged particle in the field of a plane electromagnetic wave of arbitrary high intensity in vacuum on the basis of the classical and quantum equations of motion. Then, with the help of the classical trajectory of the particle and dynamic wave function in the quantum description, the nonlinear radiation in the scope of the classical and quantum theories—the Compton effect in the field of electromagnetic wave of arbitrary high intensity—will be treated. We will start from the relativistic equations, because in the field of a strong wave even a particle initially at rest becomes relativistic. Then, the amplitude of a strong wave will be assumed invariable, i.e., the radiation effects do not influence the magnitude of a given strong wave field.

1.1 Classical Dynamics of a Particle in the Field of Strong Plane Electromagnetic Wave

Let a particle with a mass m and a charge e (let $e > 0$) interact with a plane electromagnetic (EM) wave of arbitrary form and intensity propagating in vacuum along a direction $\boldsymbol{\nu}_0$ ($|\boldsymbol{\nu}_0| = 1$). Then, for the electric ($\mathbf{E}$) and magnetic ($\mathbf{H}$) field strengths we have

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_1

$$\mathbf{E}(t, \mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{E}(t - \boldsymbol{\nu}_0\mathbf{r}/c); \quad \mathbf{H}(t, \mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{H}(t - \boldsymbol{\nu}_0\mathbf{r}/c); \quad \mathbf{H} = [\boldsymbol{\nu}_0\mathbf{E}]\,. \tag{1.1}$$

Relativistic classical equation of motion of the particle in the field (1.1) will be written in the form

$$\frac{d\mathbf{p}}{dt} = e\mathbf{E} + \frac{e}{c}\,[\mathbf{vH}]\,, \tag{1.2}$$

where $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{v}$ are the particle momentum and velocity in the field and c is the light speed in vacuum.

For integration of the equation of motion (1.2) the latter should be written in components:

$$\boldsymbol{\nu}_0\frac{d\mathbf{p}}{dt} = \frac{e}{c}(\mathbf{vE}), \tag{1.3}$$

$$\frac{d\mathbf{p}_\perp}{dt} = e\left(1 - \frac{\mathbf{v}\boldsymbol{\nu}_0}{c}\right)\mathbf{E}. \tag{1.4}$$

Then the integration of (1.4) is very simple if one takes into account that $\mathbf{E}$ is the function of the variable $\tau = t - \boldsymbol{\nu}_0\mathbf{r}/c$ and passes on the left-hand side of (1.4) from the variable t to τ. So, for the transverse components of the particle momentum we will have

$$\mathbf{p}_\perp = \mathbf{p}_{0\perp} + e\int_{\tau_0}^{\tau}\mathbf{E}(\tau)d\tau, \tag{1.5}$$

where $\mathbf{p}_{0\perp}$ is the particle initial transverse momentum at $\tau = \tau_0$ when $\mathbf{E}(\tau)\mid_{\tau=\tau_0} = \mathbf{H}(\tau)\mid_{\tau=\tau_0} = 0$ corresponding to the free particle state before the interaction. Such definition of the particle free state at the finite moment τ_0 at the interaction with the EM wave is justified when we consider the general case of a plane wave of arbitrary form, which actually corresponds to wave pulses of finite duration; let here $\tau_f - \tau_0$. Then, the interaction will be automatically turned on at $\tau = \tau_0$ and turned off at $\tau = \tau_f$, when $\mathbf{E}(\tau)\mid_{\tau=\tau_f} = \mathbf{H}(\tau)\mid_{\tau=\tau_f} = 0$ too, and the free particle states before the interaction will correspond to $\tau \leq \tau_0$ and after the interaction to $\tau \geq \tau_f$. Such approach also allows passing from the wave pulses of finite duration to quasi-monochromatic or monochromatic waves by extending $\tau_0 \to -\infty$ and $\tau_f \to +\infty$.

The expressions (1.5) can be written in a simpler form through the vector potential ($\mathbf{A}$) of the field according to known relations with the electric and magnetic field strengths for radiation field in the Lorentz gauge

$$\mathbf{E} = -\frac{1}{c}\frac{\partial\mathbf{A}}{\partial t}; \quad \mathbf{H} = \mathrm{rot}\mathbf{A}; \quad \mathrm{div}\mathbf{A} = 0, \tag{1.6}$$

consequently

$$\mathbf{A}(\tau) = -c \int\limits_{\tau_0}^{\tau} \mathbf{E}(\tau) d\tau. \tag{1.7}$$

The condition $\operatorname{div}\mathbf{A} = 0$ in (1.6) is the condition of transversality of a plane wave: $\boldsymbol{\nu}_0 \mathbf{A}(\tau) = 0$.

So, the particle transverse momentum (1.5) can be represented in the form

$$\mathbf{p}_{\perp} = \mathbf{p}_{0\perp} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\tau), \tag{1.8}$$

where $\mathbf{A}(\tau) \mid_{\tau=\tau_0} = 0$ according to (1.7) ($\mathbf{A}(\tau) \mid_{\tau=\tau_f} = 0$ as well because of $\mathbf{E}(\tau) \mid_{\tau=\tau_f} = \mathbf{H}(\tau) \mid_{\tau=\tau_f} = 0$).

Note that (1.8) may be written without integration of the equation of motion taking into account the space properties in this issue. Thus, the existence of a plane wave does not violate the homogeneity of the space in the plane of the wave polarization. Consequently, the corresponding transverse components of generalized momentum are conserved: $\mathbf{p}_{\perp} + (e/c)\mathbf{A}(\tau) = \text{const}$ and we come at once to (1.8).

For the integration of (1.3) for the longitudinal component of the particle momentum we will use the additional equation for the particle energy variation in the field

$$\frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dt} = e\left(\mathbf{vE}\right). \tag{1.9}$$

From (1.3) and (1.9) follows the integral of motion for the charged particle in the field of a plane EM wave:

$$\mathcal{E} - c\mathbf{p}\boldsymbol{\nu}_0 = \text{const} \equiv \Lambda. \tag{1.10}$$

Now we can define the particle momentum and energy in the field with the help of (1.8) and (1.10), utilizing the dispersion law of the particle energy-momentum as well:

$$\mathcal{E}^2 = \mathbf{p}^2 c^2 + m^2 c^4. \tag{1.11}$$

The following formulas in the field of a plane EM wave of arbitrary form and polarization are obtained:

$$\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{p}_0 - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\tau) + \boldsymbol{\nu}_0 \frac{e^2 A^2(\tau) - 2ec\left(\mathbf{p}_0 \mathbf{A}(\tau)\right)}{2c(\mathcal{E}_0 - c\mathbf{p}_0 \boldsymbol{\nu}_0)}, \tag{1.12}$$

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 + \frac{e^2 A^2(\tau) - 2ec\left(\mathbf{p}_0 \mathbf{A}(\tau)\right)}{2(\mathcal{E}_0 - c\mathbf{p}_0 \boldsymbol{\nu}_0)}, \tag{1.13}$$

where $\mathbf{p}_0$ and $\mathcal{E}_0$ are the initial momentum and energy of a free particle ($\Lambda = \mathcal{E}_0 - c\mathbf{p}_0\boldsymbol{\nu}_0$).

Then, to obtain the law of the particle motion $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ one must integrate the equation

$$\frac{d\mathbf{r}(t)}{dt} = \mathbf{v}(t) = \frac{c^2\mathbf{p}(t)}{\mathcal{E}(t)}\,. \tag{1.14}$$

However, since the general expressions of particle momentum and energy in the field of a plane EM wave depend only on retarding time τ, the last equation allows exact analytical solution in the parametric form $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(\tau)$. Thus, passing in (1.14) from the variable t to τ and taking into account the integral of motion (1.10) we obtain

$$\frac{d\mathbf{r}(\tau)}{d\tau} = \frac{c^2\mathbf{p}(\tau)}{\mathcal{E}_0 - c\mathbf{p}_0\boldsymbol{\nu}_0}. \tag{1.15}$$

Integration of (1.15) with the help of (1.12) gives

$$\mathbf{r}(\tau) = \mathbf{r}_0 + \frac{c^2\mathbf{p}_0}{(\mathcal{E}_0 - c\mathbf{p}_0\boldsymbol{\nu}_0)}(\tau - \tau_0) + \frac{c}{(\mathcal{E}_0 - c\mathbf{p}_0\boldsymbol{\nu}_0)}$$
$$\times \int_{\tau_0}^{\tau} \left\{ \frac{\boldsymbol{\nu}_0}{2(\mathcal{E}_0 - c\mathbf{p}_0\boldsymbol{\nu}_0)} \left(e^2A^2(\tau') - 2ec\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{A}(\tau')\right) - e\mathbf{A}(\tau') \right\} d\tau', \tag{1.16}$$

where $\mathbf{r}_0(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ is the particle initial position at $t = t_0$ ($\tau = \tau_0$).

1.2 Intensity Effect. Mass Renormalization

Equations (1.12), (1.13), and (1.16) describe the particle motion in the field of a strong plane EM wave of arbitrary form and polarization. They show that after the interaction ($\tau \geq \tau_f$) $\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{p}_0$, $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0$, i.e., the particle remains with the initial energy-momentum, which means that real energy exchange between a free charged particle and a plane EM wave in vacuum is impossible. This result is in congruence with the fact that the real absorption or emission of photons by a free electron in vacuum is forbidden by the energy and momentum conservation laws, which will be discussed in regard to the quantum consideration of this process. Nevertheless, in vacuum the wave intensity effect in the field exists, for revealing of which it should be taken into account the oscillating character of periodic wave field, for which $\overline{\mathbf{A}}(\tau) = 0$. Then, averaging the expressions in (1.12) and (1.13) over time we obtain the following formulas for the particle average momentum and energy in the field:

$$\overline{\mathbf{p}} = \mathbf{p}_0 + \boldsymbol{\nu}_0 \frac{e^2\overline{\mathbf{A}^2}(\tau)}{2c(\mathcal{E}_0 - c\mathbf{p}_0\boldsymbol{\nu}_0)}; \quad \overline{\mathcal{E}} = \mathcal{E}_0 + \frac{e^2\overline{\mathbf{A}^2}(\tau)}{2(\mathcal{E}_0 - c\mathbf{p}_0\boldsymbol{\nu}_0)}. \tag{1.17}$$

Taking into account the dispersion law of the particle energy-momentum (1.11) for these average values we can introduce the "effective mass" of the particle due to the intensity effect of strong wave:

$$m^* = m\sqrt{1 + \overline{\xi^2}(\tau)}. \tag{1.18}$$

This formula describes the renormalization of the particle mass in the field. Here we introduced a relativistic invariant dimensionless parameter of a plane EM wave intensity

$$\xi^2(\tau) = \left(\frac{e\mathbf{A}(\tau)}{mc^2}\right)^2. \tag{1.19}$$

The parameter ξ is the basic characteristic of a strong radiation field at the interaction with the charged particles, which represents the work of the field on the one wavelength in the units of the particle rest energy, i.e., it is the energy (normalized) acquired by the particle on a wavelength of a coherent radiation field.

As strong radiation fields actually relate to laser sources of high coherency, we will consider the case of quasi-monochromatic or monochromatic wave fields (we look aside from the actual intensity profiles of laser beams over space coordinates—deviation from a plane wave because of their finite sizes).

Let us consider the case of a monochromatic wave. Without loss of generality we will direct vector $\boldsymbol{\nu}_0$ along the OX axis of a Cartesian coordinate system: $\boldsymbol{\nu}_0 = \{1, 0, 0\}$, then retarding wave coordinate: $\tau = t - x/c$. In the general case of elliptic polarization the vector potential of a monochromatic wave with a frequency ω_0 and amplitude A_0 may be presented in the form

$$\mathbf{A}(\tau) = \{0, A_0 \cos(\omega_0 \tau), gA_0 \sin \omega_0 \tau\}, \tag{1.20}$$

where g is the parameter of ellipticity; $g = 0$ corresponds to a linear polarization, while $g = \pm 1$ describes a wave of a circular polarization (right or left). Let $g = 1$ and the initial velocity of the particle is parallel to the wave propagation direction ($\mathrm{v}_0 = \mathrm{v}_{0x}$). In such geometry and circular polarization of the wave the intensity effect becomes apparent (only the latter exists with invariable magnitude, because $\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{A}(\tau) = 0$). In the future we will mainly consider this case of interaction at which the energy and longitudinal velocity of the particle in the field are invariable, which allows, first, a simpler picture of a particle–wave nonlinear interaction, and second, exact solutions in many processes where the existence of the particle initial transverse momentum prevents obtaining exact analytical solutions.

Concerning the definition of the particle initial and final free states at the interaction with a monochromatic wave of infinite duration we will assume an arbitrarily small damping for the amplitude A_0 to switch on adiabatically the wave at $\tau = -\infty$ and switch off at $\tau = +\infty$, i.e., $\mathbf{A}(\tau)\mid_{\tau=\pm\infty} = 0$ (according to the above-mentioned conditions for a plane wave of finite duration $\tau_f - \tau_0$ it should be extended to $\tau_0 \to -\infty$ and $\tau_f \to +\infty$). For a quasi-monochromatic wave (spectral width

$\Delta\omega \ll \omega_0$) it should be $A_0 \Rightarrow A_0(\tau)$, where $A_0(\tau)$ is a slowly varying amplitude with respect to the phase oscillations over the $\omega_0\tau$ and the conditions of adiabatic switching on and switching off will take place automatically.

Hence from (1.12) and (1.13) we have simple formulas for the particle momentum and energy in the field of a monochromatic wave of circular polarization:

$$p_x = p_0\left[1 + \frac{1}{2}\frac{c}{\mathrm{v}_0}\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\xi_0^2\right], \tag{1.21}$$

$$p_y = -mc\xi_0 \cos\omega_0\tau, \tag{1.22}$$

$$p_z = -mc\xi_0 \sin\omega_0\tau, \tag{1.23}$$

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0\left[1 + \frac{1}{2}\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\xi_0^2\right], \tag{1.24}$$

where the relativistic parameter of the wave intensity (1.19) $\xi^2(\tau) = \xi_0^2 = \mathrm{const}$ and, consequently, one can represent it by the amplitude of the vector potential A_0 or electric field strength E_0:

$$\xi_0 = \frac{eA_0}{mc^2} = \frac{eE_0}{mc\omega_0}. \tag{1.25}$$

Equation (1.24) shows that for the significant energy change of a particle in the field of a plane wave in vacuum the superpower laser beams of relativistic intensities $\xi_0 \gg 1$ are necessary. Such intensities corresponding to gigantic femtosecond laser pulses became available in recent years.

To elucidate the law of particle motion in the field of a monochromatic wave we will choose the frame of reference for the free particle initial position, in which the coordinates $\mathbf{r}_0$ at the moment $t = t_0$ correspond to $\mathbf{r}_0 = \mathbf{v}_0 t_0$. By that we exclude the infinities in the expression $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(\tau)$ connected with the initial infinity values of the parameters t_0 and $\mathbf{r}_0$, which have no physical meaning. Then one can extend $t_0 \to -\infty$ and, consequently, $\tau_0 = (1 - \mathrm{v}_{0x}/c)t_0 \to -\infty$ in (1.16) providing the particle free state before the interaction ($t_0 \to -\infty$) at infinity ($\mathbf{r}_0 \to -\infty$) with the adiabatic switching on the monochromatic (quasi-monochromatic) wave due to $A_0(-\infty) = 0$. Hence, from (1.16) follows the particle law of motion in the field (1.20) in parametric form. However, considering special cases it is analytically available to represent directly the law of motion $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ because of the invariability of longitudinal velocity of the particle in the field

$$\mathrm{v}_x = \mathrm{v}_0 \frac{1 + \frac{1}{2}\frac{c}{\mathrm{v}_0}\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\xi_0^2}{1 + \frac{1}{2}\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\xi_0^2}, \tag{1.26}$$

which is exposed only to permanent renormalization due to the intensity effect of the strong wave. Then, with the help of (1.26) we have the following formulas for the particle law of motion:

$$x(t) = \mathrm{v}_x t, \tag{1.27}$$

$$y(t) = -\frac{mc^3\xi_0}{\mathcal{E}_0\omega_0\left(1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)}\sin\omega_0\left(1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)t, \tag{1.28}$$

$$z(t) = \frac{mc^3\xi_0}{\mathcal{E}_0\omega_0\left(1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)}\cos\omega_0\left(1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)t. \tag{1.29}$$

Equations (1.27)–(1.29) show that the particle performs circular motion

$$y^2(t) + z^2(t) = \mathrm{const} \tag{1.30}$$

in the plane of the wave polarization (yz) with the radius

$$\rho_\perp = \frac{mc^3\xi_0}{\mathcal{E}_0\omega_0(1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c})} \tag{1.31}$$

and translational uniform motion along the wave propagation direction (OX axis), i.e., performs a helical motion (Fig. 1.1). Consider now the case of linear polarization of the wave

$$\mathbf{A}(\tau) = \{0, A_0\cos(\omega_0\tau), 0\}. \tag{1.32}$$

From (1.12) and (1.13) for the particle momentum and energy in the field (1.32) we have

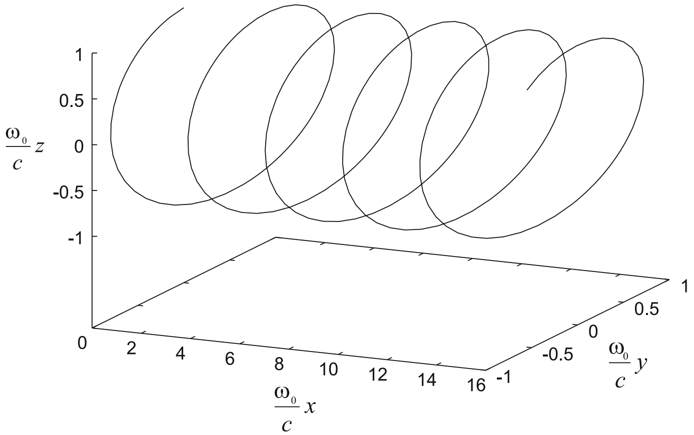


Fig. 1.1 Trajectory of the particle (initially at rest) in the field of circularly polarized EM wave. The relativistic parameter of intensity is taken to be $\xi_0 = 1$

$$p_x = p_0\left[1 + \frac{1}{2}\frac{c}{\mathrm{v}_0}\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\xi_0^2\cos^2(\omega_0\tau)\right], \tag{1.33}$$

$$p_y = -mc\xi_0\cos\omega_0\tau, \tag{1.34}$$

$$p_z = 0, \tag{1.35}$$

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0\left[1 + \frac{1}{2}\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\xi_0^2\cos^2(\omega_0\tau)\right]. \tag{1.36}$$

In contrast to the case of circular polarization, in the field of linearly polarized wave the intensity effect has the oscillating character (at the second harmonic $2\omega_0$, as follows from (1.33) and (1.36)) and the representation of the particle trajectory analytically is unavailable. The latter may be performed in parametric form with the help of the particle law of motion $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(\tau)$, which in the field (1.32) has the following form:

$$x(\tau) = \left[1 + \frac{1}{4}\frac{c}{\mathrm{v}_0}\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\xi_0^2\right]\frac{\mathrm{v}_0\tau}{(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c})} + \rho_{\shortparallel}\sin(2\omega_0\tau), \tag{1.37}$$

$$y(\tau) = -\rho_\perp\sin(\omega_0\tau), \tag{1.38}$$

$$z = 0, \tag{1.39}$$

where

$$\rho_{\shortparallel} = \frac{1}{8}\frac{c}{\omega_0}\frac{1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}}{1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}}\xi_0^2 \tag{1.40}$$

is the amplitude of longitudinal oscillations of the particle along the wave propagation direction and $\rho_\perp$ is given by the formula (1.31).

To determine the particle trajectory we pass to an inertial system of coordinates connected with the uniform motion of the particle along the axis *OX* with the velocity

$$V = \mathrm{v}_0\frac{1 + \frac{1}{4}\frac{c}{\mathrm{v}_0}\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\xi_0^2}{1 + \frac{1}{4}\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\xi_0^2}, \tag{1.41}$$

to exclude the uniform part of translational movement in the direction of the wave propagation. After the Lorentz transformations for coordinates and wave frequency we have the following law of motion in this system:

$$x^{'}(\tau') = \frac{1}{8}\frac{c}{\omega'}\frac{\xi_0^2}{1 + \frac{\xi_0^2}{2}}\sin(2\omega'\tau'), \tag{1.42}$$

$$y'(\tau') = y(\tau) = -\frac{c}{\omega'} \frac{\xi_0}{\sqrt{1+\frac{\xi_0^2}{2}}} \sin(\omega'\tau'), \tag{1.43}$$

$$z' = 0, \tag{1.44}$$

where

$$\omega' = \frac{\omega_0}{\sqrt{1+\frac{\xi_0^2}{2}}} \sqrt{\frac{1-\frac{v_0}{c}}{1+\frac{v_0}{c}}} \tag{1.45}$$

is the Doppler-shifted frequency of the wave in the system moving with the velocity (1.41).

Now from (1.42) and (1.43) one can obtain the trajectory of the particle in the plane XY

$$\left(\frac{x'}{2\rho'_{\shortparallel}}\right)^2 = \left(\frac{y'}{\rho_\perp}\right)^2 - \left(\frac{y'}{\rho_\perp}\right)^4 \tag{1.46}$$

with the parameters $\rho'_{\shortparallel}$ and $\rho_\perp$:

$$\rho'_{\shortparallel} = \frac{c}{8\omega'} \frac{\xi_0^2}{1+\frac{\xi_0^2}{2}}; \quad \rho'_\perp = \rho_\perp = \frac{c}{\omega'} \frac{\xi_0}{\sqrt{1+\frac{\xi_0^2}{2}}}. \tag{1.47}$$

Equation (1.46) performs a symmetric 8-form figure with the longitudinal axis along the OY (Fig. 1.2).

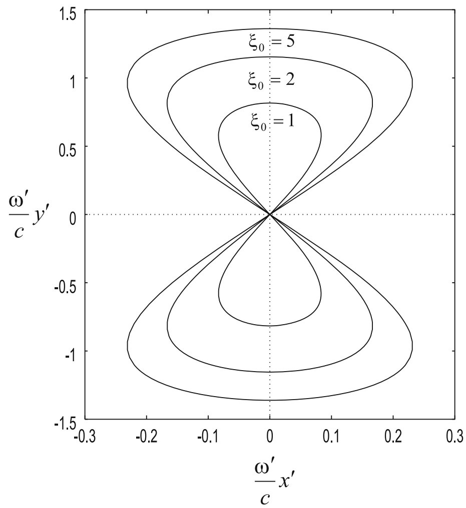


Fig. 1.2 Trajectory of the particle in the field of linearly polarized EM wave (excluding the uniform part of translational movement in the direction of the wave propagation) for the various ξ_0

1.3 Radiation of a Particle in the Field of Strong Monochromatic Wave

Let us now consider the radiation of a charged particle in the specified wave field (1.20) of arbitrary high intensity in the scope of the classical theory. In the strong wave field the radiation of a particle is of nonlinear nature—radiation of high harmonics—which in quantum terminology means that the multiphoton absorption by the particle from the incident wave takes place with subsequent radiation of the corresponding photon. Taking into account certain dependence of harmonics radiation on the direction of particle motion with respect to the initial strong wave propagation and its polarization we will consider the general case of a particle–wave interaction geometry and arbitrary polarization of monochromatic wave (elliptic)

$$\mathbf{A}(\tau) = A_0\{\mathbf{e}_1 \cos\omega_0\tau + \mathbf{e}_2 g \sin\omega_0\tau\}; \tag{1.48}$$

$$\tau = t - \frac{\boldsymbol{\nu}_0\mathbf{r}}{c}; \quad \mathbf{e}_1\boldsymbol{\nu}_0 = \mathbf{e}_2\boldsymbol{\nu}_0 = \mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{e}_2 = 0,$$

where $\mathbf{e}_{1,2}$ are the unit polarization vectors.

The energy radiated by a charged particle in the domain of solid angle dO and interval of frequencies $d\omega$ in the direction of the wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ (summed by all possible polarizations) is given by the formula

$$d\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{e^2}{4\pi^2 c}\left|\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}[\mathbf{kv}]\, e^{i(\mathbf{kr}-\omega t)}dt\right|^2 d\omega dO, \tag{1.49}$$

where $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{v}(t)$ and $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ are the particle velocity and law of motion in the wave field (1.20), which are determined by (1.12), (1.13), and (1.16) in parametric form. The latter requires passing in (1.49) from the variable t to the wave coordinate τ. Then the equation for the radiation energy will be written in the form

$$d\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{e^2 c^3}{4\pi^2 \Lambda^2}\left|\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left[\mathbf{kp}\,(\tau)\right] e^{i\psi(\tau)}d\tau\right|^2 d\omega dO, \tag{1.50}$$

where

$$\psi(\tau) = \omega\tau + k(\boldsymbol{\nu}_0 - \boldsymbol{\nu})\mathbf{r}(\tau) \tag{1.51}$$

is the phase of radiated wave $(\mathbf{kr} - \omega t)$ as a function of the incident strong wave coordinate τ and the unit vector $\boldsymbol{\nu}$ in (1.49) is $\boldsymbol{\nu} = \mathbf{k}/k$.

Using (1.12), (1.13) and introducing the functions

$$G_0 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{i\psi(\tau)} d\tau,$$

$$\mathbf{G}_1 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathbf{A}(\tau) e^{i\psi(\tau)} d\tau, \tag{1.52}$$

$$G_2 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathbf{A}^2(\tau) e^{i\psi(\tau)} d\tau,$$

after the long but straightforward transformations for the radiation energy we obtain

$$d\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega^2}{4\pi^2 \Lambda^2} \left(\frac{e^2}{m^2 c^4} \left(|\mathbf{G}_1|^2 - Re \left(G_0 G_2^* \right) \right) - |G_0|^2 \right) d\omega dO. \tag{1.53}$$

This is the general formula of the spectral-angular distribution of radiation energy for the arbitrary plane EM wave field. Considering the case of monochromatic wave (1.48) with the corresponding law of motion (1.16) for the phase of radiated wave (1.51), which determines the functions (1.52) and, consequently, the energy of radiation (1.53), we have

$$\psi(\tau) = \left(\frac{\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}}{\Lambda} \right) \omega\tau + \alpha \sin(\omega_0 \tau - \varphi) - \beta \sin 2\omega_0 \tau, \tag{1.54}$$

where the parameters α, β, and φ are

$$\alpha = \rho_\perp k \sqrt{\left(\boldsymbol{\nu}\mathbf{e}_1 + (\boldsymbol{\nu}^\circ{}_{\mathbf{0}} - 1) \frac{c\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{e}_1}{\Lambda} \right)^2 + g^2 \left(\boldsymbol{\nu}\mathbf{e}_2 + (\boldsymbol{\nu}\boldsymbol{\nu}_{\mathbf{0}} - 1) \frac{c\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{e}_2}{\Lambda} \right)^2},$$

$$\beta = (\boldsymbol{\nu}\boldsymbol{\nu}_{\mathbf{0}} - 1)\rho_{\shortparallel} k, \tag{1.55}$$

$$\tan\varphi = \frac{g \left(\boldsymbol{\nu}\mathbf{e}_2 + (\boldsymbol{\nu}\boldsymbol{\nu}_{\mathbf{0}} - 1) \frac{c\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{e}_2}{\Lambda} \right)}{\boldsymbol{\nu}\mathbf{e}_1 + (\boldsymbol{\nu}\boldsymbol{\nu}_{\mathbf{0}} - 1) \frac{c\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{e}_1}{\Lambda}}.$$

In these expressions the quantities $\rho_\perp$ and $\rho_{\shortparallel}$ are determined by the (1.31) and (1.40). Here we have omitted the terms with $\mathbf{r}_0$ and τ_0 as these terms (constant phase factor) do not contribute to the single-particle radiation energy. All functions in (1.53) can be expressed by the series of Bessel function production using the following expansion:

$$e^{i\alpha\sin(\omega_0\tau-\varphi)-i\beta\sin 2\omega_0\tau}=\sum_{n,k=-\infty}^{\infty}J_n(\alpha)J_k(\beta)e^{-in\varphi}e^{i(n-2k)\omega_0\tau}.$$

The latter in turn can be expressed by the so-called generalized Bessel function $G_s(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)$:

$$G_s(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)=\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty}J_{2k-s}(\alpha)J_k(\beta)e^{i(s-2k)\varphi}. \tag{1.56}$$

Then the functions (1.52) will be written by the function $G_s(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)$ as follows:

$$G_0=2\pi\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}G_s(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\delta\left(\frac{\overline{\mathcal{E}}-c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}}{\Lambda}\omega-s\omega_0\right),$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{G}_1=\pi A_0\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}&\{\mathbf{e}_1\left(G_{s-1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)+G_{s+1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\right)\\&+\mathbf{e}_2 ig\left(G_{s-1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)-G_{s+1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\right)\}\,\delta\left(\frac{\overline{\mathcal{E}}-c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}}{\Lambda}\omega-s\omega_0\right),\end{aligned} \tag{1.57}$$

$$\begin{aligned}G_2=&\frac{A_0^2}{2}(1+g^2)G_0+\pi A_0^2(1-g^2)\\&\times\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}\left(G_{s-2}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)+G_{s+2}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\right)\delta\left(\frac{\overline{\mathcal{E}}-c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}}{\Lambda}\omega-s\omega_0\right).\end{aligned}$$

The function $\delta(x)$ in (1.57) is the Dirac δ-function expressing the resonance condition between the particle oscillation frequency in the incident strong wave field and radiation frequency (conservation law of the Compton effect in quantum terminology). According to (1.57) the radiation energy (1.53) is proportional to the δ^2-function, which should be represented via particle–strong wave interaction time Δt (in the wave coordinate $\Delta\tau=\Delta t\Lambda/\overline{\mathcal{E}}$)

$$\delta\left(\frac{\overline{\mathcal{E}}-c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}}{\Lambda}\omega-s\omega_0\right)\delta\left(\frac{\overline{\mathcal{E}}-c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}}{\Lambda}\omega-s'\omega_0\right)$$

$$=\left[\begin{array}{l}0,\ \text{if}\ s\neq s',\\[2ex]\frac{\Delta\tau}{2\pi}\delta\left(\frac{\overline{\mathcal{E}}-c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}}{\Lambda}\omega-s\omega_0\right),\ \text{if}\ s=s'.\end{array}\right. \tag{1.58}$$

Then instead of the radiation energy (1.53) one can determine the radiation power

$$dP_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{d\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}}}{\Delta t}.$$

Substituting (1.57) into (1.53) taking into account (1.58) for the radiation power we obtain (from $\omega > 0$ follows $s > 0$)

$$\begin{aligned} dP_{\mathbf{k}} = {} & \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega^2}{2\pi \Lambda \overline{\mathcal{E}}} \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} \left\{ \frac{\xi_0^2}{4} \left[(1+g^2) \left(|G_{s-1}|^2 + |G_{s+1}|^2 \right) \right. \right. \\ & \left. + 2(1-g^2) Re \left(G_{s-1}^* G_{s+1} - \frac{1}{2} G_s^* \left(G_{s-2} + G_{s+2} \right) \right) \right] \\ & \left. - \left(1 + \frac{\xi_0^2}{2}(1+g^2) \right) |G_s|^2 \right\} \delta \left(\frac{\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}}{\Lambda} \omega - s\omega_0 \right) d\omega dO. \end{aligned} \tag{1.59}$$

In the case of the circular polarization of an incident strong wave ($g = \pm 1$) the second argument of the generalized Bessel function $G_s(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)$ is zero and $|G_s|^2 = J_s^2(\alpha)$, so that for the radiation power we have

$$\begin{aligned} dP_{\mathbf{k}} = {} & \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega^2}{2\pi \Lambda \overline{\mathcal{E}}} \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} \left[\frac{\xi_0^2}{2} \left(J_{s-1}^2(\alpha) + J_{s+1}^2(\alpha) \right) - \left(1 + \xi_0^2 \right) J_s^2(\alpha) \right] \\ & \times \delta \left(\frac{\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}}{\Lambda} \omega - s\omega_0 \right) d\omega dO. \end{aligned} \tag{1.60}$$

Using the known recurrent relations for the Bessel functions

$$J_{s-1}(\alpha) + J_{s+1}(\alpha) = \frac{2s}{\alpha} J_s(\alpha),$$

$$J_{s-1}(\alpha) - J_{s+1}(\alpha) = 2J_s'(\alpha),$$

Equation (1.60) can be represented in the following form:

$$\begin{aligned} dP_{\mathbf{k}} = {} & \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega^2}{2\pi \overline{\mathcal{E}} (\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}})} \xi_0^2 \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} \left[\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha^2} - 1 - \xi_0^{-2} \right) J_s^2(\alpha) + J_s'^2(\alpha) \right] \\ & \times \delta \left(\omega - \frac{s\omega_0 (\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}_0 \overline{\mathbf{p}})}{\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}} \right) d\omega dO. \end{aligned} \tag{1.61}$$

For the linear polarization of an incident strong wave ($g = 0$) the third argument of the generalized Bessel function $G_s(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)$ is zero and G_s functions become real. Then for the radiation power in this case we have

$$dP_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega^2}{2\pi\overline{\mathcal{E}}(\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}})} \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} \left[\frac{\xi_0^2}{4} \left((G_{s-1} + G_{s+1})^2 - G_s \left(G_{s-2} + G_{s+2}\right) \right) \right.$$
$$\left. - \left(1 + \frac{\xi_0^2}{2}\right) G_s^2 \right] \delta\left(\omega - \frac{s\omega_0(\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}_0\overline{\mathbf{p}})}{\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}}\right) d\omega dO. \qquad (1.62)$$

1.4 Nonlinear Radiation Effects in Superstrong Wave Fields

Equations (1.59)–(1.62) for the radiation power of a charged particle show that as a result of the particle–strong wave nonlinear interaction in vacuum, numerous harmonics in the radiation spectrum arise, i.e., the radiation process is also nonlinear. In quantum terminology this means that due to multiphoton absorption by a particle from the strong wave the nonlinear Compton effect takes place. The power of harmonics radiation nonlinearly depends on incident strong wave intensity and for its considerable value, laser fields must have relativistic intensities $\xi > 1$.

Up until the last decade, such intensities were practically unachievable (even then the strongest laser fields were $\xi < 1$) and to expect to reach high harmonics radiation via nonlinear Compton channels in vacuum with laser fields of intensities $\xi < 1$ (or any other nonlinear effect at the charge particle–EM wave interaction in vacuum, particularly laser acceleration,) as will be shown below, was unreal. For this reason, actual interest in the nonlinear Compton effect until recently was only theoretical. However, the rapid development of laser technology in the last decade made available laser sources of supershort duration—femtosecond pulses, the intensity of which today much exceeds its relativistic value in the optical domain: $I_{rel} \sim 10^{18}$ W/cm^2 ($\xi \sim 1$), laser fields with $\xi \gg 1$ became available. The latter has provided the necessary intensities for actual radiation of high harmonics in the Compton process. Therefore, we will analyze the process of high harmonics radiation in the nonlinear interaction of a charged particle with superstrong laser fields ($\xi \gg 1$) on the basis of (1.59)–(1.62).

We will analyze the cases of circular and linear polarizations of the incident wave taking into account the specific dependence of harmonics radiation on the strong wave polarization and when the initial velocity of the particle is parallel to the wave propagation direction. This case of particle–wave parallel propagation is of interest since in this case the interaction length with actual laser beams (or, e.g., wiggler field, which in relation to the relativistic particle is equivalent to a counterpropagating laser field) is maximal, which is especially important for the problem of free electron lasers.

In the case of circular polarization of an incident strong wave ($g = \pm 1$) and $\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{e}_1 = 0$, $\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{e}_2 = 0$, carrying out the integration over ω and turning to spherical coordinates in (1.61) (OZ axis directed along the vector $\overline{\mathbf{p}}$) for the angular distribution of the radiation power for the sth harmonic we have

$$\frac{dP^{(s)}}{dO} = \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega_s^2}{2\pi \overline{\mathcal{E}}^2 (1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta)} \xi_0^2 \left[\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha_s^2} - 1 - \xi_0^{-2} \right) J_s^2(\alpha_s) + J_s'^2(\alpha_s) \right], \quad (1.63)$$

where

$$\omega_s = s\omega_0 \frac{\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}_0 \overline{\mathbf{p}}}{\overline{\mathcal{E}} - c\boldsymbol{\nu}\overline{\mathbf{p}}} = s\omega_0 \frac{1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta_0}{1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta} \quad (1.64)$$

is the radiated frequency and

$$\alpha_s = \frac{smc^2}{\overline{\mathcal{E}}\left(1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta\right)} \xi_0 \sin\vartheta \quad (1.65)$$

is the parameter characterizing nonlinear interaction with the strong EM wave. ϑ_0 and ϑ are the incident and scattering angles of the strong and radiated waves with respect to the direction of the particle mean velocity $\overline{\mathbf{v}} = c^2\overline{\mathbf{p}}/\overline{\mathcal{E}}$.

For a weak EM wave: $\xi_0 \ll 1$ (linear theory) the argument of the Bessel function $\alpha_s \ll 1$ and as is known for such values of the argument $J_s(\alpha_s) \sim {\alpha_s}^s$ and $P^{(s)} \sim \xi_0^{2s}$. Therefore, in the linear theory the main contribution to the radiation power gives the first harmonic. In this case $J_1^2(\alpha_1) \simeq \alpha_1^2/4$, $J_1'^2(\alpha_1) \simeq 1/4$, $\overline{\mathcal{E}} \simeq \mathcal{E}_0$, $\overline{\mathrm{v}} \simeq \mathrm{v}_0$, and

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dP^{(1)}}{dO} &= \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega_1^2}{8\pi \mathcal{E}_0^2 (1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta)} \xi_0^2 \left[2 - \frac{\alpha_1^2}{\xi_0^2} \right] \\ &= \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega_1^2}{8\pi \mathcal{E}_0^2 (1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta)} \xi_0^2 \left[2 - \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0} \right)^2 \frac{\sin^2\vartheta}{\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta\right)^2} \right]. \end{aligned} \quad (1.66)$$

Particularly for the particle initially at rest we have the Thomson formula

$$\frac{dP^{(1)}}{dO} = \frac{e^2\omega_0^2}{8\pi c} \xi_0^2 \left[1 + \cos^2\vartheta\right],$$

$$P^{(1)} = \frac{e^2\omega_0^2}{4c} \xi_0^2 \int_{-1}^{1} \left[1 + \cos^2\vartheta\right] d\cos\vartheta = \frac{2e^2\omega_0^2}{3c} \xi_0^2. \quad (1.67)$$

For the moderate relativistic intensities $\xi_0 \sim 1$ (moderate nonlinearity) the power of the low harmonics ($s \sim 10$) exceeds the radiation power of the fundamental frequency ω_1. To show the dependence of the radiation power on the harmonics number the relative differential power

$$P_{rel}^{(s)} = \frac{dP^{(s)}}{dO} \Big/ \frac{dP^{(1)}}{dO} = \frac{s^2 \left[\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha_s^2} - 1 - \xi_0^{-2} \right) J_s^2(\alpha_s) + J_s'^2(\alpha_s) \right]}{\left(\frac{1}{\alpha_1^2} - 1 - \xi_0^{-2} \right) J_1^2(\alpha_1) + J_1'^2(\alpha_1)} \tag{1.68}$$

is displayed in Fig. 1.3 for the different harmonics. In Fig. 1.4 the relative differential power is plotted as a function of radiation angle for various harmonics.

For the superstrong EM waves of relativistic intensities (strict nonlinearity): $\xi_0 \gg 1$ a relatively simple analytic formula for the radiation power can be obtained utilizing the properties of the Bessel function. The argument of the latter in (1.63) reaches its maximal value

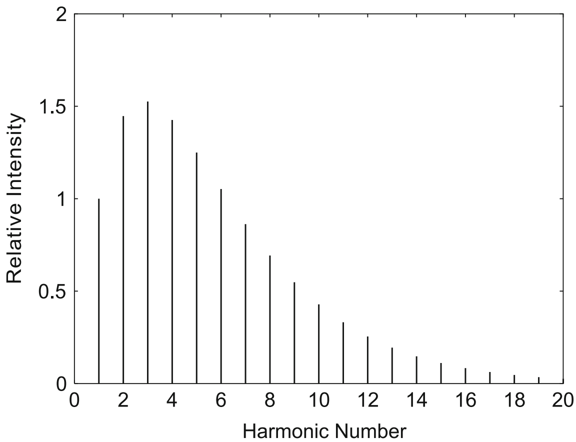


Fig. 1.3 The envelope of the relative differential power of the radiation for the different harmonics is plotted at the $\xi_0 = 1$ and $\vartheta\overline{\gamma} = 1$ ($\overline{\gamma} = \overline{\mathcal{E}}/(m^* c^2) = 10$)

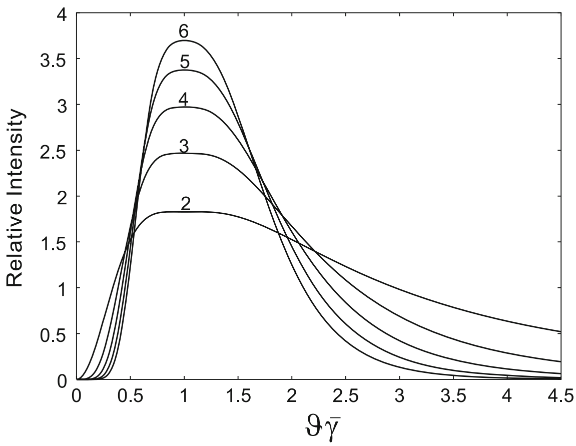


Fig. 1.4 The relative differential power is plotted as a function of radiation angle for various harmonics. The relativistic parameter of intensity is taken to be $\xi_0 = 2$ and $\overline{\gamma} = 10$

$$\alpha_{s\,\max} = \frac{\xi_0}{\sqrt{1+\xi_0^2}} s$$

at the angle $\cos\vartheta_m = \overline{\mathrm{v}}/c$. Therefore, at $\xi_0 \gg 1$ the harmonics with $s \sim \alpha_s \gg 1$ furnish the main contribution to the radiation power. At the angle $\theta = \theta_m$ we have a peak in angular distribution of the radiation power. Besides, in this limit (always $\alpha_s < s$) one can approximate the Bessel function by the Airy one

$$J_s(\alpha_s) \simeq \left(\frac{2}{s}\right)^{1/3} Ai\,(Z)\,;\;\; Z = \left(\frac{s}{2}\right)^{2/3}\left(1 - \frac{\alpha_s^2}{s^2}\right), \tag{1.69}$$

$$J_s' \simeq -\left(\frac{2}{s}\right)^{2/3} Ai'\,(Z),$$

and taking into account that

$$\overline{\mathcal{E}} = \frac{m^* c^2}{\sqrt{1-\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}^2}{c^2}}}$$

for the angular distribution of the radiation power we have

$$\frac{dP^{(s)}}{dO} \simeq \frac{e^2\omega_s^2\left(1-\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}^2}{c^2}\right)}{2\pi c(1-\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta)}\left(\frac{2}{s}\right)^{4/3} \times \left[\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha_s^2} - 1 - \xi_0^{-2}\right)\left(\frac{s}{2}\right)^{2/3} Ai^2\,(Z) + Ai'^2\,(Z)\right]. \tag{1.70}$$

As far as the Airy function exponentially decreasing with increasing of the argument, one can conclude that the cutoff harmonic s_c is determined from the condition $Z_{\min} \sim 1$, where

$$Z_{\min} = \left(\frac{s}{2}\right)^{2/3}\left(1 - \frac{\alpha_{s\,\max}^2}{s^2}\right) \simeq \left(\frac{s}{2\xi_0^3}\right)^{2/3},$$

which gives $s_c \sim \xi_0^3$.

Consider now the case of linear polarization of the incident strong EM wave. Taking into account the recurrence relation in (1.62)

$$G_{s-2}(\alpha,\beta) + G_{s+2}(\alpha,\beta) = \frac{s}{\beta}G_s(\alpha,\beta) + \frac{\alpha}{2\beta}\left[G_{s-1}(\alpha,\beta) + G_{s+1}(\alpha,\beta)\right],$$

the differential radiation power in this case can be represented in the form

$$\frac{dP^{(s)}}{dO} = \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega_s^2}{8\pi\overline{\mathcal{E}}^2 (1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta)} \xi_0^2 \times \left[(G_{s-1} + G_{s+1}) \left(G_{s-1} + G_{s+1} - \frac{\alpha}{2\beta} G_s \right) - \left(2 + \frac{4}{\xi_0^2} + \frac{s}{\beta} \right) G_s^2 \right]. \quad (1.71)$$

The arguments of the generalized Bessel functions when $\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{e}_1 = 0$ are

$$\alpha_s = \frac{smc^2}{\overline{\mathcal{E}}\left(1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta\right)} \xi_0 \left|\boldsymbol{\nu}\mathbf{e}_1\right|,$$

$$\beta_s = \frac{s\xi_0^2}{8 + 4\xi_0^2} \frac{1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}^2}{c^2}}{1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta_0} \frac{\cos\vartheta_r - 1}{1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta}, \quad (1.72)$$

where ϑ_r is the angle between the incident and radiated EM waves.

For the weak EM wave $\xi_0 \ll 1$ the arguments of the generalized Bessel function $\alpha_s, \beta_s \ll 1$ and $P^{(s)} \sim \xi_0^{2s}$, therefore, the main contribution to the radiation power gives the first harmonic. In this case

$$\frac{dP^{(1)}}{dO} = \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega_1^2}{8\pi\mathcal{E}_0^2 (1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta)} \xi_0^2 \left[1 - \frac{\alpha_1^2}{\xi_0^2} \right]. \quad (1.73)$$

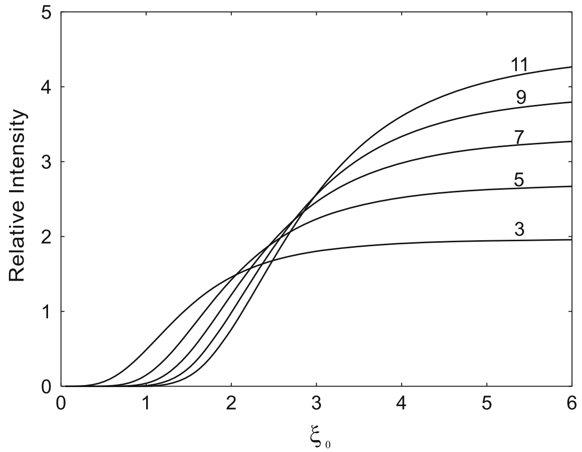
For the particle initially at rest we have the Thomson formula

$$\frac{dP^{(1)}}{dO} = \frac{e^2\omega_0^2}{8\pi c} \xi_0^2 \left[1 - (\boldsymbol{\nu}\mathbf{e}_1)^2 \right],$$

$$P^{(1)} = \frac{e^2\omega_0^2}{3c} \xi_0^2. \quad (1.74)$$

In contrast to the circular polarization of the strong wave, for the linear polarization there is no azimuthal symmetry and the asymmetry upon the harmonics parity appears. In particular, in the direction opposite to the strong wave propagation ($\boldsymbol{\nu}\mathbf{e}_1 = 0$ and $\vartheta_r = \pi$) only odd harmonics exist. This is a consequence of the particle dynamics in the strong wave field considered in Sect. 1.2. For this case the generalized Bessel function is reduced to the ordinary Bessel function and we have a relatively simple formula. Thus,

Fig. 1.5 The partial differential power is shown for on axis radiation as a function of ξ_0 for various harmonics ($\overline{\gamma} = 10$)



$$G_s(0,\beta,0) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} J_{2k-s}(0) J_k(\beta)$$
$$= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta_{2k-s,0} J_k(\beta) = \begin{bmatrix} 0, \text{ if } s \text{ odd} \\ J_{s/2}(\beta), \text{ if } s \text{ even} \end{bmatrix} \tag{1.75}$$

and for the angular distribution of the radiation power we obtain

$$\left.\frac{dP^{(s)}}{dO}\right|_{\vartheta_r=\pi} = \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3 \omega_s^2 \xi_0^2}{8\pi \overline{\mathcal{E}}^2 (1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}}{c}\cos\vartheta)} \left[J_{\frac{s+1}{2}}\left(\frac{s\xi_0^2}{4+2\xi_0^2}\right) - J_{\frac{s-1}{2}}\left(\frac{s\xi_0^2}{4+2\xi_0^2}\right)\right]^2 . \tag{1.76}$$

At $\xi_0 \gg 1$ the argument of the Bessel function tends to the value of the index and as in the case of a wave circular polarization the high harmonics $s \gg 1$ give the main contribution to the radiation power and the cutoff harmonic $s_c \sim \xi_0^3$. In Fig. 1.5 the partial differential power is shown for on axis radiation. To show the dependence of the process on the incident wave intensity the relative differential power is plotted as a function of ξ_0 for various harmonics. As we see, with increasing of the wave intensity the power of harmonics well exceeds the power of the fundamental frequency.

1.5 Quantum Description. Volkov Solution of the Dirac Equation

The description of the quantum dynamics of a spinor charged particle (say, electron) in the field of a strong EM wave in vacuum in the scope of relativistic theory requires solution of the Dirac equation, which in the field of arbitrary plane wave allows an exact solution, first obtained by Volkov (1933). This Volkov wave function has the basic role in quantum description of diverse nonlinear electromagnetic processes in superstrong laser fields in vacuum, in particular, major quantum electrodynamic phenomena such as the Compton effect, stimulated bremsstrahlung, and electron–positron pair production, which will be considered in this book. Therefore, this section will be devoted to a description of relativistic wave function of a spinor charged particle in the field of a plane EM wave of arbitrary form and intensity.

The Dirac equation for a spinor particle in a given plane EM wave with arbitrary form of the vector potential $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{A}(\tau)$ (see (1.7)) is written as follows:

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial t} = \left[c\boldsymbol{\alpha}\widehat{\mathbf{P}} + mc^2\beta\right]\Psi, \tag{1.77}$$

where

$$\boldsymbol{\alpha} = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\sigma} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{0} & -\boldsymbol{\sigma} \end{pmatrix}, \ \beta = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \tag{1.78}$$

are the Dirac matrices in the spinor representation, $\boldsymbol{\sigma} = \left(\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z\right)$ are the Pauli matrices

$$\sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \ \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \ \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{1.79}$$

and

$$\widehat{\mathbf{P}} = \hat{\mathbf{p}} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}$$

is the operator of the kinetic momentum ($\widehat{\mathbf{p}} = -i\hbar\nabla$ is the operator of the generalized momentum).

Looking for the solution of (1.77) in the form

$$\Psi = \begin{pmatrix} \Psi_1 \\ \Psi_2 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{1.80}$$

for the spinor functions $\Psi_{1,2}$ we obtain the equations

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi_1}{\partial t} - c\boldsymbol{\sigma}\widehat{\mathbf{P}}\Psi_1 = mc^2\Psi_2,$$

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi_2}{\partial t} + c\boldsymbol{\sigma}\widehat{\mathbf{P}}\Psi_2 = mc^2\Psi_1. \tag{1.81}$$

Then acting on the first equation by the operator $i\hbar\partial/\partial t + c\boldsymbol{\sigma}\widehat{\mathbf{P}}$ and taking into account the relation

$$(\boldsymbol{\sigma}\mathbf{a})\,(\boldsymbol{\sigma}\mathbf{b}) = (\mathbf{ab}) + i\boldsymbol{\sigma}\,[\mathbf{ab}]$$

we obtain the Dirac equation in quadratic form:

$$\left\{\hbar^2\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - \hbar^2 c^2\left(\boldsymbol{\nu}_0\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{r}}\right)^2 + c^2\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_\perp^2 + m^2c^4 - ec\hbar\boldsymbol{\sigma}(\mathbf{H} - i\mathbf{E})\right\}\Psi_1 = 0. \quad (1.82)$$

A similar equation is obtained for Ψ_2:

$$\left\{\hbar^2\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} - \hbar^2 c^2\left(\boldsymbol{\nu}_0\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{r}}\right)^2 + c^2\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_\perp^2 + m^2c^4 - ec\hbar\boldsymbol{\sigma}(\mathbf{H} + i\mathbf{E})\right\}\Psi_2 = 0, \quad (1.83)$$

where $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{H}$ are the electric and magnetic field strengths of the plane EM wave determined by (1.6). The last terms in these equations $\boldsymbol{\sigma}(\mathbf{H} \mp i\mathbf{E})$ describe the spin interaction (for the scalar particles (1.82), (1.83) without which these terms are reduced to the Klein–Gordon equation.) To solve the problem it is more convenient to pass to the retarding and advanced wave coordinates

$$\tau = t - \boldsymbol{\nu}_0\mathbf{r}/c; \;\; \eta = t + \boldsymbol{\nu}_0\mathbf{r}/c,$$

then (1.82) is written as

$$\left\{4\hbar^2\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\tau\partial\eta} + c^2\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_\perp^2 + m^2c^4 - ec\hbar\boldsymbol{\sigma}(\mathbf{H} - i\mathbf{E})\right\}\Psi_1 = 0. \quad (1.84)$$

As the existence of a plane wave does not violate the homogeneity of the space in the plane of the wave polarization ($\mathbf{r}_\perp$) and the interaction Hamiltonian does not depend on the wave advanced coordinate η, i.e., the variables $\mathbf{r}_\perp$, η are cyclic and the corresponding components of generalized momentum $\mathbf{p}_\perp$ and p_η are conserved. Then the solution of (1.84) can be represented in the form

$$\Psi_1\left(\tau, \eta, \mathbf{r}_\perp\right) = F_1(\tau)\exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathbf{p}_\perp\mathbf{r}_\perp + p_\eta\eta)\right\}. \quad (1.85)$$

From the initial condition $\mathbf{A}(\tau = -\infty) = 0$ it follows that $\mathbf{p}_\perp$ is the free particle initial transverse momentum and the quantity

$$p_\eta = \frac{1}{2}\left(c\mathbf{p}\nu_0 - \mathcal{E}\right), \quad (1.86)$$

where $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ are the free particle initial energy and momentum. Note that this quantity coincides with the classical integral of motion (1.10) (with a coefficient).

Substituting (1.85) into (1.84) for the function $F_1(\tau)$ yields the equation

$$\left\{\frac{\partial}{\partial\tau}-\frac{ic^2}{4\hbar p_\eta}\left[\left(\mathbf{p}_\perp-\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}\right)^2+m^2c^2-\frac{e\hbar}{c}\boldsymbol{\sigma}(\mathbf{H}-i\mathbf{E})\right]\right\}F_1(\tau)=0. \qquad (1.87)$$

The solution of (1.87) can be written in the operator form

$$F_1=\exp\left\{\frac{ic^2}{4\hbar p_\eta}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\tau}\left[\left(\mathbf{p}_\perp-\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}\right)^2+m^2c^2\right]d\tau' + \frac{e\left(\boldsymbol{\sigma\nu}_0+1\right)\boldsymbol{\sigma A}}{4p_\eta}\right\}w_1, \qquad (1.88)$$

where w_1 is an arbitrary spinor amplitude.

The operator in the exponent should be understood as a expansion into series

$$e^{\widehat{G}}=1+\widehat{G}+\frac{\widehat{G}^2}{2!}+\cdots.$$

Then it is easy to see that all powers greater than 1 of the operator $\left(\boldsymbol{\sigma\nu}_0+1\right)\boldsymbol{\sigma A}$ in (1.88) are zero because

$$\left[\left(\boldsymbol{\sigma\nu}_0+1\right)\boldsymbol{\sigma A}\right]^2=\mathbf{A}^2\left(1-\boldsymbol{\nu}_0^2\right)=0.$$

So, the spinor function (1.88) can be written in the form

$$F_1(\tau)=\exp\left\{\frac{ic^2}{4\hbar p_\eta}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\tau}\left[\left(\mathbf{p}_\perp-\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}\right)^2+m^2c^2\right]d\tau'\right\} \times\left[1+\frac{e}{4p_\eta}\left(\boldsymbol{\sigma\nu}_0+1\right)\boldsymbol{\sigma}\mathbf{A}\right]w_1. \qquad (1.89)$$

In the same way an analogical expression can be written for the spinor function $F_2(\tau)$.

The spinor components of the bispinor wave function of a particle (1.77) will be written as

$$\Psi_1=\exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}S\left(\mathbf{r},t\right)\right\}\left[1+\frac{e}{4p_\eta}\left(\boldsymbol{\sigma\nu}_0+1\right)\boldsymbol{\sigma}\mathbf{A}\right]w_1,$$

$$\Psi_2=\exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}S\left(\mathbf{r},t\right)\right\}\left[1+\frac{e}{4p_\eta}\left(\boldsymbol{\sigma\nu}_0-1\right)\boldsymbol{\sigma}\mathbf{A}\right]w_2, \qquad (1.90)$$

or the ultimate bispinor wave function can be represented via Dirac matrices $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar} S(\mathbf{r}, t)\right\}\left[1 + \frac{e}{4p_\eta}(\boldsymbol{\alpha}\boldsymbol{\nu}_0 + 1)\,\boldsymbol{\alpha}\mathbf{A}\right] w. \tag{1.91}$$

The scalar function $S(\mathbf{r}, t)$ in (1.90) and (1.91)

$$S(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{c^2}{4p_\eta}\int_{-\infty}^{\tau}\left[\frac{e^2}{c^2}\mathbf{A}^2(\tau') - 2\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{p}\mathbf{A}(\tau')\right] d\tau' + \mathbf{pr} - \mathcal{E}t \tag{1.92}$$

is the classical action of a charged particle in the plane EM wave field and

$$w = \begin{pmatrix} w_1 \\ w_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

is a constant bispinor, which should be defined from the condition of the particle wave function normalization according to the above stated initial conditions. Namely, we will demand that at $\tau = -\infty$ this wave function should be reduced to the free Dirac equation solution and for a constant bispinor we will set

$$w = \frac{u_\sigma}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}},$$

where u_σ is the bispinor amplitude of a free Dirac particle with polarization σ. It is assumed that

$$\overline{u}u = 2mc^3,$$

where $\overline{u} = u^\dagger\beta$; $u^\dagger$ denotes the transposition and complex conjugation of u (in what follows we will set the volume of the normalization $V = 1$).

In future consideration of the quantum electrodynamic processes it will be reasonable to use the four-dimensional presentation of the Volkov wave function. Therefore, we will represent the wave function (1.91) in the equivalent four-dimensional form. Here and in what follows for the four-component vectors we choose the metric $a \equiv a^\mu = (a_0, \mathbf{a})$ and $ab \equiv a^\mu b_\mu$ for the relativistic scalar product. The vector potential and the phase of the plane EM wave can be written as

$$A = (0, \mathbf{A}); \quad \tau = t - \boldsymbol{\nu}_0\mathbf{r}/c = \frac{k_\mu x^\mu}{k_0 c},$$

where

$$k = (k_0, \boldsymbol{\nu}_0 k_0)$$

is the four-vector with $k^2 = 0$ and $x = (ct, \mathbf{r})$ is the four-radius vector. Introducing the known $\gamma^\mu = (\gamma_0, \boldsymbol{\gamma})$ matrices

$$\boldsymbol{\gamma} = \beta\boldsymbol{\alpha},\ \gamma_0 = \beta$$

and taking into account that

$$p_\eta = -\frac{c}{2k_0}pk;\ \ p = \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}}{c}, \mathbf{p}\right),$$

$$\frac{e}{4p_\eta}\left(\boldsymbol{\alpha\nu}_0 + \mathbf{1}\right)\boldsymbol{\alpha}\mathbf{A} = \frac{e}{2c(pk)}\left(\gamma k\right)\left(\gamma A\right),$$

the Volkov wave function may be written as

$$\Psi\left(x\right) = \exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}S\left(x\right)\right\}\left[1 + \frac{e\left(\gamma k\right)\left(\gamma A\right)}{2c(pk)}\right]u,$$

$$S\left(x\right) = -px - \frac{k_0 c}{2pk}\int_{-\infty}^{\tau}\left[2\frac{e}{c}pA(\tau') - \frac{e^2}{c^2}A^2(\tau')\right]d\tau'. \tag{1.93}$$

Consider the Volkov wave function of a spinor particle in the field of the monochromatic wave (1.48). The latter can be presented in the form

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{p}\sigma} = \left[1 + \frac{e\left(\gamma k\right)\left(\gamma A\right)}{2c(kp)}\right]\frac{u_\sigma(p)}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}\exp\left\{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\left[\Pi x - \frac{eA_0}{c(pk)}\right.\right.$$
$$\left.\left.\times(\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{p}\sin\omega_0\tau - g\mathbf{e}_2\mathbf{p}\cos\omega_0\tau) + \frac{e^2A_0^2}{8c^2(pk)}(1-g^2)\sin(2\omega_0\tau)\right]\right\}, \tag{1.94}$$

where $k = (\omega_0/c, \mathbf{k}_0)$ is the four-wave vector and $\Pi = (\Pi_0/c, \boldsymbol{\Pi})$ is the average four-kinetic momentum or "quasimomentum" of the particle in the periodic field, which is determined via free particle four-momentum $p = (\mathcal{E}/c, \mathbf{p})$ and relativistic invariant parameter of the wave intensity ξ_0 by the equation

$$\Pi = p + k\frac{m^2c^2}{4kp}(1+g^2)\xi_0^2. \tag{1.95}$$

From this equation it follows that

$$\Pi^2 = m^{*2}c^2;\ m^* = m\left(1 + \frac{1+g^2}{2}\xi_0^2\right)^{1/2}, \tag{1.96}$$

where m^* is the effective mass of the particle in the monochromatic EM wave introduced in Sect. 1.2 (see (1.18)). It is seen that quasimomentum $\mathbf{\Pi} = \overline{\mathbf{p}}$ and quasienergy $\Pi_0 = \overline{\mathcal{E}}$ according to (1.17). The notion of quasimomentum is connected with the space-time translational symmetry-periodicity of the plane wave field as for the electron states in the crystal lattice.

The states (1.94) are normalized by the condition

$$\frac{1}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}\int \Psi^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{p}'\sigma'}\Psi_{\mathbf{p}\sigma}d\mathbf{r} = \delta(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{p}')\delta_{\sigma,\sigma'},$$

where $\delta_{\sigma,\sigma'}$ is the Kronecker symbol.

By the analogy of the electron states in the crystal lattice the state of a particle in the monochromatic wave can be characterized by the quasimomentum $\mathbf{\Pi}$ and polarization σ as well:

$$\frac{1}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}\int \Psi^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{\Pi}'\sigma'}\Psi_{\mathbf{\Pi}\sigma}d\mathbf{r} = \delta(\mathbf{\Pi}-\mathbf{\Pi}')\delta_{\sigma,\sigma'}.$$

In this case the normalization constant should be changed as follows:

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{\Pi}\sigma} = \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}}{\Pi_0}}\Psi_{\mathbf{p}\sigma}. \tag{1.97}$$

1.6 Nonlinear Compton Effect

With the help of the Volkov wave function (1.94) one can describe the major quantum process of electron scattering in the field of a strong monochromatic wave—nonlinear Compton effect—as a photon radiation by the electron due to the transitions between the “stationary states” of different quasimomentum $\mathbf{\Pi}$ and polarization σ. The spontaneous radiation of a photon by the electron may be considered by the perturbation theory in the scope of quantum electrodynamics (QED). The first-order Feynman diagram (Fig. 1.6) describes the electron–EM wave scattering process, where the electron lines are described via dynamic wave functions in the strong wave field (1.94) (dressed electron). The probability amplitude of transition from the state with a definite quasimomentum and polarization $\Psi_{\mathbf{\Pi}\sigma}$ to the state $\Psi_{\mathbf{\Pi}'\sigma'}$ with the emission of a photon with the frequency ω' and wave vector $\mathbf{k}'$ is given by

$$S_{if} = -\frac{ie}{\hbar c^2}\int j_{if}(x)A^{*}_{ph}(x)\,d^4x, \tag{1.98}$$

where

$$A^{\mu}_{ph}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\omega'}}\epsilon^{\mu}e^{-ik'x} \tag{1.99}$$

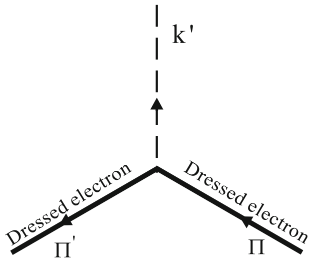


Fig. 1.6 Feynman diagram for nonlinear Compton effect

is the four-dimensional vector potential of quantized photon field (quantization volume $V = 1$), ϵ^{μ} is the four-dimensional polarization vector of the photon, and

$$j_{if}^{\mu} = \overline{\Psi}_{\boldsymbol{\Pi}'\sigma'}\gamma^{\mu}\Psi_{\boldsymbol{\Pi}\sigma}$$

is the four-dimensional transition current ($\overline{\Psi}_{\boldsymbol{\Pi}'\sigma'} = \Psi^{\dagger}_{\boldsymbol{\Pi}'\sigma'}\gamma_0$ and A^* is the complex conjugate of A).

Hence, for the probability amplitude we have

$$S_{if} = -ie\sqrt{\frac{2\pi}{\hbar\omega' c^2}}\int \overline{\Psi}_{\boldsymbol{\Pi}'\sigma'}\widehat{\epsilon^*}\Psi_{\boldsymbol{\Pi}\sigma}e^{ik'x}d^4x. \tag{1.100}$$

Here and in what follows for arbitrary four-component vector $\widehat{a} = \gamma^{\mu}a_{\mu}$. The probability amplitude can be expressed by the generalized Bessel functions $G_s(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)$ introduced in Sect. 1.3. Thus, taking into account the properties of Dirac γ matrices ($\widehat{k}\widehat{k} = 0$ $\widehat{A}\widehat{k} = -\widehat{k}\widehat{A}$) and (1.94) one will obtain

$$S_{if} = -i\frac{e}{c}\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2\hbar\omega'\Pi_0\Pi_0'}}\int \overline{u}_{\sigma'}(p')\left[\widehat{\epsilon^*} + \left(\frac{e\widehat{A}\widehat{k}\widehat{\epsilon^*}}{2c(kp')} + \frac{e\widehat{\epsilon^*}\widehat{k}\widehat{A}}{2c(kp)}\right)\right.$$
$$\left. - \frac{e^2(k\epsilon^*)A^2}{2c^2(kp')(kp)}\widehat{k}\right]u_{\sigma}(p)e^{i\psi(x)}d^4x. \tag{1.101}$$

Here

$$\psi(x) = \frac{1}{\hbar}\left(\Pi' - \Pi + \hbar k'\right)x + \alpha\sin(kx - \varphi) - \beta\sin 2kx, \tag{1.102}$$

and the parameters α, β, and φ are

$$\alpha = \frac{eA_0}{\hbar c}\left[\left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{p}}{pk} - \frac{\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{p}'}{p'k}\right)^2 + g^2\left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_2\mathbf{p}}{pk} - \frac{\mathbf{e}_2\mathbf{p}'}{p'k}\right)^2\right]^{1/2}, \tag{1.103}$$

$$\beta = \frac{e^2 A_0^2}{8\hbar c^2}(1-g^2)\left(\frac{1}{pk} - \frac{1}{p'k}\right), \tag{1.104}$$

$$\tan\varphi = \frac{g\left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_2\mathbf{p}}{pk} - \frac{\mathbf{e}_2\mathbf{p}'}{p'k}\right)}{\left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{p}}{pk} - \frac{\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{p}'}{p'k}\right)}. \tag{1.105}$$

After the integration the probability amplitude (1.101) can be represented in the form

$$S_{if} = -i\frac{e}{c}(2\pi\hbar)^4\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2\hbar\omega'\Pi_0\Pi_0'}}\overline{u}_{\sigma'}(p')\widehat{M}_{if}u_\sigma(p), \tag{1.106}$$

where

$$\widehat{M}_{if} = \left[\widehat{\epsilon^*}Q_0 + \left(\frac{e\widehat{Q}_1\widehat{k}\widehat{\epsilon^*}}{2c(kp')} + \frac{e\widehat{\epsilon^*}\widehat{k}\widehat{Q}_1}{2c(kp)}\right) + \frac{e^2(k\epsilon^*)Q_2}{2c^2(kp')(kp)}\widehat{k}\right] \tag{1.107}$$

with the functions Q_0, Q_1^μ, and Q_2:

$$Q_0 = \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty} G_s(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\delta\left(\Pi' - \Pi + \hbar k' - s\hbar k\right), \tag{1.108}$$

$$Q_1^\mu = (0, \mathbf{Q}_1),$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{Q}_1 = \frac{A_0}{2}\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}&\{\mathbf{e}_1\left(G_{s-1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi) + G_{s+1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\right)\\ &+ i\mathbf{e}_2 g\left(G_{s-1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi) - G_{s+1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\right)\}\,\delta\left(\Pi' - \Pi + \hbar k' - s\hbar k\right),\end{aligned} \tag{1.109}$$

$$\begin{aligned}Q_2 = &\frac{A_0^2}{2}(1+g^2)Q_0 + \frac{A_0^2}{2}(1-g^2)\\ &\times\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}\left(G_{s-2}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi) + G_{s+2}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\right)\delta\left(\Pi' - \Pi + \hbar k' - s\hbar k\right).\end{aligned} \tag{1.110}$$

From the definition of the functions (1.108)–(1.110) follows the useful relation

$$\frac{\mathcal{E}' - \mathcal{E} + \hbar\omega'}{\omega}Q_0 + \frac{e}{c}\left(\frac{p'Q_1}{kp'} - \frac{pQ_1}{kp}\right) + \frac{e^2}{2c^2}\left(\frac{1}{kp'} - \frac{1}{kp}\right)Q_2 = 0 \tag{1.111}$$

We will assume that the Dirac particle is nonpolarized and summation over the final particle polarizations (photon and electron) will be made. Then we need to calculate the sum

$$\frac{1}{2}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma,\epsilon}\left|S_{if}\right|^2 = \frac{(2\pi\hbar)^8\,\pi e^2}{4\hbar\omega' c^2\Pi_0\Pi_0'}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma,\epsilon}\left|\overline{u}_{\sigma'}(p')\widehat{M}_{if}u_\sigma(p)\right|^2$$
$$= \frac{(2\pi\hbar)^8\,\pi e^2c^2}{4\hbar\omega'\Pi_0\Pi_0'}\sum_{\epsilon}Sp\left[(\widehat{p}'+mc)\widehat{M}_{if}(\widehat{p}+mc)\widehat{\overline{M}}_{if}\right], \quad (1.112)$$

where

$$\widehat{\overline{M}}_{if} = \gamma_0\widehat{M}_{if}^{\dagger}\gamma_0.$$

Taking into account that spur of the product of odd number γ matrices is zero we will obtain

$$\frac{1}{2}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma,\epsilon}\left|S_{if}\right|^2 = \frac{(2\pi\hbar)^8\,\pi e^2c^2}{4\hbar\omega'\Pi_0\Pi_0'}\sum_{\epsilon}\left\{Sp\left[\widehat{p}'\widehat{M}_{if}\widehat{p}\widehat{\overline{M}}_{if}\right]+m^2c^2Sp\left[\widehat{M}_{if}\widehat{\overline{M}}_{if}\right]\right\}.$$

The summation over the photon polarizations is equivalent to the replacements

$$\epsilon_\upsilon^*\epsilon_\mu \to -g_{\upsilon\mu}, \quad \widehat{\epsilon^*}\widehat{a}\widehat{\epsilon} \to 2\widehat{a}, \quad \widehat{\epsilon^*}\widehat{a}\widehat{b}\widehat{c}\widehat{\epsilon} \to 2\widehat{c}\widehat{b}\widehat{a}, \quad (1.113)$$

where $g_{\upsilon\mu}$ is the metric tensor. So,

$$Sp\left[\widehat{M}_{if}\widehat{\overline{M}}_{if}\right] = -16\left|Q_0\right|^2$$

and

$$Sp\left[\widehat{p}'\widehat{M}_{if}\widehat{p}\widehat{\overline{M}}_{if}\right] = 8(p'p)\left|Q_0\right|^2$$
$$+\frac{8e}{c}\left(pk-p'k\right)Re\left(\left(\frac{p'Q_1}{kp'}-\frac{pQ_1}{kp}\right)Q_0^*\right)$$
$$-\frac{4e^2}{c^2}\left[\frac{kp}{kp'}+\frac{kp'}{kp}\right]\left|Q_1\right|^2-\frac{8e^2}{c^2}Re\left(Q_0Q_2^*\right).$$

Then using the relation (1.111) we obtain

$$\frac{1}{2}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma,\epsilon}\left|S_{if}\right|^2 = \frac{2\,(2\pi\hbar)^8\,\pi e^2c^2}{\hbar\omega'\Pi_0\Pi_0'}\left[-m^2c^2\left|Q_0\right|^2\right.$$
$$\left.-\frac{e^2}{c^2}\left(1+\frac{\hbar^2\left(kk'\right)^2}{2\,(pk)\,(p'k)}\right)\left(\left|Q_1\right|^2+Re\left(Q_0Q_2^*\right)\right)\right]. \quad (1.114)$$

For the differential probability per unit time we have

$$dW = \frac{1}{2T}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma,\epsilon}\left|S_{if}\right|^2 \frac{d\mathbf{\Pi}'}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}\frac{d\mathbf{k}'}{(2\pi)^3}, \tag{1.115}$$

where T is the interaction time. Then taking into account (1.108)–(1.110) and the relation

$$\delta\left(\Pi' - \Pi + \hbar k' - s\hbar k\right)\delta\left(\Pi' - \Pi + \hbar k' - s'\hbar k\right)$$
$$= \begin{bmatrix} 0, \text{ if } s \neq s', \\ \frac{cT}{(2\pi\hbar)^4}\delta\left(\Pi' - \Pi + \hbar k' - s\hbar k\right), \text{ if } s = s', \end{bmatrix} \tag{1.116}$$

for the differential probability of the nonlinear Compton effect we obtain

$$dW = \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} W^{(s)}\delta\left(\Pi' - \Pi + \hbar k' - s\hbar k\right) d\mathbf{\Pi}' d\mathbf{k}', \tag{1.117}$$

$$W^{(s)} = \frac{e^2 m^2 c^5}{2\pi\omega'\Pi_0\Pi_0'}\left[-\left|G_s\right|^2 + \frac{\xi_0^2}{4}\left(1 + \frac{\hbar^2\left(kk'\right)^2}{2\,(pk)\,(p'k)}\right)\right.$$
$$\times\left((1+g^2)\left(\left|G_{s-1}\right|^2 + \left|G_{s+1}\right|^2 - 2\left|G_s\right|^2\right)\right.$$
$$\left.\left. + (1-g^2)Re\left[2G_{s-1}^* G_{s+1} - G_s^*\left(G_{s-2} + G_{s+2}\right)\right]\right)\right]. \tag{1.118}$$

The four-dimensional δ-functions in (1.117) for differential probability express the conservation laws for quasimomentum and quasienergy of the particle in the nonlinear Compton process. Different s correspond to partial scattering processes with fixed photon numbers and $W^{(s)}$ are the partial probabilities of s-photon absorption by the particle in the strong wave field.

The spectrum of emitted photons is determined from the conservation laws. Taking into account (1.95) and (1.96) we will have the following expression for the radiated frequency:

$$\omega' = s\omega\frac{1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta_0}{1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta + \frac{s\hbar\omega}{\Pi_0}\left(1 - \cos\vartheta_r\right)}, \tag{1.119}$$

where ϑ_0, ϑ are the incident and scattering angles of incident strong wave and radiated photon with respect to the direction of the particle mean velocity $\overline{\mathbf{v}} = c^2\mathbf{\Pi}/\Pi_0$ and ϑ_r

is the angle between the incident wave and radiated photon propagation directions. The quantum conservation law of nonlinear Compton effect (1.119) differs from the classical formula (1.64) by the last term in the denominator $\sim s\hbar\omega/\Pi_0$, which is the quantum recoil of emitted photon.

Making the integration over $\mathbf{\Pi}'$ in (1.117) and multiplying by the photon energy we obtain the radiation power. In the case of circular polarization of an incident strong wave ($g = \pm 1$) we have $|G_s|^2 = J_s^2(\alpha)$ and the radiation power is

$$dP_{\mathbf{k}'}^{(s)} = \frac{\omega'^2 e^2 m^2 c^3}{2\pi \Pi_0 \Pi_0'} \left[-J_s^2(\alpha) + \xi_0^2 \left(1 + \frac{\hbar^2 \left(kk'\right)^2}{2\,(pk)\,(p'k)} \right) \right.$$
$$\left. \times \left[\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha^2} - 1 \right) J_s^2(\alpha) + J_s'^2(\alpha) \right] \right] \times \delta \left(\frac{\Pi_0' - \Pi_0}{\hbar} + \omega' - s\omega \right) d\omega' dO,$$

where the Bessel function argument

$$\alpha = \frac{eA_0}{\hbar\omega} \left| \left[\mathbf{k} \left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{pk} - \frac{\mathbf{p}'}{p'k} \right) \right] \right|. \qquad (1.120)$$

Taking into account that

$$\delta \left(\frac{\Pi_0' - \Pi_0}{\hbar} + \omega' - s\omega \right) d\omega' \to \left| \frac{\partial}{\partial \omega'} \left(\frac{\Pi_0'}{\hbar} + \omega' \right) \right|^{-1} = \frac{\Pi_0' \omega'}{c^2\,(\Pi' k')},$$

for the angular distribution of radiation power we obtain

$$\frac{dP^{(s)}}{dO} = \frac{\omega'^3 e^2 m^2 c}{2\pi \Pi_0\,(\Pi' k')} \left[-J_s^2(\alpha) + \xi_0^2 \left(1 + \frac{\hbar^2 \left(kk'\right)^2}{2\,(pk)\,(p'k)} \right) \right.$$
$$\left. \times \left(\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha^2} - 1 \right) J_s^2(\alpha) + J_s'^2(\alpha) \right) \right]. \qquad (1.121)$$

This formula differs from the classical one (1.63) only by the terms of quantum recoil, which are of the order of $\hbar kk' / \left(\Pi' k\right)$. The maximal value of this parameter is $2s\hbar\,(\Pi k)\,/m^{*2}c^2$ and if

$$\frac{2s\hbar\,(\Pi k)}{m^{*2}c^2} \ll 1,$$

one can omit the quantum recoil and taking into account that in this case

$$\Pi' k' \simeq \Pi k'; \quad \alpha \simeq \alpha_{classic}; \quad \frac{\hbar^2 \left(kk'\right)^2}{2\,(pk)\,(p'k)} \ll 1,$$

from (1.121) we obtain the classical formula for radiation power.

In the limit of weak EM wave when $\xi_0 \ll 1$ (linear theory) the argument of the Bessel function $\alpha \ll 1$ and the main contribution to the radiation power gives the first harmonic (as in the classical theory). In this case $J_1^2(\alpha_1) \simeq \alpha_1^2/4$, $J_1'^2(\alpha_1) \simeq 1/4$, $\Pi_0 \simeq \mathcal{E}$, $\Pi_0' \simeq \mathcal{E}'$, and

$$\frac{dP}{dO} = \frac{\omega'^3 e^2 m^2 c}{8\pi\mathcal{E}\,(p'k')}\left[-\alpha^2 + 2\xi_0^2\left(1 + \frac{\hbar^2\,(kk')^2}{2\,(pk)\,(p'k)}\right)\right].$$

Then, using conservation laws, it is easy to see that

$$\left|\left[\mathbf{k}\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}'}{p'k} - \frac{\mathbf{p}}{pk}\right)\right]\right|^2 = 2\hbar\frac{\omega^2}{c^2}\left(\frac{1}{p'k} - \frac{1}{pk}\right) - \omega^2 m^2\left(\frac{1}{pk} - \frac{1}{p'k}\right)^2,$$

$$\left(1 + \frac{\hbar^2\,(kk')^2}{2\,(pk)\,(p'k)}\right) = \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{pk}{p'k} + \frac{p'k}{pk}\right],$$

and for the one-photon Compton effect we obtain

$$\frac{dP}{dO} = \frac{\omega'^3 e^2 m^2 c}{8\pi\mathcal{E}\,(p'k')}\xi_0^2\left[\left(\frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar\,(p'k)} - \frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar\,(pk)}\right)^2 - 2\left(\frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar\,(p'k)} - \frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar\,(pk)}\right) + \frac{pk}{p'k} + \frac{p'k}{pk}\right]. \quad (1.122)$$

For the differential cross section

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dO} = \frac{1}{\hbar\omega' J}\frac{dP}{dO}$$

one should make the replacement

$$A_0^2 \to \frac{4\pi\hbar c^2}{\omega}, \quad (1.123)$$

corresponding to photon field quantization and

$$J = \frac{c^3\,pk}{\omega\mathcal{E}}$$

is the initial flux density (quantization volume $V = 1$). Hence, for the differential cross section of the one-photon Compton effect we obtain

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dO} = \frac{\omega'^2 e^4}{2c^4 (pk)^2}\left[\left(\frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar (p'k)} - \frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar (pk)}\right)^2 - 2\left(\frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar (p'k)} - \frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar (pk)}\right) + \frac{pk}{p'k} + \frac{p'k}{pk}\right]. \tag{1.124}$$

For a particle initially at rest

$$pk = m\omega, \quad pk' = m\omega', \quad \frac{mc^2}{\hbar\omega'} - \frac{mc^2}{\hbar\omega} = 1 - \cos\vartheta_r,$$

and the differential cross section of the one-photon Compton effect may be written in the known form of Klein and Nishina formula

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dO} = \frac{r_e^2}{2}\left(\frac{\omega'}{\omega}\right)^2\left[\frac{\omega}{\omega'} + \frac{\omega'}{\omega} - \sin^2\vartheta_r\right], \tag{1.125}$$

where $r_e = e^2/mc^2$ is the classical radius of the electron.

Bibliography

D.M. Volkov, Z. Phys. **94**, 250 (1935)
A. Vachaspati, Phys. Rev. **128**, 664 (1962)
A. Vachaspati, Phys. Rev. **130**, 2598 (1963)
A.A. Kolomensky, A.N. Lebedev, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **44**, 261 (1963)
R.H. Melburn, Phys. Rev. Lett. **10**, 75 (1963)
F.R. Harutyunyan, I.I. Goldman, V.A. Tumanyan, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **45**, 312 (1963)
I.I. Goldman, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **46**, 1412 (1964)
L.S. Brown, T.W.B. Kibble, Phys. Rev. A **133**, 705 (1964)
T.W.B. Kibble, Phys. Rev. B **138**, 740 (1965)
L.S. Bartell, H.B. Thomson, R.R. Roskos, Phys. Rev. Lett. **14**, 851 (1965)
F.V. Bunkin, M.V. Fedorov, Zh Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **49**, 4 (1965)
J.J. Sanderson et al., Phys. Lett. **18**, 114 (1965)
G. Toraldo di Francia, Nuovo Cimento **37**, 1553 (1965)
T.W.B. Kibble, Phys. Lett. **20**, 627 (1966)
J.H. Eberly, H.R. Reiss, Phys. Rev. **145**, 1035 (1966)
V.Ya. Davidovski, E.M. Yakushev, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. 50, 1101 (1966)
N.D. Sengupta, Phys. Lett. **6**, 642 (1966)
N.J. Philips, J.J. Sanderson, Phys. Lett. **21**, 533 (1966)
J.F. Dawson, Z. Fried, Phys. Rev. Lett. **19**, 467 (1967)
H. Prakash, Phys. Lett. A **24**, 492 (1967)
J.H. Eberly, A. Sleeper, Phys. Rev. **176**, 1570 (1968)
J.H. Eberly, Prog. Opt. **7**, 359 (1969)
Y.W. Chan, Phys. Lett. A **32**, 214 (1970)

A.I. Nikishov, V.I. Ritus, Usp. Fiz. Nauk **100**, 724 (1970)
M.J. Feldman, R.Y. Chiao, Phys. Rev. A **4**, 352 (1971)
H. Brehme, Phys. Rev. C **3**, 837 (1971)
A.I. Nikishov, V.I. Ritus, Ann. Phys. (N.Y.) 69, 555 (1972)
V.L. Ritus, Tr. Fiz. Inst. Akad. Nauk SSSR **111**, 141 (1979). (in Russian)
C.A. Brau, *Modern Problems in Classical Electrodynamics* (Oxford University Press, New York, 2004)

Chapter 2
Interaction of Charged Particles with Strong Electromagnetic Wave in Dielectric Media. Induced Nonlinear Cherenkov Process

Abstract What can we expect from particle–strong wave interaction in a medium essentially different from that of a vacuum? It is well known that in a medium with the refractive index $n(\omega) > 1$ (dielectric media) the Cherenkov effect takes place—charged particle moving with a velocity $\mathbf{v} = \text{const}$ radiates spontaneously transverse EM wave of frequency ω at the angle θ satisfying the condition of coherency $\cos\theta = c/\mathrm{v}n(\omega)$. This means that in the presence of an external plane EM wave of the same frequency ω propagating at this angle with respect to the particle motion the spontaneous Cherenkov radiation of the particle will acquire induced character and the inverse process of Cherenkov absorption from the incident wave by the particle is possible as well. This is the general character of arbitrary type spontaneous radiation process in corresponding induced one. However, in contrast to the noncoherent process (e.g., bremsstrahlung), if the spontaneous process is of coherent nature, such as the Cherenkov process, for the satisfaction of the condition of coherency the external wave should be weak enough to not change considerably the particle initial velocity $\mathbf{v}$ and violate the mentioned condition of coherency of the spontaneous process. Consequently, this explanation of formation of induced process with the charged particles (induced free–free transitions in quantum terminology) corresponds to the linear theory. The behavior of induced Cherenkov process in the strong EM wave field is quite different from the mentioned one. The existence of the threshold value of the particle velocity for the spontaneous Cherenkov radiation ($\mathrm{v} > c/n(\omega)$) stipulates for the threshold value of the wave intensity essentially changing the character of the dynamics of the particle–wave interaction in a medium and, consequently, the character of electromagnetic processes in dielectriclike media, proceeding in the presence of strong radiation fields. As we will see later, the peculiarities that arise at the nonlinear interaction of charged particles with strong EM waves are the general features of coherent processes like the Cherenkov one. To reveal the nonlinear behavior and principal peculiarities of a particle–strong wave interaction in a medium, this chapter will present the nonlinear classical theory of induced Cherenkov process.

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_2

2.1 Particle Classical Motion in the Field of Strong Plane EM Wave in a Medium

A plane quasi-monochromatic EM wave in a medium may be described by the vector potential $\mathbf{A}(t, \mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{A}(t - n_0 \nu_0 \mathbf{r}/c)$, where $n_0 \equiv n(\omega_0)$ is the refractive index of the medium at the carrier frequency of the wave (actually laser radiation). For the electric and magnetic fields we will have, respectively,

$$\mathbf{E}(t, \mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{E}(t - n_0 \nu_0 \mathbf{r}/c); \quad \mathbf{H}(t, \mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{H}(t - n_0 \nu_0 \mathbf{r}/c); \quad \mathbf{H} = n_0 \left[\nu_0 \mathbf{E}\right]. \quad (2.1)$$

Hereafter we will assume that the frequency ω_0 is far from the main resonance transitions between the atomic levels of the medium to prohibit the wave absorption and nonlinear optical effects in the medium and, consequently, $n_0 = \sqrt{\varepsilon_0 \mu_0} = \text{const}$ will correspond to the linear refractive index of the medium (ε_0 and μ_0 are the dielectric and magnetic permittivities of the medium, respectively).

Without loss of generality we will direct vector ν_0 along the OX axis of a Cartesian coordinate system: $\nu_0 = \{1, 0, 0\}$ and the relativistic classical equations of motion of a charged particle in the field (2.1) will be written in the form

$$\frac{dp_x}{dt} = n_0 \frac{e}{c} \left[\mathrm{v}_y E_y(\tau) + \mathrm{v}_z E_z(\tau)\right], \quad (2.2)$$

$$\frac{dp_y}{dt} = e\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right) E_y(\tau); \quad \frac{dp_z}{dt} = e\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right) E_z(\tau), \quad (2.3)$$

where $\tau = t - n_0 x/c$ is the retarding wave coordinate of the quasi-monochromatic plane EM wave in a medium.

The integration of (2.2) and (2.3) is carried out as was done for (1.3) and (1.4) and with (1.9) one can obtain the particle transverse momentum

$$p_y = p_{0y} - \frac{e}{c} A_y(\tau); \quad p_z = p_{0z} - \frac{e}{c} A_z(\tau) \quad (2.4)$$

and integral of motion

$$K \equiv \mathcal{E} - \frac{c}{n_0} p_x = \text{const}, \quad (2.5)$$

which together with the relation $\mathcal{E}^2 = \mathbf{p}^2 c^2 + m^2 c^4$ determine the energy of the particle in the field of strong quasi-monochromatic plane EM wave in a medium:

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2 - 1} \left\{ n_0^2 \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c n_0}\right) \mp \left[\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c}\right)^2 - \frac{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)}{\mathcal{E}_0^2} \left(e^2 \mathbf{A}^2(\tau) - 2ec\mathbf{p}_0 \mathbf{A}(\tau)\right) \right]^{1/2} \right\}. \quad (2.6)$$

Here $\mathbf{p}_0 = \{p_{0x}, p_{0y}, p_{0z}\}$, $\mathcal{E}_0$, and v_{0x} are the particle initial momentum, energy, and longitudinal velocity, respectively, at $\tau = -\infty$ ($\mathbf{A}(\tau)\mid_{\tau=-\infty} = 0$ according to unique definition of the vector potential of the wave (1.7).

Equation (2.6) describes the energy exchange between the charged particle and plane transverse EM wave of arbitrary intensity in a medium in the general case. However, besides the formula of the energy for the description of the particle nonlinear dynamics in this process we will need the formula for the longitudinal velocity of the particle in the field—a major characteristic of the induced Cherenkov process. The latter can be defined from the relation $\mathrm{v}_x = c^2 p_x/\mathcal{E}$ within the expression for the longitudinal momentum of the particle p_x, which is determined by the integral of motion (2.5) and (2.6). Then for the longitudinal velocity of the particle we will have

$$\mathrm{v}_x = cn_0 \frac{1 - \mathrm{v}_{0x}/cn_0 \mp \sqrt{D}}{n_0^2\,(1 - \mathrm{v}_{0x}/cn_0) \mp \sqrt{D}}, \tag{2.7}$$

where

$$D \equiv (1 - n_0\mathrm{v}_{0x}/c)^2 - \left(\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)/\mathcal{E}_0^2\right)\left(e^2\mathbf{A}^2\,(\tau) - 2ec\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{A}\,(\tau)\right). \tag{2.8}$$

Further, for the consideration of radiation processes we will need the formulas for transverse velocities of the particle, which can be defined from (2.4) and (2.6):

$$\mathrm{v}_{y,z} = \frac{c}{\mathcal{E}_0}\frac{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\left(cp_{0y,z} - eA_{y,z}\,(\tau)\right)}{n_0^2\,(1 - \mathrm{v}_{0x}/cn_0) \mp \sqrt{D}}. \tag{2.9}$$

As is seen from (2.6)–(2.9) the expressions determining the particle energy or velocity in the wave field are, first, not single-valued and, second, may become imaginary depending on particle and wave parameters. The peculiarity arising in the induced Cherenkov process because of particle–strong wave nonlinear interaction is connected with this fact. Hence, treatment of the particle dynamics in this process should start by clarification of these questions.

2.2 Nonlinear Cherenkov Resonance and Critical Field. Threshold Phenomenon of Particle "Reflection"

To consider the behavior of a particle upon nonlinear interaction with a strong wave in a medium on the basis of (2.6) we will analyze the case where the initial velocity of the particle is directed along the wave propagation direction for which the picture of the particle nonlinear dynamics is physically more evident. In this case (2.6) becomes

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2 - 1}\left[n_0^2\left(1 - \frac{\text{v}_0}{cn_0}\right)\right.$$
$$\left.\mp\sqrt{\left(1 - n_0\frac{\text{v}_0}{c}\right)^2 - \left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2 \xi^2(\tau)}\right], \tag{2.10}$$

where $\xi^2(\tau)$ is the relativistic invariant parameter of a plane EM wave intensity, determined by (1.19).

As is seen, (2.10) is two valence and, at first, we shall provide the unique definition of the particle energy in accordance with the initial condition. In the case of plasma ($n_0 < 1$) or vacuum ($n_0 = 1$) the term under the root is always positive, hence, in these cases one has to take before the root only the upper sign ($-$) to satisfy the initial condition $\mathcal{E}(\tau) = \mathcal{E}_0$ when $\xi(\tau) = 0$. In the case of a vacuum, (2.10) yields results obtained in Chap. 1 (see (1.13) or (1.24) and (1.36) for the circular and linear polarizations of the wave).

Further investigation is devoted to the case of a medium with refractive index $n_0 > 1$. In this case the nature of the particle motion essentially depends on the initial conditions and the value of the parameter $\xi(\tau)$ as far as the expression under the root in (2.10) may become negative, while the energy of the particle should be a real quantity and uniquely defined as well. To solve this problem one needs to pass the complex plane, according to which we represent (2.10) in the form of known inverse Jukowski function (to determine also the sign before the root corresponding to initial condition $\mathcal{E}(\tau)\mid_{\tau=-\infty} = \mathcal{E}_0$ since at $n_0 > 1$ the quantity $1 - n_0\text{v}_0/c$ under the root may be negative as well):

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2 - 1}\left[n_0^2\left(1 - \frac{\text{v}_0}{cn_0}\right) \mp \left(1 - n_0\frac{\text{v}_0}{c}\right)\sqrt{1 - \frac{\xi^2(\tau)}{\xi_{cr}^2}}\right], \tag{2.11}$$

where

$$\xi_{cr} \equiv \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2}\frac{|1 - n_0\frac{\text{v}_0}{c}|}{\sqrt{n_0^2 - 1}}. \tag{2.12}$$

If $\xi_{\max} < \xi_{cr}$ ($\xi_{\max}$ is the maximum value of the parameter $\xi(\tau)$) the expression under the root in (2.11) is always positive and in front of the root one has to take the upper sign ($-$) according to the initial condition. Then $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0$ after the interaction ($\xi(\tau) \to 0$) and the particle energy remains unchanged.

If $\xi_{\max} > \xi_{cr}$ the particle is unable to penetrate into the wave, i.e., into the region $\xi > \xi_{cr}$ since at $\xi > \xi_{cr}$ the root in (2.11) becomes a complex one. This complexity now is bypassed via continuously passing from one Riemann sheet to another, which corresponds to changing the inverse Jukowski function from "−" to "+" before the root. Hence, the upper sign (−) in this case stands up to the value of the wave intensity $\xi(\tau) < \xi_{cr}$, then at $\xi\,(\tau) = \xi_{cr}$ the root changes its sign from "−" to "+", providing continuous value for the particle energy in the field. The intensity value $\xi\,(\tau) = \xi_{cr}$ of the wave is a turn point for the particle motion, so we call it the critical value.

Thus, when the maximum value of the wave intensity exceeds the critical value a transverse plane EM wave in the medium becomes a potential barrier and the "reflection" of the particle from the wave envelope ($\xi(\tau)$) takes place. If now $\xi(\tau) \to 0$, we obtain after the "reflection" for the particle energy

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 \left[1 + 2\frac{1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}}{n_0^2 - 1} \right]. \tag{2.13}$$

If the initial conditions are such that the wave pulse overtakes the particle ($\mathrm{v}_0 < c/n_0$), then after the "reflection" $\mathcal{E} > \mathcal{E}_0$ and the particle is accelerated. But if the particle overtakes the wave ($\mathrm{v}_0 > c/n_0$), then $\mathcal{E} < \mathcal{E}_0$ and particle deceleration takes place.

This nonlinear threshold phenomenon is bounded on the stimulated Cherenkov process. The coherent nature of the Cherenkov process is related to the existence of the critical intensity of the wave ξ_{cr}. Indeed, from (2.7) it follows that when $\xi = \xi_{cr}$ the longitudinal velocity of the particle in the field becomes equal to the phase velocity of the wave: $\mathrm{v}_x(\xi)\mid_{\xi=\xi_{cr}} = c/n_0$ irrespective of its initial velocity v_0. The latter is the Cherenkov condition of coherency in a dielectric medium. Fulfillment of the Cherenkov condition in the strong wave field leads to the nonlinear Cherenkov resonance, at which the induced absorption or emission of Cherenkov photons becomes essentially multiphoton. As a result, the particle velocity becomes greater or smaller (depending on initial velocity v_0) than the wave phase velocity and it leaves the wave, i.e., the "reflection" from the wave front occurs. In addition, the energy lost by the particle at the deceleration ($\mathrm{v}_0 > c/n_0$) is coherently transferred to the wave via induced Cherenkov radiation. As is seen from (2.13), for the initial "Cherenkov velocity" $\mathrm{v}_0 = c/n_0$ the energy of the particle after the "reflection" does not change: $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0$, which is in congruence with the critical value of the field: $\xi_{cr} = 0$ at the initial Cherenkov velocity of the particle (see (2.7)). The latter confirms the nonlinear character of Cherenkov resonance in the strong wave field. In this case the induced Cherenkov effect will occur at $\mathrm{v}_x = \mathrm{v}_0 = \text{const}$, i.e., the wave field should not change the particle initial velocity, which can take place approximately, only in the weak fields—induced Cherenkov effect in the linear theory (in accordance with the initial condition $\xi(\tau)\mid_{\tau=-\infty} = 0$—the wave is turned on adiabatically—it is evident that in this case the linear-induced Cherenkov effect is absent as well).

This threshold phenomenon of the particle "reflection" can be more clearly presented in the frame of reference connected with the wave. In this frame the electric field of the wave vanishes ($\mathbf{E}' \equiv 0$) and there is only the static magnetic field

($\left|\mathbf{H}'\right| = |\mathbf{H}|\sqrt{n_0^2 - 1}/n_0$). For not very large particle velocities in this frame the magnetic field will turn the particle back—elastic reflection from the standing wave barrier. In the opposite case the particle slips through the magnetic field. Such behavior of the particle in the intrinsic frame of the wave corresponds to the cases $\xi > \xi_{cr}$ (large velocities close to the Cherenkov one at which ξ_{cr} is small and the condition $\xi > \xi_{cr}$ is achievable) and $\xi < \xi_{cr}$ in the laboratory frame of reference, respectively (see (2.7)). Note that because of the particle reflection from the standing barrier in the frame of reference of the slowed wave we term the revealed nonlinear phenomenon a "reflection" one.

Hence, the threshold-coherent nature of spontaneous Cherenkov effect over the particle velocity ($\mathrm{v}_{th} = c/n_0$) causes the threshold for the external wave intensity ($\xi_{th} \equiv \xi_{cr}$), which in turn causes the phenomenon of particle "reflection" from the plane EM wave. It is worth emphasizing that the latter may be very small ($\xi_{cr} \to 0$) if the particle initial velocity is close to the wave phase velocity ($\mathrm{v}_0 \to c/n_0$), which means that in this case the linear theory is not applicable even for very weak wave fields ($\xi \to 0$), since the nonlinear phenomenon of particle "reflection" will take place ($\xi > \xi_{cr} \to 0$). Also, it is important that due to this phenomenon the induced process at $\xi > \xi_{cr}$ proceeds strictly in a certain direction—either radiation or absorption (inverse-induced process), which has a principal meaning for induced free–free transitions related especially to problems of laser acceleration and free electron lasers.

Let us estimate the particle energy change due to "reflection". Note, at first, that the latter does not depend on interaction length or magnitude of the field (it is necessary only that $\xi > \xi_{cr}$). It is a nonlinear acceleration/deceleration of the shock character, which proceeds in short enough time—smaller than the wave pulse duration. As is seen from (2.13), for a certain value of the refractive index of the medium the stronger the initial velocity of the particle differs from the Cherenkov one and the closer to 1 ($n_0 - 1 \ll 1$), the larger is the energy change. As follows from (2.12) in these cases the strong wave fields are necessary. However, as the medium is to be dielectriclike ($n_0 > 1$) the wave intensity is confined to the threshold ionization of the medium. As is known in nonionized media a wave of intensity $\xi^2 < I/mc^2$, where I is the first ionization energy of the medium atoms (for dielectrics, the width of the forbidden zone), can propagate. In the opposite case a tunnel ionization of the atoms can take place. Consequently, the region of intensities where the "reflection" phenomenon in dielectriclike media can be applied is $\xi^2 < \xi_{\max}^2 < I/mc^2$. For typical values $I \sim 10$ eV we have $\xi_{\max} \sim 5 \times 10^{-3}$. To such values of the wave critical intensity correspond particle velocities near the Cherenkov one, which is possible in the case of relativistic particles in the gases ($n_0 - 1 \ll 1$), whereas for nonrelativistic ones, in solids ($n_0 - 1 \sim 1$). However, in the last case the negative effects of multiple scattering and ionization loss of the particle in solids can also influence. Thus, this phenomenon can be realized in the gases for relatively low densities. The optimal values of the refractive index of the gaseous media for this phenomenon are $n_0 - 1 \sim 10^{-3} \div 10^{-5}$ (e.g., for CO_2 and He at standard pressure and temperature $n_0 - 1 \sim 4.48 \times 10^{-4}$ and $\sim 3.47 \times 10^{-5}$, respectively).

As the application of large intensities is restricted with ionization threshold of the medium, we express the particle energy change due to "reflection" through the wave critical intensity. If $n_0 - 1 \equiv \mu_1 \ll 1$ and $1 - \mathrm{v}_0/c \equiv \mu_2 \ll 1$ from (2.12) and (2.13) we have

$$\xi_{cr} \simeq \frac{|\mu_1 - \mu_2|}{2\sqrt{\mu_1 \mu_2}}; \qquad |\Delta\mathcal{E}| \simeq \xi_{cr} mc^2 \sqrt{\frac{2}{\mu_1}}. \tag{2.14}$$

Estimations show that an electron with initial energy $\mathcal{E}_0 \sim 10$ MeV after the "reflection" from a laser pulse with $\xi \sim 5 \times 10^{-4}$ (which corresponds to the neodymium laser radiation strength $E \sim 10^7$ V/cm) in a medium with $n_0 - 1 \sim 10^{-3}$ acquires ($\mathrm{v}_0 < c/n_0$) or loses ($\mathrm{v}_0 > c/n_0$) energy $|\Delta\mathcal{E}| \sim 10$ keV. As the particle deceleration occurs because of stimulated Cherenkov radiation in this case the wave amplification takes place. Hence, as a result of the "reflection" of a beam with electron total number $\sim 5 \times 10^{14}$ an energy of ~ 1 J coherently will be radiated into the wave.

The phenomenon of charged particle "reflection" from a plane EM wave may also be used for the monochromatization of particle beams. The fact that above the critical intensity value the induced Cherenkov process occurs in only one direction—either emission or absorption—and for the initial Cherenkov velocity $\mathrm{v}_{0x} = c/n_0$ the energy of the particle after the "reflection" does not change, in principle enables conversion of the energetic or angular spreads of charged particle beams due to "reflection." The latter requires considering the general case of interaction at the arbitrary direction of particle initial motion with respect to wave propagation. So, without repeating the analysis, which has been made in the case of particle–wave parallel propagation we will present the ultimate results of the "reflection" phenomenon in the general case.

Thus, when the particle initial velocity is directed at an angle (ϑ) to the wave propagation direction the energy of the particle is given by (2.6), which at the linear polarization of the wave reads as

$$\mathcal{E}(\tau) = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2 - 1}\left\{ n_0^2 \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{cn_0}\cos\vartheta\right) \mp \left[\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta\right)^2 - \left(n_0^2 - 1\right) \right.\right.$$
$$\left.\left. \times \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2 \left[\xi^2(\tau)\cos^2\omega_0\tau - 2\frac{p_0 \sin\vartheta}{mc}\xi(\tau)\cos\omega_0\tau\right]\right]^{1/2}\right\} \tag{2.15}$$

(the wave is linearly polarized along the axis OY with vector potential $A_y = A(\tau)\cos\omega_0\tau$ and one can assume $\mathbf{p}_0 = \{p_0\cos\vartheta; p_0\sin\vartheta; 0\}$, as far as the coordinate z is free). As is seen from (2.15), in this case the "reflection" occurs from certain planes of equal phases but from the front of the wave intensity envelope as in the case $\vartheta = 0$. At the actual values of the parameters for induced Cherenkov process (ultrarelativistic particles in gaseous media with refractive index $n_0 - 1 \ll 1$ and not very small angles ϑ, as well as the wave intensity being confined to ionization threshold of the medium) the second term under the root is much smaller than the third one, that is, $2p_0|\sin\vartheta|/mc \gg \xi_{\max}$ and for the critical field in this case we have

$$\xi_{cr}(\vartheta) = \frac{c}{2\mathrm{v}_0}\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2}\frac{\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta\right)^2}{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)|\sin\vartheta|}; \qquad \vartheta \neq 0 \tag{2.16}$$

(in the case $\vartheta = 0$, ξ_{cr} is determined by (2.12)).

If the maximal value of the wave intensity $\xi_{\max} > \xi_{cr}(\vartheta)$, then the particle energy after the "reflection" is

$$\mathcal{E}(\vartheta) = \mathcal{E}_0\left[1 + \frac{2\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta\right)}{n_0^2 - 1}\right]. \tag{2.17}$$

Let the charged particle beam with an initial energetic (Δ_0) and angular (δ_0) spread interact with a plane transverse EM wave of intensity $\xi_{\max} > \xi_{cr}(\vartheta)$ in a gaseous medium. To keep the mean energy $\overline{\mathcal{E}_0}$ of the beam unchanged after the interaction (at the adiabatic turning on and turning off of the wave) the axis of the beam with mean velocity $\overline{\mathrm{v}_0}$ must be pointed at the Cherenkov angle (ϑ_0) to the laser beam, i.e., $n_0(\overline{\mathrm{v}_0}/c)\cos\vartheta_0 = 1$. Under this condition the particles with velocities $\mathrm{v}_0\cos\vartheta < c/n_0$ will acquire an energy and the other particles for which the longitudinal velocities exceed the phase velocity of the wave ($\mathrm{v}_0\cos\vartheta > c/n_0$) will have loss of energy according to (2.17). As a result the energies of the particles $\mathcal{E}(\vartheta)$ will approach close to the mean energy $\overline{\mathcal{E}_0}$ of the beam ($\mathcal{E}(\vartheta) \to \overline{\mathcal{E}_0}$) and the final energetic width of the beam will become less than the initial one. As there is one free parameter (for a specified velocity $\overline{\mathrm{v}_0}$ the parameters ϑ_0 and n_0 are related by Cherenkov condition) it is possible to use it to control the exchange in the energy of the particles after the "reflection" (2.17) and to reach the minimal final energy spread of the beam $\Delta \ll \Delta_0$—monochromatization. Depending on the relation between the initial energetic and angular spreads and mean energy of the beam, the opposite process may occur, namely angular narrowing of the beam. Physically it is clear that with the monochromatization the angular divergence of the beam will increase and the opposite—the angular narrowing of the beam—leads to demonochromatization (in accordance with Liouville's theorem). More detailed consideration of this effect with the quantitative results can be found in the bibliography of this chapter.

To illustrate the typical picture of nonlinear interaction of a charged particle with a strong EM wave in a medium we present the graphics of numerical solutions of the (2.2) and (2.3) for the laser pulse of finite duration, showing the behavior of particle dynamics below and above critical intensity, with the effect of acceleration. At first

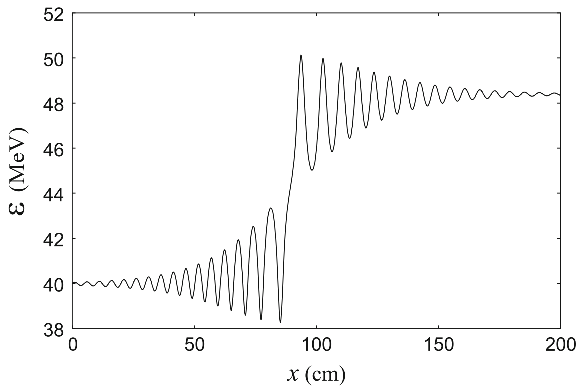


Fig. 2.1 "Reflection" of the particle. The energy versus the position x is plotted when the wave intensity is above the critical point

we will not take into account the dependence of the slowly varying intensity envelope of a laser beam from the transverse coordinates. Thus, a laser beam may be modeled as

$$E_x = 0, \quad E_z = 0, \quad E_y = \frac{E_0}{\cosh\left(\frac{\tau}{\delta\tau}\right)} \cos \omega_0 \tau, \tag{2.18}$$

where $\delta\tau$ characterizes the pulse duration. The particle initial energy is taken to be $\mathcal{E}_0 = 40$ MeV and the initial velocity is directed at the angle $\vartheta = 9 \times 10^{-3}$ rad to the wave propagation direction ($p_{0z} = 0$). The refractive index of the gaseous medium for this calculation has been chosen to be $n_0 - 1 = 10^{-4}$. Figure 2.1 illustrates the evolution of the particle energy: the energy versus the position x is plotted for a neodymium laser ($\hbar\omega_0 \simeq 1.17$ eV) with electric field strength $E_0 = 3 \times 10^8$ V/cm and $\delta\tau = 4T$ (T is the wave period). For these parameter values the wave intensity is above the critical point and, as we see from this figure, the particle energy is abruptly changed corresponding to the "reflection" phenomenon. Figure 2.2a illustrates the evolution of the energies of particles with different initial interaction angles. The initial energies for all particles are $\mathcal{E}_0 \simeq 40$ MeV. Figure 2.2b illustrates the role of initial conditions: the final energy versus the interaction angle is plotted. As follows from (2.16) the critical intensity and also the final energy (2.17) depend on the initial interaction angle and as a consequence we have this picture. Note that the acceleration rate neither depends on the field magnitude (only should be above threshold field) nor on the interaction length.

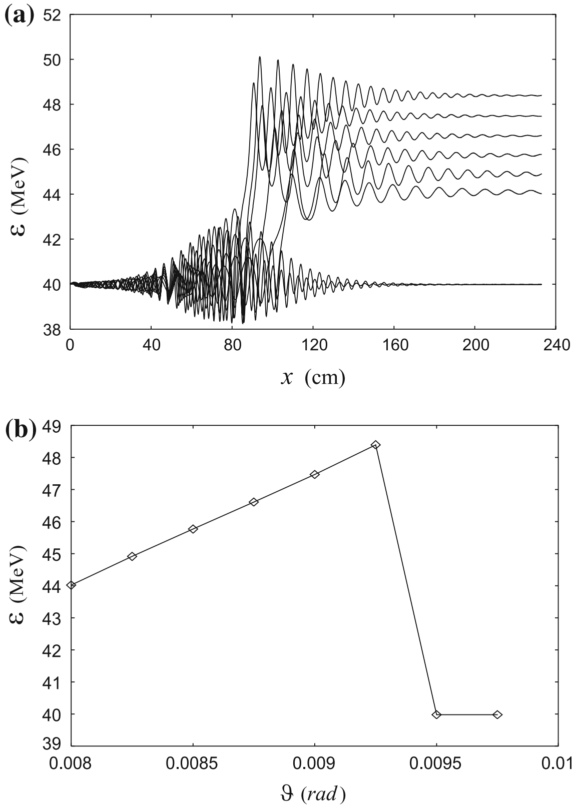


Fig. 2.2 "Reflection" of the particles with different initial interaction angles. Panel **a** displays the evolution of the energies of particles. In **b** the final energy versus the interaction angle is plotted

To demonstrate the dependence of the considered process on transverse profile of the laser intensity for actual beams in Fig. 2.3 the evolution of the energies of particles with various initial phases (with initial energies $\mathcal{E}_0 \simeq 40$ MeV) is illustrated. The laser beam transverse profile is modeled by the Gaussian function

$$E_y = E_0 \exp\left(-\frac{4}{d^2}\left(y^2 + z^2\right)\right) \frac{\cos \omega_0 \tau}{\cosh\left(\frac{\tau}{\delta\tau}\right)} \tag{2.19}$$

with $d = 10^3\lambda$, $\delta\tau = 50T$. As we see from this figure the acceleration picture is essentially changed depending on the entrance coordinates of the particles. This is the manifestation of the threshold nature of the "reflection" phenomenon.

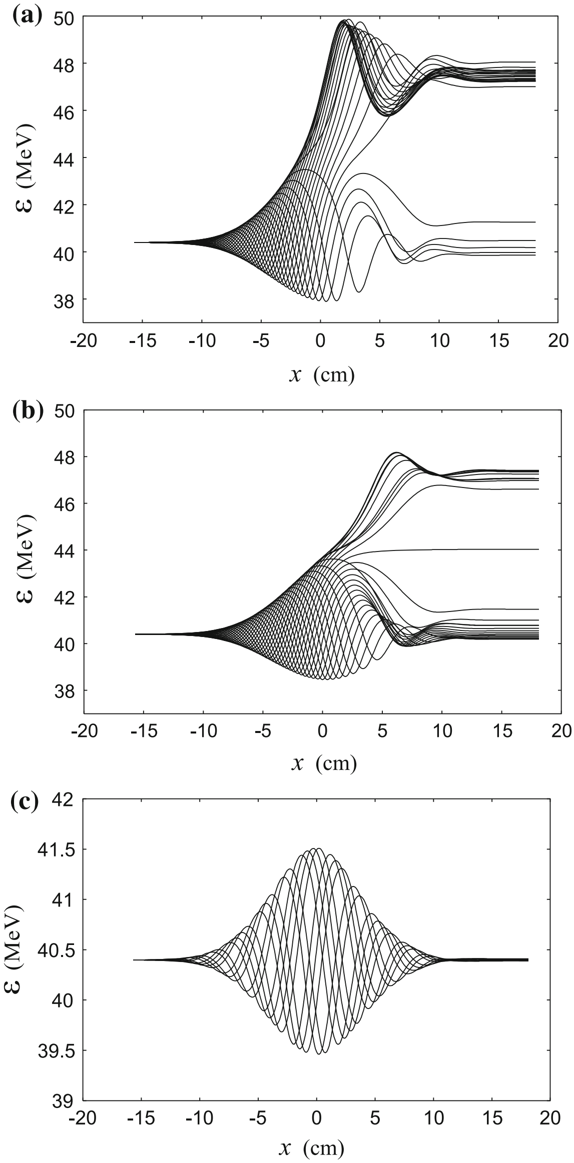


Fig. 2.3 The evolution of the energies of particles with various initial phases are shown for the laser beam with transverse intensity profile for the various entrance coordinates: **a** $z = 0$, **b** $z = d/4$, and **c** $z = d/2$

2.3 Particle Capture by a Plane Electromagnetic Wave in a Medium

If for the intensity exceeding the critical value a plane EM wave becomes a potential barrier for the external particle (with respect to the wave), then for the particle initially situated in the wave it may become a potential well and particle capture by the wave will take place. As the particle state in the wave depends on wave phases we will assume in this case a certain polarization of a monochromatic wave. Let it be linearly polarized with electric field strength along the axis *OY*:

$$E_y = E_0 \cos\phi; \quad \phi = \omega_0 \left(n_0 \frac{x}{c} - t\right). \tag{2.20}$$

The solution of equations of motion (2.2) and (2.3) in the field (2.20) may be presented in the form

$$p_x(\phi) = \frac{n_0}{n_0^2 - 1} \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{c} \left\{ \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{cn_0}\right) \mp \left[\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c}\right)^2 - \left(n_0^2 - 1\right) \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2 \right.\right.$$
$$\left.\left. \times\, \xi_0^2 \left(\sin\phi - \sin\phi_0\right) \left(\sin\phi - \sin\phi_0 - 2\frac{p_{0y}}{mc\xi_0}\right) \right]^{1/2} \right\}, \tag{2.21}$$

$$p_y(\phi) = p_{0y} - mc\xi_0(\sin\phi - \sin\phi_0),$$

$$\mathcal{E}(\phi) = \frac{c}{n_0} p_x(\phi) + \mathcal{E}_0 \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{cn_0}\right), \tag{2.22}$$

where $\xi_0 = eE_0/mc\omega_0$ is the intensity parameter of the monochromatic wave (see (1.25)), $\phi_0 = \omega(n_0 x_0/c - t_0)$ is the initial phase of the particle in the wave. Here without loss of generality it is assumed that the z component of the particle initial momentum $p_{0z} = 0$ as far as the coordinate z is free.

It is seen from (2.21) that the particle can be in the field region where

$$W(\phi) \equiv (\sin\phi - \sin\phi_0) \left(\sin\phi - \sin\phi_0 - 2\frac{p_{0y}}{mc\xi_0}\right)$$
$$\leq \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2}\right)^2 \frac{(1 - n_0 \mathrm{v}_{0x}/c)^2}{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\xi_0^2}. \tag{2.23}$$

If the maximum value of the function $W(\phi)$

$$W_{\max}(\phi) > \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2}\right)^2 \frac{(1 - n_0 \mathrm{v}_{0x}/c)^2}{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\xi_0^2}, \tag{2.24}$$

then the region (2.23) will be a potential well for the particle and the capture of the latter by the transverse EM wave will take place. The equilibrium phases of the wave (ϕ_s) correspond to the extrema of the function $W(\phi)$:

$$\sin\phi_s = \sin\phi_0 + \frac{p_{0y}}{mc\xi_0}; \qquad \cos\phi_s \neq 0, \tag{2.25}$$

$$\cos\phi_s = 0; \qquad \sin\phi_s \neq \sin\phi_0 + \frac{p_{0y}}{mc\xi_0}. \tag{2.26}$$

The particle moves with a Cherenkov velocity $\mathrm{v}_{xs} = c/n_0$ when it is in the equilibrium phases ϕ_s. Equation (2.22) together with (2.25) and (2.26) determine the equilibrated values of the particle transverse momentum p_{ys}. In particular, $p_{ys} = 0$ corresponds to the case (2.25). The motion of the particle in these phases will be stable when

$$|\sin\phi_0 + \frac{p_{0y}}{mc\xi_0}| < 1. \tag{2.27}$$

If the initial velocity of the particle is equal to the Cherenkov one ($\mathrm{v}_{0x} = c/n_0 = \mathrm{v}_{xs}$), then from (2.24) we have the following condition for the particle capture by the wave:

$$\frac{p_{0y}}{mc\xi_0} < 1 + |\sin\phi_0 + \frac{p_{0y}}{mc\xi_0}|. \tag{2.28}$$

On fulfillment of (2.27) the condition of particle capture (2.28) always holds, and therefore the condition of stable motion (2.27) determines the capture of the particle in the considered regime. In particular, as is seen from (2.25) and (2.27), when $p_{y0} = 0$, then $\phi_s = \phi_0$ and any phase is equilibrated. In this case the phase $\cos\phi_0 = 0$ ($Ey = 0$) is unstable. This is physically clear in the wave frame where the magnetic field of the wave corresponding to this phase is zero: $\mathbf{H}' = 0$, while the stability in the capture regime is due to particle rotation around the vector of the magnetic field (when $p_{ys} = 0$). If the particle initial velocity differs from the Cherenkov value $\mathrm{v}_{0x} = \mathrm{v}_0 = c/n_0 + \Delta\mathrm{v}$, then in the capture regime the particle will undergo stable oscillations close to the equilibrated Cherenkov value. From (2.24) one can obtain the following condition for the capture of such particle:

$$|\Delta\mathrm{v}| < \frac{c}{n_0}\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\xi_0\sqrt{\left(n^2-1\right)}\left(1 + |\sin\phi_0|\right). \tag{2.29}$$

The spread tolerances of the unequilibrated particle's initial phase and velocity can be defined from the condition (2.29) ($\Delta\mathrm{v} = (c/n_0\omega_0)|d\phi/dt|$).

Note that the needed value of the field for the particle capture by the wave defined from (2.29) is the critical value of the field (2.12) for the "reflection" of the external particle ($\phi_0 = 0$).

Consider now the particle capture in equilibrium phases (2.26). With the help of (2.22) and (2.23) one can show that the particle motion at the phases $\cos\phi_0 = 0$ will be stable when

$$p_{ys}\sin\phi_s > 0; \quad \phi_s = (2k+1)\pi/2; \quad k = 0; \pm 1; \pm 2; \ldots. \tag{2.30}$$

For the capture of initial Cherenkov particle ($\mathrm{v}_{0x} = c/n_0$) at the phases $\phi_s = (2k+1)\pi/2$ from (2.24) one can obtain the following condition:

$$W_{\max}(\phi) = 4|\sin\phi_0 + \frac{p_{0y}}{mc\xi_0}| > 0,$$

which always holds. Therefore, the particle capture in this case is determined by condition (2.30). If $p_{y0}\sin\phi_0 > 0$, the phase ϕ_0 is an equilibrated one for any value of the particle transverse momentum ($p_{0y} = p_{ys}$). But if $\mathrm{v}_{0x} = c/n_0 + \Delta\mathrm{v}_x$ the condition for capture is

$$|\Delta\mathrm{v}_x| < \frac{2c}{n_0}\sqrt{n^2-1}\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\xi_0|\sin\phi_0 + \frac{p_{0y}}{mc\xi_0}|^{1/2}. \tag{2.31}$$

From (2.31) the critical value of the field can be defined for unequilibrated particle "capture" at the wave phases $\phi_0 = (2k+1)\pi/2$.

If $\cos\phi_0 \neq 0$ from (2.24) one can obtain that when $p_{0y}/mc\xi_0 > 2$ the Cherenkov particle capture is defined again by condition (2.30).

2.4 Laser Acceleration in Gaseous Media. Cherenkov Accelerator

The phenomenon of charged particle "reflection" and capture by a transverse EM wave can be used for particle acceleration in laser fields. As the application of large intensities in this process is restricted because of the medium ionization the acceleration owing to "reflection" in the medium with refractive index $n_0 = \text{const}$—single "reflection"—is relatively small. However, if the refractive index decreases along the wave propagation direction in such a way that the condition of particle synchronous motion with the wave $\mathrm{v}_x(x) = c/n_0(x)$ takes place continuously, the phase velocity of the wave will increase all the time and the particle being in front of the wave barrier (at $\xi > \xi_{cr}$) will continuously be "reflected", i.e., continuously accelerated. The law $n_0 = n_0(x)$ must have an adiabatic character not to allow the particle to leave the wave after the single "reflection". Such variation law of the refractive index can be realized in a gaseous medium adiabatically decreasing the pressure.

For particle acceleration one can also use the capture regime. In this case in the medium with $n_0 = \text{const}$ the particle energy does not change on average (particle makes stable oscillations around the equilibrium phases in the wave moving with average velocity $<\mathrm{v}_x> = c/n_0$). However, if one decreases the refractive index along the propagation direction of the wave, so that the particle does not leave the equilibrium phases, then the wave will continuously accelerate the particle. Then, to realize the capture regime (2.25) one needs $p_{0y}/mc\xi_0 < 2$. For not very strong fields this is sufficiently strict confinement on the transverse momentum of the particle. On the other hand, to accelerate the particle significantly large transverse momenta are needed. Therefore, this regime can be used to pass the particles through the matter and, also, to separate the particles by velocities (parameter ξ defines the region of particle velocities captured by the wave (see (2.29)).

For particle acceleration by laser fields one can use the capture regime (2.26) corresponding to large transverse momenta of the particle $p_{0y}/mc\xi_0 > 2$. So, we will consider the general case of particle capture with arbitrary initial momentum $\mathbf{p}_0$ and laser acceleration in gaseous medium with varying refractive index $n_0(x)$.

We will use the particle equations of motion (2.2) and (2.3) in the field (2.20) where the refractive index $n_0 \to n_0(x)$ and consequently the wave phase is determined as follows:

$$\phi(x,t) = \frac{\omega_0}{c}\int n_0(x)dx - \omega_0 t. \tag{2.32}$$

Then from the equations

$$\frac{d\phi_s}{dt} = 0, \qquad \frac{d^2\phi_s}{dt^2} = 0 \tag{2.33}$$

defining wave equilibrium phases we obtain the variation laws for equilibrium velocity of the particle and refractive index of the medium, respectively:

$$\mathrm{v}_{xs}(x) = \frac{c}{n_0(x)}, \tag{2.34}$$

$$\frac{dn_0(x)}{dx} = -\frac{n_0^3(x)}{c^2}\left(\frac{d\mathrm{v}_x}{dt}\right)_s. \tag{2.35}$$

From (2.2) and the equation for the particle energy variation

$$\frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dt} = e\mathrm{v}_y E_0 \cos\phi(x,t) \tag{2.36}$$

one can obtain the acceleration of the particle in the longitudinal direction

$$\frac{d\mathrm{v}_x}{dt} = \frac{ecn_0(x)}{\mathcal{E}}\left[1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{cn_0(x)}\right]\mathrm{v}_y E_0 \cos\phi(x,t). \tag{2.37}$$

The equation of motion (2.3) determines in general for an arbitrary $n_0(x)$ the integral of motion (2.5), from which for the equilibrium transverse momentum of the particle we have (again without loss of generality it is assumed that the z component of the particle initial momentum $p_{0z} = 0$ since the coordinate z is free)

$$p_{ys} = p_{0y} - mc\xi_0 \left(\sin\phi_s - \sin\phi_0\right). \tag{2.38}$$

Defining within (2.38) the equilibrium transverse velocity of the particle $\mathrm{v}_{ys}(x) = c^2 p_{ys}/\mathcal{E}_s(x)$ and substituting together with (2.34) into (2.37) for the equilibrium value of the particle longitudinal acceleration we obtain

$$\left(\frac{d\mathrm{v}_x}{dt}\right)_s = c\omega_0\xi_0 \frac{p_{ys}}{mc}\cos\phi_s \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_s(x)}\right)^2 \frac{n_0^2(x)-1}{n_0(x)}. \tag{2.39}$$

Substituting (2.39) into (2.35) we will have the equation which determines the variation law of the medium refractive index:

$$\frac{dn_0(x)}{dx} = -\frac{\omega_0}{c}\xi_0 \frac{p_{ys}}{mc}\cos\phi_s \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_s(x)}\right)^2 n_0^2(x)\left[n_0^2(x)-1\right]. \tag{2.40}$$

It is seen from this equation that for the particle acceleration in the capture regime via decreasing refractive index of the medium ($dn_0(x)/dx < 0$) one needs $p_{ys}\cos\phi_s > 0$ (equilibrium transverse momentum of the particle must be directed along the vector of the wave electric field). In the opposite case the continuous deceleration of the particle will take place accompanied by induced Cherenkov radiation (regime of continuous amplification of the wave by the particle beam at $dn_0(x)/dx > 0$).

The energy of equilibrium particle acquired on the distance x is defined by

$$\mathcal{E}_s^2(x) = \frac{n_0^2(x)}{n_0^2(x)-1}\left(m^2c^4 + c^2 p_{ys}^2\right). \tag{2.41}$$

Integrating (2.40) within (2.41) the ultimate formula for the variation law of the medium refractive index becomes

$$\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{n_0(0)}{n_0^2(0)-1} - \frac{n_0(x)}{n_0^2(x)-1}\right] + \frac{1}{4}\ln\left[\frac{n_0(x)+1}{n_0(x)-1}\cdot\frac{n_0(0)-1}{n_0(0)+1}\right]$$
$$= -\frac{mc^2\xi_0\omega_0 p_{ys}\cos\phi_s}{m^2c^4 + c^2 p_{ys}^2}x. \tag{2.42}$$

Equation (2.41) in the general case defines the particle acceleration in the capture regime when the medium refractive index falls along the wave propagation according to law (2.42). It defines the longitudinal dimension of such "Cherenkov accelerator" as well. The transverse dimension of the latter is defined as

$$\mathcal{E}_s(y) = \mathcal{E}_s(0) + mc\omega_0\xi_0(y - y_0)\cos\phi_s. \tag{2.43}$$

Here $\mathcal{E}_s(0)$ and y_0 are the initial equilibrium values of the energy and transverse coordinate of the particle ($y - y_0$ is the transverse dimension of "Cherenkov accelerator"). As is seen from (2.43) the particle acceleration takes place if $(y - y_0)\cos\phi_s > 0$, and in the opposite case deceleration occurs ($\mathcal{E}_s(y) < \mathcal{E}_s(0)$) in accordance with what was mentioned above. For relativistic particles, when $n_0(x) \sim 1$ and $n_0(x) - 1 \ll n_0(0) - 1$, from (2.42) we have

$$n_0(x) - 1 \simeq \frac{m^2c^4 + c^2p_{ys}^2}{4mc^2\xi_0\omega_0 p_{ys}\cos\phi_s}\frac{1}{x}. \tag{2.44}$$

As this formula is valid at the large variation of the medium refractive index $n_0(x) - 1$, then according to (2.41) it corresponds to large acceleration of the particle: $\mathcal{E}_s(x) \gg \mathcal{E}_s(0)$. In particular, (2.41) determines the initial value of the refractive index $n_0(0)$ as a function of the initial value of the equilibrium energy of the particle $\mathcal{E}_s(0)$:

$$n_0(0) - 1 = \frac{\mathcal{E}_s(0) - \sqrt{\mathcal{E}_s^2(0) - c^2p_{ys}^2 - m^2c^4}}{\sqrt{\mathcal{E}_s^2(0) - c^2p_{ys}^2 - m^2c^4}} \tag{2.45}$$

(since $\phi_s = \text{const}$, then $p_{ys} = \text{const}$ according to (2.38)). From the comparison of (2.44) and (2.45) ($n_0(x) - 1 \ll n_0(0) - 1$; $n_0(0) \sim 1$) one can find the longitudinal dimension of acceleration on which the decreasing law of refractive index (2.44) is valid:

$$x \gg \frac{\mathcal{E}_s^2(0) - c^2p_{ys}^2 - m^2c^4}{2mc^2\xi_0\omega_0 p_{ys}\cos\phi_s}. \tag{2.46}$$

The energy of the equilibrium particle acquired on such distances is

$$\mathcal{E}_s(x) \simeq \sqrt{2mc^2\xi_0\omega_0|p_{ys}\cos\phi_s|x}; \qquad \mathcal{E}_s(x) \gg \mathcal{E}_s(0). \tag{2.47}$$

The estimations show that, for example, at electric field strengths of laser radiation $E \sim 10^8$ V/cm an electron with initial energy $\mathcal{E}_s(0) \sim 5$ MeV acquires energy $\mathcal{E}_s(x) \sim 50$ MeV already at the distance $x \sim 1$ cm. The transverse dimension of acceleration $y - y_0$ is of the order of a few millimeters and the longitudinal dimension of the system is of the order of the transverse one (a few times larger). At the distance $x \sim 1$ m the particle energy gain is of the order of 1 GeV. Note that because of multiple scattering on the atoms of the medium the particles can leave the regime of stable motion as a result of change of p_{ys}. The analysis shows that the multiple scattering essentially falls in the above-mentioned gaseous media (see Sect. 2.2) for laser field strengths $E > 10^7$ V/cm.

To illustrate the particle acceleration in the capture regime we will represent the results of numerical solution of (2.2) and (2.3) in the field of an actual laser beam with the electric field strength

$$E_y = E_0 \exp\left(-\frac{4}{d^2}\left(y^2 + z^2\right)\right) \frac{\cos\left(\frac{\omega_0}{c}\int n_0(x)dx - \omega_0 t + \varphi_0\right)}{\cosh\left(\frac{\frac{1}{c}\int n_0(x)dx - t + \varphi_0/\omega_0}{\delta\tau}\right)}, \tag{2.48}$$

$$E_x = 0, \quad E_z = 0,$$

where $\delta\tau$ characterizes the pulse duration and φ_0 is the initial phase. Simulations have been made for neodymium laser ($\hbar\omega_0 \simeq 1.17$ eV) with electric field strength $E_0 = 3 \times 10^8$ V/cm and $\delta\tau = 1000T$, $d = 5 \times 10^3\lambda$. The variation law for the refractive index of the medium is defined in a self-consistent manner (see (2.35) and (2.37)), which may be approximated by the function

$$n(x) = \frac{n_0 + n_f}{2} + \frac{\left(n_f - n_0\right)}{2} \tanh\left(\kappa x\right), \tag{2.49}$$

where n_0, n_f are the initial and final values of the refractive index and κ characterizes the decreasing rate.

Figure 2.4 illustrates the evolution of the particle energy in the capture regime. The particle initial energy is taken to be $\mathcal{E}_0 = 50.5$ MeV and the initial velocity is directed at the angle $\vartheta = 9 \times 10^{-3}$ rad to the wave propagation direction ($p_{0z} = 0$). The initial value of the refractive index has been chosen to be $n_0 - 1 \simeq 10^{-4}$. As we

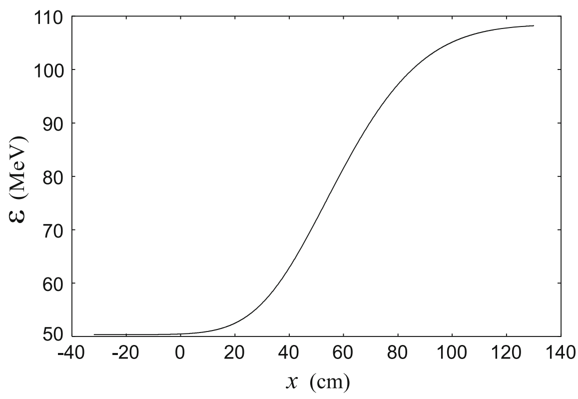


Fig. 2.4 The evolution of the particle energy in the capture regime with variable refractive index

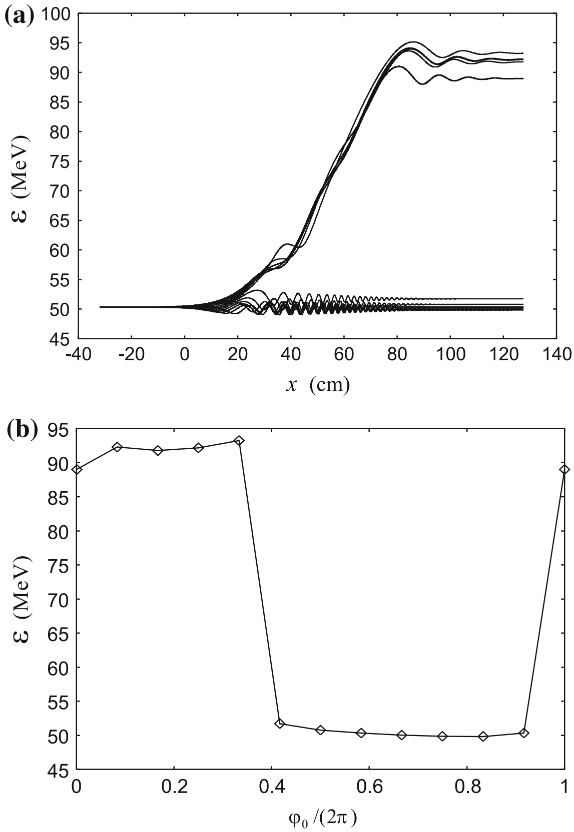


Fig. 2.5 Acceleration of the particles in the capture regime. Panel **a** displays the evolution of the energies of particles with various initial phases. The initial entrance coordinate is $z = 0$. In **b** the final energy versus the initial phase is plotted

see in the capture regime with variable refractive index, one can achieve considerable acceleration.

To show the role of initial conditions in Fig. 2.5a the evolution of the energies of particles with the same initial energies $\mathcal{E}_0 = 50.5$ MeV ($\vartheta = 9 \times 10^{-3}$ rad) and various initial phases is illustrated. The initial entrance coordinate is $z = 0$. Figure 2.5b displays the role of initial conditions: the final energy versus the initial phase is plotted. In Fig. 2.6 the parameters are the same as in Fig. 2.5a except the initial entrance coordinate, which is taken to be $z = 0.25$ mm. As we see from these figures the captured particles are accelerated, while the particles situated in the unstable phases (or if the conditions for capture are not fulfilled) after the interaction remain with the initial energy.

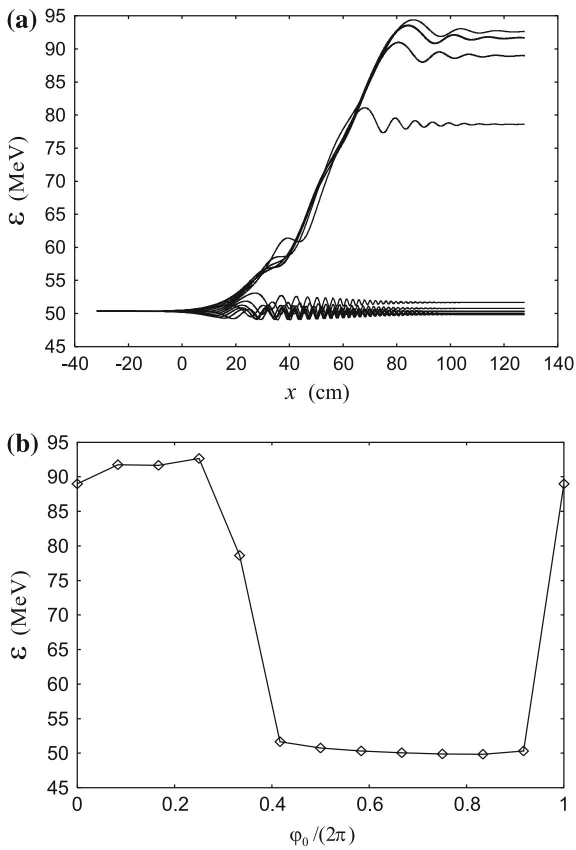


Fig. 2.6 Acceleration of the particles in the capture regime. Panel **a** displays the evolution of the energies of particles with various initial phases. The initial entrance coordinate is $z = 0.25$ mm. In **b** the final energy versus the initial phase is plotted

2.5 Nonlinear Compton Scattering in a Medium

"Reflection" and capture phenomena are essentially changing the picture of Compton scattering in a medium. The existence of the critical field in a medium with refractive index $n(\omega) > 1$ confines the intensity of external wave on which Compton scattering of a charged particle proceeds. Therefore, one can consider the Compton effect in dielectriclike media only if the wave intensity does not exceed the critical value. On the other hand, as was mentioned above the multiphoton absorption and radiation due to the nonlinear Cherenkov resonance in the field just occurs at wave intensities close to the critical one. Hence, it is important to consider the nonlinear Compton effect in a gaseous medium where the induced Cherenkov radiation will accompany and interfere with the Compton radiation at external wave intensities close to the critical value. At the latter the nonlinear Compton effect (high harmonic radiation) will take place even in very weak wave fields ($\xi \lesssim \xi_{cr} \ll 1$) in contrast to nonlinear Compton effect in vacuum where for the radiation already of the second harmonic with considerable intensity, superstrong fields ($\xi > 1$) are required, as has been shown in Chap. 1.

The energy radiated by a charged particle in a medium at a frequency ω in the domain $d\omega$ and solid angle dO is given as

$$d\varepsilon_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{e^2 n(\omega)}{4\pi^2 c^3}\omega^2 d\omega dO \left| \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} [\nu v] \exp[i\mathbf{kr}(t) - i\omega t]\, dt \right|^2, \quad (2.50)$$

where $\mathbf{k} = \nu n(\omega)\omega/c$ is the radiation wave vector in the medium (ν is a unit vector along the radiation direction) and $n(\omega)$ is the refractive index of the medium at frequency ω.

The particle law of motion $\mathbf{r}(t)$ in the plane monochromatic EM wave of circular polarization is determined by analogy with (1.27)–(1.29) and is written as

$$x(t) = \mathrm{v}_x t,$$

$$y(t) = -\xi \frac{c}{\omega_0} \frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)} \cos\omega_0 \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right) t, \quad (2.51)$$

$$z(t) = \xi \frac{c}{\omega_0} \frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)} \sin\omega_0 \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right) t.$$

Here it is assumed that the initial velocity of the particle is directed along the wave propagation ($\mathrm{v}_0 = \mathrm{v}_{0x}$) at which the particle longitudinal velocity v_x and energy $\mathcal{E}$ do not vary in time since it depends only on the wave intensity ξ^2 (see (2.7) and (2.10)) and for the circular polarization of the wave $\xi^2 = \mathrm{const}$ (the strong wave intensity effect is responsible for permanent renormalization of these quantities in the field). Then, in the equations for particle energy and velocity (2.7)–(2.10) one should take only the sign minus before the root in accordance with the above discussion.

Substituting (2.7), (2.9), and (2.51) into (2.50) and integrating, the following ultimate formula for the spectral power of the Compton radiation of the s-th harmonic in a medium is obtained:

$$dP_{\mathbf{k}}^{(s)} = \frac{e^2 n(\omega)}{2\pi c} \frac{\omega^2}{\omega_0\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)} \left\{ \left[n(\omega)\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c} - \cos\theta \right]^2 \frac{J_s^2(\alpha)}{n^2(\omega)\sin^2\theta} + \xi^2 \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}}\right)^2 J_s'^2(\alpha) \right\} \delta\left[\omega \frac{1 - n(\omega)\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\cos\theta}{\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)} - s \right] d\omega dO, \quad (2.52)$$

where θ is the angle between the radiation direction and axis OX, and the argument of the Bessel function

$$\alpha = \xi \frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}} \frac{\omega n(\omega)\sin\theta}{\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)}. \quad (2.53)$$

The δ-function in (2.52) determines the conservation law of the Compton radiation process in a medium (radiation spectrum)

$$\omega = s\omega_0 \frac{1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}}{1 - n(\omega) \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c} \cos\theta}. \tag{2.54}$$

First, let us consider the cases of limit intensities of the wave $\xi = 0$ and $\xi = \xi_{cr}$. If in (2.52) $\xi \to 0$, then the radiation power will differ from zero only for the $s = 0$ harmonic. In that case, the conservation law of Compton process (2.54) becomes the condition of Cherenkov radiation ($\mathrm{v}_x \to \mathrm{v}_{0x} = \mathrm{v}_0$) and (2.52) after the integration over θ passes to the Tamm–Frank formula

$$dP_\omega^{(0)} = \frac{e^2 \mathrm{v}_0}{c^2} \left(1 - \frac{c^2}{n^2(\omega)\mathrm{v}_0^2}\right) \omega d\omega. \tag{2.55}$$

In the other limit case of $\xi = \xi_{cr}$, the longitudinal velocity of the particle $\mathrm{v}_x = c/n_0$ and (2.54) allows the nonzero frequencies of radiation either for infinitely large harmonics ($s = \infty$) or when the condition

$$1 - n(\omega) \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c} \cos\theta = 0 \tag{2.56}$$

is fulfilled. However, it is easy to see that at the satisfaction of condition (2.56) the radiation power becomes zero. Hence, at the value of external wave intensity $\xi = \xi_{cr}$ only the harmonics $s = \infty$ are radiated the power of which differs from zero at the value of the Bessel function argument $\alpha = s$, which gives

$$1 - \frac{\mathbf{k}\mathbf{v}_{cr}}{\omega} = 0; \qquad \mathbf{k} = \nu n(\omega) \frac{\omega}{c},$$

where

$$\mathbf{v}_{cr} = \left\{ \frac{c}{n_0}, 0, c\sqrt{n_0^2 - 1} \frac{1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}}{n_0^2 \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{cn_0}\right)} \right\}.$$

In that case, (2.52) again passes to the Tamm–Frank formula (2.55) for a particle moving with the velocity $\mathrm{v}_0 = \mathrm{v}_{cr} > c/n(\omega)$. In this case the radiation of fundamental frequency ω_0 exists as well. So, only in limit cases $\xi = 0$ and $\xi = \xi_{cr}$ does Compton radiation fully turn into Cherenkov radiation and at the values of external wave intensity $0 < \xi < \xi_{cr}$ the radiation of the particle involves superposition of Compton and Cherenkov radiation.

The nonlinear scattering in laser fields of moderate intensities, that is, radiation of high harmonics at $\xi \ll 1$, is of great interest. In considering this process it is possible even at weak wave fields of intensities $\xi \approx \xi_{cr} \ll 1$ due to the Cherenkov resonance, i.e., when the radiation is close to the Cherenkov cone with the incident wave. In accordance with (2.52) significant nonlinearity in the radiation process arises when the argument of the Bessel function $\alpha \sim s$ ($s \gg 1$). As is seen from (2.53) and (2.54) such large values of α can be reached due to $\mathrm{v}_x \to c/n_0$, i.e., if the intensity of an incident wave is close to the critical value ($\xi \to \xi_{cr}$) and radiation is close to the Cherenkov cone ($1 - n(\omega)(\mathrm{v}_x/c)\cos\theta \to 0$).

To determine the conditions and quantitative results for high harmonics ($s \gg 1$) radiation, one should substitute into (2.53) the concrete expressions of the particle longitudinal velocity v_x and energy $\mathcal{E}$ in the field. From (2.7) and (2.10) we have

$$\alpha = \frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0} \frac{n(\omega)\omega \sin\theta}{\omega_0 \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right) \sqrt{1 - \frac{\xi^2}{\xi_{cr}^2}}} \xi. \tag{2.57}$$

In (2.57), the radiation angle ($\sin\theta$) should be defined from the condition $\theta \simeq \theta_c$, where θ_c is the Cherenkov angle. At fundamental frequency ω_0 the Cherenkov angle $\theta_c \ll 1$, whereas at other frequencies ω it may not be small depending on the medium dispersion and, consequently, the conditions of nonlinearity will be different. However, the number of harmonics at all frequencies is large enough. The harmonic $s = 0$ at fundamental frequency ω_0 cannot be radiated since $\mathrm{v}_x < c/n_0$. The first harmonic ($s = 1$) at frequency ω_0 is radiated at the angle $\theta = 0$. The negative harmonics ($s = -1, -2, \ldots$) correspond to anomalous Compton scattering in a medium with refractive index $n(\omega) > 1$. At frequencies $\omega \neq \omega_0$ the harmonic $s = 0$ corresponds to Cherenkov radiation; however, the power of the radiation differs from the Tamm–Frank formula because of the oscillatory character of the particle motion in the wave field (influence of Compton effect).

2.6 Radiation of a Particle in Capture Regime. Cherenkov Amplifier

Consider the radiation of the particle captured by a plane monochromatic wave in a gaseous medium. We will assume that the particle initial velocity is directed along the wave propagation and has a value close to the Cherenkov one:

$$\mathrm{v}_0 = \mathrm{v}_{0x} = \frac{c}{n_0}(1 + \mu); \qquad \mu \ll 1. \tag{2.58}$$

From the equations of motion (2.2) and (2.3) it follows that at $\mu = 0$

$$\mathrm{v}_x = \mathrm{v}_{x0} = \frac{c}{n_0}, \qquad \mathrm{v}_y = 0, \qquad x = x_0 + \frac{c}{n_0} t, \tag{2.59}$$

where x_0, $y_0 = 0$, $z_0 = 0$ are the initial coordinates of the particle at the moment $t = 0$ in the wave of linear polarization

$$E = E_y = E_0 \cos\left(\omega_0 n_0 \frac{x}{c} - \omega_0 t\right). \tag{2.60}$$

The solution of (2.2) and (2.3) at $\mu \ll 1$ can be represented as

$$\mathrm{v}_x(t) = \frac{c}{n_0}\left(1 + \mu u_x(t)\right), \qquad \mathrm{v}_y(t) = c\mu u_y(t) \tag{2.61}$$

and after the linearization of these equations by parameter μ we have the following set of equations for the functions $u_x(t)$ and $u_y(t)$:

$$\frac{du_x}{dt} = \frac{e\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)^{3/2}}{n_0^2 mc} E_0 \cos\phi_0 \cdot u_{y,}$$

$$\frac{du_y}{dt} = -\frac{e\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)^{1/2}}{mc} E_0 \cos\phi_0 \cdot u_x. \tag{2.62}$$

Integrating this set of equations at the initial conditions $u_{x0} = 1$ and $u_{y0} = 0$ in accordance with (2.59), for the particle velocity in the capture regime we obtain

$$\mathrm{v}_x(t) = \frac{c}{n_0}\left(1 + \mu \cos\Omega_0 t\right),$$

$$\mathrm{v}_y(t) = -\frac{c}{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)^{1/2}} \mu \sin\Omega_0 t, \tag{2.63}$$

$$\Omega_0 = \frac{e\left(n_0^2 - 1\right) E_0 |\cos\phi_0|}{n_0 mc}. \tag{2.64}$$

In the derivation of (2.63) and (2.64) the following approximation has been made (due to the small parameter μ):

$$\mu \frac{\omega_0}{\Omega_0} \ll 1, \tag{2.65}$$

which is violated for the wave phase $\cos\phi_0 = 0$. This is connected with the fact that the stability in the capture regime is provided by the action of magnetic field $\mathbf{H}'$ in the frame of reference connected with the wave and $\mathbf{H}' = 0$ in the phase $\cos\phi_0 = 0$, so that this phase is unstable.

As is seen from (2.63) the particle velocity in the wave oscillates with the frequency Ω_0, which depends on the initial phase ϕ_0. In the particle beam case the various particles being initially in different phases of the wave well will have diverse velocities and space bunching of the particles will occur as a result of which the current density of the beam will be modulated. Equation (2.64) shows that the modulation frequency $\Omega_0 \simeq \omega_0 \left(n_0^2 - 1\right) \xi |\cos\phi_0|$ and as even for the strong laser fields $\xi \ll 1$ (and $n_0^2 - 1 \ll 1$), then $\Omega_0 \ll \omega_0$.

To calculate the power of noncoherent radiation by (2.50) one needs the particle law of motion $\mathbf{r}(t)$ in the capture regime. Defining the latter by integration of (2.63) with the initial conditions $x(t)\mid_{t=0} = x_0$, $y(t)\mid_{t=0} = 0$

$$x(t) = x_0 + \frac{c}{n_0}t + \mu\frac{c}{n_0\Omega_0}\sin\Omega_0 t,$$

$$y(t) = -\mu\frac{c}{\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}\Omega_0}\left(1-\cos\Omega_0 t\right) \tag{2.66}$$

and expanding the exponent of (2.50) into the series over the small parameter μ (taking into account as well that $\mu\omega/\Omega_0 \ll 1$), after the calculations we will have the following formula for differential power of noncoherent radiation in the capture regime:

$$dP_{\mathbf{k}} = dP_{\mathbf{k}}^{(0)} + dP_{\mathbf{k}}^{(+)} + dP_{\mathbf{k}}^{(-)}, \tag{2.67}$$

$$dP_{\mathbf{k}}^{(0)} = \frac{e^2 n(\omega)}{2\pi c n_0^2}\omega^2\sin^2\theta\cdot\delta\left[\omega\frac{n(\omega)}{n_0}\cos\theta - \omega\right]d\omega dO, \tag{2.68}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dP_{\mathbf{k}}^{(\pm)} &= \mu^2\frac{e^2 n(\omega)}{8\pi c}\frac{\omega^2}{n_0\left(n_0^2-1\right)}\delta\left[\omega\frac{n(\omega)}{n_0}\cos\theta - \omega \pm \Omega_0\right] \\ &\times\left\{\left[n_0^2 + \left(\frac{n_0^2}{2}-1\right)\sin^2\theta\right] \pm 2\frac{n(\omega)}{n_0}\left(\frac{n_0^2}{2}-1\right)\frac{\omega}{\Omega_0}\cos\theta\sin^2\theta\right. \\ &\left.+\frac{n^2(\omega)}{n_0^2}\frac{\omega^2}{\Omega_0^2}\sin^2\theta\left[\frac{n_0^2}{2} + \left(\frac{n_0^2}{2}-1\right)\cos^2\theta\right]\right\}d\omega dO, \end{aligned} \tag{2.69}$$

where θ is the angle between the radiation direction and axis OX. The term $dP_{\mathbf{k}}^{(0)}$ corresponds to Cherenkov radiation by the particle moving with the velocity $\mathrm{v} = c/n_0$ in the wave and the terms $dP_{\mathbf{k}}^{(\pm)}$ determine the radiation due to oscillatory motion of the particle. According to the δ-functions in (2.68) and (2.69) for the radiation angles we have

$$\cos\theta_0 = \frac{n_0}{n(\omega)}, \qquad \cos\theta_\pm = \frac{n_0}{n(\omega)}\left(1 \mp \frac{\Omega_0}{\omega}\right). \tag{2.70}$$

Note that the approximation $\mu\omega/\Omega_0 \ll 1$ applied in the calculations is necessary only to obtain ultimate analytical formulas (in the general case the particle velocity is expressed by elliptic functions and analytical solution of the problem is complicated).

Integrating (2.68) and (2.69) over the solid angle for the spectral distribution of the radiation we obtain

$$dP_\omega^{(0)} = \frac{e^2}{cn_0}\left[1 - \frac{n_0^2}{n^2(\omega)}\right]\omega d\omega, \tag{2.71}$$

$$dP_\omega^{(\pm)} = \mu^2 \frac{e^2}{4c}\frac{1}{n_0\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)}\left\{n_0^2 + \frac{n_0^2 + n^2(\omega) - 2}{2} \times \left[\frac{\omega^2}{\Omega_0^2} - \frac{n_0^2}{n^2(\omega)}\left(1 \mp \frac{\Omega_0}{\omega}\right)^2\right]\right\}\omega d\omega. \tag{2.72}$$

In (2.72)

$$\omega = \pm\frac{\Omega_0}{1 - \frac{n(\omega)}{n_0}\cos\theta}. \tag{2.73}$$

As Ω_0 depends on initial phase ϕ_0 (see (2.64)), in the case of a particle beam captured by a wave of linear polarization at a certain angle θ a whole spectrum of frequencies will be radiated, in contrast to common Cherenkov radiation at which only a definite frequency is radiated at that certain angle.

Let us compare the radiation at the fundamental frequency ω_0 with the common Cherenkov radiation at the same frequency (in the absence of the external wave). In this case $dP_{\omega_0}^{(0)} = 0$ and for $dP_\omega^{(-)}$ the conservation law for the radiation of frequency ω_0 is violated (see the second expression in (2.70)). From (2.72) at $\omega = \omega_0$ we have

$$dP_{\omega_0}^{(+)} = \frac{e^2}{2cn_0}\mu^2\frac{\omega_0}{\Omega_0}\omega_0 d\omega. \tag{2.74}$$

If one substitutes $\mathrm{v} = c(1+\mu)/n_0$ into the Tamm–Frank formula (2.55), then with the linear approximation by parameter μ we will have

$$dP_{\omega_0} = \frac{2e^2}{cn_0}\mu\omega_0 d\omega. \tag{2.75}$$

A comparison of (2.74) and (2.75) shows that the radiation of the particle at the fundamental frequency ω_0 in the capture regime is much smaller than the spontaneous Cherenkov radiation (because of condition (2.65)). Such a decrease of radiation is connected with the violation of coherency due to oscillation of particle velocity in the wave field.

The fundamental frequency ω_0 in the capture regime is radiated at the angle $\theta \simeq \sqrt{2\Omega_0/\omega_0}$ (see (2.73)). The common Cherenkov angle is $\theta_c \simeq \sqrt{\mu/2}$ and as far as $\mu \ll \Omega_0/\omega_0$ then $\theta \gg \theta_c$, i.e., the radiation angle at the frequency of stimulating wave in the capture regime is much larger than the spontaneous Cherenkov angle in the absence of the external wave.

At the other frequencies $\omega \neq \omega_0$ the radiation is mainly determined by $dP_\omega^{(0)}$, which practically coincides with the Tamm–Frank formula.

Consider now the case of circular polarization of the incident wave

$$E_y = E_0 \cos\left(\frac{\omega_0 n_0}{c} x - \omega_0 t\right), \qquad E_z = E_0 \sin\left(\frac{\omega_0 n_0}{c} x - \omega_0 t\right). \tag{2.76}$$

Linearizing the equations of motion (2.2) and (2.3) in the field (2.76) under the condition (2.58) for the particle velocity in the capture regime we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathrm{v}_x &= \frac{c}{n_0}\left(1 + \mu \cos \Omega_0' t\right), \\
\mathrm{v}_y &= -\mu \frac{c}{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)^{1/2}} \cos\phi_0 \cdot \sin \Omega_0' t, \\
\mathrm{v}_z &= -\mu \frac{c}{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)^{1/2}} \sin\phi_0 \cdot \sin \Omega_0' t,
\end{aligned} \tag{2.77}$$

where the oscillation frequency in the wave well Ω_0' does not depend on the initial phase ϕ_0 in contrast to the case of the linearly polarized wave. If we calculate the radiation power by (2.77), then the same formulas (2.67)–(2.73) for the case of wave linear polarization will be obtained. The only difference is that Ω_0' is constant for all particles situated at the difference phases in the wave well, and at the certain angle only one frequency will be radiated in this case.

Equations (2.63) and (2.77) show that the energy of the particle in the field

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 + \mu \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2 - 1} \cos \Omega_0 t\ ; \qquad \mathcal{E}_0 = \frac{mc^2 n_0}{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)^{1/2}} \tag{2.78}$$

oscillates between the values

$$\mathcal{E}_{\min} = \mathcal{E}_0\left(1 - \frac{\mu}{n_0^2 - 1}\right); \qquad \mathcal{E}_{\max} = \mathcal{E}_0\left(1 + \frac{\mu}{n_0^2 - 1}\right),$$

consequently the exchange of the energy is

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = 2\precsim \frac{mc^2 n_0}{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)^{3/2}}. \tag{2.79}$$

According to (2.78) the particle captured by the wave periodically acquires and loses such energy $\Delta\mathcal{E}$. Due to the induced Cherenkov effect the energy lost by the particle is coherently radiated into the wave (particularly for this reason the above-considered noncoherent radiation at the frequency of stimulating wave ω_0 is sufficiently suppressed) and the amplification of the initial wave will take place. Hence, the particle capture phenomenon may in principle serve as a FEL mechanism (Cherenkov amplifier). For the latter one needs to solve the self-consistent problem on the basis of the set of Maxwell–Vlasov equations.

Let us now consider the amplitude of the wave field to be a slowly varying function of the space-time coordinates (x, t) with respect to the phase. The problem will be investigated first for the circular polarization of the wave

$$E_y(x,t) = E(x,t)\cos\left(\frac{\omega_0 n_0 x}{c} - \omega_0 t\right),$$

$$E_z(x,t) = E(x,t)\sin\left(\frac{\omega_0 n_0 x}{c} - \omega_0 t\right) \tag{2.80}$$

with the boundary conditions

$$E_y(0,t) = E_0\cos\omega_0 t, \qquad E_z(0,t) = -E_0\sin\omega_0 t. \tag{2.81}$$

Related to particles we will assume that it crosses the boundary of the medium $x = 0$ at the moment $t = t_0$ with the initial velocity (2.58). Linearizing the equations of motion (2.2) and (2.3) in the field (2.80) for a single particle velocity in the field we obtain

$$\mathrm{v}_y = -\frac{c}{\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}}\mu\cos(\omega_0 t_0)\sin\left[\frac{e\left(n_0^2-1\right)}{mcn_0}\int_{t_0}^{t} E(t',x)dt'\right],$$

$$\mathrm{v}_z = \frac{c}{\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}}\mu\sin(\omega_0 t_0)\sin\left[\frac{e\left(n_0^2-1\right)}{mcn_0}\int_{t_0}^{t} E(t',x)dt'\right]. \tag{2.82}$$

To define the electric current of the particle stream we assume that the space is continuously filled with the charged particles. Then at the moment t_0 in the point x will be situated only the particles for which $t_0 = t - n_0 x/c$ (with accuracy $\mu\omega_0/\Omega_0 \ll 1$). Hence, for the electric current of the particle stream we will have

$$j_y(x,t) = -\mu\frac{ec\rho_0}{\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}}\cos\left(\frac{\omega_0 n_0 x}{c} - \omega_0 t\right)$$

$$\times \sin\left[\frac{e\left(n_0^2-1\right)}{mcn_0}\int\limits_{t-n_0x/c}^{t} E(t', \frac{c}{n_0}(t'-t)+x)dt'\right], \qquad (2.83)$$

$$j_z(x,t) = -\mu\frac{ec\rho_0}{\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}}\sin\left(\frac{\omega_0 n_0 x}{c}-\omega_0 t\right)$$
$$\times \sin\left[\frac{e\left(n_0^2-1\right)}{mcn_0}\int\limits_{t-n_0x/c}^{t} E(t', \frac{c}{n_0}(t'-t)+x)dt'\right],$$

where ρ_0 is the mean density of the particles in the initial stream, which will be assumed constant (since $\mu \ll 1$ the variation ρ_0 is small and can be neglected).

Because we are investigating the induced radiation, the field of the scalar potential and longitudinal radiation field along the axis *OX* will not be considered here. Substituting (2.83) into the Maxwell equation and taking into account the slow variation of the radiation field amplitude:

$$\left|\frac{\partial E}{\partial t}\right| \ll \omega_0|E|, \qquad \left|\frac{\partial E}{\partial x}\right| \ll \frac{\omega_0 n_0}{c}|E|,$$

we obtain the equation of the self-consistent field:

$$\frac{\partial E}{\partial x}+\frac{n_0}{c}\frac{\partial E}{\partial t} = \frac{2\pi e\rho_0}{n_0\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}}\mu$$
$$\times \sin\left[\frac{e\left(n_0^2-1\right)}{mcn_0}\int\limits_{t-n_0x/c}^{t} E(t', \frac{c}{n_0}(t'-t)+x)dt'\right]. \qquad (2.84)$$

Equation (2.84) has a simpler form over wave coordinates $\tau = t - n_0x/c, \eta = x$. Then, for the field amplitude $E(t,x) = f(\tau,\eta)$ we have

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial\eta}f(\tau,\eta) = \frac{2\pi e\rho_0}{n_0\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}}\mu\sin\left[\frac{e\left(n_0^2-1\right)}{mc^2}\int\limits_0^{\eta} f(\tau,\eta')d\eta'\right]. \qquad (2.85)$$

The simple analytic solution can be received at the incident monochromatic wave: $f(\tau,0) = E_0$. In this case, it follows from (2.84) that $f(\tau,\eta)$ does not depend on τ, i.e., $f(\tau,\eta) = f(\eta)$, and for the quantity

$$\varphi = \frac{e\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)}{mc^2} \int\limits_0^{\eta} f(\eta')d\eta' \tag{2.86}$$

we have the nonlinear equation of anharmonic oscillator

$$\varphi'' = \frac{2\pi e^2 \rho_0 \left(n_0^2 - 1\right)^{1/2}}{mc^2 n_0} \mu \sin\varphi, \tag{2.87}$$

the general solution of which is the incomplete elliptic integral of the first kind

$$\frac{1}{2}\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\frac{eE_0 x}{mc^2} = \int\limits_0^{\varphi/2} \frac{dz}{\sqrt{1 + \zeta^2 \sin^2 z}},$$

$$\zeta^2 = \frac{8\pi\mu}{n_0\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)^{3/2}} \frac{mc^2\rho_0}{E_0^2}. \tag{2.88}$$

In the linear case when $\varphi \ll 1$ from (2.88) we have

$$E(x) = E_0 \begin{bmatrix} \cosh\left(\frac{x}{l_c}\right), & \mu > 0, \\ \cos\left(\frac{x}{l_c}\right), & \mu < 0. \end{bmatrix} \tag{2.89}$$

Hence, for $\mu > 0$, which corresponds to particles' initial velocity $v_0 > c/n_0$, exponential amplification of the incident wave occurs. For $\mu < 0$, that is, $v_0 < c/n_0$, the amplification vanishes on average. The quantity in (2.89)

$$l_c = \left(\frac{mc^2 n_0}{2\pi e^2 \mu\rho_0 \left(n_0^2 - 1\right)^{1/2}}\right)^{1/2} \tag{2.90}$$

is the coherent length of amplification. Equation (2.85) is an analog of the equation of the quantum amplifier. The role of inverse population in atomic systems here performs detuning of the Cherenkov resonance $v_0 - c/n_0$ (parameter μ).

Analysis of the obtained formulas shows that the linear regime takes place at the electric field strengths of amplifying radiation

$$E \lesssim e\lambda_0\rho_0\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^3$$

(λ_0 is the wavelength of incident wave) and at the coherent length of amplification

$$l_c \lesssim \frac{mc^2}{e^2\lambda_0\rho_0}\left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2}\right)^2.$$

In the saturation regime from (2.85) we have

$$E(x) = E_0 + \mu\frac{2\pi mc^2\rho_0}{n_0\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{3/2}}\frac{1}{E_0}\left\{1-\cos\left[\left(n_0^2-1\right)\frac{eE_0x}{mc^2}\right]\right\}. \quad (2.91)$$

The wave energy gain found from (2.91) corresponds to the particle energy exchange in the capture regime (in a unit volume) according to (2.79):

$$\Delta W = \rho_0\Delta\mathcal{E} = \frac{2\mu\rho_0\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2-1}. \quad (2.92)$$

The saturation regime and (2.91) is valid when the electric field strengths of amplifying radiation

$$E \gtrsim e\lambda_0\rho_0\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2}.$$

Consider now the case of linear polarization of incident wave

$$E_y = E(x,t)\cos\left(\frac{\omega_0 n_0 x}{c} - \omega_0 t\right). \quad (2.93)$$

By analogy with the previous case for the velocity of a single particle in the field (2.93) we obtain

$$\mathrm{v}_x = \frac{c}{n_0}\left(1+\mu\cos\left[\int_{t_0}^{t}\Omega_0(t',x)dt'\right]\right),$$

$$\mathrm{v}_y = -\frac{c}{\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}}\mu\sin\left[\int_{t_0}^{t}\Omega_0(t',x)dt'\right], \quad (2.94)$$

where the modulation frequency

$$\Omega_0(t,x) = \frac{e\left(n_0^2-1\right)}{mcn_0}E(x,t)\cos\omega_0 t_0 \quad (2.95)$$

already depends on initial phase $\phi_0 = \omega_0 t_0$. Therefore, in the particle beam case, all harmonics will be radiated in contrast to circular polarization of the wave. By calculating the electric current of the particle stream and expanding into series over

Bessel functions we find that the induced radiation stipulated by the y component of the current (coherent radiation) will include only the odd harmonics and the noncoherent part of the radiation stipulated by the x component of the current (longitudinal field along the axis OX) will include only the even harmonics. As in the previous case we will consider the coherent radiation. Then, substituting y component of the current

$$j_y(x,t) = -\mu \frac{ec\rho_0}{\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}} \sum_{s=-\infty}^{+\infty} i^{s-1} J_s(\alpha) \exp\left[is\omega_0\left(\frac{n_0 x}{c} - t\right)\right],$$

$$s = 2k-1;\ k = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \ldots,$$

$$\alpha(x,t) = \frac{e\left(n_0^2-1\right)}{mcn_0} \int\limits_{t-n_0 x/c}^{t} E(t', \frac{c}{n_0}(t'-t)+x)dt' \tag{2.96}$$

into the Maxwell equation for the slowly varying amplitude of the self-consistent field we will have the equation

$$2is\omega_0\left(\frac{n_0}{c}\frac{\partial E_s}{\partial x} + \frac{n_s^2}{c^2}\frac{\partial E_s}{\partial t}\right) + \frac{s^2\omega_0^2}{c^2}\left(n_s^2 - n_0^2\right)E_s$$
$$= i^s \frac{4\pi e\rho_0 s\omega_0}{c\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}} \mu J_s(\alpha), \tag{2.97}$$

where n_s is the medium refractive index at the s-th harmonic of the fundamental frequency ω_0 ($n_s \equiv n(s\omega_0)$).

Consider (2.97) with regard to the presence and absence of synchronism. In the last case, when $n_s \neq n_0$ taking into account the slow variation of the field amplitude from (2.97) we obtain

$$E_s = i^s \mu \frac{4\pi ec\rho_0}{\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}} \frac{1}{s\omega_0} \frac{1}{n_s^2 - n_0^2} J_s(\alpha). \tag{2.98}$$

As is seen from this formula in the absence of synchronism, there is a weak dependence of radiation field on harmonics' number.

In the case of synchronism ($n_s = n_0$), (2.97) becomes

$$\frac{\partial E_s}{\partial x} + \frac{n_0}{c}\frac{\partial E_s}{\partial t} = i^{s-1}\mu \frac{2\pi e\rho_0}{n_0\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{1/2}} J_s(\alpha). \tag{2.99}$$

For the first harmonic (fundamental coherent radiation) the results repeat almost exactly the case of wave circular polarization ((2.88)–(2.90)), the only difference being that the coherence length in this case is $\sqrt{2}l_c$.

To determine the radiation on the other harmonics in the case of synchronism consider the problem in the given field. Then, for large x when

$$\frac{e\left(n_0^2-1\right)E_0x}{mc^2}\gg 1$$

for the harmonics' amplitudes we have

$$E_s=i^{s-1}\mu\frac{2\pi mc^2\rho_0}{n_0\left(n_0^2-1\right)^{3/2}}\frac{1}{E_0}. \tag{2.100}$$

Hence, the radiation intensity on the harmonics

$$I_s=\frac{c}{8\pi}|E_s|^2\simeq e^2c\frac{(\lambda_0^3\rho_0)^2}{\lambda_0^4}\left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2}\right)^2. \tag{2.101}$$

Equation (2.101) as well as (2.92) and estimation formulas are obtained when $\mu\sim\xi(mc^2/\mathcal{E}_0)^2$, which is defined from the condition of particle capture. As in the linear regime the coherence length increases as energy squared, and the losses of the particles in the medium depend on energy logarithmically, then the energy increase for amplification of weak signals does not give an essential advantage. The optimal energy is $\mathcal{E}_0\sim mc^2$. Then $l_c\sim(r_0\lambda_0\rho_0)^{-1}$, where $r_0=e^2/mc^2$ is the electron classical radius. The estimations show that for the amplification of optical radiation in the capture regime with $n_0=\text{const}$, electron beams of large densities are necessary. The situation will be considerably improved if media with varying refractive index $n_0(x)$ are used. Then along the direction of increase of $n_0(x)$ the particles will be continuously decelerated, and the wave continuously amplified (a regime inverse to the one considered in Sect. 2.4).

Bibliography

R.M. More, Phys. Rev. Lett. **16**, 781 (1966)

V.M. Haroutunian, H.K. Avetissian, Sov. J. Quantum Electron. **2**, 39 (1972)

V.M. Haroutunian, H.K. Avetissian, Zh Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **62**, 1639 (1972)

A.S. Dementev, A.G. Kulkin, YuG Pavlenko, Zh Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **62**, 161 (1972)

M.A. Piestrup et al., J. Appl. Phys. **46**, 132 (1975)

H. Dekker, Phys. Lett. A **59**, 369 (1976)

J.E. Walsh, T.C. Marshall, S.P. Schlesinger, Phys. Fluids **20**, 709 (1977)

J.E. Walsh: Stimulated Cerenkov radiation, in *Free Electron Generators of Coherent Radiation*, Phys. Quantum Electron. vol 5, ed by S. Jacobs, M. Sargent, M. Scully, R. Spitzer (Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA 1978) p. 357

H.K. Avetissian, Phys. Lett. A **69**, 399 (1978)

J.E. Walsh: Cerenkov and Cerenkov-Raman radiation sources, in *Free Electron Generators of Coherent Radiation*, Phys. Quantum Electron. vol 7, ed by S. Jacobs, H. Pilloff, M. Sargent, M. Scully, R.Spitzer (Addison-Wesley, Reading, MA 1980) p. 255

K.L. Felch et al., Appl. Phys. Lett. **38**, 601 (1981)
J.A. Edighoffer et al., Phys. Rev. A **23**, 1848 (1981)
J.A. Edighoffer et al., IEEE J. Quantum Electron. QE-17, 1507 (1981)
J.E. Walsh, Adv. Electron. and Electron. Phys. **58**, 271 (1982)
J.E. Walsh, J.B. Murphy, IEEE J. Quantum Electron. **18**, 1259 (1982)
W.D. Kimura et al., Appl. Phys. Lett. **40**, 102 (1982)
W.D. Kimura et al., IEEE J. Quantum Electron. QE-18, 239 (1982)
W.D. Kimura, J. Appl. Phys. **53**, 5433 (1982)
W. Becker, J.K. McIver, Phys. Rev. A **25**, 956 (1982)
M.A. Piestrup, IEEE J. Quantum Electron. QE-19, 1827 (1983)
J.R. Fontana, R.H. Pantell, J. Appl. Phys. **54**, 4285 (1983)
D.Y. Wang et al., IEEE J. Quantum Electron. QE-19, 389 (1983)
B. Jhonson, J.E. Walsh, Phys. Rev. A **33**, 3199 (1986)
E.P. Garate et al., Nucl. Instrum. Methods Phys. Res. A **259**, 125 (1987)
F. Ciocci et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **66**, 699 (1991)
H.K. Avetissian, Usp. Fiz. Nauk (Sov. J.) **167**, 793 (1997)
H.K. Avetissian, S.S. Israelyan, KhV Sedrakian, Phys Rev ST AB **10**, 071301 (2007)
H.K. Avetissian, K.Z. Hatsagortsian, G.F. Mkrtchian, IEEE J. Quantum Electron. **33**, 897 (1997)

Chapter 3
Quantum Theory of Induced Multiphoton Cherenkov Process

Abstract The existence of critical intensity in the induced Cherenkov process at which nonlinear resonance with a given coherent radiation field takes place leading to threshold phenomena of particle "reflection" and capture, in the quantum description, corresponds to multiphoton absorption/radiation of the particle at free–free transitions. Hence, first it is important to determine the probabilities of induced Cherenkov radiation and absorption below the critical value and close to this one when these probabilities considerably increase. As a result of the multiphoton absorption/radiation the particle quantum state is modulated at the wave harmonics. Then, one should elucidate the role of particle spin in these phenomena since in dielectriclike media the wave periodic electromagnetic field in the intrinsic frame of reference becomes a static magnetic field and spin interaction with such a field should resemble the Zeeman effect. What other quantum effects may be expected in induced Cherenkov process taking into account that spontaneous Cherenkov effect is of classical nature and has no quantum peculiarity? The particle "reflection" effect from the wave envelope is also of classical nature, but the quantum state of the reflected particle after the interaction becomes modulated at X-ray frequencies. The classical phenomenon of particle capture by the wave leads to quantum effect of zone structure of particle states like the particle states in a crystal lattice. The inelastic diffraction scattering of the particles on the traveling EM wave of intensity below the critical value in induced Cherenkov process takes place like Bragg diffraction (elastic) on a crystal lattice. The consideration of these quantum problems is the subject of this chapter.

3.1 Quantum Description of Induced Cherenkov Process in Strong Wave Field

The multiphoton interaction of a charged spinor particle with a plane EM wave in induced Cherenkov process should be described in general by the Dirac equation. As will be shown below, the exact solution of the Dirac equation can be obtained only for the particular case when the particle initial velocity is parallel to the wave propagation direction, which is monochromatic and is of circular polarization. In

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_3

other cases, the quantum equations of motions (both nonrelativistic and relativistic) are reduced to ordinary differential equations of the second order of Hill or Mathieu type, the exact solution of which are unknown. In these cases one needs to develop adequate approximations for the quantum description of particle–wave nonlinear interaction.

The Dirac equation for the spinor particle in the given coherent radiation field in a medium is written as

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial t}=\left[c\widehat{\alpha}(\widehat{\mathbf{p}}-\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(t-n_0x/c))+\widehat{\beta}mc^2\right]\Psi. \tag{3.1}$$

In contrast to the case of interaction in a vacuum where the Dirac equation has been solved in the spinor representation (see (1.78) and (1.78)) here it is convenient to solve the problem in the standard representation with the Dirac matrices

$$\widehat{\alpha}=\begin{pmatrix}0 & \sigma\\ \sigma & 0\end{pmatrix};\ \widehat{\beta}=\begin{pmatrix}I & 0\\ 0 & -I\end{pmatrix}. \tag{3.2}$$

Here, $\sigma=(\sigma_x,\sigma_y,\sigma_z)$ are the Pauli matrices (1.78), and I is a two-dimensional unit matrix. In (3.1) $\mathbf{A}=\mathbf{A}(t-n_0x/c)$ is the vector potential of a linearly polarized plane quasi-monochromatic EM wave propagating in the OX direction in a medium

$$\mathbf{A}=\{0,A_0(\tau)\cos\omega_0\tau,0\};\quad \tau=t-n_0x/c. \tag{3.3}$$

As in previous considerations, we shall assume that the EM wave is adiabatically switched on at $\tau=-\infty$ and switched off at $\tau=+\infty$.

To solve (3.1) it is more straightforward to pass to the frame of reference of the rest of the wave (R frame moving with velocity $\mathrm{V}=c/n$). As has been shown in Chap. 2, in the R frame there is only the static magnetic field that will be described according to (3.3) by the following vector potential:

$$\mathbf{A}_R=\left\{0,A_0(x')\cos k'x',0\right\}, \tag{3.4}$$

where

$$k'=\frac{\omega_0}{c}\sqrt{n_0^2-1}. \tag{3.5}$$

The wave function of a particle in the R frame is connected with the wave function in the laboratory frame L by the Lorentz transformation of the bispinors

$$\Psi=\widehat{S}(\vartheta)\Psi_R, \tag{3.6}$$

where the transformation operator

$$\widehat{S}(\vartheta)=ch\frac{\vartheta}{2}+\alpha_x sh\frac{\vartheta}{2};\qquad th\vartheta=\frac{\mathrm{V}}{c}=\frac{1}{n}. \tag{3.7}$$

For Ψ_R we have the equation

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi_R}{\partial t'} = \left[c\widehat{\alpha}(\widehat{\mathbf{p}}' - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_R(\mathbf{x}')) + \widehat{\beta}mc^2\right]\Psi_R. \tag{3.8}$$

Since the interaction Hamiltonian does not depend on the time and transverse (to the direction of the wave propagation) coordinates the eigenvalues of the operators $\widehat{H'}$, $\widehat{p}'_y$, $\widehat{p}'_z$ are conserved: $\mathcal{E}' = \text{const}$, $p'_y = \text{const}$, $p'_z = \text{const}$ and the solution of (3.8) can be represented in the form of a linear combination of free solutions of the Dirac equation with amplitudes $a_i(x')$ depending only on x':

$$\Psi_R(\mathbf{r}', t') = \sum_{i=1}^{4} a_i(x')\Psi_i^{(0)}. \tag{3.9}$$

Here

$$\Psi_{1,2}^{(0)} = \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}' + mc^2}{2\mathcal{E}'}}\begin{bmatrix}\varphi_{1,2} \\ \frac{\sigma_x cp'_x + \sigma_y cp'_y}{\mathcal{E}' + mc^2}\varphi_{1,2}\end{bmatrix}$$

$$\times \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(p'_x x' + p'_y y' - \mathcal{E}' t)\right],$$

$$\Psi_{3,4}^{(0)} = \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}' + mc^2}{2\mathcal{E}'}}\begin{bmatrix}\varphi_{1,2} \\ \frac{-\sigma_x cp'_x + \sigma_y cp'_y}{\mathcal{E}' + mc^2}\varphi_{1,2}\end{bmatrix}$$

$$\times \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(-p'_x x' + p'_y y' - \mathcal{E}' t)\right], \tag{3.10}$$

where

$$p'_x = \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}'^2}{c^2} - p'^2_y - m^2c^2\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \quad \varphi_1 = \begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix}, \quad \varphi_2 = \begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix}. \tag{3.11}$$

The solution of (3.8) in the form (3.9) corresponds to the expansion of the wave function in a complete set of the wave functions of a particle with certain energy and transverse momentum p'_y (with longitudinal momenta $\pm(\mathcal{E}'^2/c^2 - p'^2_y - m^2c^2)^{1/2}$ and spin projections $S_z = \pm 1/2$). The latter are normalized to one particle per unit volume. Since there is symmetry with respect to the direction $\mathbf{A}_R$ (the OY axis), we have taken, without loss of generality, the vector $\mathbf{p}'$ in the XY plane ($p'_z = 0$).

According to (3.9) and (3.10) the induced Cherenkov effect in the R frame corresponds to elastic scattering process by which the reflection of the particle from the wave field occurs: $p'_x \to -p'_x$. However, in contrast to classical reflection when the periodic wave field becomes a potential barrier for the particle at the intensity $\xi > \xi_{cr}$, this quantum above-barrier reflection takes place regardless of how weak the wave field is. Hence, the probability of multiphoton absorption/radiation of the incident wave photons by the particle in the L frame, that is, induced Cherenkov effect, will be determined by the probability of particle elastic reflection in the R frame.

Substituting (3.9) into (3.8) and then multiplying by the Hermitian conjugate functions and taking into account (3.10) and (3.2) we obtain a set of differential equations for the unknown functions $a_i(x')$. The equations for a_1, a_3 and a_2, a_4 are separated and for these amplitudes we have the following set of equations:

$$p'_x \frac{da_1(x')}{dx'} = \frac{iep'_y}{\hbar c} A_y(x') a_1(x')$$

$$-\frac{e\left(p'_x - ip'_y\right)}{\hbar c} A_y(x') \exp\left(-\frac{2i}{\hbar} p'_x x'\right) a_3(x'),$$

$$p'_x \frac{da_3(x')}{dx'} = -\frac{ie}{\hbar c} p'_y A_y(x') a_3(x')$$

$$-\frac{e\left(p'_x + ip'_y\right)}{\hbar c} A_y(x') \exp\left(\frac{2i}{\hbar} p'_x x'\right) a_1(x'). \tag{3.12}$$

A similar set of equations is also obtained for the amplitudes $a_2(x')$ and $a_4(x')$. For simplicity we shall assume that before the interaction there are only particles with specified longitudinal momentum and spin state, i.e.,

$$|a_1(-\infty)|^2 = 1,\ |a_3(+\infty)|^2 = 0,\ |a_2(-\infty)|^2 = 0,\ |a_4(+\infty)|^2 = 0. \tag{3.13}$$

From the condition of conservation of the norm we have

$$\left|a_1(x')\right|^2 - \left|a_3(x')\right|^2 = \text{const} \tag{3.14}$$

and the probability of reflection is $\left|a_{3,4}(-\infty)\right|^2$.

The application of the unitarian transformation

$$a_1(x') = b_1(x') \exp\left(i \frac{ep'_y}{\hbar c p'_x} \int_{-\infty}^{x'} A_y(\eta) d\eta - i\frac{\vartheta'}{2}\right),$$

$$a_3(x') = b_3(x') \exp\left(-i \frac{ep'_y}{\hbar c p'_x} \int_{-\infty}^{x'} A_y(\eta) d\eta + i\frac{\vartheta'}{2}\right) \tag{3.15}$$

simplifies (3.12). Here, ϑ' is the angle between the particle momentum and the direction of the wave propagation in the R frame. The new amplitudes $b_1(x')$ and $b_3(x')$ satisfy the same initial conditions: $|b_1(-\infty)|^2 = 1$, $|b_3(+\infty)|^2 = 0$, according to (3.13).

From (3.12) and (3.15) for $b_1(x')$ and $b_3(x')$ we obtain the following set of equations:

$$\frac{db_1(x')}{dx'} = -f(x')b_3(x'),$$

$$\frac{db_3(x')}{dx'} = -f^*(x')b_3(x'), \tag{3.16}$$

where

$$f(x') = \frac{eA_y(t)p'}{\hbar c p'_x} \exp\left(-\frac{2i}{\hbar} p'_x x' - i\frac{2ep_y}{\hbar c p'_x} \int_{-\infty}^{x'} A_y(\eta) d\eta\right), \tag{3.17}$$

$$p' = \sqrt{p'^2_y + p'^2_x}.$$

Using the following expansion by the Bessel functions

$$\exp\left(-i\alpha \sin k'x'\right) = \sum_{N=-\infty}^{\infty} J_N(\alpha) \exp\left(-iNk'x'\right),$$

we can reduce (3.16) to the form

$$\frac{db_1(x')}{dx'} = -\sum_{N=-\infty}^{\infty} f_N \exp\left[-\frac{i}{\hbar}(2p'_x - N\hbar k')x'\right] b_3(x'),$$

$$\frac{db_3(x')}{dx'} = -\sum_{N=-\infty}^{\infty} f_N \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(2p'_x - N\hbar k')x'\right] b_1(x'), \tag{3.18}$$

where

$$f_N = \frac{p'}{2p'_y} Nk' J_N\left(2\xi \frac{mc}{p'_x}\frac{p'_y}{\hbar k'}\right). \tag{3.19}$$

Because of conservation of particle energy and transverse momentum (in R frame) the real transitions in the field will occur from a p'_x state to the $-p'_x$ one and, consequently, the probabilities of multiphoton scattering will have maximal values for the resonant transitions

$$2p'_x = s\hbar k' \qquad (s = \pm 1, \pm 2 ...). \tag{3.20}$$

The latter expresses the condition of exact resonance between the particle de Broglie wave and the incident "wave lattice". In the L frame the inelastic scattering of the particle on the moving phase lattice takes place and (3.20) corresponds to the known Cherenkov conservation law

$$\frac{2\mathcal{E}_0(1 - n_0 \frac{v_0}{c} \cos\vartheta)}{(n_0^2 - 1)} = s\hbar\omega_0, \tag{3.21}$$

where ϑ is the angle between the particle momentum and the wave propagation direction (the Cherenkov angle), and v_0 and $\mathcal{E}_0$ are the particle initial velocity and energy in the L frame.

So, we can utilize the resonant approximation keeping only resonant terms in (3.18). Generally, in this approximation, at the detuning of resonance $|\delta_s| = \left|2\frac{p'_x}{\hbar} - sk'\right| \ll k'$, we have the following set of equations for the particular s-photon transition amplitudes $b_1^{(s)}(x')$ and $b_3^{(s)}(x')$:

$$\frac{db_1^{(s)}(x')}{dx'} = -f_s \exp\left[-i\delta_s x'\right] b_3^{(s)}(x'),$$

$$\frac{db_3^{(s)}(x')}{dx'} = -f_s \exp\left[i\delta_s x'\right] b_1^{(s)}(x'). \tag{3.22}$$

This resonant approximation is valid for the slow varying functions $b_1^{(s)}(x')$ and $b_3^{(s)}(x')$, i.e., by the condition

$$\left|\frac{db_{1,3}^{(s)}(x')}{dx'}\right| \ll \left|b_{1,3}^{(s)}(x')\right| \cdot k'. \tag{3.23}$$

First, we shall solve the case of exact resonance ($\delta_s = 0$). According to the boundary conditions (3.14), we have the following solutions for the amplitudes

$$b_1^{(s)}(x') = \frac{\cosh\left[\int_{x'}^{\infty} f_s d\eta\right]}{\cosh\left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_s d\eta\right]}, \qquad b_3^{(s)}(x') = \frac{\sinh\left[\int_{x'}^{\infty} f_s d\eta\right]}{\cosh\left[\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f_s d\eta\right]} \tag{3.24}$$

and for the reflection coefficient

$$R^{(s)} = \left|b_3^{(s)}(-\infty)\right|^2 = \tanh^2\left[f_s \triangle x'\right], \tag{3.25}$$

where $\triangle x'$ is the coherent interaction length. The reflection coefficient in the laboratory frame of reference is the probability of absorption at $v_0 < c/n_0$ or emission at $v_0 > c/n_0$. The latter can be obtained expressing the quantities f_s and $\triangle x'$ by the quantities in this frame since the reflection coefficient is Lorentz invariant. So

$$R^{(s)} = \tanh^2\left[F_s \triangle\tau\right], \tag{3.26}$$

where

$$F_s = \left[\frac{(1 - n_0 \frac{v_0}{c} \cos \vartheta)^2}{n_0^2 - 1} + \frac{v_0^2}{c^2} \sin^2 \vartheta \right]^{1/2}$$

$$\times \frac{s \omega_0 c}{2 v_0 \sin \vartheta} J_s \left(\xi \frac{2 m v_0 c \sin \vartheta}{\hbar \omega_0 (1 - n_0 \frac{v_0}{c} \cos \vartheta)} \right) \tag{3.27}$$

and $\triangle \tau$ for actual cases is the laser pulse duration in the L frame. The condition of applicability of this resonant approximation (3.23) is equivalent to the condition

$$|F_s| \ll \omega_0, \tag{3.28}$$

which restricts the intensity of the wave as well as the Cherenkov angle. Besides, to satisfy condition (3.28) we must take into account the very sensitivity of the parameter F_s toward the argument of Bessel the function, according to (3.27). For the wave intensities when $F_s \triangle \tau \gtrsim 1$ the reflection coefficient is of the order of one that can occur for a large number of photons $s \gg 1$ for the argument of the Bessel function $\alpha \sim s \gg 1$ in (3.27) (according to the asymptotic behavior of Bessel function $J_s(\alpha)$ at $\alpha \simeq s \gg 1$).

For the off resonant solution, when $\delta_s \neq 0$, but $f_s^2 > \delta_s^2/4$ from (3.22) we obtain the following expression for $R^{(s)}$:

$$R^{(s)} = \frac{f_s^2}{\Omega_s^2} \frac{\sinh^2[\Omega_s \triangle x']}{1 + \frac{f_s^2}{\Omega_s^2} \sinh^2[\Omega_s \triangle x']}; \quad \Omega_s = \sqrt{f_s^2 - \delta_s^2/4}, \tag{3.29}$$

which has the same behavior as in the case of exact resonance. In the opposite case, when $f_s^2 \leq \delta_s^2/4$ the reflection coefficient is an oscillating function of interaction length.

3.2 Quantum Description of "Reflection" Phenomenon. Particle Beam Quantum Modulation at X-Ray Frequencies

Though the phenomenon of particle "reflection" from the front of a plane EM wave is of classical nature, which means that quantum effects of tunnel passage and above-barrier reflection should be small enough, nevertheless the quantum consideration of this phenomenon is worthy of note in relation to the appearance of an important coherent quantum effect as a result of classical "reflection" of particles. The influence of spin interaction is not essential here; on the other hand, it is quantitatively small enough in the induced Cherenkov process (for optical frequencies) and may be neglected. The qualitative aspect of spin effects in the induced Cherenkov process will be considered below.

Neglecting the spin interaction, the Dirac equation in quadratic form becomes the Klein–Gordon equation, so we will consider the problem on the basis of the equation

$$-\hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial t^2} = \left\{ c^2 \left[-i\hbar\nabla - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(t - n_0\frac{x}{c}) \right]^2 + m^2c^4 \right\} \Psi. \tag{3.30}$$

Equation (3.30) over wave coordinates $\tau = t - n_0 x/c$ and $\eta = t + n_0 x/c$ is written as

$$\hbar^2 \left(n_0^2 - 1\right) \frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial \tau^2} - 2\hbar^2 \left(n_0^2 + 1\right) \frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial \tau \partial \eta} + \hbar^2 \left(n_0^2 - 1\right) \frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial \eta^2}$$

$$= c^2 \left[-i\hbar\nabla - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\tau) \right]^2 \Psi + m^2c^4\Psi. \tag{3.31}$$

As the coordinate η is cyclic (as the transverse coordinates $\mathbf{r}_\perp$), then the corresponding component of generalized momentum p_η is conserved

$$p_\eta = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{c}{n_0} p_x - \mathcal{E} \right) = \text{const}, \tag{3.32}$$

which coincides (with a coefficient) with the classical integral of motion (2.5).

Hence, the solution of (3.30) may be sought in the form

$$\Psi(\tau, \eta, \mathbf{r}_\perp) = \Phi(\tau) \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0}\mathbf{r}_\perp + \frac{i}{\hbar} p_\eta \eta \right], \tag{3.33}$$

where $\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0}$ is the initial transverse momentum of the particle in the plane of wave polarization. Then for $\Phi(\tau)$ we have the equation

$$\hbar^2 \left(n_0^2 - 1\right) \frac{d^2\Phi}{d\tau^2} - 2i\hbar p_\eta \left(n_0^2 + 1\right) \frac{d\Phi}{d\tau} - p_\eta^2 \left(n_0^2 - 1\right) \Phi$$

$$= c^2 \left[\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\tau) \right]^2 \Phi + m^2c^4\Phi, \tag{3.34}$$

which within the transformation

$$\Phi(\tau) = U(\tau) \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar} \frac{n_0^2 + 1}{n_0^2 - 1} p_\eta \tau \right) \tag{3.35}$$

turns into the one-dimensional Schrödinger equation for the introduced new function $U(\tau)$

$$\frac{d^2U}{d\tau^2}+\frac{1}{\hbar^2}\frac{1}{\left(n_0^2-1\right)^2}\left\{4n_0^2p_\eta^2-\left(n_0^2-1\right)c^2\left[\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0}-\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\tau)\right]^2\right.$$

$$\left.-\left(n_0^2-1\right)m^2c^4\right\}U=0. \tag{3.36}$$

The exact solution of (3.36) can be obtained when the particle initial velocity is parallel to the wave propagation direction ($\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0}=0$) and the latter is monochromatic of circular polarization ($\mathbf{A}^2(\tau)=$const):

$$U(\tau)=C_1\exp\left[i\tau\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar\left(n_0^2-1\right)}\sqrt{\left(1-n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)^2-\left(n_0^2-1\right)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\xi^2}\right]$$

$$+C_2\exp\left[-i\tau\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar\left(n_0^2-1\right)}\sqrt{\left(1-n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)^2-\left(n_0^2-1\right)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\xi^2}\right], \tag{3.37}$$

One can define constants C_1 and C_2 by introducing an envelope for the monochromatic wave.

Equations (3.33), (3.35), and (3.37) determine the complete wave function of the particle

$$\Psi(\tau,\eta)=\exp\left[-i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{2\hbar}\left(1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{cn_0}\right)\left(\eta+\frac{n_0^2+1}{n_0^2-1}\tau\right)\right]$$

$$\times\left\{C_1\exp\left[i\tau\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar\left(n_0^2-1\right)}\sqrt{\left(1-n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)^2-\left(n_0^2-1\right)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\xi^2}\right]\right.$$

$$\left.+C_2\exp\left[-i\tau\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar\left(n_0^2-1\right)}\sqrt{\left(1-n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)^2-\left(n_0^2-1\right)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\xi^2}\right]\right\}, \tag{3.38}$$

that is the superposition of two waves—incident and reflected—with the different energy values. If one moves from coordinates τ, η to t, x, these two values of particle energy will coincide with the classical expressions (2.10) that comprise the "reflection" phenomenon, where the sign "+" before the root corresponds to an incident particle, and the sign "−" to a reflected one.

To calculate the probability of reflection from the wave barrier one needs to consider an EM pulse with the envelope of intensity damped asymptotically at infinity. Let it have the form

$$\xi^2(\tau)=\frac{\xi_0^2}{\cosh^2\frac{\tau}{\tau_0}}, \tag{3.39}$$

where ξ_0^2 is the maximal value of intensity and τ_0 is the half-width of the pulse.

The wave function of the particle at the interaction with the field (3.39) is expressed by the hypergeometric function and for the passage coefficient we obtain

$$D = \frac{\sinh^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0\right)}{\sinh^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0\right) + \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{1-\left(\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0\right)^2\frac{\xi_0^2}{\xi_{cr}^2}}\right)} \quad \text{if} \quad \widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0\frac{\xi_0}{\xi_{cr}} < 1,$$

$$D = \frac{\sinh^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0\right)}{\sinh^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0\right) + \cosh^2\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\sqrt{\left(\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0\right)^2\frac{\xi_0^2}{\xi_{cr}^2}-1}\right)} \quad \text{if} \quad \widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0\frac{\xi_0}{\xi_{cr}} > 1. \tag{3.40}$$

Here

$$\widetilde{\Omega} = 2\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar\left(n_0^2-1\right)}\left|1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right| \tag{3.41}$$

is the quantum frequency corresponding to particle classical energy change due to "reflection" (see (2.13)) and ξ_{cr} is the classical value of critical intensity (2.12).

The major quantity $\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0$ in (3.40) $\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0 \gg 1$ (for actual parameters of electron and laser beams in a medium with refractive index $n_0 - 1 \sim 10^{-4}$ the parameter $\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0 \sim 10^{15} \div 10^{11}$ for laser pulse duration $\tau_0 \sim 10^{-8} \div 10^{-12}$ s), hence at $\xi_0 > \xi_{cr}$ for the coefficient of reflection we have

$$R = \frac{\exp\left[\pi\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0\left(\frac{\xi_0}{\xi_{cr}} - 1\right)\right]}{1 + \exp\left[\pi\widetilde{\Omega}\tau_0\left(\frac{\xi_0}{\xi_{cr}} - 1\right)\right]}. \tag{3.42}$$

This equation shows that $R = 1$ with great accuracy (the coefficient of tunnel passage in this case is of the order $\exp[(-10^{15}) \div (-10^{11})]$). If $\xi_0 < \xi_{cr}$ then the coefficient of reflection $R = 0$ with the same accuracy, i.e., the above barrier reflection is negligibly small in this case. Thus, the quantum effects of tunnel passage and above-barrier reflection do not impact on the classical phenomenon of particle "reflection" from the plane EM wave. This is physically clear since the Compton wavelength of a particle (electron) is much smaller than the space size of actual EM pulses. Nevertheless, due to the particle quantum feature as a result of classical reflection the coherent effect of quantum modulation of the free particle probability density and, consequently, electric current density occurs because of superposition of an incident and reflected particle's waves.

Thus, the particle free state after the reflection ($\xi(\tau) = 0$) will be described by the asymptotic expression of (3.38), that is,

$$\Psi(x,t) = C_1\left\{\exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(p_0 x - \mathcal{E}_0 t\right)\right]\right.$$

$$+\exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(p_0 \pm \frac{n_0\hbar\widetilde{\Omega}}{c}\right)x - \frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathcal{E}_0 \pm \hbar\widetilde{\Omega}\right)t + i\varphi_0\right]\Bigg\}. \tag{3.43}$$

Here, we have taken into account that the coefficient of reflection $R = |C_2|^2 / |C_1|^2 = 1$ and the constant phase $\varphi_0 = \arg(C_2/C_1)$; constant C_1 is determined by the normalization condition. The signs ($\pm$) in the exponent correspond to cases $\mathrm{v}_0 < c/n_0$ and $\mathrm{v}_0 > c/n_0$, respectively.

The density of electric current of the particle beam defined by (3.43) is modulated at frequency $\widetilde{\Omega}$

$$\mathbf{J}(x,t) = \mathbf{J}_0\left\{1 + \cos\left[\widetilde{\Omega}\left(t - n_0\frac{x}{c}\right) - \varphi_0\right]\right\}, \tag{3.44}$$

where $\mathbf{J}_0 = \text{const}$ is the electric current density of the initially homogeneous and monochromatic particle beam. The modulation frequency $\widetilde{\Omega}$ in actual cases lies in the X-ray domain as follows from the estimation of particle classical energy change due to "reflection" $\Delta\mathcal{E}$ in Chap. 2 ($\widetilde{\Omega} = \Delta\mathcal{E}/\hbar$).

Note that quantum modulation in contrast to classical modulation is exceptionally the feature of a single particle and so is conserved after the interaction.

3.3 Exact Solution of the Dirac Equation for Induced Cherenkov Process

Consider, the nonlinear quantum dynamics of a spinor particle in the field of a plane monochromatic EM wave in a medium. The exact solution of the Dirac equation can be found for the above-considered case when the particle initial velocity is parallel to the wave propagation direction and the latter is of circular polarization:

$$A_y = A_0 \sin\omega_0\left(t - n_0\frac{x}{c}\right); \quad A_z = A_0\cos\omega_0\left(t - n_0\frac{x}{c}\right). \tag{3.45}$$

The Dirac equation in quadratic form for the spinor wave function

$$f = \begin{pmatrix} f_1 \\ f_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

in the field (3.45) is written as

$$\left\{\hbar^2\frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} + c^2\left(\hat{\mathbf{p}} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}\right)^2 - \hbar ec\sigma\left(\mathbf{H} + i\mathbf{E}\right) + m^2c^4\right\} f = 0. \tag{3.46}$$

The complete wave function of the particle is determined by the spinor f as follows:

$$\Psi = \frac{1}{mc^2}\left[i\hbar\widehat{\beta}\frac{\partial}{\partial t} - c\widehat{\beta}\widehat{\alpha}\left(\hat{\mathbf{p}} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}\right) + mc^2\right]\begin{pmatrix} f \\ -f \end{pmatrix}, \quad (3.47)$$

where $\widehat{\alpha}$, $\widehat{\beta}$ are the Dirac matrices in the standard representation (3.2).

Equation (3.46) is a set of two differential equations of the second order for the spinor components f_1 and f_2. Passing from variables x, t to wave coordinates $\tau = t - n_0 x/c$, $\eta = t + n_0 x/c$ and looking for the solution of (3.46) in the form

$$f = e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}p_\eta \eta}\begin{pmatrix} f_1(\tau)e^{i\omega_0\tau} \\ f_2(\tau) \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.48)$$

(the quantity $p_\eta = \text{const}$ is given by (3.32)), then the variables τ, η are separated and we obtain the following set of equations for f_1 and f_2:

$$\frac{d^2 f_1}{d\tau^2} + 2i\left(\omega_0 - \frac{p_\eta}{\hbar}\frac{n_0^2+1}{n_0^2-1}\right)\frac{df_1}{d\tau} - \left[\omega_0^2 - 2\omega_0\frac{p_\eta}{\hbar}\frac{n_0^2+1}{n_0^2-1}\right.$$
$$\left. + \frac{\left(n_0^2-1\right)p_\eta^2 + e^2A_0^2 + m^2c^4}{\hbar^2\left(n_0^2-1\right)}\right]f_1 = -\frac{iecH_0}{\hbar n_0\left(n_0+1\right)}f_2, \quad (3.49)$$

$$\frac{d^2 f_2}{d\tau^2} - 2i\frac{p_\eta}{\hbar}\frac{n_0^2+1}{n_0^2-1}\frac{df_2}{d\tau} - \frac{\left(n_0^2-1\right)p_\eta^2 + e^2A_0^2 + m^2c^4}{\hbar^2\left(n_0^2-1\right)}f_2 = \frac{iecH_0}{\hbar n_0\left(n_0-1\right)}f_1.$$

Here, H_0 is the amplitude of the wave magnetic field strength: $H_0 = n_0\omega_0 A_0/c$.

This set of differential equations of the second order is equivalent to one differential equation of the fourth order the characteristic equation of which may be reduced to a biquadratic algebraic equation. The roots of the latter are

$$\Omega_{1,2,3,4} = -\frac{\omega_0}{2} + \frac{p_\eta}{\hbar}\frac{n_0^2+1}{n_0^2-1} \pm \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar\left(n_0^2-1\right)}$$
$$\times\sqrt{\left[1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \pm \frac{\hbar\omega_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(n_0^2-1\right)\right]^2 - \left(n_0^2-1\right)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\xi^2}, \quad (3.50)$$

where the signs "±" before the root correspond to an incident and reflected particle analogously to (3.38). However, due to relativistic quantum effects (spin–field interaction and quantum recoil of photons) two different values of Ω arise as for the incident particle ($\Omega_{1,2}$) as well as for the reflected one ($\Omega_{3,4}$) corresponding to the signs "±" under the root. Consequently, two critical values of intensity appear here corresponding to different initial spin projections along the direction of particle motion:

$$\xi_{cr1,2}^2 = \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2}\right)^2 \frac{\left[1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \pm \frac{\hbar\omega_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\right]^2}{\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)}. \tag{3.51}$$

From (3.47), within (3.48) and (3.50) we obtain the complete wave function of a spinor particle. We present the ultimate equations for spin projections $-1/2$ and $1/2$. If the particle spin before the interaction is directed opposite to axis OX ($\sigma_x = -1$) we have

$$\Psi_1(x,t) = C_1 \begin{pmatrix} (a_1 + a_2)\, e^{i\omega_0\left(t - n_0 \frac{x}{c}\right)} \\ a_3 + 1 \\ (a_1 - a_2)\, e^{i\omega_0\left(t - n_0 \frac{x}{c}\right)} \\ a_3 - 1 \end{pmatrix} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_1 x - \mathcal{E}_1 t)}, \tag{3.52}$$

where

$$\mathcal{E}_1 = \mathcal{E}_0 + \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2 - 1}\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} + \frac{\hbar\omega_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\right)\left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{\xi_0^2}{\xi_{cr1}^2}}\right), \tag{3.53}$$

and p_1 is determined by $\mathcal{E}_1$ via conserved quantity p_η. The quantities in the bispinor (3.52) are

$$a_1 = a_2 \frac{n_0 + 1}{n_0 - 1} \frac{\mathcal{E}_0 - cp_0}{mc^2}; \quad a_2 = i\,(n_0 - 1)\,\frac{\mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2 \xi_0}; \quad a_3 = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0 - cp_0}{mc^2}$$

and the coefficient of normalization (one particle in the unit volume)

$$C_1 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(1 + |a_1|^2 + |a_2|^2 + |a_3|^2\right)^{-1/2}.$$

In the case of $\sigma_x = +1$ we have

$$\Psi_2(x,t) = C_2 \begin{pmatrix} b_3 + 1 \\ (b_1 + b_2)\, e^{-i\omega_0\left(t - n_0 \frac{x}{c}\right)} \\ b_3 - 1 \\ (b_1 - b_2)\, e^{-i\omega_0\left(t - n_0 \frac{x}{c}\right)} \end{pmatrix} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_2 x - \mathcal{E}_2 t)}, \tag{3.54}$$

where

$$\mathcal{E}_2 = \mathcal{E}_0 + \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2 - 1}\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} - \frac{\hbar\omega_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\right)\left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{\xi_0^2}{\xi_{cr2}^2}}\right). \tag{3.55}$$

The bispinor (3.54) is determined by the quantities

$$b_1 = b_2\frac{n_0 - 1}{n_0 + 1}\frac{\mathcal{E}_0 + cp_0}{mc^2}; \quad b_2 = i\,(n_0 + 1)\,\frac{\mathcal{E}_2 - \mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2\xi_0}; \quad b_3 = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0 + cp_0}{mc^2},$$

and the normalization coefficient

$$C_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\left(1 + |b_1|^2 + |b_2|^2 + |b_3|^2\right)^{-1/2}.$$

The wave functions of reflected particles Ψ_3 and Ψ_4 corresponding to spin projections $\sigma_x = +1$ and $\sigma_x = -1$, respectively, are obtained from the expressions Ψ_2 and Ψ_1 by the replacement $\Omega_2 \to \Omega_3$ and $\Omega_1 \to \Omega_4$ and for $\mathcal{E}_{3,4}$ we have

$$\mathcal{E}_{3,4} = \mp\hbar\omega_0 + \mathcal{E}_0 + \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2 - 1}\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \pm \frac{\hbar\omega_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\right) \times\left(1 + \sqrt{1 - \frac{\xi_0^2}{\xi_{cr1,2}^2}}\right) \tag{3.56}$$

In particular, from this equation it follows that in (3.51) ξ_{cr2} corresponds to a particle with the spin directed along the axis OX, while ξ_{cr1} corresponds to the opposite one. The normalization coefficients can be defined by introducing the wave envelope as was stated in Sect. 3.2.

The expressions of particle–wave functions show that the degeneration of particle states over the spin projection that takes place in vacuum (Volkov states) vanishes in a dielectriclike medium. In that case, the wave function Ψ_1 corresponds to superposition state with energies $\mathcal{E}_1$ and $\mathcal{E}_1 - \hbar\omega_0$, while Ψ_2 corresponds to energies $\mathcal{E}_2$ and $\mathcal{E}_2 + \hbar\omega_0$. The removal of degeneration of Volkov states is related to the fact that in a medium with refractive index $n_0 > 1$ in the intrinsic frame of reference of the wave there is only a static magnetic field and the spin interaction with such a field results in the splitting of the particle states as by the Zeeman effect. The splitting value ($\Delta\mathcal{E} = |\mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_2| = |\mathcal{E}_4 - \mathcal{E}_3|$) is

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2 - 1}\left|\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} + \frac{\hbar\omega_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\right)\left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{\xi_0^2}{\xi_{cr1}^2}}\right)\right.$$

$$- \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} - \frac{\hbar\omega_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\right)\left(1 - \sqrt{1 - \frac{\xi_0^2}{\xi_{cr2}^2}}\right)\Bigg| . \tag{3.57}$$

As is seen from (3.52) to (3.55), in vacuum this splitting vanishes and the wave functions Ψ_1 and Ψ_2 pass into Volkov wave function (1.93).

The spin interaction in a medium within the nonlinear threshold phenomenon of particle "reflection" may lead to particle beam polarization since the critical intensity (3.51) depends on spin projection along the direction of particle motion. Thus, if the condition $\xi_{cr2}^2 < \xi^2 < \xi_{cr1}^2$ holds, then only the particles with certain direction of the spin (along the axis OX) will be reflected. Since the velocities of reflected particles are different from the nonreflected ones, then by separating the particles after the interaction a polarized beam may be obtained.

3.4 Secular Perturbation at Nonlinear Cherenkov Resonance

The multiphoton-induced Cherenkov interaction in the capture regime corresponding to transitions between the particle bound states occurs at the nonzero initial angles of particle motion with respect to the wave propagation direction, at which, as mentioned above, the Dirac or Klein–Gordon equations are of Hill or Mathieu type and unable to solve it exactly. However, as was shown in the quantum description of "reflection" phenomenon (free–free transitions), the interaction at the arbitrary initial angle resonantly connects two states of the particle (in the intrinsic frame of reference of the wave the states with longitudinal momenta p_x of the incident particle and $p_x + s\hbar k$ of the scattered particle; s is the number of absorbed or radiated photons with a wave vector $\mathbf{k}$), which makes available the application of resonant approximation to determine the multiphoton probabilities of free–free transitions in induced nonlinear Cherenkov process. Concerning the quantum description of the particle's bound states in the capture regime one must take into account the degeneration of initial states of free particles in the "longitudinal momentum". Therefore, regardless of how weak the field of the wave is, the usual perturbation theory in stimulated Cherenkov process is not applicable because of such degeneration of the states and the interaction near the resonance is needed for description by the secular equation. The latter, in particular, reveals the zone structure of the particle states in the field of a transverse EM wave in a dielectriclike medium. Note that in contrast to the zone structure for the energy of electron states in a crystal lattice, the zone structure in this process holds for the conserved quantity p_η, as the energy could not be quantum characteristic of the state in the nonstationary field of the wave.

First, we will solve the Klein–Gordon equation for a scalar particle (3.30) in the given coherent radiation field in a medium (3.45) or the equivalent one-dimensional equation of the Schrödinger type (3.36) in the wave coordinate τ.

Within (3.30) the state parameter p_η can be expressed by the initial parameters of a free particle:

$$4n_0^2 p_\eta^2 - (n_0^2 - 1)(\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0}^2 c^2 + m^2 c^4) = \mathcal{E}_0^2 \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \cos\vartheta\right)^2$$

and for the circular polarization of the wave (3.45), (3.36) may be represented in the form

$$\frac{d^2 U(\tau)}{d\tau^2} + \frac{\mathcal{E}_0^2}{\hbar^2 (n_0^2 - 1)^2} \Bigg[\left(1 - n \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \cos\vartheta\right)^2 + 2(n_0^2 - 1)$$

$$\times \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2 \frac{p_0}{mc} \xi_0 \sin\vartheta \cos\omega\tau - (n_0^2 - 1) \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2 \xi_0^2 \Bigg] U(\tau) = 0. \tag{3.58}$$

($\mathcal{E}_0$, p_0, v_0 are the initial values of energy, momentum, and velocity of a free particle, ϑ is the angle between the initial momentum of a particle and the wave vector of the wave; due to the azimuthal symmetry in the direction of the wave propagation OX, without loss of generality, the initial momentum of the particle is chosen in the plane XZ.)

According to Floquet's theorem the solution of (3.58) is sought in the form

$$U(\tau) = e^{i \frac{p_\tau}{\hbar} \tau} \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty} \Phi_s e^{-is\omega_0 \tau}, \tag{3.59}$$

where

$$p_\tau^2 \equiv \frac{\mathcal{E}_0^2}{(n_0^2 - 1)^2} \left[\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \cos\vartheta\right)^2 - (n_0^2 - 1) \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2 \xi_0^2 \right] \tag{3.60}$$

is the major quantity in the induced nonlinear Cherenkov process, which is the renormalized (because of intensity effect) generalized momentum of the particle in the laboratory frame conjugate to wave coordinate τ. It connects the "width of initial Cherenkov resonance" $1 - n_0 \mathrm{v}_0 / c$ and wave intensity (ξ_0^2) as the main relation between the physical quantities of this process determining also the condition of nonlinear resonance (see Chap. 2; $\mathrm{v}_x(\xi) \mid_{\xi=\xi_{cr}} = c/n_0$). In the intrinsic frame of reference of the wave p_τ corresponds to longitudinal momentum p_x of the particle on which the degeneration exists.

From (3.58) and (3.59) for the coefficients Φ_s we obtain the recurrent equation

$$(s^2 \hbar^2 \omega_0^2 - 2s\hbar\omega_0 p_\tau)\Phi_s = \frac{mc^3 p_0 \xi_0 \sin\vartheta}{(n_0^2 - 1)} \left[\Phi_{s-1} + \Phi_{s+1}\right], \tag{3.61}$$

which can be solved in approximation of the perturbation theory by the wave function:

$$|\Phi_1| \ll |\Phi_0|, \quad |\Phi_2| \ll |\Phi_1|, \ldots . \tag{3.62}$$

Then from (3.61) we find the amplitudes of the particle–wave function, corresponding to an s-photon process. But for condition (3.62) to hold, it is necessary that

$$\left|s^2\hbar^2\omega_0^2 - 2s\hbar\omega_0 p_\tau\right| \gg \left|\frac{mc^3}{(n_0^2-1)} p_0\xi_0 \sin\vartheta\right| . \tag{3.63}$$

Regarding those values p_τ for which condition (3.63) does not hold, the usual perturbation theory is already not applicable. In particular, if the expression on the left-hand side of this condition is zero, i.e., at $s = 0$ and $s = \ell$ ($\ell = 1, 2, 3, \ldots$), when

$$2\frac{p_\tau}{\hbar} = \ell\omega_0, \tag{3.64}$$

from (3.58) and (3.59) it is evident that we already have two states Φ_0 and Φ_ℓ, which are degenerated in the "longitudinal momentum" p_τ, since $p_\tau^2 = (p_\tau - \ell\hbar\omega_0)^2$. Because of this double degeneration in the state parameter p_τ for the definite p_η of the initial unperturbed system it is necessary to use perturbation theory for the degenerated states on the basis of the secular equation.

Thus, under condition (3.64), (3.58) within perturbation theory should be solved on the basis of the secular equation, according to which we search the solution in the form

$$U(\tau) = e^{i\frac{p_\tau}{\hbar}\tau}\left(\Phi_0 + \Phi_\ell e^{-i\ell\omega_0\tau}\right) = \Phi_0 e^{i\frac{\ell\omega_0}{2}\tau} + \Phi_\ell e^{-i\frac{\ell\omega_0}{2}\tau} \tag{3.65}$$

and the conserved quantity $p_\eta = p_\eta^{(0)} + p_\eta^{(1)}$, where $p_\eta^{(0)}$ is the value corresponding to the Bragg resonance condition (3.64).

In the case of one-photon interaction ($\ell = 1$), substituting (3.65) in (3.58), we obtain

$$\Delta_\tau\Phi_0 e^{i\frac{\omega_0}{2}\tau} + \Delta_\tau\Phi_1 e^{-i\frac{\omega_0}{2}\tau} + 2\alpha_1\Phi_0 e^{i\frac{\omega_0}{2}\tau}\cos\omega_0\tau$$
$$+ 2\alpha_1\Phi_1 e^{-i\frac{\omega_0}{2}\tau}\cos\omega_0\tau = 0, \tag{3.66}$$

where Δ_τ is the correction to the value p_τ^2 at the fulfillment of condition (3.64) for $\ell = 1$:

$$\Delta_\tau \equiv \frac{8n_0^2 p_\eta^{(0)}}{(n_0^2-1)^2} p_\eta^{(1)}; \qquad \alpha_1 \equiv \frac{mc^3 p_0\xi_0 \sin\vartheta}{(n_0^2-1)} . \tag{3.67}$$

By the standard method from (3.67) one can obtain the following set of equations for the amplitudes Φ_0 and Φ_1:

$$\begin{cases} \Delta_\tau\Phi_0 + \alpha_1\Phi_1 = 0, \\ \Delta_\tau\Phi_1 + \alpha_1\Phi_0 = 0. \end{cases} \tag{3.68}$$

From the compatibility of (3.68) we have $\Delta_\tau = \pm\alpha_1$. The signs "+" and "−" relate to $p_\tau^2 > \hbar^2\omega_0^2/4$ and $0 < p_\tau^2 < \hbar^2\omega_0^2/4$, respectively. Thus, at the fulfillment of condition (3.64) we have a jump in the value of p_τ^2, which is equal to $2\alpha_1$, i.e.,

$$\frac{\mathcal{E}_0^2}{(n_0^2-1)^2}\left\{\left(1-n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta\right)^2-(n_0^2-1)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\xi_0^2\right\}\geq\frac{\hbar^2\omega_0^2}{4}+\alpha_1,$$

$$0\leq\frac{\mathcal{E}_0^2}{(n_0^2-1)^2}\left\{\left(1-n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta\right)^2-(n_0^2-1)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\xi_0^2\right\}$$

$$\leq\frac{\hbar^2\omega_0^2}{4}-\alpha_1. \tag{3.69}$$

For $\ell = 1$ the matrix element of transition from state Φ_0 to state Φ_1 (here we note the state without a phase) is equal to α_1, which is also evident from (3.68). For large ℓ ($\ell \geq 2$) the matrix element of transition $\Phi_0 \longleftrightarrow \Phi_\ell$ is equal to zero in the first order of perturbation theory. In this case, it makes sense to take into account the transitions to the states with other energies in higher order. For example, for $\ell = 2$ it is necessary to consider the transitions $\Phi_0 \to \Phi_1$ and $\Phi_0 \to \Phi_2$. For arbitrary ℓ the matrix element of transition is defined by

$$\alpha_\ell=\frac{\alpha_1^\ell}{((\ell-1)!)^2\,(\hbar\omega_0)^{2(\ell-1)}}. \tag{3.70}$$

It should be noted that here it is also necessary to take into account the corrections to the energy eigenvalue of state Φ_0 in the appropriate order, however, the latter are only of quantitative character, unlike the qualitative corrections (3.70), and will be omitted.

As is seen from (3.69), the permitted and forbidden zones arise for the particle states in the wave. The widths of permitted zones in the general case of ℓ-photon resonance are defined from the condition

$$\frac{\ell^2\hbar^2\omega_0^2}{4}+\alpha_\ell\leq\frac{\mathcal{E}_0^2}{(n_0^2-1)^2}\left\{\left(1-n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta\right)^2-(n_0^2-1)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\xi_0^2\right\}$$

$$\leq\frac{(\ell+1)^2\hbar^2\omega_0^2}{4}-\alpha_{\ell+1}. \tag{3.71}$$

Such zone structure for the particle states in the wave arises in dielectriclike media because of particle capture by the wave and periodic character of the field—quantum influence of infinite "potential" wells on the particle states similar to zone structure of electron states in a crystal lattice.

To investigate the particle–wave functions on the edges of the forbidden zones we turn to the set of equations (3.68). The latter has two solutions and, hence, from (3.65) we obtain two wave functions corresponding to the top and bottom borders of the forbidden zone (3.71). Thus, for $\Delta_\tau = \alpha_1$ we obtain

$$U_+(\tau) = 2i\Phi_0 \sin\frac{\omega_0}{2}\tau, \tag{3.72}$$

and at $\Delta_\tau = -\alpha_1$

$$U_-(\tau) = 2\Phi_0 \cos\frac{\omega_0}{2}\tau. \tag{3.73}$$

With the help of (3.72) and (3.73) the particle–wave function is determined by

$$\Psi_\pm(\mathbf{r}, t) = U_\pm(\tau) \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0}\mathbf{r} + \frac{i}{\hbar}p_\eta \eta + \frac{i}{\hbar}\frac{n_0^2+1}{n_0^2-1}p_\eta \tau\right]. \tag{3.74}$$

The condition at which secular perturbation theory is valid taking into account the above-stated degeneration, is $\alpha_1 \ll \hbar^2\omega_0^2/4$, or

$$\frac{4mc^3 p_0 \xi_0 \sin\vartheta}{\hbar^2\omega_0^2(n_0^2-1)} \ll 1. \tag{3.75}$$

Thus, it can be concluded that in the induced Cherenkov process there exists zone structure for the quantum parameters p_η, $p_{\perp 0}$ (or quantity p_τ (3.60) corresponding to multiphoton "Bragg resonance" (3.64)) of the particle state in the wave. The permitted zones for this quantity are determined by condition (3.71).

Consider now the case of spinor particles. Proceeding from the Dirac equation, the wave function of a particle can be presented in the form

$$\Psi = \frac{1}{mc^2}\left[i\hbar\widehat{\beta}\frac{\partial}{\partial t} - c\widehat{\beta}\widehat{\alpha}(\widehat{\mathbf{p}} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}) + mc^2\right]\begin{pmatrix} U_\sigma \\ -U_\sigma \end{pmatrix}$$
$$\times \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0}\mathbf{r} + \frac{i}{\hbar}p_\eta \eta + \frac{i}{\hbar}\frac{n_0^2+1}{n_0^2-1}p_\eta \tau\right], \tag{3.76}$$

where $\widehat{\alpha}$, $\widehat{\beta}$ are the Dirac matrices (3.2) in the standard representation. The spinor function U_σ satisfies the equation

$$\frac{d^2U_\sigma(\tau)}{d\tau^2} + \frac{1}{\hbar^2(n_0^2-1)^2}\left[4n_0^2p_\eta^2 - (n_0^2-1)c^2\left(\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{\o})\right)^2\right.$$
$$\left. - (n_0^2-1)m^2c^4 + (n_0^2-1)\hbar ec\sigma(\mathbf{H} + i\mathbf{E})\right]U_\sigma(\tau) = 0, \tag{3.77}$$

where $\mathbf{E} = -\partial \mathbf{A}/c\partial t$ and $\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{rot}\mathbf{A}$ are the electric and magnetic field strengths of the wave. In the case of a linearly polarized wave ((3.45) at $A_z = 0$), with the help of a unitarian transformation of spinor wave function it is possible to obtain a system of two independent equations of second order for the components of new spinor function from (3.77). For the other polarizations of the wave, in particular, circular polarization, the components of spinor function are not separated and (3.77) is equivalent to a differential equation of fourth order (it is related to the absence of a definite field direction, for which the spin projection could have a definite value, as occurs for linear polarization). The above-stated spinor transformation, in the case of a linearly polarized wave, is

$$U_\sigma(\tau) = \left(\cosh\frac{\delta}{2} - \sigma_x \sinh\frac{\delta}{2}\right)\begin{pmatrix} V_1(\tau) \\ V_2(\tau) \end{pmatrix}; \quad \tanh\delta = \frac{E}{H} = \frac{1}{n_0}, \tag{3.78}$$

which represents the transformation of the spinor in four-dimensional space $(\mathbf{r}, t)$ at a rotation by angle δ. The latter has a simple physical interpretation. It corresponds to the Lorentz transformation in a system of reference moving with a velocity $\mathrm{V} = c/n_0$, where the wave electric field $\mathbf{E}' = 0$ and there is only a static magnetic field $\mathbf{H}'$, directed along the axis Z and the spin projection on it has a definite value, since in the chosen representation the matrix σ_z is diagonal.

Thus, after the transformation (3.78), (3.77) will be transformed into the following independent equations for the spinor components V_1, V_2:

$$\frac{d^2 V_1(\tau)}{d\tau^2} + \frac{1}{\hbar^2(n_0^2-1)^2}\left\{4n_0^2 p_\eta^2 - (n_0^2-1)c^2\left(\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\text{ø})\right)^2 - (n_0^2-1)m^2c^4\right\}V_1(\tau) + \frac{ecH}{\hbar n_0\sqrt{n_0^2-1}}V_1(\tau) = 0, \tag{3.79}$$

$$\frac{d^2 V_2(\tau)}{d\tau^2} + \frac{1}{\hbar^2(n_0^2-1)^2}\left\{4n_0^2 p_\eta^2 - (n_0^2-1)c^2\left(\mathbf{p}_{\perp 0} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\text{ø})\right)^2 - (n_0^2-1)m^2c^4\right\}V_2(\tau) - \frac{ecH}{\hbar n_0\sqrt{n_0^2-1}}V_2(\tau) = 0. \tag{3.80}$$

The solution of (3.79) (or (3.80)) is sought in the form

$$V_1(\tau) = e^{i\frac{p_\tau}{\hbar}\tau}\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty} K_s e^{-is\omega_0\tau}, \tag{3.81}$$

where

$$p_{\tau} \equiv \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{(n_0^2-1)} \left[\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \cos\vartheta \right)^2 - \frac{1}{2}(n_0^2-1) \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0} \right)^2 \xi_0^2 \right]^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

is the particle "longitudinal momentum" in the wave of linear polarization.

Repeating the procedure as in the case of scalar particles, we obtain the Bragg condition (3.64), at which it is necessary to use the secular perturbation theory for degenerated states. At $\ell = 1$ we obtain the following system of equations for coefficients K_0 and K_1:

$$\begin{cases} \Delta_{\tau} K_0 + \left(-i\alpha_1 + \frac{1}{2}\mu\right) K_1 = 0, \\ \left(i\alpha_1 + \frac{1}{2}\mu\right) K_0 + \Delta_{\tau} K_1 = 0, \end{cases} \tag{3.82}$$

where

$$\mu = \frac{\hbar e c H}{n_0 \sqrt{n_0^2 - 1}}. \tag{3.83}$$

From (3.82) for the correction to p_{τ}^2 we obtain

$$\Delta_{\tau} = \pm \left(\frac{1}{4}\mu^2 + \alpha_1^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{2}}. \tag{3.84}$$

It is easy to see that $K_1 = \mp K_0 e^{i\varphi}$, where $tg\varphi = 2\alpha_1/\mu$. Hence, each spinor component of particle–wave function has two values corresponding to the top and bottom borders of the first forbidden zone:

$$V_1^{+}(\tau) = K_0 \left(e^{i\frac{\omega_0}{2}\tau} - e^{-i\frac{\omega_0}{2}\tau + i\varphi} \right),$$

$$V_1^{-}(\tau) = K_0 \left(e^{i\frac{\omega_0}{2}\tau} + e^{-i\frac{\omega_0}{2}\tau + i\varphi} \right). \tag{3.85}$$

For $V_2(\tau)$ we have the same expressions as (3.85), where it is only necessary to replace φ by $-\varphi$.

At $\ell = 2$, we have already two channels for the transition from state K_0 to state K_2. The first is the result of the interaction described by a term quadratic in the field ($\sim A^2$), the matrix element of which at $\ell = 2$ is equal to $\left(mc^2\right)^2 \xi_0^2 / 4\hbar^2 (n_0^2 - 1)$, and the second channel proceeds both in the case of scalar particles via transitions $K_0 \to K_1$ and $K_0 \to K_2$, stipulated by the charge interaction $\sim \mathbf{pA}$, as well as for the spin interaction, the matrix elements of which at each transition are equal to $-i\alpha_1$ and $\mu/2$, respectively. Therefore, for two-photon transition

$$\Delta_\tau = \pm\frac{1}{\hbar^2\omega_0^2}\left[\left(\frac{1}{4}\mu^2 - \alpha_1^2 + \frac{\hbar^2\omega_0^2(mc^2)^2\xi_0^2}{4(n_0^2-1)}\right)^2 + \alpha_1^2\mu^2\right]^{\frac{1}{2}} \tag{3.86}$$

and on the borders of the second forbidden zone for the component of spinor function V we obtain (for top and bottom borders accordingly)

$$V_{1,2}^{+} = K_0\left(e^{i\omega_0\tau} - e^{i\omega_0\tau\pm i\varphi}\right); \qquad V_{1,2}^{-} = K_0\left(e^{i\omega_0\tau} + e^{-i\omega_0\tau\pm i\varphi}\right), \tag{3.87}$$

where

$$tg\varphi = \frac{\alpha_1\mu}{\frac{1}{4}\mu^2 - \alpha_1^2 + \frac{\hbar^2\omega_0^2\left(mc^2\right)^2\xi_0^2}{4(n_0^2-1)}}. \tag{3.88}$$

The obtained results for spinor particles are valid at the fulfillment of the condition

$$|\Delta_\tau| \ll \frac{\hbar^2\omega^2}{4}. \tag{3.89}$$

Thus, the quantum picture of induced Cherenkov interaction for charged spinor particles does not differ qualitatively from the case of scalar particles, i.e., the spin interaction results only in quantitative corrections to the quantities describing the process. However, in the absence of charge interaction ($\mathbf{pA} = 0$) in the first order in the field, i.e., for one-photon interaction, the first forbidden zone ($\ell = 1$) does not exist for scalar particles, but exists for spinor particles due to the spin interaction.

3.5 Inelastic Diffraction Scattering on a Traveling Wave

Up to now, we have considered the nonlinear phenomena in induced Cherenkov process at the external wave intensities exceeding the critical one—the threshold value of nonlinear Cherenkov resonance in the strong EM radiation field. However, purely quantum effects at the wave intensities under the critical value in induced Cherenkov process exist. Those are the inelastic diffraction scattering of charged particles on a traveling wave in dielectriclike media and quantum modulation of particle beams at the wave fundamental frequency and its harmonics. This and the next section of the present chapter will consider these effects.

Consider first, the diffraction of particles on the phase lattice of a slowed traveling wave in a dielectriclike medium. Neglecting the spin interaction, the Dirac equation in quadratic form is written as the Klein–Gordon equation for the particle in the field of a plane EM wave with vector potential $\mathbf{A}(\tau)$:

$$-\hbar^2\frac{\partial^2\Psi}{\partial t^2} = \left\{-\hbar^2c^2\nabla^2 + m^2c^4 + 2ie\hbar c\mathbf{A}(\tau)\nabla + e^2A^2(\tau)\right\}\Psi. \tag{3.90}$$

Equation (3.90) will be solved in the eikonal approximation by particle–wave function

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}} f(x,t) \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{r} - \mathcal{E}_0 t)\right], \quad (3.91)$$

according to which $f(x,t)$ is a slowly varying function with respect to free–particle–wave function (the latter is normalized on N_0 particles per unit volume):

$$\left|\frac{\partial f}{\partial t}\right| \ll \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}|f|; \qquad \left|\frac{\partial f}{\partial x}\right| \ll \frac{p_{0x}}{\hbar}|f|. \quad (3.92)$$

Choosing a concrete polarization of the wave (assume a linear one along the axis *OY*) and taking into account (3.90) for $f(x,t)$ we will have a differential equation of the first order:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mathrm{v}_0 \cos\vartheta_0 \frac{\partial f}{\partial x}$$

$$= \frac{i}{2\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\left[2ecp_0 \sin\vartheta_0 \cdot A_0(\tau)\cos\omega_0\tau - e^2 A_0^2(\tau)\cos^2\omega_0\tau\right] f(x,t), \quad (3.93)$$

where $A_0(\tau)$ is a slowly varying amplitude of the vector potential of quasi-monochromatic wave and ϑ_0 is the angle between the particle velocity and wave propagation direction. As $\xi_{\max} < \xi_{cr} \ll 1$, then for actual values of parameters $p_0 \sin\vartheta_0 / mc \gg \xi_{\max}$ and the last term $\sim A_0^2$ in (3.93) will be neglected. Changing to characteristic coordinates $\tau' = t - x/\mathrm{v}_0 \cos\vartheta_0$ and $\eta' = t$, it will be obvious that at the fulfillment of the induced Cherenkov condition $\mathrm{v}_0 \cos\vartheta_0 = c/n_0$ the traveling wave in this frame of coordinates becomes a diffraction lattice over the coordinate τ' and for the scattered amplitude of the particle–wave function from (3.93) we have

$$f(\tau') = \exp\left\{\frac{iecp_0 \sin\vartheta_0}{\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\cos\omega_0\tau' \int_{\eta_1}^{\eta_2} A(\eta')d\eta'\right\}, \quad (3.94)$$

where η_1 and η_2 are the moments of the particle entrance into the wave and exit, respectively. If one returns to coordinates x and t and expands the exponential (3.94) into a series by Bessel functions for the total wave function (3.91) we will have

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}} \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar} y p_0 \sin\vartheta_0\right)$$

$$\times \sum_{s=-\infty}^{+\infty} i^s J_s(\alpha) \exp\left(\frac{i}{\hbar}\left[p_0\cos\vartheta_0 - \frac{sn_0\hbar\omega_0}{c}\right]x - \frac{i}{\hbar}\left[\mathcal{E}_0 - s\hbar\omega_0\right]t\right), \quad (3.95)$$

where the argument of the Bessel function

$$\alpha = \frac{e\mathrm{v}_0 \sin\vartheta_0}{\hbar\omega_0} \int\limits_{t_1}^{t_2} E(\eta')d\eta', \tag{3.96}$$

and E is the amplitude of the wave electric field strength. The wave function (3.95) describes inelastic diffraction scattering of the particles on the slowed traveling wave in a dielectriclike medium. The particles' energy and momentum after the scattering are

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 - s\hbar\omega_0; \quad p_x = p_0 \cos\vartheta_0 - \frac{sn_0\hbar\omega_0}{c}; \quad p_y = \text{const}; \quad s = 0, \pm 1, \ldots. \tag{3.97}$$

The probability of this process

$$W_s = J_s^2 \left[\frac{ec^2 p_0 \sin\vartheta_0}{\hbar\omega_0\mathcal{E}_0} \int\limits_{t_1}^{t_2} E(\eta')d\eta' \right]. \tag{3.98}$$

The condition of the applied eikonal approximation (3.92) with (3.94) is equivalent to the conditions $|p_x - p_{0x}| \ll p_{0x}$ and $|\mathcal{E} - \mathcal{E}_0| \ll \mathcal{E}_0$, which with (3.97) gives: $|s|\, n_0\hbar\omega_0/c \ll p_0$.

In the case of a monochromatic wave from (3.98) we have

$$W_s = J_s^2 \left(\xi \frac{mc^2}{\hbar} \frac{cp_0 \sin\vartheta_0}{\mathcal{E}_0} t_0 \right), \tag{3.99}$$

where $t_0 = t_2 - t_1$ is the duration of the particle motion in the wave.

As is seen from (3.99) for the actual values of the parameters $\alpha \gg 1$, i.e., the process is essentially multiphoton. The most probable number of absorbed/emitted Cherenkov photons is

$$\overline{s} \simeq \xi \frac{mc^2}{\hbar} \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \sin\vartheta_0 \cdot t_0. \tag{3.100}$$

The energetic width of the main diffraction maximums $\Gamma(\overline{s}) \simeq \overline{s}^{1/3}\hbar\omega_0$ and since $\overline{s} \gg 1$ then $\Gamma(\overline{s}) \ll |\mathcal{E} - \mathcal{E}_0|$.

The scattering angles of the s-photon Cherenkov diffraction are determined by (3.97):

$$\tan\vartheta_s = \frac{sn_0\hbar\omega_0 \sin\vartheta_0}{cp_0 + sn_0\hbar\omega_0 \cos\vartheta_0}. \tag{3.101}$$

From (3.101) it follows that at the inelastic diffraction there is an asymmetry in the angular distribution of the scattered particle: $|\vartheta_{-s}| > \vartheta_s$, i.e., the main diffraction maximums are situated at different angles with respect to the direction of particle initial motion. However, in accordance with the condition $|s|\, n_0\hbar\omega_0/c \ll p_0$ of the eikonal approximation this asymmetry is negligibly small and for the scattering angles of the main diffraction maximums from (3.101) we have $\vartheta_{-s} \simeq -\vartheta_s$. Hence, the main diffraction maximums will be situated at the angles

$$\vartheta_{\pm\bar{s}} = \pm\bar{s}\frac{n_0\hbar\omega_0}{cp_0}\sin\vartheta_0 \tag{3.102}$$

with respect to the direction of the particle initial motion.

3.6 Quantum Modulation of Charged Particles

Coherent interaction of charged particles with a plane EM wave of intensity smaller than the critical one in the induced Cherenkov process leads to quantum modulation of the particles' probability density and, consequently, current density after the interaction at the wave fundamental frequency and its harmonics. In contrast to classical modulation of particles' current density proceeding in the free drift region after the interaction and conserving for short distances, the quantum modulation, being quantum feature of a single particle, is conserved after the interaction unlimitedly long. To reveal this quantum coherent effect it is necessary to take into account the quantum character of particle–wave interaction entirely in contrast to the above-developed eikonal approximation for particle–wave function. The mathematical point of view requires taking into account in (3.90) the second-order derivatives of the wave function as well, which have been neglected in the description of the diffraction effect.

To describe the effect of particle quantum modulation with regard to the wave harmonics we will solve (3.90) by perturbation theory in the field of monochromatic wave ($\mathbf{A}(\tau) = \{0, A_0\cos\omega_0\tau, A_0\sin\omega_0\tau\}$) of intensity $\xi_0 < \xi_{cr} \ll 1$ at which one can neglect again the constant term $\sim A_0^2$. Then we look for the solution of (3.90) in the form

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}}\exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_{0x}x - \mathcal{E}_0 t) + \frac{i}{\hbar}p_{0y}y\right]$$

$$\sum_{s=-\infty}^{+\infty}\Psi_s\exp\left[is\omega_0\left(t - n_0\frac{x}{c}\right)\right], \tag{3.103}$$

where $N_0 = \text{const}$ is the density of initially uniform particle beam. Substituting (3.103) into (3.90) we obtain the recurrent equation

$$\left[\left(n_0^2 - 1\right)\hbar^2 s^2\omega_0^2 + 2\mathcal{E}_0 s\hbar\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c}\right)\right]\Psi_s$$

$$= ecp_{0y}A_0\left[\Psi_{s-1} + \Psi_{s+1}\right], \tag{3.104}$$

which will be solved in the approximation of perturbation theory by wave function:

$$|\Psi_{\pm 1}| \ll |\Psi_0|; \qquad |\Psi_{\pm 2}| \ll |\Psi_{\pm 1}|, \ldots .$$

Thus, for the amplitude of the particle–wave function corresponding to s-photon induced radiation ($s > 0$) we obtain

$$\Psi_s = \frac{1}{s!} \frac{b^s}{(\mu + \triangle_\hbar)(\mu + 2\triangle_\hbar) \cdots (\mu + s\triangle)}, \tag{3.105}$$

and for s-photon absorption

$$\Psi_{-s} = \frac{(-1)^s}{s!} \frac{b^s}{(\mu - \triangle_\hbar)(\mu - 2\triangle_\hbar) \cdots (\mu - s\triangle)}. \tag{3.106}$$

Here the dimensionless parameter of one-photon interaction

$$b = \frac{1}{2} \frac{eA_0}{\hbar\omega_0} \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \sin\vartheta_0 \tag{3.107}$$

is the small parameter of perturbation theory: $|b| \ll 1$ and

$$\mu = 1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \cos\vartheta_0; \qquad \triangle_\hbar = \left(n_0^2 - 1\right) \frac{\hbar\omega_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0} \tag{3.108}$$

are the dimensionless Cherenkov resonance width and quantum recoil parameter, respectively. Hence, for total wave function of the particle after the interaction we have

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}} \left\{ 1 + \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} \frac{b^s}{s!} \left[\frac{e^{is\omega_0(t - n_0 x/c)}}{(\mu + \Delta_\hbar)(\mu + 2\triangle_\hbar) \cdots (\mu + s\Delta_\hbar)} \right.\right.$$
$$\left.\left. + (-1)^s \frac{e^{-is\omega_0(t - n_0 x/c)}}{(\mu - \Delta_\hbar)(\mu - 2\Delta_\hbar) \cdots (\mu - s\Delta_\hbar)} \right] \right\} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{r} - \mathcal{E}_0 t)}. \tag{3.109}$$

The current density of the particles after the interaction corresponding to obtained wave function will be expressed by

$$\mathbf{j}(t, x) = \mathbf{j}_0 \left\{ 1 + 2 \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} \frac{b^s}{s!} \left[\frac{1}{(\mu + \Delta_\hbar) \cdots (\mu + s\Delta_\hbar)} \right.\right.$$
$$\left. + \frac{(-1)^s}{(\mu - \Delta_\hbar) \cdots (\mu - s\Delta_\hbar)} \right] \cos s\omega_0 \left(t - n_0 x/c\right)$$
$$+ 2 \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} \sum_{s'=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{s'} \frac{b^{s+s'}}{s! s'!} \cos\left[\left(s + s'\right) \omega_0 \left(t - n_0 x/c\right)\right]$$

$$\times \frac{1}{(\mu + \Delta_\hbar) \cdots (\mu + s\Delta_\hbar) \cdot (\mu - \Delta_\hbar) \cdots (\mu - s'\Delta_\hbar)} \Bigg\}, \tag{3.110}$$

where $\mathbf{j}_0 = \text{const}$ is the current density of initially uniform particle beam. As is seen from (3.110) as a result of direct and inverse induced Cherenkov effect the current density of initially uniform particle beam is modulated at the wave fundamental frequency and its harmonics. This is a result of coherent superposition of particle states with various energy and momentum due to absorbed and emitted photons in the radiation field that remains after the interaction unlimitedly long (for a monochromatic beam).

We present in explicit form the expression of modulated current density for the first three harmonics

$$\mathbf{j}(t,x) = \mathbf{j}_0 \Bigg[1 - B\cos\omega_0 (t - n_0 x/c) + \frac{3}{4} B^2 \frac{\mu^2 - \Delta_\hbar^2}{\mu^2 - 4\Delta_\hbar^2} \cos 2\omega_0 (t - n_0 x/c)$$

$$- \frac{5}{8} B^3 \frac{\left(\mu^2 - \Delta_\hbar^2\right)^2}{\left(\mu^2 - 4\Delta_\hbar^2\right)\left(\mu^2 - 9\Delta_\hbar^2\right)} \cos 3\omega_0 (t - n_0 x/c) + \cdots, \tag{3.111}$$

where the modulation depth at the fundamental frequency of stimulating wave

$$B = \frac{eA}{\mathcal{E}_0} \frac{\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}(n_0^2 - 1)\sin\vartheta_0}{\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\vartheta_0\right)^2 - (n_0^2 - 1)\frac{\hbar^2\omega_0^2}{4\mathcal{E}_0^2}}. \tag{3.112}$$

The denominators in (3.110)–(3.112) becomes zero at the fulfillment of exact quantum conservation law for multiphoton Cherenkov process (3.21). In this case, perturbation theory is not applicable and the consideration in the scope of above-developed secular perturbation is required. However, in actual cases because of non-monochromaticity of particle beams the width of Cherenkov resonance is rather larger than quantum recoil ($\Delta_\hbar \ll \mu$) and one can neglect the latter in (3.111)–(3.112). Then, the modulation depth at the wave fundamental frequency (3.112) is expressed via critical intensity (2.16):

$$B = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\xi}{\xi_{cr}(\vartheta)} \tag{3.113}$$

and the current density of modulated beam (3.111) will be represented by the parameter of critical field

$$\mathbf{j}(t,x) = \mathbf{j}_0 \Bigg[1 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{\xi}{\xi_{cr}(\vartheta)} \cos\omega_0 (t - n_0 x/c) + \frac{3}{16} \left(\frac{\xi}{\xi_{cr}(\vartheta)} \right)^2$$

$$\times \cos 2\omega_0 (t - n_0 x/c) - \frac{5}{64}\left(\frac{\xi}{\xi_{cr}(\vartheta)}\right)^3 \cos 3\omega_0 (t - n_0 x/c) + \cdots \Bigg]. \qquad (3.114)$$

The equation for particle modulation being expressed in this form shows that the effect of quantum modulation at the stimulating wave harmonics proceeds at intensities smaller than the critical one when the induced Cherenkov interaction of the particles with the periodic wave field (photons) occurs. In the opposite case, the interaction proceeds with the potential barrier, i.e., the particle does not "feel" photons (periodic wave field). Note that in the last case the above-considered quantum modulation of the particles due to "reflection" phenomenon (see Sect. 3.2) occurs at the frequency (actually X-ray) corresponding to particles' energy exchange as a result of the interaction with the moving barrier. It is clear that a modulated particle beam is a coherent source of EM radiation.

Bibliography

G.S. Sahakyan, Dokl. Acad. Nauk Arm. SSR **28**, 630 (1957). [in Russian]
A.A. Sokolov, Yu.M. Loskutov, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **32**, 121 (1959)
D.A. Varshalovich, M.I. Dyakonov, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **60**, 90 (1971)
V.M. Haroutunian, H.K. Avetissian, Phys. Lett. A **44**, 281 (1973)
S.G. Hovhanissian, H.K. Avetissian, Izv. Acad. Nauk Arm. SSR Ser. Fiz. **8**, 395 (1973). (in Russian)
V.V. Batygin, N.K. Kouz'menko, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **68**, 882 (1975)
H.K. Avetissian, Phys. Lett. A **58**, 144 (1976)
H.K. Avetissian, Phys. Lett. A **63**, 7 (1977)
C. Cronstrom, M. Noga, Phys. Lett. A **60**, 137 (1977)
H.K. Avetissian, Phys. Lett. A **63**, 9 (1977)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Lett. A **244**, 25 (1998)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Lett. A **246**, 16 (1998)
H.K. Avetissian, AKh Bagdasarian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **113**, 43 (1997)
H.K. Avetissian, AKh Bagdasarian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **86**, 24 (1998)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. E **65**, 016506 (2001)

Chapter 4
Cyclotron Resonance at the Particle–Strong Wave Interaction

Abstract In this chapter we will consider a charged particle interaction with a strong EM wave in the presence of a uniform magnetic field along the wave propagation direction when the resonant effect of the wave on the particle rotational motion in the static magnetic field is possible. In vacuum, as a result of the interaction of a charged particle with a monochromatic EM wave and uniform magnetic field the resonance created at the initial moment for the free-particle velocity automatically holds throughout the interaction process due to the equal Doppler shifts of the Larmor and wave frequencies in the field. This phenomenon is known as "Autoresonance". This property of cyclotron resonance in vacuum makes possible the creation of a generator of coherent radioemission by an electron beam, namely a cyclotron resonance maser (CRM). From the point of view of quantum theory the relativistic nonequidistant Landau levels of the particle in the wave field become equidistant in the autoresonance due to the quantum recoil at the absorption/emission of photons by the particle. In addition, the dynamic Stark effect of the wave electric field on the transverse bound states of the particle does not violate the equidistance of Landau levels in the autoresonance. Then the inverse process, that is, multiphoton resonant excitation of Landau levels by strong EM wave and, consequently, the particle acceleration in vacuum due to cyclotron resonance, in principle, is possible. In a medium with arbitrary refractive properties (dielectric or plasma) because of the different Doppler shifts of the Larmor and wave frequencies in the interaction process the autoresonance is violated. However, the threshold (by the wave intensity) phenomenon of electron hysteresis in a medium due to the nonlinear cyclotron resonance in the field of strong monochromatic EM wave takes place. In contrast to autoresonance, the nonlinear cyclotron resonance in a medium proceeds with a large enough resonant width. This so-called phenomenon of electron hysteresis leads to a significant acceleration of particles, especially in the plasmalike media where the superstrong laser fields of relativistic intensities can be applied. The use of dielectriclike (gaseous) media makes it possible to realize cyclotron resonance in the optical domain (with laser radiation) due to an arbitrarily small Doppler shift of a wave frequency close to the Cherenkov cone, in contrast to the vacuum case where the cyclotron resonance for the existing maximal powerful static magnetic fields is possible only in the radio-frequency domain.

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_4

4.1 Autoresonance in the Uniform Magnetic Field in Vacuum

Let a charged particle move in the field of a plane EM wave in the presence of a homogeneous static magnetic field directed along the wave propagation direction $\nu_0 = \{1, 0, 0\}$:

$$\mathbf{H}_0 = \nu_0 H_0. \tag{4.1}$$

Relativistic classical equation of motion of the particle in the fields (1.1), (4.1) will be written in the form

$$\frac{d\mathbf{p}}{dt} = e\mathbf{E}(\tau) + \frac{e}{c}[\mathbf{vH}(\tau)] + \frac{eH_0}{c}\left[\mathbf{v}^{\circ}\mathbf{_0}\right]. \tag{4.2}$$

For the integration of the equation of motion (4.2) the latter should be written in components:

$$\nu_0 \frac{d\mathbf{p}}{dt} = \frac{e}{c}(\mathbf{vE}(\tau)), \tag{4.3}$$

$$\frac{d\mathbf{p}_\perp}{dt} = e\left(1 - \frac{v\nu_0}{c}\right)\mathbf{E}(\tau) + \frac{eH_0}{c}\left[\mathbf{v}_\perp{}^{\circ}\mathbf{_0}\right], \tag{4.4}$$

where $\mathbf{p}_\perp = \left\{0, p_y, p_z\right\}$ and $\mathbf{v}_\perp = \left\{0, \mathrm{v}_y, \mathrm{v}_z\right\}$ are the transverse momentum and velocity of the particle in the field.

As we see from (4.3) the existence of the uniform magnetic field (4.1) does not change the equation for the longitudinal momentum of the particle in the field of a plane EM wave (1.3), nor does the equation for particle energy (1.9) change. Hence, in the considered process the integral of motion $\Lambda = \mathcal{E} - c\mathbf{p}\nu_0$ for a charged particle in the field of a plane EM wave in vacuum (1.10) survives.

For integration of the equation for particle transverse momentum (4.4) we pass from the variable t to wave coordinate $\tau = t - \nu_0\mathbf{r}/c$. Then (4.4) becomes

$$\frac{d\mathbf{p}_\perp}{d\tau} + \frac{\Omega}{1 - \frac{v\nu_0}{c}}\left[\nu_0 p_\perp\right] = e\mathbf{E}(\tau), \tag{4.5}$$

where

$$\Omega = \frac{ecH_0}{\mathcal{E}} \tag{4.6}$$

is the Larmor frequency for a relativistic particle in the uniform magnetic field.

From the integral of motion $\Lambda = \mathcal{E} - c\mathbf{p}\nu_0$ follows the conservation of the quantity in (4.5)

$$\frac{\Omega}{1 - \frac{v\nu_0}{c}} = \mathrm{const} \equiv \Omega'. \tag{4.7}$$

The set of equations (4.5) for the transverse components of the particle momentum $\{p_y, p_z\}$ is equivalent to the equation

$$\frac{d\widetilde{p}}{d\tau} + i\Omega'\widetilde{p} = e\widetilde{E}(\tau). \tag{4.8}$$

Here we have introduced the complex quantities related to particle momentum and EM field:

$$\widetilde{p}(\tau) = p_y(\tau) + ip_z(\tau), \tag{4.9}$$

$$\widetilde{E}(\tau) = E_y(\tau) + iE_z(\tau). \tag{4.10}$$

The solution of (4.8) will be

$$\widetilde{p} = \widetilde{p}_0 e^{-i\Omega'(\tau-\tau_0)} + e\int_{\tau_0}^{\tau} \widetilde{E}\left(\tau'\right) e^{-i\Omega'\left(\tau-\tau'\right)} d\tau', \tag{4.11}$$

where $\widetilde{p}_0 = p_{0y} + ip_{0z}$ is defined according to initial condition

$$\widetilde{p}\,|_{\tau=\tau_0} = \widetilde{p}_0. \tag{4.12}$$

Separating the real and imagenary parts of the solution (4.11) we obtain the transverse momentum of the particle:

$$p_y = p_{0y}\cos\Omega'(\tau-\tau_0) + p_{0z}\sin\Omega'(\tau-\tau_0)$$

$$+ e\int_{\tau_0}^{\tau}\left[E_y\left(\tau'\right)\cos\Omega'\left(\tau-\tau'\right) + E_z\left(\tau'\right)\sin\Omega'\left(\tau-\tau'\right)\right]d\tau', \tag{4.13}$$

$$p_z = p_{0z}\cos\Omega'(\tau-\tau_0) - p_{0y}\sin\Omega'(\tau-\tau_0)$$

$$+ e\int_{\tau_0}^{\tau}\left[E_z\left(\tau'\right)\cos\Omega'\left(\tau-\tau'\right) - E_y\left(\tau'\right)\sin\Omega'\left(\tau-\tau'\right)\right]d\tau'. \tag{4.14}$$

Now we can define the particle longitudinal momentum (p_x) and energy with the help of (4.11) utilizing the dispersion law of the particle energy-momentum and the integral of motion Λ. We obtain the following equations in the field of a plane EM wave of arbitrary form and polarization:

$$p_x = p_{0x} + c\frac{|\widetilde{p}|^2 - |\widetilde{p}_0|^2}{2\Lambda}, \tag{4.15}$$

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 + c^2 \frac{|\widetilde{p}|^2 - |\widetilde{p}_0|^2}{2\Lambda}, \tag{4.16}$$

where p_{0x} and $\mathcal{E}_0$ are the initial longitudinal momentum and energy of the free particle.

Let us consider the case of a monochromatic wave (1.20) of circular polarization (right- or left-hand) and when the initial velocity of the particle is parallel to the wave propagation direction. For the field (1.20), when $g = \pm 1$ we have

$$\widetilde{E}\,(\tau) = -igE_0 e^{ig\omega_0\tau}. \tag{4.17}$$

Substituting (4.17) into (4.11) and assuming an arbitrarily small damping for the amplitude E_0 to switch on adiabatically the wave at $\tau_0 = -\infty$, we obtain

$$\widetilde{p} = \frac{-geE_0}{\Omega' + g\omega_0} e^{ig\omega_0\tau} \tag{4.18}$$

and by the components

$$p_y = \frac{-geE_0}{\Omega' + g\omega_0} \cos\omega_0\tau, \tag{4.19}$$

$$p_z = \frac{-eE_0}{\Omega' + g\omega_0} \sin\omega_0\tau. \tag{4.20}$$

As we see, for the left-hand circular polarization when $g = -1$ in (4.19) and (4.20) a resonant effect of the wave on the particle motion is possible when $\Omega' = \omega_0$, or taking into account (4.7):

$$\frac{\Omega}{1 - \frac{v\nu_0}{c}} = \omega_0. \tag{4.21}$$

Condition (4.21) performs the equality of the Larmor and Doppler-shifted wave frequency $\omega^{'}$:

$$\Omega = \omega'; \quad \omega' = \omega_0 \left(1 - \frac{v\nu_0}{c}\right). \tag{4.22}$$

The latter means that the particle and the wave electric field rotate in the same direction with the same frequency and as a result coherent energy exchange between the particle and the wave takes place. In addition, the energy exchange does not violate the resonance condition as the ratio of the Doppler-shifted wave frequency to the Larmor frequency of the particle is conserved:

$$\frac{\omega^{'}}{\Omega} = \frac{\omega_0 \Lambda}{ecH_0} = \text{const} \tag{4.23}$$

and the resonance created at the initial moment automatically holds throughout the interaction. This is the phenomenon referred to as "Autoresonance".

According to (4.15) and (4.16) the longitudinal momentum and energy of the particle in this case are given by

$$p_x = p_{0x} + \frac{m^2c^3}{2\Lambda}\frac{\xi_0^2}{\left(1-\frac{\Omega}{\omega'}\right)^2}, \tag{4.24}$$

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 + \frac{m^2c^4}{2\Lambda}\frac{\xi_0^2}{\left(1-\frac{\Omega}{\omega'}\right)^2}. \tag{4.25}$$

By analogy of the renormalization of the particle mass in the field of a plane EM wave for these values of energy and momentum (the average transverse momentum $\overline{\mathbf{p}}_\perp = 0$ in accordance with (4.19) and (4.20)) one can introduce the "effective mass"of the particle due to the intensity and resonant effects of the strong wave:

$$m^* = m\sqrt{1 + \frac{\xi_0^2}{\left(1-\frac{\Omega}{\omega'}\right)^2}}. \tag{4.26}$$

The comparison of (4.26) with the analogous formula (1.18) in the absence of a static magnetic field shows that instead of the parameter of nonlinearity ξ_0^2 in the strong wave field the effective nonlinearity in this process is determined by the resonant parameter $\xi_0^2/\left(1-\frac{\Omega}{\omega'}\right)^2 \gg \xi_0^2$.

At the exact resonance the solutions (4.19), (4.20) are not applicable. In this case taking into account the resonance condition before the integration in (4.11) we have

$$p_y = eE_0\tau\sin\omega_0\tau, \tag{4.27}$$

$$p_z = eE_0\tau\cos\omega_0\tau \tag{4.28}$$

and for the particle longitudinal momentum and energy we obtain

$$p_x = p_{0x} + \frac{e^2E_0^2c}{2\Lambda}\tau^2, \tag{4.29}$$

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 + \frac{e^2E_0^2c^2}{2\Lambda}\tau^2. \tag{4.30}$$

It is seen that at the resonance the energy of the particle monotonically increases.

Then, taking into account (1.15) for the law of the particle motion in the parametric form $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(\tau)$ we obtain

$$y(\tau) = \frac{c^2eE_0}{\Lambda\omega_0^2}\left(\sin\omega_0\tau - \omega_0\tau\cos\omega_0\tau\right), \tag{4.31}$$

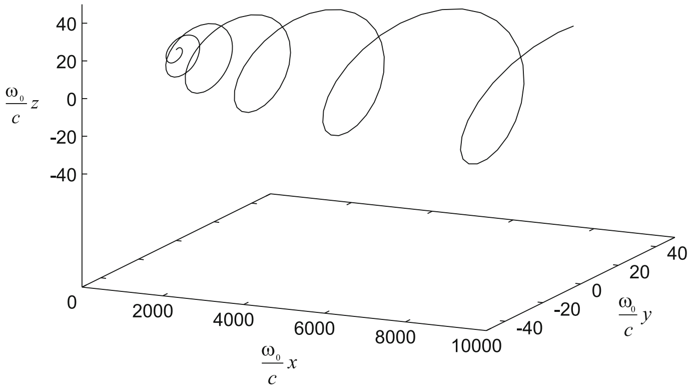


Fig. 4.1 Trajectory of the particle (initially at rest) in the field of circularly polarized EM wave and uniform magnetic field at the cyclotron resonance. The relativistic parameter of intensity is taken to be $\xi_0 = 1$

$$z(\tau) = \frac{c^2 e E_0}{\Lambda \omega_0^2} \left(\cos \omega_0 \tau + \omega_0 \tau \sin \omega_0 \tau \right), \tag{4.32}$$

$$y^2(\tau) + z^2(\tau) = \left(\frac{c^2 e E_0}{\Lambda \omega_0^2} \right)^2 \left(1 + \omega_0^2 \tau^2 \right), \tag{4.33}$$

$$x(\tau) = \frac{c^2}{\Lambda} p_{0x} \tau + \frac{e^2 E_0^2 c^3 \tau^3}{6 \Lambda^2}. \tag{4.34}$$

Equations (4.31)–(4.34) show that the particle performs helical-like motion (see Fig. 4.1) with increasing radius (in the plane of the wave polarization) and increasing step along the wave propagation direction.

4.2 Exact Solution of the Dirac Equation for Cyclotron Resonance

The quantum description of the dynamics of cyclotron resonance in vacuum in the scope of relativistic theory requires solution of the Dirac equation. The configuration of EM fields when a uniform magnetic field is directed along the axis of propagation of a transverse EM wave is one of those specific cases for which exact solution of the Dirac equation in vacuum has succeeded. The latter has the basic role for quantum description of diverse nonlinear electromagnetic processes in superstrong laser and magnetic fields.

Let a charged particle move in the field of a plane EM wave and uniform magnetic field along the wave propagation direction (OX axis). The vector potential of this configuration of EM fields can be represented in the form

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r},t) = \mathbf{A}_H(y) + \mathbf{A}_w(\tau), \tag{4.35}$$

where

$$\mathbf{A}_H(y) = (0, 0, yH_0) \tag{4.36}$$

is the vector potential of uniform magnetic field with the strength H_0 (4.1) and

$$\mathbf{A}_w(\tau) = \left\{0, A_y\left(t - \frac{x}{c}\right), A_z\left(t - \frac{x}{c}\right)\right\} \tag{4.37}$$

is the vector potential of a plane transverse EM wave (1.1). The Dirac equation in the field (4.35) is written as

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial t} = \left\{c\left(-i\hbar\nabla - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_H(y) - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_w(\tau)\right) + \beta mc^2\right\}\Psi. \tag{4.38}$$

Here α, β are the Dirac matrices in the standard representation (3.2). As the magnetic field is directed along the X axis for the Pauli matrices we will assume the σ_x to be diagonal:

$$\sigma_x = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \sigma_z = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -i \\ i & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{4.39}$$

Looking for the solution of (4.38) in the form

$$\Psi = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\begin{pmatrix} \varphi + \chi \\ \varphi - \chi \end{pmatrix} \tag{4.40}$$

and eliminating the spinor φ from the equation for χ and passing to the retarding and advanced wave coordinates

$$\tau = t - \frac{x}{c}; \ \eta = t + \frac{x}{c},$$

we obtain the Dirac equation in the quadratic form for spinor function χ

$$\left\{4\hbar^2\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\tau\partial\eta} + c^2\left[\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_\perp - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_w(\tau)\right]^2 + m^2c^4 \right.$$

$$\left. - ec\hbar\sigma(\mathbf{H}_0 + \mathbf{H} + i\mathbf{E})\right\}\chi = 0, \tag{4.41}$$

where

$$\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_\perp = -i\hbar\nabla_\perp - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_H(y); \ \nabla_\perp = \left\{0, \frac{\partial}{\partial y}, \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\right\}. \tag{4.42}$$

The spinor function φ will be defined via χ as follows:

$$\varphi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{1}{mc^2}\left\{i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t} - \sigma\left(ic\hbar\nabla + e\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}, t)\right)\right\}\chi(\mathbf{r}, t). \tag{4.43}$$

The particle quantum motion at $t \to -\infty$ when $\mathbf{A}_w(\tau = -\infty) = 0$ and only the uniform magnetic field exists is separated into the cyclotron (y, z) and the longitudinal (x) degrees of freedom. Since the coordinate z is a cyclic in this issue (also in the presence of a plane EM wave) the cyclotron motion will be described by the set of quantum characteristics of the state $\{l, p_z\}$, where by the number l we indicate the Landau levels and by p_z, the z component of the generalized momentum. Then the longitudinal motion at $t \to -\infty$ will be described by the x component of the particle initial momentum p_x. Concerning the particle transverse initial state we will assume that at $t \to -\infty$ the particle is situated in the $l = s$ Landau level. In addition, there is a fourth quantum number σ which describes the polarization of the particle: $\sigma = \pm\frac{1}{2}$ (spin projections $S_z = \pm\frac{1}{2}$ on the direction of magnetic field $\mathbf{H}_0$). So, the wave function of the particle at $t \to -\infty$ will be given by the equation

$$\psi_{s,\sigma,p_x,p_z}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \psi_{s,\sigma} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_x x + p_z z - \mathcal{E}_s(p_x)t)}, \tag{4.44}$$

where the bispinors $\psi_{s,\sigma}$, describing the states with the different spin polarizations, are

$$\psi_{s,1/2} = N\begin{pmatrix} (\mathcal{E}_s(p_x) + mc^2)\Phi_s(y) \\ 0 \\ cp_x\Phi_s(y) \\ -i\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH}\Phi_{s-1}(y) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{4.45}$$

$$\psi_{s,-1/2} = N\begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ (\mathcal{E}_s(p_x) + mc^2)\Phi_{s-1}(y) \\ i\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH}\Phi_s(y) \\ -cp_x\Phi_{s-1}(y) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{4.46}$$

and

$$N = \frac{1}{2\pi\hbar\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}_s(p_x)(\mathcal{E}_s(p_x) + mc^2)}} \tag{4.47}$$

is the normalization constant. Here

$$\Phi_s(y) = \sqrt{\frac{a}{2^s s! \sqrt{\pi}}} \exp\left[-\left(ay - \frac{p_z}{\hbar a}\right)^2\right] U_s\left(ay - \frac{p_z}{\hbar a}\right),$$

$$a = \sqrt{\frac{eH_0}{c\hbar}}$$

are the Hermit functions and the dispersion law for the particle energy-momentum is

$$\mathcal{E}_s^2(p_x) = m^2c^4 + p_x^2c^2 + 2ec\hbar H_0 s. \tag{4.48}$$

For the spin projection $\sigma = 1/2$ the quantum numbers for s are $s = 0, 1, 2, \ldots$, while for $\sigma = -1/2 : s = 1, 2, \ldots$.

Due to the existence of a definite direction of the wave propagation the variable η becomes a cyclic and the conjugate to coordinate η momentum is conserved. This is the known integral of motion (1.10). Hence, the spinor function $\chi(\mathbf{r}, t)$ can be sought in the form

$$\chi(\mathbf{r}, t) = N_f \exp\left\{-\frac{i}{2\hbar}\left(p_+\tau + \Lambda\eta\right)\right\} \chi_0(\mathbf{x}_\perp, \tau), \tag{4.49}$$

where

$$p_+ = \mathcal{E}_s(p_x) + cp_x; \quad \mathbf{x}_\perp = \{0, y, z\}. \tag{4.50}$$

Taking into account the dispersion law (4.48) for the spinor function $\chi_0(\mathbf{x}_\perp, \tau)$ we obtain the equation

$$\left\{2i\frac{\hbar\Lambda}{c^2}\frac{\partial}{\partial\tau} - \left[\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_\perp - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_w(\tau)\right]^2 + 2\frac{e}{c}\hbar H_0 s\right.$$
$$\left. + \frac{e\hbar}{c}\sigma(\mathbf{H}_0 + \mathbf{H} + i\mathbf{E})\right\} \chi_0(\mathbf{x}_\perp, \tau) = 0. \tag{4.51}$$

In (4.51) the transverse and longitudinal motions are not separated. But after the unitarian transformation for the transformed function the variables are separated. The corresponding unitarian transformation operator is

$$\widehat{U} = e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{K}(\tau)\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_\perp}, \tag{4.52}$$

where the vector function

$$\mathbf{K}(\tau) = \{0, K_y(\tau), K_z(\tau)\} \tag{4.53}$$

will be chosen to separate the cyclotron and longitudinal motions and to satisfy the initial condition. Taking into account that for the Hermitian operator $\widehat{F} = \widehat{F}^{\dagger}$

$$e^{i\widehat{F}}\widehat{L}e^{-i\widehat{F}} = \widehat{L} + i\left[\widehat{F}, \widehat{L}\right] - \frac{1}{2}\left[\widehat{F}, \left[\widehat{F}, \widehat{L}\right]\right] + \cdots , \tag{4.54}$$

for the transformed operators in (4.51) we will obtain

$$\widehat{U}\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_{\perp}\widehat{U}^{\dagger} = \widehat{\mathbf{P}}_{\perp} + \frac{e}{c}\left[\mathbf{K}\mathbf{H}_0\right],$$

$$\widehat{U}\frac{\partial}{\partial\tau}\widehat{U}^{\dagger} = \frac{\partial}{\partial\tau} - \frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau}\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_{\perp}\right) + i\frac{e}{2c\hbar}\left(\mathbf{H}_0\left[\mathbf{K}\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau}\right]\right).$$

Let us choose the function $\mathbf{K}(\tau)$ in such a form that the coefficient of the term $\sim \widehat{\mathbf{P}}_{\perp}$ in the equation for transformed function

$$\chi_0' = \widehat{U}\chi_0(\mathbf{x}_{\perp}, \tau)$$

becomes zero. Then for the function $\mathbf{K}(\tau)$ we will obtain the classical equation of motion for transverse coordinates describing stimulated cyclotron rotation in the EM wave field (see (4.5)):

$$\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau} + \Omega'\left[\nu_0 K\right] = -\frac{ce}{\Lambda}\mathbf{A}_w\left(\tau\right), \tag{4.55}$$

where Ω' is the Doppler-shifted Larmor frequency (4.7). The solution of (4.55) can be written with the help of the complex quantities

$$\widetilde{K} = K_y + iK_z; \quad \widetilde{A} = A_y + iA_z \tag{4.56}$$

as follows:

$$\widetilde{K} = -\exp\left\{-i\Omega'\tau\right\}\frac{ec}{\Lambda}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\tau}\widetilde{A}\left(\tau'\right)\exp\left\{i\Omega'\tau'\right\}d\tau'. \tag{4.57}$$

In (4.57) we have taken into account the initial condition

$$K_y(-\infty) = K_z(-\infty) = 0.$$

Hence, for the transformed spinor function χ_0' we obtain

$$\left\{2i\frac{\hbar\Lambda}{c^2}\frac{\partial}{\partial\tau} - \widehat{\mathbf{P}}_{\perp}^2 + 2\frac{e}{c}\hbar H_0 s + \frac{e\Lambda}{c^3}\left(\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau}\mathbf{A}_w\right)\right.$$

$$+\frac{e\hbar}{c}\sigma(\mathbf{H}_0+\mathbf{H}+i\mathbf{E})\Big\}\chi_0'=0. \tag{4.58}$$

Looking for the solution of (4.58) in the form

$$\chi_0'=\begin{pmatrix}\chi_1(\mathbf{x}_\perp,\tau)\\ \chi_2(\mathbf{x}_\perp,\tau)\end{pmatrix}, \tag{4.59}$$

we obtain the set of equations for the functions χ_1 and χ_2 :

$$\left\{2i\frac{\hbar\Lambda}{c^2}\frac{\partial}{\partial\tau}-\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_\perp^2+(2s+1)\frac{e}{c}\hbar H_0+\frac{e\Lambda}{c^3}\left(\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau}\mathbf{A}_w\right)\right\}\chi_1=0, \tag{4.60}$$

$$\left\{2i\frac{\hbar\Lambda}{c^2}\frac{\partial}{\partial\tau}-\widehat{\mathbf{P}}_\perp^2+(2s-1)\frac{e}{c}\hbar H_0+\frac{e\Lambda}{c^3}\left(\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau}\mathbf{A}_w\right)\right\}\chi_2$$

$$+2i\frac{e\hbar}{c}\left(E_y(\tau)+iE_z(\tau)\right)\chi_1=0. \tag{4.61}$$

Now in (4.60) the variables are separated and the solution can be written as

$$\chi_1(\mathbf{x}_\perp,\tau)=N_1^{(\sigma)}T_s(\mathbf{x}_\perp)\exp\left[i\frac{e}{2\hbar c}\int_{-\infty}^{\tau}\left(\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau'}\mathbf{A}_w\left(\tau'\right)\right)d\tau'\right], \tag{4.62}$$

where

$$T_s(\mathbf{x}_\perp)=\Phi_s(y)e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}p_z z}$$

describes the free cyclotron motion of the particle. The solution for the second function χ_2 can be obtained in the same way (adding the particular solution of the nonhomogeneous equation). Hence, for the spinor function χ_0' we obtain

$$\chi_0'=\begin{pmatrix}N_1^{(\sigma)}T_s(\mathbf{x}_\perp)\\ N_2^{(\sigma)}T_{s-1}(\mathbf{x}_\perp)-N_1^{(\sigma)}\frac{1}{c}\frac{d\widetilde{K}}{d\tau}T_s(\mathbf{x}_\perp)\end{pmatrix}$$

$$\times\exp\left[i\frac{e}{2\hbar c}\int_{-\infty}^{\tau}\left(\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau'}\mathbf{A}_w\left(\tau'\right)\right)d\tau'\right]. \tag{4.63}$$

The coefficients $N_1^{(\sigma)}$, $N_2^{(\sigma)}$ will be chosen to satisfy the initial condition. Thus, for the different initial polarization states ($\sigma = \pm\frac{1}{2}$) we have

$$N_1^{(1/2)} = \frac{\Lambda + mc^2}{2mc^2}; \quad N_2^{(1/2)} = \frac{i\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH_0}}{2mc^2}, \tag{4.64}$$

$$N_1^{(-1/2)} = -\frac{i\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH_0}}{2mc^2}; \quad N_2^{(-1/2)} = \frac{p_+ + mc^2}{2mc^2}. \tag{4.65}$$

Using inverse transformation $\chi_0 = \widehat{U}^{\dagger}\chi_0'(\mathbf{x}_\perp, \tau)$, with the help of the relation

$$e^{\hat{F}+\hat{L}} = e^{-\frac{1}{2}[\hat{F},\hat{L}]}e^{\hat{F}}e^{\hat{L}} \tag{4.66}$$

we obtain the solution of the initial equation (4.41) (taking into account (4.49)):

$$\chi(\mathbf{r}, t) = N_f \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_x x - \mathcal{E}_s(p_x)t)\right.$$

$$\left. + i\frac{e}{2\hbar c}\int_{-\infty}^{\tau}\left(\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau'}\mathbf{A}_w(\tau')\right)d\tau' + i\frac{e}{\hbar c}H_0 K_z\left(y - \frac{1}{2}K_y\right)\right]$$

$$\times\begin{pmatrix} N_1^{(\sigma)} T_s(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}) \\ N_2^{(\sigma)} T_{s-1}(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}) - N_1^{(\sigma)}\frac{1}{c}\frac{d\widetilde{K}}{d\tau}T_s(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K})\end{pmatrix}. \tag{4.67}$$

Finally, with the help of (4.43) the solution of (4.38) for spinor particle wave function can be written as

$$\Psi_{s,\sigma,p_x,p_z}(\mathbf{r}, t) = N_f \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_x x - \mathcal{E}_s(p_x)t)\right.$$

$$\left. + i\frac{e}{2\hbar c}\int_{-\infty}^{\tau}\left(\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau'}\mathbf{A}_w(\tau')\right)d\tau' + i\frac{e}{\hbar c}H_0 K_z\left(y - \frac{1}{2}K_y\right)\right]$$

$$\times\left\{\begin{pmatrix} \left(N_1^{(\sigma)}(p_+ + mc^2) + iN_2^{(\sigma)}\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH_0}\right)T_s(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}) \\ \left(N_2^{(\sigma)}(\Lambda + mc^2) - iN_1^{(\sigma)}\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH_0}\right)T_{s-1}(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}) \\ \left(N_1^{(\sigma)}(p_+ - mc^2) + iN_2^{(\sigma)}\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH_0}\right)T_s(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}) \\ \left(N_2^{(\sigma)}(\Lambda - mc^2) - iN_1^{(\sigma)}\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH_0}\right)T_{s-1}(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K})\end{pmatrix}\right.$$

$$+\begin{pmatrix} \left(N_2^{(\sigma)}\Lambda - iN_1^{(\sigma)}\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH_0}\right)\frac{1}{c}\frac{d\widetilde{K}^*}{d\tau}T_{s-1}\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) \\ -N_1^{(\sigma)}mc\frac{d\widetilde{K}}{d\tau}T_s\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) \\ \left(N_2^{(\sigma)}\Lambda - iN_1^{(\sigma)}\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH_0}\right)\frac{1}{c}\frac{d\widetilde{K}^*}{d\tau}T_{s-1}\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) \\ N_1^{(\sigma)}mc\frac{d\widetilde{K}}{d\tau}T_s\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) \end{pmatrix}\Bigg\}. \tag{4.68}$$

In particular, for the state with the spin projection $\sigma = 1/2$ from (4.68) and (4.64) we have

$$\Psi_{s,1/2,p_x,p_z}\left(\mathbf{r},t\right) = N_f \exp\Bigg[\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(p_x x - \mathcal{E}_s(p_x)t\right)$$

$$+i\frac{e}{2\hbar c}\int_{-\infty}^{\tau}\left(\frac{d\mathbf{K}}{d\tau'}\mathbf{A}_w\left(\tau'\right)\right)d\tau' + i\frac{e}{\hbar c}H_0K_z\left(y - \frac{1}{2}K_y\right)\Bigg]$$

$$\times\begin{pmatrix} \left(mc^2 + \mathcal{E}_s(p_x)\right)T_s\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) - i\sqrt{\frac{s\hbar eH_0}{2c}}\frac{d\widetilde{K}^*}{d\tau}T_{s-1}\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) \\ -\frac{\Lambda + mc^2}{2c}\frac{d\widetilde{K}}{d\tau}T_s\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) \\ cp_xT_s\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) - i\sqrt{\frac{s\hbar eH_0}{2c}}\frac{d\widetilde{K}^*}{d\tau}T_{s-1}\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) \\ -i\sqrt{2sc\hbar eH_0}T_{s-1}\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) + \frac{\Lambda + mc^2}{2c}\frac{d\widetilde{K}}{d\tau}T_s\left(\mathbf{x}_\perp - \mathbf{K}\right) \end{pmatrix}. \tag{4.69}$$

For a quasi-monochromatic EM wave the states (4.68) can be normalized by the condition

$$\int \Psi^{\dagger}_{s',\sigma',p'_x,p'_z}\Psi_{s,\sigma,p_x,p_z}d\mathbf{r} = \delta\left(p'_z - p_z\right)\delta\left(p'_x - p_x\right)\delta_{\sigma,\sigma'}\delta_{s,s'},$$

where $\delta_{l,l'}$ is the Kronecker symbol. Then for the normalization constant we will have

$$N_f = \frac{1}{2\pi\hbar\sqrt{2\overline{\mathcal{E}}_s(p_x)(\mathcal{E}_s(p_x) + mc^2)}},$$

where

$$\overline{\mathcal{E}}_s(p_x) = \mathcal{E}_s(p_x) + \frac{\Lambda}{2c^2}\overline{\left|\frac{d\widetilde{K}}{d\tau}\right|^2}$$

is the average energy of the particle in the field (4.35).

4.3 Multiphoton Excitation of Landau Levels by Strong EM Wave

On the basis of the obtained wave function consider the possibility of multiphoton excitation of Landau levels by a strong quasi-monochromatic EM wave at the cyclotron resonance in vacuum. We will consider the concrete case of circularly polarized EM wave (1.20) with $g = -1$. For a quasi-monochromatic wave it should be $A_0 \Rightarrow A_0(\tau)$, where $A_0(\tau)$ is a slowly varying amplitude with respect to the phase oscillations over the $\omega_0\tau$ and the conditions of adiabatic switching on and switching off will take place automatically.

To determine the probabilities of the multiphoton-induced transitions between the Landau levels one must first define the function $\mathbf{K}(\tau)$. After the interaction with the wave ($t \to +\infty$) from (4.57) at the resonance condition (4.21) we have

$$\widetilde{K} = -\frac{ec\overline{A}_0 T}{\Lambda} e^{-i\omega_0\tau}, \tag{4.70}$$

where T is the coherent interaction time (for actual laser radiation T is the pulse duration) and $\overline{A}_0$ is the average value of the slowly varied envelope. Substituting (4.70) into the expression for the wave function (4.68) and expanding the latter in terms of the full basis of the particle eigenstates (4.44)

$$\Psi_{s,\sigma,p_x,p_z}(\mathbf{r},t) = \int dp'_x dp'_z \sum_{s',\sigma'} C_{ss'}^{\sigma\sigma'}(p'_x, p'_z)\psi_{s',\sigma',p'_x,p'_z}(\mathbf{r},t), \tag{4.71}$$

we will find the probabilities of the multiphoton-induced transitions between the Landau levels (we expand only by positive energy solutions as in this case the Dirac vacuum is not excited). To calculate the expansion coefficients

$$C_{ss'}^{\sigma\sigma'}(p'_x, p'_z) = \int \psi^{\dagger}_{s',\sigma',p'_x,p'_z}(\mathbf{r},t)\,\Psi_{s,\sigma,p_x,p_z}(\mathbf{r},t)\,d\mathbf{r}, \tag{4.72}$$

we will take into account the result of the following integration:

$$\int \exp(-ikx)\Phi_s(a^{-1}x + ab)\Phi_{s'}(a^{-1}x + ab')dx$$
$$= \exp\left\{i\mu + i(s-s')\lambda\right\} I_{ss'}(\alpha), \tag{4.73}$$

where $I_{ss'}(\alpha)$ is the Lagger function and defined via generalized Lagger polynomials $L_n^l(\alpha)$ as follows:

$$I_{s,s'}(\alpha) = \sqrt{\frac{s'!}{s!}} e^{-\frac{\alpha}{2}} \alpha^{\frac{s-s'}{2}} L_{s'}^{s-s'}(\alpha),$$

$$L_n^l(\alpha) = \frac{1}{n!} e^{\alpha} \alpha^{-l} \frac{d^n}{d\alpha^n} \left(e^{-\alpha} \alpha^{n+l} \right). \tag{4.74}$$

The characteristic parameters μ, λ, and α are determined by the expressions

$$\mu = \frac{ka^2(b+b')}{2}; \quad \lambda = \tan^{-1} \frac{k}{b'-b}; \quad \alpha = a^2 \frac{k^2 + (b-b')^2}{2}. \tag{4.75}$$

Taking into account (4.68), (4.70), (4.72), and (4.73) we get the following expansion coefficients:

$$C_{ss'}^{\sigma\sigma'}(p'_x, p'_z) = w_{ss'}^{\sigma\sigma'}(p'_x, p'_z) \exp \left\{ \frac{i}{\hbar} (\mathcal{E}_{s'}(p'_x) - \mathcal{E}_s(p_x) - \hbar\omega_0(s'-s))t \right\}$$

$$\times \delta(p'_z - p_z) \delta(p'_x - p_x - \hbar \frac{\omega_0}{c}(s'-s)). \tag{4.76}$$

Here the Dirac δ-functions express the momentum conservation law. The transition amplitudes $w_{ss'}^{\sigma\sigma'}(p'_x, p'_z)$ for the spin projection of the particle $\sigma = 1/2$ are defined as follows:

$$w_{ss'}^{1/2,1/2}(p'_x, p'_z) = N_f N' (2\pi\hbar)^2 \Big[\Big\{ c^2 p_x p'_x + \left(\mathcal{E}_s(p_x) + mc^2 \right)$$

$$\times \left(\mathcal{E}_{s'}(p'_x) + mc^2 \right) \Big\} I_{s,s'}(\alpha) - Q \left(p'_+ + mc^2 \right) \sqrt{2sc\hbar e H_0} I_{s-1,s'}(\alpha)$$

$$+ 2c\hbar e H_0 \sqrt{ss'} I_{s-1,s'-1}(\alpha) - Q \left(\Lambda + mc^2 \right) \sqrt{2s'c\hbar e H_0} I_{s,s'-1}(\alpha) \Big], \tag{4.77}$$

and the transition amplitudes with the spin flip $1/2 \to -1/2$ are

$$w_{ss'}^{1/2,-1/2}(p'_x, p'_z) = -i N_f N' (2\pi\hbar)^2 \Big[Q \left(p'_+ + mc^2 \right)$$

$$\times \left(\Lambda + mc^2 \right) I_{s,s'-1}(\alpha) - cp'_x \sqrt{2sc\hbar e H_0} I_{s-1,s'-1}(\alpha)$$

$$+ \sqrt{2s'c\hbar e H_0} c p_x I_{s,s'}(\alpha) - 2c\hbar e H_0 Q \sqrt{s's} I_{s-1,s'}(\alpha) \Big]. \tag{4.78}$$

The analogous formula is obtained for $\sigma = -1/2$:

$$w_{ss'}^{-1/2,-1/2}(p'_x, p'_z) = N_f N' (2\pi\hbar)^2 \Big[\Big\{ c^2 p_x p'_x + \left(\mathcal{E}_s(p_x) + mc^2 \right)$$

$$\times \left(\mathcal{E}_{s'}(p'_x) + mc^2 \right) \Big\} I_{s-1,s'-1}(\alpha) - Q \left(p'_+ + mc^2 \right) \sqrt{2sc\hbar e H_0} I_{s,s'-1}(\alpha)$$

$$+ 2c\hbar e H_0 \sqrt{ss'} I_{s,s'}(\alpha) - Q \sqrt{2s'c\hbar e H_0} \left(\Lambda + mc^2 \right) I_{s-1,s'}(\alpha) \Big], \tag{4.79}$$

and the transition amplitudes with the spin flip $-1/2 \to 1/2$ are

$$w_{ss'}^{-1/2,1/2}(p'_x, p'_z) = -iN_f N' (2\pi\hbar)^2 \Big[Q \left(p'_+ + mc^2 \right)$$

$$\times \left(\Lambda + mc^2 \right) I_{s-1,s'}(\alpha) - cp'_x \sqrt{2sc\hbar e H_0} I_{s,s'}(\alpha)$$

$$+ \sqrt{2s'c\hbar e H_0} cp_x I_{s-1,s'-1}(\alpha) - 2Qc\hbar e H_0 \sqrt{ss'} I_{s,s'-1}(\alpha) \Big]. \tag{4.80}$$

Here the parameter

$$Q \equiv \frac{\omega_0 e \overline{A}_0 T}{2\Lambda} \tag{4.81}$$

and the argument of the Lagger function is

$$\alpha \equiv \frac{ceH_0}{2\hbar} \left(\frac{e\overline{A}_0 T}{\Lambda} \right)^2. \tag{4.82}$$

According to (4.76) the transition of the particle from an initial state $\{s, \sigma, p_x, p_z\}$ to a state $\{s', \sigma', p'_x, p'_z\}$ is accompanied by the emission or absorption of $s - s'$ number of photons. Consequently, substituting (4.76) into (4.71) and integrating over the momentum we can rewrite the particle wave function as

$$\Psi_{s,\sigma,p_x,p_z}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sum_{s'=0}^{\infty} w_{ss'}^{\sigma,1/2} \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar} \delta S_{ss'}(\mathbf{r}, t) \right] \psi_{s',1/2}$$

$$+ \sum_{s'=1}^{\infty} w_{ss'}^{\sigma,-1/2} \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar} \delta S_{ss'}(\mathbf{r}, t) \right] \psi_{s',-1/2}, \tag{4.83}$$

where

$$\delta S_{ss'}(\mathbf{r}, t) = p_z z + (p_x + \frac{\hbar\omega_0}{c}(s' - s))x - (\mathcal{E}_s(p_x) + \hbar\omega_0(s' - s))t. \tag{4.84}$$

Using (4.77)–(4.80) and the momentum conservation law, and taking into consideration the recurrent relations for the Lagger function

$$I_{s,s'-1}(\alpha) = \sqrt{\frac{\alpha}{s'}} \left(\frac{s - s' - \alpha}{2\alpha} I_{s,s'}(\alpha) - I'_{s,s'}(\alpha) \right),$$

$$I_{s-1,s'}(\alpha) = \sqrt{\frac{\alpha}{s}} \left(\frac{s - s' + \alpha}{2\alpha} I_{s,s'}(\alpha) + I'_{s,s'}(\alpha) \right),$$

$$I_{s-1,s'-1}(\alpha) = \frac{\alpha}{\sqrt{ss'}}\left(\frac{s+s'-\alpha}{2\alpha} I_{s,s'}(\alpha) - I'_{s,s'}(\alpha)\right),$$

the transition amplitudes $w_{ss'}^{\sigma\sigma'}(p'_x, p'_z)$ can be written in the compact form

$$w_{ss'}^{1/2,1/2} = N_{ss'}\left\{I_{s,s'}(\alpha) + \frac{\sqrt{\zeta s'}\hbar\omega_0}{\mathcal{E}_{s'}(p'_x)+mc^2} I_{s,s'-1}(\alpha)\right\}, \tag{4.85}$$

$$w_{ss'}^{1/2,-1/2} = -iN_{ss'}\frac{\left(\Lambda+mc^2\right)}{\mathcal{E}_{s'}(p'_x)+mc^2}\sqrt{\frac{\hbar\omega_0}{2\Lambda}}\alpha I_{s,s'-1}(\alpha) \tag{4.86}$$

and

$$w_{ss'}^{-1/2,-1/2} = N_{ss'}\left\{I_{s-1,s'-1}(\alpha) + \frac{\sqrt{\zeta s'}\hbar\omega_0}{\mathcal{E}_{s'}(p'_x)+mc^2} I_{s-1,s'}(\alpha)\right\}, \tag{4.87}$$

$$w_{ss'}^{-1/2,1/2} = -iN_{ss'}\frac{\left(\Lambda+mc^2\right)}{\mathcal{E}_{s'}(p'_x)+mc^2}\sqrt{\frac{\hbar\omega_0}{2\Lambda}}\alpha I_{s-1,s'}(\alpha), \tag{4.88}$$

where

$$N_{ss'} \equiv \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}_{s'}(p'_x)\left(\mathcal{E}_{s'}(p'_x)+mc^2\right)}{\overline{\mathcal{E}}_s(p_x)(\mathcal{E}_s(p_x)+mc^2)}}. \tag{4.89}$$

Now let us consider the concrete case of initial spin polarization $\sigma = 1/2$. The probability of the induced transition $s \to s'$ between the Landau levels is ultimately defined by (4.85) and (4.86):

$$W_{ss'} = \left|w_{ss'}^{1/2,1/2}\right|^2 + \left|w_{ss'}^{1/2,-1/2}\right|^2$$

$$= \frac{\mathcal{E}_{s'}(p'_x)}{\overline{\mathcal{E}}_s(p_x)}\left[I_{s,s'}^2(\alpha) + \frac{s\hbar\omega_0}{\mathcal{E}_s(p_x)+mc^2}\left(I_{s-1,s'-1}^2(\alpha) - I_{s,s'}^2(\alpha)\right)\right]. \tag{4.90}$$

For the particle initially situated in the ground state the Lagger function

$$I_{0,s'}^2(\alpha) = \frac{\alpha^{s'}}{s'!}e^{-\alpha},$$

and consequently for the probability of the induced transition $0 \to s'$ we have

$$W_{0s'} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0(p_x)+\hbar\omega_0 s'}{\mathcal{E}_0(p_x)+\hbar\omega_0\alpha}\frac{\alpha^{s'}}{s'!}e^{-\alpha}. \tag{4.91}$$

If $\hbar\omega_0 \ll \mathcal{E}_0(p_x)$ this is the well-known Poisson distribution:

$$W_{0s'}(\alpha) = \frac{\alpha^{s'}}{s'!} e^{-\alpha},$$

at which the mean value of s' is $\overline{s'} = \alpha$ and there is a maximum at $\alpha = s'$. The latter shows that the most probable transitions are

$$\hbar\omega_0 s' = \triangle\mathcal{E}_{cl} = \overline{\mathcal{E}}_0(p_x) - \mathcal{E}_0(p_x), \tag{4.92}$$

i.e., the energy change corresponds to classical dynamics. This is a consequence of the fact that the Poisson distribution describes the coherent state of harmonic oscillator which can be created from the ground state $s = 0$ (a special case of coherent state). In the coherent state the probability distribution in space retains its shape, and its center follows the trajectory of a classical particle in a harmonic well (in the considered case the static magnetic field is equivalent to a harmonic well).

Let us now estimate the average number of emitted (absorbed) photons by the electron at the cyclotron resonance for the high excited Landau levels ($s \gg 1$) and for the strong EM wave. In this case the most probable number of photons in the strong EM wave field corresponds to the quasiclassical limit ($|s - s'| \gg 1$) when multiphoton processes dominate and the nature of the interaction process is very close to the classical one. In this case the argument of the Lagger function can be represented as

$$\alpha \equiv \frac{1}{4s}\left(\frac{ec\overline{A}_0 p_\perp T}{\hbar\Lambda}\right)^2, \tag{4.93}$$

where $p_\perp \simeq \sqrt{2e\hbar H_0 s/c}$ is the particle mean transverse momentum. The Lagger function is maximal at $\alpha \to \alpha_0 = \left(\sqrt{s'} - \sqrt{s}\right)^2$, exponentially falling beyond α_0. Hence, for the transition $s \to s'$ and when $|s - s'| \ll s$ we have

$$\alpha_0 \simeq \frac{\left(s' - s\right)^2}{4s}. \tag{4.94}$$

The energy change of the particle according to classical perturbation theory (when $e\overline{A}_0\omega_0 T/c \ll p_\perp$) is

$$\triangle\mathcal{E}_{cl} = \frac{ecp_\perp\overline{A}_0\omega_0 T}{\Lambda}. \tag{4.95}$$

The comparison of this expression with (4.93) and (4.94) shows that the most probable transitions are

$$|s - s'| \simeq \frac{\triangle\mathcal{E}_{cl}}{\hbar\omega_0}, \tag{4.96}$$

in accordance with the correspondence principle.

4.4 Cyclotron Resonance in a Medium. Nonlinear Threshold Phenomenon of "Electron Hysteresis"

Consider now the dynamics of cyclotron resonance in the field of a strong EM wave in a medium. In this case the problem can be solved analytically only for the circular polarization of monochromatic wave and if the initial velocity of the particle is directed along the axis of the wave propagation. The particle equations of motion in components in this process are written as

$$\frac{dp_x}{dt} = n_0 \frac{e}{c} \left[\mathrm{v}_y E_y(\tau) + \mathrm{v}_z E_z(\tau) \right], \tag{4.97}$$

$$\frac{dp_y}{dt} = e \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c} \right) E_y(\tau) + e \frac{\mathrm{v}_z}{c} H_0, \tag{4.98}$$

$$\frac{dp_z}{dt} = e \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c} \right) E_z(\tau) - e \frac{\mathrm{v}_y}{c} H_0. \tag{4.99}$$

As long as the equation for the particle longitudinal momentum (4.97) is not changed in the presence of a uniform magnetic field with respect to (2.2) in the field of a plane EM wave in a medium, and the equation for the particle energy change in the field (1.9) remains unchanged, then we have the same integral of motion (2.5) in this process. Hence, with the help of the latter one can represent the particle longitudinal velocity

$$\mathrm{v}_x = c n_0 \frac{\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c n_0}\right) - \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right) \left[1 \mp \frac{\mathbf{p}_\perp^2(\tau)}{(mc\zeta)^2} \right]^{1/2}}{n_0^2 \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c n_0}\right) - \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right) \left[1 \mp \frac{\mathbf{p}_\perp^2(\tau)}{(mc\zeta)^2} \right]^{1/2}} \tag{4.100}$$

and energy

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_0^2 - 1} \left\{ n_0^2 \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c n_0} \right) - \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \right) \left[1 \mp \frac{\mathbf{p}_\perp^2(\tau)}{(mc\zeta)^2} \right]^{1/2} \right\} \tag{4.101}$$

via the transverse momentum $\mathbf{p}_\perp(\tau) = \left\{0, p_y(\tau), p_z(\tau)\right\}$ in the field. Here the parameter ζ is

$$\zeta \equiv \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2} \frac{\left|1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right|}{\sqrt{\left|n_0^2 - 1\right|}}. \tag{4.102}$$

Note that ζ is the critical value of the wave intensity (2.10) (at $n_0 > 1$) for the particle "reflection" phenomenon in the absence of a static magnetic field ($H_0 = 0$). The sign "$-$ " under the roots in (4.100), (4.101) corresponds to the case of the interaction in dielectriclike media with $n_0 > 1$ and the sign "+", plasmalike media with $n_0 < 1$. Note that in contrast to the case $H_0 = 0$ (induced Cherenkov process) in

(4.100), (4.101) before the root, only the sign "−" is taken (in accordance with the initial conditions $v_x = v_0$ and $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0$ of the free particle) since, as will be shown below, in this case the expression under the root is always positive and consequently the root cannot change its sign. Formally, (4.100) and (4.101) have the same form as the analogous equations (2.7) and (2.9) if $\mathbf{p}_\perp^2(\tau)/m^2c^2 \to \xi^2(\tau)$. However, there is a principal difference between these equations because of the above-mentioned fact. In particular, in the presence of a static magnetic field the particle "reflection" and capture phenomena vanish—the particle longitudinal velocity cannot reach the phase velocity of the wave (threshold value for nonlinear Cherenkov resonance in the wave field) due to the particle transverse rotation in the uniform magnetic field.

Now the considered problem reduces to definition of the particle transverse momentum $\mathbf{p}_\perp(\tau)$. To integrate (4.98) and (4.99) it is convenient to pass from the variable t to wave coordinate $\tau = t - n_0 x/c$. Then taking into account (4.100) and (4.101) for the particle transverse momentum we will have the equations

$$\frac{dp_y}{d\tau} = eE_y(\tau) + \frac{ecH_0}{\mathcal{E}_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{v_0}{c}\right)\left[1 \mp \frac{\mathbf{p}_\perp^2(\tau)}{(mc\zeta)^2}\right]^{1/2}} p_z(\tau),$$

$$\frac{dp_z}{d\tau} = eE_z(\tau) - \frac{ecH_0}{\mathcal{E}_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{v_0}{c}\right)\left[1 \mp \frac{\mathbf{p}_\perp^2(\tau)}{(mc\zeta)^2}\right]^{1/2}} p_y(\tau). \tag{4.103}$$

From the set of (4.103) one can obtain the equation for the complex quantity

$$Z(\tau) = \frac{p_y(\tau) + ip_z(\tau)}{mc} \tag{4.104}$$

related to the dimensionless parameter of the particle transverse momentum. It is written as

$$\frac{dZ(\tau)}{d\tau} = \frac{eE(\tau)}{mc} - i\frac{\Omega_0}{\left(1 - n_0\frac{v_0}{c}\right)\left[1 \mp \frac{|Z(\tau)|^2}{\zeta^2}\right]^{1/2}} Z(\tau), \tag{4.105}$$

where

$$E(\tau) = E_y(\tau) + iE_z(\tau)$$

and

$$\Omega_0 = \frac{ecH_0}{\mathcal{E}_0}$$

is the Larmor frequency for the initial velocity of the particle.

For an arbitrary plane EM wave (4.105) is a nonlinear equation the exact solution of which cannot be found. However, for the monochromatic wave of circular polarization when

$$E(\tau) = E_0 e^{-i\omega_0 \tau}, \tag{4.106}$$

one can find the exact solution of (4.105). The latter is sought in the form

$$Z(\tau) = Z_0 e^{-i\omega_0 \tau} \tag{4.107}$$

and for the transverse momentum of the particle we obtain the following algebraic equation:

$$\left(1 - \frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0 \left(1 - n_0 \frac{v_0}{c}\right) \sqrt{1 \mp \beta^2}}\right) \beta = X, \tag{4.108}$$

where the quantities E_0, Z_0 are expressed in the scale of the parameter ζ:

$$\frac{Z_0}{\zeta} \equiv i\beta; \quad \frac{eE_0}{mc\omega_0 \zeta} = \frac{\xi_0}{\zeta} \equiv X. \tag{4.109}$$

We will not represent here the exact solution of (4.108) for β. An interesting nonlinear phenomenon exists in this process which can be found out through the graphical solution of (4.108). Thus, depending on the ratio of the Larmor and wave frequencies as well as on the initial velocity of the particle (in the case of dielectriclike medium where $v_0 \lesseqgtr c/n_0$) the solution of (4.108) is a single-valued or multivalent that essentially changes the interaction behavior of the particle with a strong EM wave at the nonlinear cyclotron resonance in a medium. Hence, we will consider separately the cases $\Omega_0 \geq \omega_0'$ and $\Omega_0 < \omega_0'$ at $v_0 < c/n_0$ where

$$\omega_0' = \omega_0 \left(1 - n_0 \frac{v_0}{c}\right) \tag{4.110}$$

is the Doppler-shifted frequency of the wave for the initial velocity of the particle. If $v_0 > c/n_0$ the effects considered here will take place with the opposite circular polarization of the wave ($\omega_0 \to -\omega_0$) or in the opposite direction of the uniform magnetic field ($\mathbf{H}_0 \to -\mathbf{H}_0$).

Consider first the case of a medium with refractive index $n_0 > 1$ (sign "−" under the root) in (4.108). We will turn on the EM wave adiabatically and draw the graphic of dependence of the particle transverse momentum on the wave intensity $\beta(X)$. For the case $\Omega_0 \geqslant \omega_0'$ the latter is illustrated in Fig. 4.2a. As is seen from this graphic with the increase of the wave intensity the transverse momentum of the particle increases in the field (consequently the energy as well) and vice versa: with the decrease of the wave intensity it decreases in the field and after the passing of the wave ($X = 0$) the transverse momentum becomes zero ($\beta = 0$), i.e., the particle momentum-energy remain unchanged: $p = p_0$ and $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0$.

With the increase of the transverse momentum the longitudinal velocity of the particle increases as well, but in contrast to the case $\mathbf{H}_0 = 0$ it always remains smaller than the wave phase velocity if initially the wave overtakes the particle ($v_0 < c/n_0$) and larger if the particle overtakes the wave ($v_0 > c/n_0$). For this reason the particle "reflection" phenomenon vanishes in the presence of a uniform magnetic field. Indeed, as is seen from (4.108) for an arbitrary finite value of X we have $\beta < 1$ and from (4.100) it follows that the longitudinal velocity of the particle in the field $v_x < c/n_0$ if $v_0 < c/n_0$ and $v_x > c/n_0$ if $v_0 > c/n_0$. The value $\beta = 1$ may be reached only at $X = \infty$ when the root in (4.100) becomes zero and $v_x = c/n_0$. So, the expression under the roots in (4.100), (4.101) cannot become zero for finite intensities of the EM wave and, consequently, the root cannot change its sign. According to the latter in (4.100), (4.101) before the roots only the sign "−" has been taken so as to satisfy the initial condition.

Consider now the case $\Omega_0 < \omega_0'$. The graphic of dependence of the particle transverse momentum on the wave intensity $\beta(X)$ in this case is illustrated in Fig. 4.2b. As is seen from this graphic $\beta(X)$ is already a multivalent function: for wave intensities smaller than the value corresponding to the maximum point of the curve $\beta(X)$ three

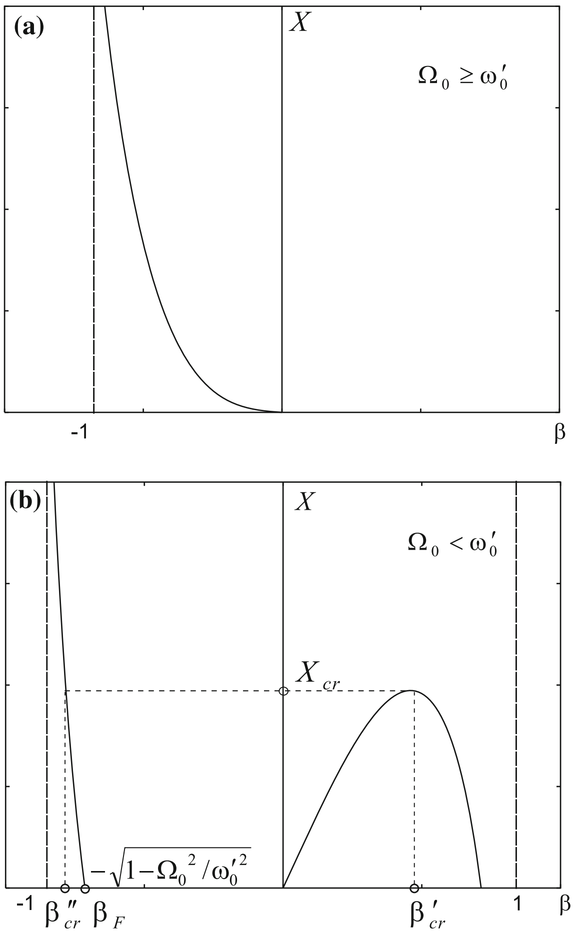


Fig. 4.2 Dependence of normalized transverse momentum β on the normalized EM wave amplitude X at $n_0 > 1$

values of the particle transverse momentum exist for each value of the wave intensity. At the maximum point, which will be called a critical one, the wave intensity has the value

$$X_{cr} = \left[1 - \left(\frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}\right)^{2/3}\right]^{3/2}. \tag{4.111}$$

There are two values β_{cr}' and β_{cr}'' which correspond to critical intensity (4.111). The first one, β_{cr}', is the value of the parameter β corresponding to particle transverse momentum at the maximum point of the curve $\beta(X)$. From the extremum condition of (4.108) for β_{cr}' we have

$$\beta_{cr}' = \left[1 - \left(\frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}\right)^{2/3}\right]^{1/2}. \tag{4.112}$$

The second critical value for the parameter β corresponding to critical intensity X_{cr} is situated on the left-hand side branch of the curve $\beta(X)$. To determine its value one needs the analytic solution $\beta = \beta(X)$ of (4.108), but there is no necessity here to present the bulk expression for β_{cr}''.

We shall decide on that branch of the curve $\beta(X)$ which corresponds to real motion of the particle. Up to the critical point the particle transverse momentum can be changed on that branch which corresponds to initial condition $\beta = 0$ at $X = 0$. On this branch the particle momentum increases with the increase of the wave intensity and vice versa. It is evident that with further increase of the field the particle cannot be situated on the right-hand side from the critical point. Hence, it should pass to the left-hand side branch of the curve $\beta(X)$. Indeed, it is easy to see that the critical point is an unstable state for the particle, while all states on the left-hand side branch of the curve $\beta(X)$ are stable and at the critical point the particle changes instantaneously its transverse momentum and passes by jumping to that branch. The further variation of the particle transverse momentum occurs already on this branch. Note that the instantaneity here is related to the fact that the solution of (4.105) has been found for the monochromatic wave. It is clear that the momentum change actually occurs during finite time. This jump variation of the particle momentum (energy) is due to the induced resonant absorption of energy from the wave at the critical point because of which the particle state at this point becomes unstable and it leaves the resonance point for a stable state that corresponds to the transverse momentum β_{cr}'' on the left-hand side branch of the curve $\beta(X)$. Indeed, if one draws a graphic of the dependence of the particle transverse momentum on the ratio of the Larmor and wave frequencies Ω_0/ω_0' for a certain intensity of the wave (Fig. 4.3), it will be seen from the graphic $\beta(\Omega_0/\omega_0')$ that the cyclotron resonance in the strong EM wave field takes place at the critical point with the satisfaction of the condition $\Omega_0 < \omega_0'$. The latter means that to reach the cyclotron resonance in a medium, in contrast to vacuum autoresonance it is necessary to be initially under the resonance condition, since due to the effect of the strong wave field in a medium with refractive index $n_0 > 1$ the Larmor frequency

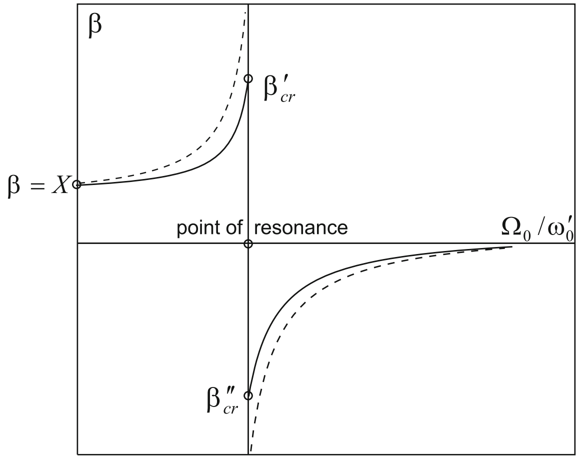


Fig. 4.3 Dependence of normalized transverse momentum on parameter $\Omega_0/\omega_0' < 1$ at $n_0 > 1$

increases in the field and then reaches the resonance value. In vacuum the cyclotron resonance proceeds at $\Omega_0 = \omega_0'$ which survives infinitely, because of which the energy of the particle turns to infinity. Thus, from (4.108) in this case ($n_0 = 1$) for the particle transverse momentum we have

$$\beta = \frac{X}{1 - \frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}}, \tag{4.113}$$

which diverges (consequently the energy as well) at $\Omega_0 = \omega_0'$. As is seen from Fig. 4.3 this divergence vanishes in a medium.

With the further increase of the field ($X > X_{cr}$) the transverse momentum of the particle will continuously increase on the left-hand side branch of the curve $\beta(X)$ and tend to value -1 at $X \to \infty$. With the decrease of the field the transverse momentum decreases on this branch and at $X = X_{cr}$ already has only the value β_{cr}'' since the value β_{cr}' corresponds to the unstable state at the resonance point and now there is no reason for inverse transition from the stable state to the unstable one. With the further decrease of the field the transverse momentum decreases, but as is seen from Fig. 4.2 after the interaction ($X = 0$) the particle does not return to the initial state ($\beta = 0$ at $X = 0$) and remains with the final transverse momentum

$$\beta_F = -\left[1 - \left(\frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}\right)^2\right]^{1/2}. \tag{4.114}$$

This is a nonlinear phenomenon of charged particle hysteresis in the cyclotron resonance with a strong EM wave in a medium at intensities exceeding the threshold value (4.111).

The longitudinal velocity of the particle corresponding to the value β_F (4.114) is

$$\mathrm{v}_x = cn_0 \frac{1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{cn_0} - \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right) \frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}}{n_0^2 \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{cn_0}\right) - \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right) \frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}}. \tag{4.115}$$

The energy acquired by the particle due to hysteresis is given by

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 \left[1 + \frac{\left(1 - n_0 \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right) \left(1 - \frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}\right)}{n_0^2 - 1} \right]. \tag{4.116}$$

If the wave intensity is smaller than the critical value (4.111) the energy of the particle oscillates in the field and after the interaction remains unchanged.

Equation (4.116) determines the particle acceleration due to a strong transverse EM wave at the cyclotron resonance with the powerful static magnetic field in a gaseous medium ($n_0 - 1 \ll 1$). Because of the latter one can achieve the cyclotron resonance using optical (laser) radiation in a medium with the refractive index $n_0 > 1$, since the Doppler shift for a wave frequency $1 - n_0 \mathrm{v}_0/c$ (see (4.110)) in this case may be arbitrarily small in contrast to vacuum, where the cyclotron resonance for the existing powerful static magnetic fields is possible only in the radio-frequency domain. On the other hand, the application of powerful laser radiation for large acceleration of the particles in gaseous media is confined by the ionization threshold of the medium.

Consider now the case of a plasmous medium ($n_0 < 1$). In (4.108) this case should take the sign "+" under the root at which the confinement for the particle transverse momentum, existing in a dielectriclike medium, vanishes. In addition, the above-considered behavior of the cyclotron resonance in a plasmous medium takes place with the inverse relation between the initial Larmor and wave frequencies Ω_0/ω_0'. Thus, at $\Omega_0 \leqslant \omega_0'$ with the increase of the wave intensity the transverse momentum of the particle increases in the field and vice versa: with the decrease of the wave intensity it decreases in the field and after the passing of the wave ($X = 0$) the transverse momentum becomes zero ($\beta = 0$), i.e., the particle momentum-energy remain unchanged: $p = p_0$ and $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0$. The nonlinear phenomenon of particle hysteresis in a plasmous medium takes place at $\Omega_0 > \omega_0'$, since in a medium with refractive index $n_0 < 1$ the Larmor frequency decreases in the field and then becomes equal to the resonance value. The graphic of dependence of the particle transverse momentum on the wave intensity $\beta(X)$ in this case is illustrated in Fig. 4.4. As is seen from this graphic, in contrast to the case of dielectriclike media the parameter β in the plasmas increases with no limit at the increase of the field. The latter allows the large acceleration of the particles achieved by the current superstrong laser fields of relativistic intensities ($\xi > 1$) due to this phenomenon of hysteresis in the plasmas.

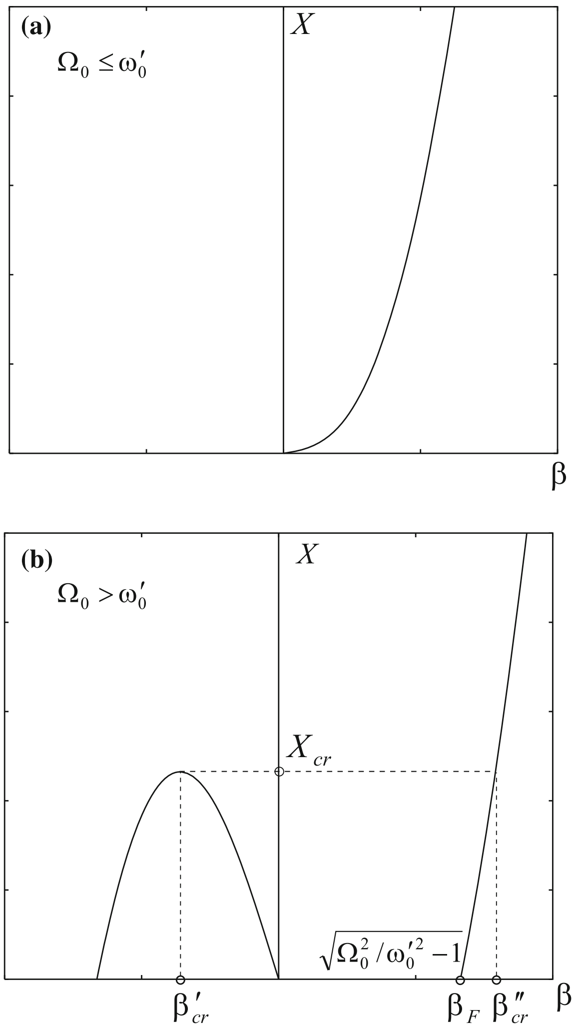


Fig. 4.4 Dependence of normalized transverse momentum β on the normalized EM wave amplitude X at $n_0 < 1$

The final transverse momentum of the particle as a result of the hysteresis in this case is

$$\beta_F = \left[\left(\frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'} \right)^2 - 1 \right]^{1/2}, \tag{4.117}$$

the final energy of which will be determined by the same equation (4.116) since both the numerator and denominator of the fraction in the expression analogous to (4.116) for the particle energy in a plasma change sign.

Note an interesting effect at the cyclotron resonance in a medium as well. At $\Omega_0 = \omega_0'$ no matter how weak the EM wave field is — $\xi_0 \ll \zeta$ (that is, $\xi_0 \ll 1$ even for $\zeta \sim 1$)—from (4.108) it follows that

$$|\beta| \simeq \left(\frac{2\xi_0}{\zeta}\right)^{1/3}, \tag{4.118}$$

that is, an essential nonlinearity ($\sim \xi_0^{1/3} \gg \xi_0$) arises in a case where one would expect a linear dependence on the field according to linear theory. It is the consequence of nonlinear cyclotron resonance the width of which is large enough in this case:

$$\triangle\omega \simeq 2^{-1/3} \cdot \left(\frac{\xi_0}{\zeta}\right)^{2/3} \omega_0'. \tag{4.119}$$

4.5 High Harmonics Radiation at Cyclotron Resonance

The considered phenomena at the cyclotron resonance in vacuum and in a medium will resonantly enhance the efficiency of charged particle radiation in the presence of a uniform magnetic field with respect to Compton radiation in the strong wave field. Hence, here we will consider the radiation of a charged particle in the field of a strong monochromatic EM wave in the presence of a uniform magnetic field directed along the wave propagation direction in the scope of the classical theory. We will analyze the case of circular polarization of the incident wave and when the initial velocity of the particle is parallel to the wave propagation direction. This case of particle–wave parallel propagation is of certain interest since in this case the interaction length with the actual laser beams is maximal, which is especially important for the problem of high harmonic generation.

To determine the radiation energy at the cyclotron resonance in vacuum and in a medium we will consider the general case of radiation in a medium and then we will move to the vacuum case substituting the refractive index of a medium $n_0 = n(\omega) = 1$ in the ultimate equation for radiation energy. The latter is given by (2.50) where the kinematic quantities $\mathbf{v}(t)$ and $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ for the cyclotron resonance in a medium will be defined by (4.100), (4.101), and (4.108). If in the considered case

$$p_y^2(\tau) + p_z^2(\tau) = p_\perp^2 = \text{const},$$

then the longitudinal velocity and the energy of the particle in the field

$$\mathrm{v}_x = \text{const}; \quad \mathcal{E} = \text{const}, \tag{4.120}$$

and from (4.104), (4.107), and (4.109) for the transverse components of the particle momentum we will have

$$\mathrm{v}_y(t) = \frac{mc^3\zeta\beta}{\mathcal{E}} \sin\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)t,$$

$$\mathrm{v}_z(t) = \frac{mc^3\zeta\beta}{\mathcal{E}} \cos\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)t. \tag{4.121}$$

The particle law of motion $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ corresponding to (4.120) and (4.121) is

$$x(t) = \mathrm{v}_x t,$$

$$y(t) = -\frac{mc^3\zeta\beta}{\mathcal{E}\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)} \cos\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)t, \tag{4.122}$$

$$z(t) = \frac{mc^3\zeta\beta}{\mathcal{E}\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)} \sin\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)t.$$

Substituting (4.120)–(4.122) into (2.50) and integrating over t, the following ultimate equation for the spectral power of the particle radiation at the cyclotron resonance in a medium is obtained:

$$dP_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{e^2 n(\omega)\omega^2}{2\pi c^3}\mathrm{v}_\perp^2 \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta\left(\omega\left(1 - n(\omega)\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\cos\vartheta\right) - s\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)\right)$$

$$\times\left[\left(\frac{n^2(\omega)\mathrm{v}_x^2 - c^2}{n^2(\omega)\mathrm{v}_\perp^2} + \left(\frac{s}{\alpha}\right)^2\right) J_s^2(\alpha) + J_s'^2(\alpha)\right] d\omega dO. \tag{4.123}$$

Here

$$\mathrm{v}_\perp = \frac{mc^3\zeta\beta}{\mathcal{E}} \tag{4.124}$$

is the amplitude of the transverse velocity of the particle in the field, and the argument of the Bessel function α is

$$\alpha = n(\omega)\frac{mc^2\omega\zeta\beta}{\mathcal{E}\omega_0\left(1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)}\sin\vartheta. \tag{4.125}$$

Noting that

$$\frac{n^2(\omega)\mathrm{v}^2 - c^2}{n^2(\omega)\mathrm{v}_\perp^2} = -\frac{1}{(\zeta\beta)^2}\left[1 - \frac{\mathcal{E}^2}{m^2c^4}\frac{n^2(\omega) - 1}{n^2(\omega)}\right]$$

Equation (4.123) may be written in the form

$$dP_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{e^2 n(\omega)\omega^2}{2\pi c\left|1 - n(\omega)\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\cos\vartheta\right|}\left(\zeta\beta\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}}\right)^2$$

$$\times\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}\left\{\left[\left(\frac{s}{\alpha}\right)^2 - 1 - \frac{1}{(\zeta\beta)^2}\left(1 - \frac{\mathcal{E}^2}{m^2c^4}\frac{n^2(\omega) - 1}{n^2(\omega)}\right)\right] J_s^2(\alpha) + J_s'^2(\alpha)\right\}$$

$$\times\,\delta\left(\omega - s\omega_0\frac{1-n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}}{1-n(\omega)\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\cos\vartheta}\right)d\omega dO. \tag{4.126}$$

Consider first the case of vacuum. If $n_0 = n(\omega) = 1$ when the autoresonance phenomenon takes place, parameters (4.124) and (4.125) become

$$\mathrm{v}_\perp = \frac{mc^3}{\mathcal{E}}\frac{\xi_0}{1-\frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}}, \quad \alpha = \frac{\omega mc^2}{\omega_0 \Lambda}\frac{\xi_0}{1-\frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}}\sin\vartheta,$$

where Λ is the integral of motion in vacuum (1.10) and $\omega_0' = \omega_0\,(1-\mathrm{v}_0/c)$ is the Doppler-shifted frequency of the incident strong wave for the initial velocity of the particle. Then from (4.126) for the radiation power in vacuum we obtain

$$dP_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{e^2}{2\pi c}\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}}\right)^2\frac{\omega^2}{1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\cos\vartheta}\frac{\xi_0^2}{\left(1-\frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}\right)^2}\sum_{s=1}^{\infty}\delta\left(\omega - s\omega_0\frac{1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}}{1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\cos\vartheta}\right)$$

$$\times\left[\left\{\left(\frac{s}{\alpha}\right)^2 - 1 - \frac{\left(1-\frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}\right)^2}{\xi_0^2}\right\}J_s^2(\alpha) + J_s'^2(\alpha)\right]d\omega dO. \tag{4.127}$$

Note that in (4.127) the term $s = 0$ corresponds to $\omega = 0$ (according to the δ-function) for which the radiation power is zero, so that the summation proceeds from $s = 1$. The $s = 0$ harmonic arises in a dielectriclike medium which corresponds to Cherenkov radiation. Concerning the terms with the negative s in the sum (4.127), then they are zero in vacuum according to the argument of the δ-function taking into account that $\omega_0, \omega > 0$.

In the absence of a static magnetic field ($\Omega_0 = 0$) (4.127) coincides with the equation for the spectral power of nonlinear Compton radiation (1.61). Comparison of (4.127) with the latter shows that the radiation power at the cyclotron resonance in vacuum resonantly enhances with the parameter of nonlinearity $\xi_0/\left(1-\Omega_0/\omega_0'\right)$ instead of the parameter of nonlinearity ξ_0 for nonlinear Compton radiation. Hence, we will not repeat the analysis of the conditions for revelation of nonlinearities in the considered process that is the radiation of high harmonics, which has been done for nonlinear Compton radiation and the substitution of the strong wave intensity parameter $\xi_0 \to \xi_0/\left(1-\Omega_0/\omega_0'\right)$ only should be made.

Consider now the radiation in a medium at the nonlinear cyclotron resonance. In this case the Doppler factor $1 - n_0\mathrm{v}_0/c$ may be as positive as well as negative—anomalous Doppler effect at $n_0 > 1$. However, as has been shown in the previous section, for the anomalous Doppler effect the considered process of cyclotron resonance will take place at the opposite circular polarization of the incident strong wave. Hence, we also assume here $\mathrm{v}_0 < c/n_0$ at which (4.110) has a meaning. In addition, since for $\mathrm{v}_0 < c/n_0$ the longitudinal velocity in the field always remains smaller than the wave phase velocity ($v_x < c/n_0$), then the Doppler factor $1 - n_0 v_x/c > 0$ as well.

Taking into account (4.124), (4.125), and (4.102) as well as using the δ-function, which expresses the radiation spectrum of the process, the equation for radiation power (4.123) may be written in the form

$$dP_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{e^2 n(\omega)\omega^2}{2\pi c} \frac{1}{\left|1 - n(\omega)\frac{v_x}{c}\cos\vartheta\right|} \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta\left(\omega - s\omega_0 \frac{1 - n_0 \frac{v_x}{c}}{1 - n(\omega)\frac{v_x}{c}\cos\vartheta}\right)$$

$$\times \left[\left(\frac{n(\omega)\frac{v_x}{c} - \cos\vartheta}{n(\omega)\sin\vartheta}\right)^2 J_s^2(\alpha) + \frac{v_\perp^2}{c^2} J_s'^2(\alpha)\right] d\omega dO, \tag{4.128}$$

where the argument of the Bessel function is

$$\alpha = n(\omega)\frac{\omega}{\omega_0} \frac{\sin\vartheta}{\sqrt{|n_0^2 - 1|}} \frac{\beta}{\sqrt{1 \mp \beta^2}}. \tag{4.129}$$

Concerning the terms with the negative s in (4.128), note that according to the argument of the δ function the harmonics with $s < 0$ correspond to the anomalous Doppler effect for radiated frequencies (as for the fundamental frequency $1 - n_0 v_x/c > 0$) which is possible due to the dispersion of the medium, if

$$1 - n(\omega)\frac{v_x}{c}\cos\vartheta < 0,$$

i.e., the harmonics with $s < 0$ may be radiated inside the Cherenkov cone.

Arising from (4.108) one can express the argument of the Bessel function via the parameter of the cyclotron resonance Ω_0/ω_0'

$$\alpha = n(\omega)\frac{\omega}{\omega_0'} \frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0} \frac{\xi_0}{\sqrt{1 \mp \beta^2} - \frac{\Omega_0}{\omega_0'}} \sin\vartheta, \tag{4.130}$$

which evidences the resonant enhancement of the parameter of nonlinearity and, consequently, the intensity of high harmonics radiation ($\alpha \sim s \gg 1$). If $\beta^2 \ll 1$, which corresponds to linear cyclotron resonance, from (4.130) we see that the radiation power in a medium resonantly enhances with the parameter of nonlinearity $\xi_0/\left(1 - \Omega_0/\omega_0'\right)$ as in the case of vacuum.

The radiation of high harmonics at the nonlinear cyclotron resonance in a medium arises for the wave intensities in the area close to the critical value for electron hysteresis phenomenon (4.111). Corresponding to this intensity the transverse momentum of the particle β in (4.130) should be substituted by the critical value β_{cr}' from (4.112). In the other case of particle–wave nonlinear interaction at the cyclotron resonance in a medium that takes place at $\Omega_0 = \omega_0'$ and $\xi_0 \ll \zeta$ (see (4.118)), the transverse momentum of the particle β in (4.130) should be substituted from (4.118).

Bibliography

A.V. Gaponov, M.A. Miller, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **34**, 242 (1958)
M.A. Miller, Izv. VUZov, Radiofizika 1, 110 (1958) [in Russian]
Ya.B. Fainberg, V.I. Kurilko, Zh. Tekh. Fiz. 29, 935 (1959) [in Russian]
M.I. Petelin, Izv. VUZov, Radiofizika 4, 455 (1961) [in Russian]
A.A. Andronov, M.I. Petelin, V.V. Zheleznyakov, Izv. VUZov, Radiofizika 7, 251 (1961) [in Russian]
M.A. Miller, Izv. VUZov, Radiofizika 5, 929 (1962) [in Russian]
B.G. Eremin, M.A. Miller, Izv. VUZov, Radiofizika 5, 1151 (1962) [in Russian]
V.Ya. Davidovsky, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **43**, 886 (1962)
A.A. Kolomensky, A.N. Lebedev, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **44**, 261 (1963)
V.S. Voronin, A.A. Kolomensky, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **47**, 1528 (1964)
A.I. Nikishov, V.I. Ritus, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **64**, 776 (1964)
C.S. Roberts, S.J. Buchsbaum, Phys. Rev. A **135**, 381 (1964)
P.J. Redmond, Math. Phys. **6**, 1163 (1965)
V.P. Oleinik, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **52**, 1049 (1967)
V.P. Oleinik, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **53**, 1997 (1967)
V.M. Haroutunian, H.K. Avetissian, Izv. Akad, Nauk Arm. SSR Ser. Fiz. **9**, 110 (1974) [in Russian]
H.K. Avetissian, Izv. Akad, Nauk Arm. SSR Ser. Fiz. **10**, 3 (1975) [in Russian]
Yu.A. Andreev, V.Ya. Davidovsky, Zh. Tekh. Fiz. **45**, 3 (1975) [in Russian]
Yu.A. Andreev, V.Ya. Davidovsky, Zh. Tekh. Fiz. **46**, 413 (1976) [in Russian]
Yu.A. Andreev, V.Ya. Davidovsky, V.N. Danilenko, Zh. Tekh. Fiz. **46**, 2380 (1976) [in Russian]
Yu.A. Andreev, V.Ya. Davidovsky, V.N. Danilenko, Zh. Tekh. Fiz. **48**, 2184 (1978) [in Russian]
I.M. Ternov, V.R. Khalilov, V.N. Rodionov, *Interaction of Charged Particles with Strong Electromagnetic Field* (Mosk. Gos. Univ, Moscow, 1982) [in Russian]
A.A. Sokolov, I.M. Ternov, *Relativistic Electron* (Nauka, Moscow, 1983) [in Russian]
H.K. Avetissian, K.Z. Hatsagortsian, Zh. Tekh. Fiz. **54**, 2347 (1984) [in Russian]
R.M. Robb, Phys. Rev. E **50**, 3345 (1994)
G.S. Nusinovich, P.E. Latham, O. Dumbrajs, Phys. Rev. E **52**, 998 (1995)
S.J. Cooke, A.W. Cross, W. He, A.D.R. Phelps, Phys. Rev. Lett. **77**, 4836 (1996)
V.L. Bratman, A.D.R. Phelps, A.V. Savilov, Phys. Plasmas **4**, 2285 (1997)
B.W.J. McNeil, G.R.M. Robb, A.D.R. Phelps, J. Phys. D **30**, 1688 (1997)
P. Aitken et al., J. Phys. D **30**, 2482 (1997)
N.S. Ginzburg et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **78**, 2365 (1997)
P. Aitken, B.W.J. McNeil, G.R.M. Robb, A.D.R. Phelps, Phys. Rev. E **59**, 1152 (1999)
N.S. Ginzburg et al., IEEE Trans. Plasma Sci. **27**, 462 (1999)
Y.I. Salamin, F.H.M. Faisal, C.H. Keitel, Phys. Rev. A **62**, 53809 (2000)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, M.G. Poghosyan, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **99**, 290 (2004)

Chapter 5
Nonlinear Dynamics of Induced Compton and Undulator Processes

Abstract In this chapter, we will consider the interaction of charged particles with superstrong radiation fields of relativistic intensities in induced coherent processes in vacuum where there is no restriction on the field intensity taking place at the induced Cherenkov interaction in dielectric-like media. Those are the induced Compton and undulator processes. In the presence of a second wave of different frequency, the Compton scattering, as well as spontaneous undulator radiation in the external EM wave field acquire induced character. Because of its coherent nature (as the Cherenkov one) these induced processes have the same peculiarity and, consequently, the nonlinear interaction of charged particles with the mentioned fields leads to analogous threshold phenomena of particle "reflection" and capture by the plane EM waves in vacuum. On the other hand, it is clear that the second wave in the induced Compton process or the undulator field perform the role of the third body for the real radiation/absorption of photons by the free electrons in vacuum. Hence, irrespective of revelation of new phenomena the consideration of nonlinear dynamics of induced Compton and undulator processes in current superstrong laser fields is of great interest, especially from the point of view of FEL and laser accelerators. Further, the significance of the undulator (wiggler) is great enough as the unique version of the current FEL and expected X-ray laser due to its large coherent length and effective power of the static magnetic field for relativistic particles. To achieve relatively large coherent lengths in the induced Compton process we will consider the case of counterpropagating waves. Then, taking into account the significance of heavy particles/ions acceleration problem, specifically toward the interaction with the matter at extreme conditions in ultrashort space–time scales (that have attracted broad interest over the last years conditioned by a number of important applications, such as generation and probing of high energy density matter, inertial confinement fusion, isotope production, hadron therapy, etc.), we will study laser acceleration of ions/nuclei from nanoscale-solid-plasma targets with counterpropagating ultrashort laser pulses on the base of the particle "reflection" phenomenon.

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_5

5.1 Interaction of Charged Particles with Superstrong Counterpropagating Waves of Different Frequencies

Consider the classical dynamics of a charged particle at the interaction with two counterpropagating (along the axis OX) plane EM waves having arbitrary electric field strengths $\mathbf{E}_1\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)$ and $\mathbf{E}_2\left(t+\frac{x}{c}\right)$ in vacuum. The relativistic equation of motion in components is written as

$$\frac{dp_x}{dt}=\frac{e}{c}\left(\mathbf{vE}_1-\mathbf{vE}_2\right), \tag{5.1}$$

$$\frac{dp_y}{dt}=e\left(1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)E_{1y}+e\left(1+\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)E_{2y},$$

$$\frac{dp_z}{dt}=e\left(1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)E_{1z}+e\left(1+\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)E_{2z}. \tag{5.2}$$

This set of equations allows exact solution when the particle initial velocity is directed along the axis OX and the waves are monochromatic with circular polarization:

$$\mathbf{E}_1\left(x,t\right)=\left\{0,E_1\cos\omega_1\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right),E_1\sin\omega_1\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)\right\},$$

$$\mathbf{E}_2\left(x,t\right)=\left\{0,E_2\cos\omega_2\left(t+\frac{x}{c}\right),E_2\sin\omega_2\left(t+\frac{x}{c}\right)\right\}. \tag{5.3}$$

From (5.2) in the field (5.3), we obtain

$$p_y=\frac{eE_1}{\omega_1}\sin\omega_1\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)+\frac{eE_2}{\omega_2}\sin\omega_2\left(t+\frac{x}{c}\right),$$

$$p_z=-\frac{eE_1}{\omega_1}\cos\omega_1\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)-\frac{eE_2}{\omega_2}\cos\omega_2\left(t+\frac{x}{c}\right) \tag{5.4}$$

(the waves are turned on and turned off adiabatically at $t\to\mp\infty$).

For the integration of (5.1) we will use the equation for the particle energy exchange in the field

$$\frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dt}=e\left(\mathbf{vE}_1+\mathbf{vE}_2\right). \tag{5.5}$$

Thus, defining the particle transverse velocity in the field by (5.4), from (5.1) and (5.5) we obtain the following integral of motion in the induced Compton process:

$$\mathcal{E}-c\frac{\omega_1-\omega_2}{\omega_1+\omega_2}p_x=\mathrm{const}. \tag{5.6}$$

The latter together with (5.4) determines the particle energy in the field

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_1^2 - 1}\left\{n_1^2\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{cn_1}\right) \mp \left[\left(1 - n_1\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)^2 - \left(n_1^2 - 1\right)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\right.\right.$$
$$\left.\left.\times\left[\xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2 + 2\xi_1\xi_2\cos\left(\omega_1 - \omega_2\right)\left(t - n_1\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]\right]^{1/2}\right\}. \tag{5.7}$$

The parameter n_1 included in (5.7) is

$$n_1 = \frac{\omega_1 + \omega_2}{|\omega_1 - \omega_2|}, \tag{5.8}$$

and the parameters $\xi_{1,2} \equiv eE_{1,2}/mc\omega_{1,2}$.

As is seen from (5.7) due to the effective interaction of the particle with the counterpropagating waves a slowed traveling wave in vacuum arises. The parameter n_1 denotes the refractive index of this interference wave and since $n_1 > 1$ (see (5.8)) the phase velocity of the effective traveling wave $\mathrm{v}_{ph} = c/n_1 < c$. Then the expression under the root in (5.7) evidences the peculiarity in the interaction dynamics like the induced Cherenkov one that causes the analogous threshold phenomena of particle "reflection" and capture by the interference wave in the induced Compton process. Hence, omitting the same procedure related to bypass the multivalence and complexity of (5.7), which has been made in detail for the analogous expression in the Cherenkov process, we will present the final results for particle "reflection" and capture by the effective interference wave in the induced Compton process. The threshold value of the "reflection" phenomenon or the critical field for nonlinear Compton resonance is

$$\xi_{cr}\left(\omega_{1,2}\right) \equiv \left(\xi_1 + \xi_2\right)_{cr} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2}\frac{\left|\omega_1\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right) - \omega_2\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\right|}{2\sqrt{\omega_1\omega_2}}. \tag{5.9}$$

If one knows the longitudinal velocity v_x of the particle in the field, then it is easy to see that $\xi_{cr}\left(\omega_{1,2}\right)$ is the value of the total intensity of counterpropagating waves at which v_x becomes equal to the phase velocity of the effective interference wave: $\mathrm{v}_x = \mathrm{v}_{ph} = c/n_1$ irrespective of the magnitude of particle initial velocity v_0. The latter is the condition of coherency of induced Compton process

$$\omega_1\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right) = \omega_2\left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right). \tag{5.10}$$

Under condition (5.10), the nonlinear resonance in the field of counterpropagating waves of different frequencies occurs and because of induced Compton radiation/absorption the particle velocity becomes smaller or larger than the phase velocity of the interference wave and the particle leaves the slowed effective wave. In the rest frame of the latter the particle swoops on the motionless barrier (if $\xi_1 + \xi_2 > \xi_{cr}(\omega_{1,2})$)

and the elastic reflection occurs. In the laboratory frame it corresponds to inelastic "reflection" and from (5.7) for particle energy after the "reflection" ($\xi_{1,2} \to 0$ adiabatically at $t \to +\infty$) we have

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 \frac{\omega_1^2 \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right) + \omega_2^2 \left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)}{2\omega_1\omega_2}. \tag{5.11}$$

From this equation it follows that the energy of the particle with the initial velocity $\mathrm{v}_0 = c\,|\omega_1 - \omega_2|/(\omega_1 + \omega_2)$ corresponding to the resonance value of the induced Compton process does not change after the interaction ($\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0$). For such particle $\xi_{cr}\left(\omega_{1,2}\right) = 0$, i.e., it cannot enter the field: $\xi_1 = \xi_2 = 0$. The particle with the initial velocity $\mathrm{v}_0 > c\,|\omega_1 - \omega_2|/(\omega_1 + \omega_2)$ after the "reflection" is decelerated, while at $\mathrm{v}_0 < c\,|\omega_1 - \omega_2|/(\omega_1 + \omega_2)$ it is accelerated because of direct and inverse induced Compton processes. At the acceleration the particle absorbs photons from the wave of frequency ω_1 and coherently radiates into the wave of frequency ω_2 if $\omega_1 > \omega_2$ and at the deceleration the inverse process takes place. Hence, at the particle acceleration the amplification of the wave of a smaller frequency holds, while at the deceleration the wave of a larger frequency is amplified.

In the case of $\omega_1 = \omega_2 \equiv \omega$ the refractive index of the interference wave $n_1 = \infty$ and nonlinear interaction of the particle with the strong standing wave occurs. It is evident that in this case the process is elastic: $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 = \mathrm{const}$ (see (5.11)) and for the longitudinal momentum of the particle in the field we have

$$p_x = \pm\sqrt{p_0^2 - m^2c^2\left(\xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2 + 2\xi_1\xi_2\cos\frac{2\omega}{c}x\right)}. \tag{5.12}$$

From this equation it is seen that at $\xi_1 + \xi_2 > \xi_{cr}(\omega) = |p_0|/mc$ the standing wave becomes a potential barrier for the particle and elastic reflection occurs: the root changes its sign and $p_x = -p_0$ (if $\xi_1 + \xi_2 < \xi_{cr}(\omega)$ we have $p_x = p_0$).

Consider now the nonlinear dynamics of a particle with the arbitrary direction of velocity $\mathbf{v}_0$ initially situated in the field of counterpropagating waves (internal particle). It is clear that at the wave intensities $\xi_1 + \xi_2 > \xi_{cr}\left(\omega_{1,2}\right)$ when the "reflection" of an external particle from the slowed traveling wave holds, an internal particle under the specified conditions may be captured by the such slowed wave. Consequently, one needs to define the conditions for the particle capture by the effective field in the induced Compton process.

Let a particle with velocity $\mathbf{v}_0$ be situated in the initial phases $\phi_{10} = \omega_1(t_0 - x_0/c)$ and $\phi_{20} = \omega_2(t_0 + x_0/c)$ of linearly polarized along the axis OY counterpropagating waves (in (5.3) $E_{1z} = E_{2z} = 0$, so the coordinate z is free and one can assume $\mathrm{v}_{0z} = 0$). The solution of (5.1) and (5.2) under these initial conditions for the particle momentum in the field is given as

$$p_x = p_{0x} + \frac{n_1^2}{n_1^2 - 1}\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{c}\left\{1 - n_1\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c} \mp \left[\left(1 - n_1\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c}\right)^2\right.\right.$$

$$- \left(n_1^2 - 1\right) \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2 \left[\frac{1}{2}\left(\xi_1^2 + \xi_2^2\right) + \left(\xi_1 \sin\phi_{10} + \xi_2 \sin\phi_{20}\right) \left(\xi_1 \sin\phi_{10}\right.\right.$$

$$\left.\left.\left. + \xi_2 \sin\phi_{20} - 2\frac{P_{0y}}{mc}\right) + \xi_1 \xi_2 \cos\left(\phi_1 - \phi_2\right)\right]\right]^{1/2} \Bigg\}, \qquad (5.13)$$

$$p_y = p_{0y} + mc\xi_1 \left(\sin\phi_1 - \sin\phi_{10}\right) + mc\xi_2 \left(\sin\phi_2 - \sin\phi_{20}\right), \qquad (5.14)$$

where

$$\phi_1 - \phi_2 = \left(\omega_1 - \omega_2\right)\left(t - n_1 \frac{x}{c}\right).$$

In the derivation of (5.13) the averaging over fast oscillations of separate waves with respect to the interference wave (in the intrinsic frame of which only a static magnetic field acts on the particle) in (5.1) and (5.5) has been made. Physically, it corresponds to time averaging of noncoherent interaction with separate waves in relation to coherent interaction due to induced Compton resonance. In this approximation the integral of motion (5.6) remains applicable and with (5.13) it determines the energy of the particle at the coherent interaction with the counterpropagating waves of different frequencies.

The equilibrated phases for the particle capture in this process correspond to extrema of the interference wave and the motion of the particle is stable in the phases

$$\left(\phi_1 - \phi_2\right)_s = \left(\omega_1 - \omega_2\right)\left(t - n_1 \frac{x}{c}\right)_s = \pi\left(2k + 1\right); \quad k = 0, \pm 1, \ldots. \qquad (5.15)$$

Equation (5.15) shows that the particle situated in the equilibrated phases moves with the velocity

$$\mathrm{v}_{xs} = c\left(\omega_1 - \omega_2\right) / \left(\omega_1 + \omega_2\right).$$

Let the particle initial longitudinal velocity be equilibrated: $\mathrm{v}_{0x} = \mathrm{v}_{xs}$. If $p_{0y} = 0$ as well, then the analysis of (5.13) shows that the capture of such particle is possible at $\xi_1 = \xi_2$ ($eE_1/\omega_1 = eE_2/\omega_2$, i.e., the waves should transfer to the particle equal momenta) and $(\phi_1 - \phi_2)_0 = \pi(2k + 1) = (\phi_1 - \phi_2)_s$. From (5.14) for equilibrated transverse momentum in this case we have $p_{ys} = p_{0y} = 0$. If $\mathrm{v}_{0x} = \mathrm{v}_{xs} + \triangle\mathrm{v}$ and $p_{0y} = 0$, then we have the following condition for the particle capture:

$$|\triangle\mathrm{v}| < \frac{c}{n_1}\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\xi\sqrt{\left(n_1^2 - 1\right)\left[2 + \left(\sin\phi_{10} + \sin\phi_{20}\right)^2\right]}, \qquad (5.16)$$

from which one can define the tolerance for divergences of initial phases and velocity of a nonequilibrium particle. On the other hand, condition (5.16) defines the threshold value of the wave intensities for the capture of a nonequilibrium particle, which coincides with the critical intensity for the "reflection" of an external particle (5.9) at $\xi_1 = \xi_2 \equiv \xi$ and $\phi_{10} = \phi_{20} = 0$ (coefficient $\sqrt{2}$ arises because of different polarization of the waves).

Now let $\mathrm{v}_{0x} = \mathrm{v}_{xs}$ but $p_{0y} \neq 0$. If $(\phi_1 - \phi_2)_0 \neq \pi\,(2k+1)$, then the motion of the particle will be stable at the condition

$$p_{0y}\,(\sin\phi_{10} + \sin\phi_{20}) > 0; \quad \frac{|p_{0y}|}{mc\xi} > 1. \tag{5.17}$$

The condition for the capture in this case is $|p_{0y}|\,/mc\xi < 3/2$, which with the condition of stability (5.17) strictly restricts the transverse momentum of the particle. Meanwhile the conditions of stability and capture in the minimums of the interference wave $(\phi_1 - \phi_2)_0 = \pi\,(2k+1)$ are automatically satisfied. Hence, these phases are equilibrated at the arbitrary transverse momentum of the particle ($p_{0y} = p_{ys}$).

If the particle initial velocity differs from the equilibrated one ($\mathrm{v}_{0x} \neq \mathrm{v}_{xs}$) and $p_{0y} \neq 0$, the tolerance for the capture of a nonequilibrium particle is defined analogously to condition (5.16).

To illustrate the particles acceleration by the actual nonplane laser pulses in the result of the "reflection" phenomenon in the induced Compton process, we need the numerical simulations of particle equations of motion (5.1)–(5.2) with nonplane counterpropagating laser pulses of finite space–time envelopes. For analytic description of such pulses of circular polarization we will approximate corresponding electromagnetic fields by the formulas:

$$E_{1x} = E_{10}g_1(\tau)\,\frac{\lambda_1 w_{10}^2 e^{-r_\perp^2/w_1^2(x)}}{\pi w_1^4(x)}\left\{\left[-2\frac{xy}{x_{1R}} + \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{x_{1R}^2}\right)z\right]\right.$$

$$\left.\times \cos\tau' + \left[\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{x_{1R}^2}\right)y + 2\frac{xz}{x_{1R}}\right]\sin\tau'\right\},$$

$$E_{1y} = E_{10}g_1(\tau)\,\frac{w_{10}^2 e^{-r_\perp^2/w_1^2(x)}}{w_1^2(x)}\left\{\cos\tau' + \frac{x}{x_{1R}}\sin\tau'\right\},$$

$$E_{1z} = -E_{10}g_1(\tau)\,\frac{w_{10}^2 e^{-r_\perp^2/w_1^2(x)}}{w_1^2(x)}\left\{-\frac{x}{x_{1R}}\cos\tau' + \sin\tau'\right\}, \tag{5.18}$$

$$H_{1x} = E_{10}g_1(\tau)\,\frac{\lambda_1 w_{10}^2 e^{-r_\perp^2/w_1^2(x)}}{\pi w_1^4(x)}\left\{\left[-2\frac{xz}{x_{1R}} - \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{x_{1R}^2}\right)y\right]\right. .$$

$$\left.\times \cos\tau' + \left[\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{x_{1R}^2}\right)z - 2\frac{xy}{x_{1R}}\right]\sin\tau'\right\},$$

$$H_{1y} = -E_{1z}; \quad H_{1z} = E_{1y},$$

where $\tau' = \tau + r_\perp^2 x/\left(x_{1R} w_1^2(x)\right)$, $r_\perp^2 = y^2 + z^2$, $w_1(x) = w_{10}\sqrt{1 + x^2/x_{1R}^2}$, $x_{1R} = \pi w_{10}^2/\lambda_1$ is the Rayleigh length for high frequency (of wavelength $\lambda_1 = 2\pi c/\omega_1$) focused laser pulse with the waist w_{10} in the focal plane $x = 0$, and $g_1(\tau) = 1/\cosh(\tau/\tau_0)$.

For electric and magnetic fields of low frequency (of wavelength $\lambda_2 = 2\pi c/\omega_2$) focused laser pulse propagating in opposite direction to high frequency pulse, we have:

$$E_{2x} = -E_{20} g_2(\eta) \frac{\lambda_2 w_{20}^2 e^{-r_\perp^2/w_2^2(x)}}{\pi w_2^4(x)} \left\{ \left[2\frac{xy}{x_{2R}} + \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{x_{2R}^2}\right) z \right] \right.$$

$$\left. \times \cos\eta' - \left[\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{x_{2R}^2}\right) y - 2\frac{xz}{x_{2R}} \right] \sin\eta' \right\},$$

$$E_{2y} = E_{20} g_2(\eta) \frac{w_{20}^2 e^{-r_\perp^2/w_2^2(x)}}{w_2^2(x)} \left\{ \cos\eta' + \frac{x}{x_{2R}} \sin\eta' \right\},$$

$$E_{2z} = -E_{20} g_2(\eta) \frac{w_{20}^2 e^{-r_\perp^2/w_2^2(x)}}{w_2^2(x)} \left\{ \frac{x}{x_{2R}} \cos\eta' - \sin\eta' \right\}, \tag{5.19}$$

$$H_{2x} = E_{20} g_2(\eta) \frac{\lambda_2 w_{20}^2 e^{-r_\perp^2/w_2^2(x)}}{\pi w_2^4(x)} \left\{ \left[2\frac{xz}{x_{2R}} - \left(1 - \frac{x^2}{x_{2R}^2}\right) y \right] \right. .$$

$$\left. \times \cos\eta' - \left[\left(1 - \frac{x^2}{x_{2R}^2}\right) z + 2\frac{xy}{x_{2R}} \right] \sin\eta' \right\},$$

$$H_{2y} = E_{2z}; \quad H_{2z} = -E_{2y},$$

where $\eta' = \eta + r_\perp^2 x/\left(x_{2R} w_2^2(x)\right)$, $w_2(x) = w_{20}\sqrt{1 + x^2/x_{2R}^2}$, $x_{2R} = \pi w_{20}^2/\lambda_2$ is the Rayleigh length for a focused pulse with the waist w_{20} (in the focal plane $x = 0$), and $g_2(\eta) = 1/\cosh(\eta/\eta_0)$.

The results of numerical integration of particle equations of motion in the fields (5.18), (5.19) are presented in Fig. 5.1. As is seen from Fig. 5.1, numerical results justify the particles reflection–capture phenomena for real nonplane laser pulses with the transverse space sizes in the focal plane (pulses' waists) $w_{10} = 100\lambda_1$ and $w_{20} = 200\lambda_1$ for high and low frequency lasers, respectively (w_{20} in scale of λ_2 are: $w_{20} = 20\lambda_2$ for the case $\omega_1/\omega_2 = 10$ and $w_{20} = 100\lambda_2$ for $\omega_1/\omega_2 = 2$).

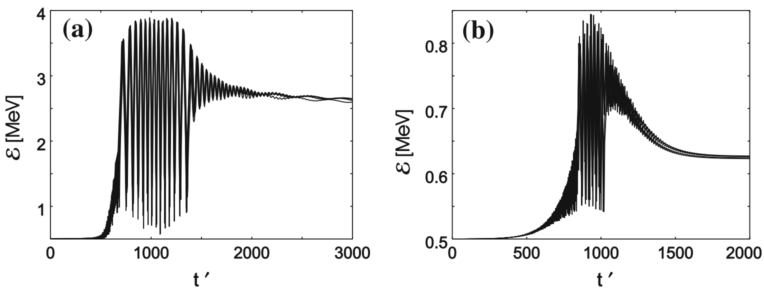


Fig. 5.1 Reflection of the particles from the nonplane counterpropagating laser pulses at different initial longitudinal positions x_0 ($y_0 = z_0 = 0$): **a** $x_0 \in [-\lambda_1; \lambda_1]$ (with the step $0.5\lambda_1$) for $\omega_1\omega_2 = 10$, and **b** $x_0 \in [-0.4\lambda_1; 0.4\lambda_1]$ (with the step $0.2\lambda_1$) for $\omega_1/\omega_2 = 2$

5.2 Interaction of Charged Particles with Superstrong Wave in a Wiggler

Consider the nonlinear dynamics of a charged particle at the interaction with a strong EM wave in a magnetic undulator. Let a particle with an initial velocity $\mathrm{v}_0 = \mathrm{v}_{0x}$ enter into a magnetic undulator with circularly polarized field

$$\mathbf{H}(x) = \left\{0, -H\cos\frac{2\pi}{l}x, H\sin\frac{2\pi}{l}x\right\} \tag{5.20}$$

(l is the space period or step of an undulator) along the axis of which propagates a plane monochromatic EM wave of circular polarization with the electric field strength

$$\mathbf{E}(x,t) = \left\{0, E_0\sin\omega_0\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right), E_0\cos\omega_0\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)\right\}. \tag{5.21}$$

The equation of motion of the particle in the fields (5.20) and (5.21) in components is written as

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dp_x}{dt} &= \frac{e}{c}E_0\left[\mathrm{v}_y\sin\omega_0\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)+\mathrm{v}_z\cos\omega_0\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]\\ &\quad+\frac{e}{c}H\left[\mathrm{v}_y\sin\frac{2\pi}{l}x+\mathrm{v}_z\cos\frac{2\pi}{l}x\right],\end{aligned} \tag{5.22}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dp_y}{dt} &= eE_0\left(1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)\sin\omega_0\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)-e\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}H\sin\frac{2\pi}{l}x,\\ \frac{dp_z}{dt} &= eE_0\left(1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}\right)\cos\omega_0\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)-e\frac{\mathrm{v}_x}{c}H\cos\frac{2\pi}{l}x.\end{aligned} \tag{5.23}$$

Integration of (5.23) under the assumed initial conditions (at $t = -\infty$ the particle has only longitudinal velocity, i.e., $p_{0y} = p_{0z} = 0$) gives

$$p_y = -\frac{eE_0}{\omega_0}\cos\omega_0\left(t - \frac{x}{c}\right) + \frac{elH}{2\pi c}\cos\frac{2\pi}{l}x,$$

$$p_z = \frac{eE_0}{\omega_0}\sin\omega_0\left(t - \frac{x}{c}\right) - \frac{elH}{2\pi c}\sin\frac{2\pi}{l}x. \tag{5.24}$$

The integration of (5.22) is made analogously to the integration of (5.1). Using the equation for the particle energy exchange in the field

$$\frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dt} = eE_0\left[\mathrm{v}_y\sin\omega_0\left(t - \frac{x}{c}\right) + \mathrm{v}_z\cos\omega_0\left(t - \frac{x}{c}\right)\right], \tag{5.25}$$

with the help of (5.1), (5.24), and (5.25) we obtain the integral of motion in the induced undulator process

$$\mathcal{E} - \frac{c}{1 + \frac{\lambda}{l}}p_x = \text{const}. \tag{5.26}$$

Equations (5.24) and (5.26) determine the particle energy

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{n_2^2 - 1}\left\{n_2^2\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{cn_2}\right) \mp \left[\left(1 - n_2\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)^2 - \left(n_2^2 - 1\right)\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\right.\right.$$

$$\left.\left.\times\left[\xi_0^2 + \xi_H^2 - 2\xi_0\xi_H\cos\omega_0\left(t - n_2\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]\right]^{1/2}\right\} \tag{5.27}$$

in the field of a strong EM wave in the magnetic undulator, which is characterized by relativistic parameter

$$\xi_H = \frac{elH}{2\pi mc^2} \tag{5.28}$$

(for large magnitudes of undulator field strength H and space period l when $\xi_H > 1$ such undulator is called a wiggler).

From (5.27) it follows that at the particle–wave nonlinear resonance interaction in the undulator an effective slowed traveling wave is formed as in the induced Compton process. The parameter

$$n_2 = 1 + \frac{\lambda}{l} \tag{5.29}$$

is the refractive index of this slowed wave, which causes the analogous threshold phenomenon of particle "reflection"% in the induced undulator process. The effective critical field at which the nonlinear resonance and then the particle "reflection" take place in the undulator is

$$\xi_{cr}\left(\frac{\lambda}{l}\right) \equiv (\xi_0 + \xi_H)_{cr} = \frac{\left|1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{v_0}{c}\right|}{\sqrt{\frac{2\lambda}{l}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)}}\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{mc^2}. \tag{5.30}$$

At this value of the resulting field the longitudinal velocity of the particle v_x reaches the resonant value in the field at which the condition of coherency in the undulator

$$\frac{2\pi}{l}v_x = \omega_0\left(1-\frac{v_x}{c}\right) \tag{5.31}$$

is satisfied. The latter has a simple physical explanation in the intrinsic frame of the particle. In this frame of reference the static magnetic field (5.20) becomes a traveling EM wave with the frequency

$$\omega = \frac{2\pi}{l}\frac{v_x}{\sqrt{1-\frac{v_x^2}{c^2}}}$$

and phase velocity $v_{ph} = v_x$. For coherent interaction process this frequency must coincide with the Doppler-shifted frequency of stimulated wave.

The energy of the particle after the "reflection" (in (5.27) $\xi_0 = \xi_H = 0$ at the sign "+" before the root) is

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0\left[1+\frac{1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{v_0}{c}}{\frac{\lambda}{l}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)}\right]. \tag{5.32}$$

From this equation, it follows that the particle with the initial velocity $v_0 < c/(1+\lambda/l)$ after the "reflection" accelerates, while at $v_0 > c/(1+\lambda/l)$ it decelerates because of induced undulator radiation.

If a particle is initially situated in the field, under the certain conditions it may be captured by the slowed-in-the-undulator effective wave. We shall define those conditions.

Let a particle with the velocity $\mathbf{v}_0$ be situated in the initial phases $\phi_{10} = \omega_0(t_0 - x_0/c)$ and $\phi_{20} = 2\pi x_0/l$ of a linearly polarized EM wave and undulator field

$$E_y(x,t) = -E_0\cos\omega_0(t-\frac{x}{c}); \quad H_z(x) = H\cos\frac{2\pi}{l}x. \tag{5.33}$$

The solution of (5.1) and (5.2) under these initial conditions for the particle momentum in the field gives

$$p_x = p_{0x} + \frac{n_2}{n_2^2-1}\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{c}\left\{1-n_2\frac{v_{0x}}{c} \mp \left[\left(1-n_2\frac{v_{0x}}{c}\right)^2\right.\right.$$

$$- \left(n_2^2 - 1\right) \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2 \left[\frac{1}{2}\left(\xi_0^2 + \xi_H^2\right) + (\xi_0 \sin\phi_{10} + \xi_H \sin\phi_{20})\right.$$

$$\left.\left.\left. \times \left(\xi_0 \sin\phi_{10} + \xi_H \sin\phi_{20} - 2\frac{P_{0y}}{mc}\right) + \xi_0\xi_H \cos\omega_0\left(t - n_2\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]\right]^{1/2}\right\}, \quad (5.34)$$

$$p_y = p_{0y} + mc\xi_0 \left[\sin\omega_0(t - \frac{x}{c}) - \sin\phi_{10}\right]$$

$$+ mc\xi_H \left(\sin\frac{2\pi}{l}x - \sin\phi_{20}\right). \quad (5.35)$$

Note that at the derivation of (5.34) in (5.22) and (5.25) the time averaging of noncoherent interaction with respect to coherent interaction has been made. In this approximation the integral of motion (5.26) remains applicable and with (5.34) determines the energy of the particle at the coherent interaction with the strong EM wave in a wiggler.

The equilibrated phases for the particle capture correspond to extrema of slowed-in-the-undulator effective wave and the motion of the particle is stable in the phases

$$\phi_s = \omega_0\left[t - \left(1 + \frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{x}{c}\right]_s = \pi\,(2k+1)\,; \quad k = 0, \pm 1, \dots . \quad (5.36)$$

From (5.36) one can define the particle velocity in the equilibrated phase: $\text{v}_{xs} = c/(1+\lambda/l)$. If the initial velocity of the particle $\text{v}_{0x} = \text{v}_{xs}$ and $p_{0y} = 0$ the capture of such particle is possible at $\xi_0 = \xi_H$, that is, $\lambda E_0 = lH$; the strong wave and wiggler field should transfer to the particle equal momenta and $\phi_{10} - \phi_{20} = \phi_s$ (at that $p_{ys} = 0$). If the initial velocity of the particle differs from the equilibrated one ($\text{v}_{0x} \neq \text{v}_{xs}$) and $p_{0y} = 0$ the tolerance for the capture of nonequilibrium particles is defined analogously to condition (5.16) in the induced Compton process. If $p_{0y} \neq 0$, then as in the case of counterpropagating waves the phases $\phi_0 = \pi\,(2k+1)$ automatically are equilibrated for the arbitrary p_{0y} ($p_{0y} = p_{ys}$). In the other cases the conditions for particle capture by the effective slowed wave in the regime of stable motion in the wiggler are defined as for those in the induced Compton interaction.

The "reflection" phenomenon of charged particles from a plane EM wave, as was shown in the induced Cherenkov process, may be used for monochromatization of the particle beams. Note that the considered vacuum versions of this phenomenon are more preferable for this goal taking into account the influence of negative effects of the multiple scattering and ionization losses in a medium. On the other hand, the refractive index of the effective slowed waves in vacuum n_1 or n_2 in corresponding induced Compton and undulator processes may be varied choosing the appropriate frequencies of counterpropagating waves or wiggler step. In particular, for monochromatization of particle beams with moderate or low energies via the induced Cherenkov process one needs a refractive index of a medium $n_0 - 1 \sim 1$

that corresponds to solid states. Meanwhile, such values of effective refractive index may be reached in the induced Compton process at the frequencies $\omega_1 \sim \omega_2$ of the counterpropagating waves. However, we will not consider here the possibility of particle beam monochromatization on the basis of the vacuum versions of "reflection" phenomenon since the principle of conversion of energetic or angular spreads is the same. To study the subject in more detail we refer the reader to original papers listed in the bibliography of this chapter.

5.3 Inelastic Diffraction Scattering on a Moving Phase Lattice

Consider now the quantum dynamics of a particle coherent interaction with the counterpropagating waves of different frequencies in the induced Compton process. Neglecting the spin interaction (with the same justification that has been made in the above-considered processes) we will derive from the Klein–Gordon equation in the field of quasimonochromatic waves with the vector potentials $\mathbf{A}_1(t - x/c)$ and $\mathbf{A}_2(t + x/c)$ which is written as

$$-\hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial t^2} = \left\{ -\hbar^2 c^2 \nabla^2 + m^2 c^4 + e^2 \left[\mathbf{A}_1 \left(t - \frac{x}{c} \right) + \mathbf{A}_2 \left(t + \frac{x}{c} \right) \right]^2 \right.$$
$$\left. + 2ie\hbar c \left[\mathbf{A}_1 \left(t - \frac{x}{c} \right) + \mathbf{A}_2 \left(t + \frac{x}{c} \right) \right] \nabla \right\} \Psi. \tag{5.37}$$

As we saw in the classical consideration of the dynamics of the induced Compton process the effective interaction occurs with the slowed interference wave. At the intensities of the waves $\xi_1 + \xi_2 < \xi_{cr}\left(\omega_{1,2}\right)$ when the particle can penetrate into the interference wave the latter will stand for a phase lattice for the particle (at the satisfaction of the condition of coherency (5.10)) and the coherent scattering will occur as for the diffraction effect on a crystal lattice. However, in contrast to diffraction on a motionless lattice (elastic scattering) the diffraction scattering on the moving phase lattice has inelastic character. To determine this quantum effect we will solve (5.37) in the eikonal approximation by the particle wave function (3.91) corresponding to multiphoton processes in strong fields. In accordance with the latter, the solution of (5.37) for the waves of linear polarizations (along the axis OY),

$$\mathbf{A}_1(t - x/c) = \mathbf{A}_1(t) \cos \omega_1 (t - x/c),$$

$$\mathbf{A}_2(t + x/c) = \mathbf{A}_2(t) \cos \omega_2 (t + x/c)$$

we look for in the form (3.91) and for the slowly varying function $f(x, t)$ (see (3.92)) we obtain the following equation:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mathrm{v}_{0x}\frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \left\{-\frac{ie^2}{2\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\left[A_1^2(t)\cos^2\omega_1\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right) + A_2^2(t)\cos^2\omega_2\left(t+\frac{x}{c}\right)\right.\right.$$
$$+A_1(t)A_2(t)\cos(\omega_1+\omega_2)\left(t-\frac{\omega_1-\omega_2}{\omega_1+\omega_2}\frac{x}{c}\right)$$
$$\left.+A_1(t)A_2(t)\cos(\omega_1-\omega_2)\left(t-\frac{\omega_1+\omega_2}{\omega_1-\omega_2}\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]$$
$$\left.+\frac{iecp_{0y}}{\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\left[A_1(t)\cos\omega_1(t-\frac{x}{c}) + A_2(t)\cos\omega_2(t+\frac{x}{c})\right]\right\}f(x,t). \tag{5.38}$$

As is seen from (5.38) at the interaction with the counterpropagating waves of different frequencies two interference waves are formed—third and fourth terms on the right-hand side—which propagate with the phase velocities

$$\mathrm{v}_{ph} = c\frac{\omega_1+\omega_2}{|\omega_1-\omega_2|} > c$$

and

$$\mathrm{v}_{ph} = c\frac{|\omega_1-\omega_2|}{\omega_1+\omega_2} < c,$$

respectively. It is clear that the interaction of the particle with the wave propagating with the phase velocity $\mathrm{v}_{ph} > c$, as well as with the incident separate waves propagating in the vacuum with the phase velocity c (remaining four terms on the right-hand side of (5.38)), cannot be coherent. These terms correspond to noncoherent scattering of the particle in the separate wave fields which vanish after the interaction. Coherent interaction in this process occurs with the slowed interference wave (fourth term), in accordance with the classical results (see (5.8) and (5.10)).

For the integration of (5.38) we will pass to characteristic coordinates $\tau' = t - x/\mathrm{v}_{0x}$ and $\eta' = t$. Then, if one directs the particle velocity $\mathbf{v}_0$ at the angle ϑ_0 with respect to the waves' propagation axis providing the condition of coherency of the induced Compton process (resonance between the waves' Doppler-shifted frequencies) for the free-particle velocity

$$\mathrm{v}_0\cos\vartheta_0 = c\frac{|\omega_1-\omega_2|}{\omega_1+\omega_2}, \tag{5.39}$$

the traveling interference wave in this frame of coordinates becomes a standing phase lattice over the coordinate τ' and diffraction scattering of the particle occurs. From (5.38) for the amplitude of the scattered particle wave function, we obtain

$$f(\tau') = \exp\left\{-\frac{ie^2}{2\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\cos(\omega_1-\omega_2)\tau'\int_{\eta_1}^{\eta_2} A_1(\eta')A_2(\eta')d\eta'\right\}, \tag{5.40}$$

where η_1 and η_2 are the moments of the particle entrance into the field and exit, respectively.

If one expands the exponential (5.40) into a series by Bessel functions and returns again to coordinates x, t with the help of (3.91) for the total wave function we will have

$$\Psi\,(\mathbf{r},t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}}\exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(p_0\sin\vartheta_0\right)y\right]\sum_{s=-\infty}^{+\infty}(-i)^s J_s(\alpha)$$

$$\times\exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left[p_0\cos\vartheta_0 + s\hbar\frac{\omega_1+\omega_2}{c}\right]x - \frac{i}{\hbar}\left[\mathcal{E}_0 + s\hbar\left(\omega_1-\omega_2\right)\right]t\right\}, \tag{5.41}$$

where the argument of the Bessel function is

$$\alpha = \frac{e^2c^2}{2\hbar\mathcal{E}_0\omega_1\omega_2}\int_{t_1}^{t_2} E_1(\eta')E_2(\eta')d\eta' \tag{5.42}$$

(E_1 and E_2 are the amplitudes of the waves' electric field strengths).

Equation (5.41) shows that the diffraction scattering of the particles in the field of counterpropagating waves of different frequencies is inelastic. Due to the induced Compton effect the particle absorbs s photons from the one wave and coherently radiates s photons into the other wave and vice versa (resonance between the Doppler-shifted frequencies in the intrinsic frame of the particle), i.e., the conservation of the number of photons in the induced Compton process takes place in contrast to spontaneous Compton effect in the strong wave field where after the multiphoton absorption a single photon is emitted. However, because of the different photon energies the scattering process is inelastic. From (5.41) for the change of the particle energy–momentum, we have

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = s\hbar\left(\omega_1-\omega_2\right);\ \ \Delta p_x = s\hbar\left(\omega_1+\omega_2\right)/c;\ \ \Delta p_y = 0;\ \ s = 0, \pm 1, \ldots . \tag{5.43}$$

The probability of inelastic diffraction scattering is

$$W_s = J_s^2\left[\frac{e^2c^2}{2\hbar\omega_1\omega_2\mathcal{E}_0}\int_{t_1}^{t_2} E_1(\eta')E_2(\eta')d\eta'\right]. \tag{5.44}$$

According to the condition of eikonal approximation (3.92): $|\Delta p| \ll p_0$ and $|\Delta\mathcal{E}| \ll \mathcal{E}_0$ from (5.43) we have the condition of applicability of the obtained results: $|s|\,\hbar\left(\omega_1+\omega_2\right)/c \ll p_0$.

In the case of monochromatic waves

$$W_s = J_s^2 \left(\frac{e^2 c^2 E_1 E_2 t_0}{2\hbar \mathcal{E}_0 \omega_1 \omega_2} \right), \tag{5.45}$$

where $t_0 = t_2 - t_1$ is the time duration of the particle motion in the interference wave ($l_c = \mathrm{v}_0 t_0 \cos \vartheta_0$ is the coherent length of the process). For the actual values of the parameters including in (5.45) the argument of the Bessel function $\alpha \gg 1$, and consequently the most probable number of absorbed/radiated photons is

$$\overline{s} \simeq \frac{1}{2} \xi_1 \xi_2 \frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0} \frac{mc^2}{\hbar} t_0. \tag{5.46}$$

The energetic width of the main diffraction maximums is

$$\Gamma(\overline{s}) \simeq \overline{s}^{1/3} \hbar (\omega_1 - \omega_2)$$

and since $\overline{s} \gg 1$ then

$$\Gamma(\overline{s}) \ll |\mathcal{E} - \mathcal{E}_0| .$$

The scattering angles of s-photon diffraction on the counterpropagating waves are

$$\tan \vartheta_s = \frac{s\hbar (\omega_1 + \omega_2) \sin \vartheta_0}{cp_0 + s\hbar (\omega_1 + \omega_2) \cos \vartheta_0} ; \qquad s = 0, \pm 1, \ldots . \tag{5.47}$$

As in the Cherenkov process at the inelastic diffraction there is an asymmetry in the angular distribution of the scattered particle: $|\vartheta_{-s}| > \vartheta_s$, i.e., the main diffraction maximums are situated at the different angles with respect to the direction of particle initial motion. However, since $|s| \hbar (\omega_1 + \omega_2) / c \ll p_0$ this asymmetry can be neglected, i.e., $|\vartheta_{-s}| \simeq \vartheta_s$ and the scattering angles of the main diffraction maximums will be determined by the equation

$$\vartheta_{\pm \overline{s}} = \pm \overline{s} \frac{\hbar (\omega_1 + \omega_2)}{cp_0} \sin \vartheta_0. \tag{5.48}$$

In the case of counterpropagating waves of equal frequencies ($\omega_1 = \omega_2 \equiv \omega$) the phase velocity of the interference wave $\mathrm{v}_{ph} = 0$ and the coherent scattering on the motionless phase lattice takes place, which is elastic: $\Delta \mathcal{E} = 0$ and $\Delta p_x = 2s\hbar\omega/c$. This is the known Kapitza–Dirac effect for electron diffraction on a standing wave (in the one-photon approximation for the weak waves). As follows from (5.39), the coherent scattering in this case is possible at the incident angle $\vartheta_0 = \pi/2$, i.e., the particle velocity is perpendicular to the axis of waves' propagation, to exclude the Doppler shift of waves frequencies because of its counterpropagation (a longitudinal component of the particle velocity will result in different Doppler shifts of equal laboratory frequencies because of different wave vectors $\mathbf{k}$ and $-\mathbf{k}$ of counterpropagating waves and, consequently, will violate the resonance between the waves).

5.4 Inelastic Diffraction Scattering on a Traveling Wave in an Undulator

Charged particles diffraction scattering is also possible on a plane EM wave propagating in vacuum if the interaction proceeds in an undulator. As the diffraction effect is the result of particle coherent interaction with the periodic wave field the effective field in the undulator should be smaller than the threshold value of "reflection" phenomenon: $\xi_0 + \xi_H < \xi_{cr}\,(\lambda/l)$ (to prohibit the nonlinear resonance in the field at which the periodic EM field becomes a potential barrier for the particle and coherent interaction with the periodic wave field impossible). Under this condition we will solve the relativistic quantum equation of motion

$$-\hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial t^2} = \left\{ -\hbar^2 c^2 \nabla^2 + m^2 c^4 + e^2 \left[\mathbf{A}_1 (t - \frac{x}{c}) + \mathbf{A}_2(x) \right]^2 \right.$$

$$\left. + 2ie\hbar c \left[\mathbf{A}_1 (t - \frac{x}{c}) + \mathbf{A}_2(x) \right] \nabla \right\} \Psi, \tag{5.49}$$

where $\mathbf{A}_1(t - x/c)$ is the vector potential of the quasimonochromatic EM wave and $\mathbf{A}_2(x)$ is the vector potential of the undulator magnetic field. For the linear undulator

$$H_z(x) = H \cos \frac{2\pi}{l} x$$

the vector potential will be described by the equation

$$A_{2y}(x) = \frac{lH}{2\pi} \sin \frac{2\pi}{l} x,$$

and correspondingly the EM wave will be assumed linearly polarized along the axis *OY*

$$A_{1y}(t - x/c) = A(t) \sin \omega_0 (t - x/c).$$

To determine the multiphoton diffraction effect (5.49) will be solved again in the eikonal approximation. In accordance with the latter we present the solution of (5.49) in the form of (3.91). Then taking into account the condition (3.92) for the slowly varying function $f(x, t)$ we obtain the equation

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mathrm{v}_{0x} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \left\{ -\frac{ie^2}{2\hbar \mathcal{E}_0} \left[A^2(t) \sin^2 \omega_0 (t - \frac{x}{c}) + \frac{l^2 H^2}{4\pi^2} \sin^2 \frac{2\pi}{l} x \right. \right.$$

$$\left. + \frac{lH}{2\pi} A(t) \cos \omega_0 \left(t - \left(1 + \frac{\lambda}{l} \right) \frac{x}{c} \right) - \frac{lH}{2\pi} A(t) \cos \omega_0 \left(t - \left(1 - \frac{\lambda}{l} \right) \frac{x}{c} \right) \right]$$

$$+\frac{iecp_{0y}}{\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\left[A(t)\sin\omega_0(t-\frac{x}{c})+\frac{lH}{2\pi}\sin\frac{2\pi}{l}x\right]\Bigg\}f(x,t). \tag{5.50}$$

As is seen from (5.50) under the induced interaction in the undulator, traveling waves propagating with the phase velocities $v_{ph} = c/(1+\lambda/l) < c$ and $v_{ph} = c/(1-\lambda/l) > c$ arise. We will not repeat here the analogous interpretation of the terms in (5.50) which correspond to interaction of the particle with the waves propagating with the phase velocities $v_{ph} \gtrless c$ that has been done for the above-considered induced Compton process. Note only that coherent interaction in this process occurs with the slowed interference wave propagating with the phase velocity $v_{ph} = c/(1+\lambda/l) < c$ (third term on the right-hand side of (5.50)), in accordance with the classical results for the induced interaction in the magnetic undulator (see (5.29) and (5.31)).

The integration of (5.50) is simple if we pass to characteristic coordinates $\tau' = t - x/v_{0x}$ and $\eta' = t$. Then, if one directs the particle velocity $\mathbf{v}_0$ at the angle ϑ_0 with respect to the wave propagation direction (undulator axis) thus providing the condition of coherency in the undulator for the free-particle velocity

$$v_0\cos\vartheta_0 = \frac{c}{1+\frac{\lambda}{l}}, \tag{5.51}$$

the slowed traveling wave in this frame of coordinates becomes a motionless phase lattice (over the coordinate τ') and diffraction scattering of the particle occurs. For the amplitude of the scattered particle wave function we obtain

$$f(\tau') = \exp\left\{-\frac{ie^2lH}{4\pi\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\cos\omega_0\tau'\int_{\eta_1}^{\eta_2}A(\eta')d\eta'\right\}, \tag{5.52}$$

where η_1 and η_2 are the moments of the particle entrance into the undulator and exit, respectively.

Expanding the exponential in (5.52) into a series by Bessel functions with the help of (3.91) for the final wave function of the scattered particle we will have

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}}\exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_0\sin\vartheta_0)\,y\right]\sum_{s=-\infty}^{+\infty}(-i)^s J_s(\alpha)$$
$$\times\exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left[p_0\cos\vartheta_0+s\hbar\frac{\omega_0}{c}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\right]x-\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathcal{E}_0+s\hbar\omega_0)\,t\right\}, \tag{5.53}$$

where the argument of the Bessel function is

$$\alpha = \frac{e^2lH}{4\pi\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\int_{t_1}^{t_2}A(\eta')d\eta'. \tag{5.54}$$

The expression for the particle wave function (5.53) shows that the initial plane wave of the free particle as a result of the induced undulator effect is expanded into the envelope of plane waves with all possible numbers of absorbed and emitted photons—the inelastic diffraction scattering occurs. The energy and momentum of the particle after the scattering are

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 + s\hbar\omega_0; \quad p_x = p_0 \cos\vartheta_0 + \left(1 + \frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{s\hbar\omega_0}{c};$$

$$p_y = \text{const}; \quad s = 0, \pm 1, \ldots . \tag{5.55}$$

According to the condition of eikonal approximation (3.92) $s\hbar\omega_0 \ll \mathcal{E}_0$.

The probability of inelastic diffraction scattering in the undulator is

$$W_s = J_s^2\left[\frac{e^2 lH}{4\pi\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\int_{t_1}^{t_2} A(\eta')d\eta'\right]. \tag{5.56}$$

If the incident strong EM wave is monochromatic, the probability of this process is

$$W_s = J_s^2\left(\frac{e^2 cE_0 lH}{4\pi\hbar\omega_0\mathcal{E}_0}t_0\right), \tag{5.57}$$

where $t_0 = t_2 - t_1$ is the time duration of the particle motion in the undulator, and E_0 is the amplitude of the electric field strength of stimulating wave.

For the actual values of the parameters the argument of the Bessel function $\alpha \gg 1$, consequently the inelastic diffraction scattering in the undulator is essentially multiphoton as in the Cherenkov and Compton processes. The main diffraction maximums correspond to the most probable number of absorbed/radiated photons

$$\bar{s} \simeq \xi_0 \frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\frac{elH}{4\pi\hbar}t_0 \tag{5.58}$$

with the energetic width $\Gamma(\bar{s}) \simeq \bar{s}^{1/3}\hbar\omega_0$.

The scattering angles of s-photon diffraction in the undulator are

$$\tan\vartheta_s = \frac{s\hbar\omega_0\left(1 + \frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\sin\vartheta_0}{cp_0 + s\hbar\omega_0\left(1 + \frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\cos\vartheta_0}; \quad s = 0, \pm 1, \ldots . \tag{5.59}$$

The main diffraction maximums are situated at the angles (taking into account the condition of applied eikonal approximation)

$$\vartheta_{\pm\bar{s}} = \pm\frac{\left(1 + \frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\bar{s}\hbar\omega_0}{cp_0}\sin\vartheta_0, \tag{5.60}$$

with respect to the direction of the particle initial motion.

5.5 Quantum Modulation of Particle Beam in Induced Compton Process

Consider the effect of a particle beam quantum modulation at the interaction with the counterpropagating waves of different frequencies and intensities smaller than the threshold value for nonlinear Compton resonance or the critical value of the particle "reflection" phenomenon (5.9) (since the quantum modulation of the particle state is the result of coherent interaction with the periodic wave field, while at values larger than the critical one the latter becomes a potential barrier for the particle).

Neglecting the spin interaction the quantum equation of motion (5.37) for the plane waves of circular polarization

$$\mathbf{A}_1 = \left\{0, A_1 \cos\omega_1 \left(t - \frac{x}{c}\right), A_1 \sin\omega_1 \left(t - \frac{x}{c}\right)\right\},$$

$$\mathbf{A}_2 = \left\{0, A_2 \cos\omega_2 \left(t + \frac{x}{c}\right), A_2 \sin\omega_2 \left(t + \frac{x}{c}\right)\right\}$$

may be presented in the form

$$\hbar^2 c^2 \Delta\Psi - \hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial t^2} = \left\{e^2\left(A_1^2 + A_2^2\right) + m^2 c^4 + 2ie\hbar c\left[\mathbf{A}_1\left(t - \frac{x}{c}\right)\right.\right.$$
$$\left.\left. + \mathbf{A}_2\left(t + \frac{x}{c}\right)\right]\nabla + 2e^2 A_1 A_2 \cos\left(\omega_1 - \omega_2\right)\left(t - \frac{\omega_1 + \omega_2}{\omega_1 - \omega_2}\frac{x}{c}\right)\right\}\Psi. \quad (5.61)$$

If the initial velocity of the particle is directed along the axis of wave propagation ($\mathbf{p}_{0\perp} = 0$) the noncoherent interaction with the separate waves $\sim A_1$ and A_2 vanishes and we have the equation

$$\hbar^2 c^2 \Delta\Psi - \hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial t^2} = \left\{e^2\left(A_1^2 + A_2^2\right) + m^2 c^4\right.$$
$$\left. + 2e^2 A_1 A_2 \cos\left(\omega_1 - \omega_2\right)\left(t - \frac{\omega_1 + \omega_2}{\omega_1 - \omega_2}\frac{x}{c}\right)\right\}\Psi, \quad (5.62)$$

which describes the coherent interaction with the slowed interference wave of frequency $\omega_1 - \omega_2$ (corresponding to Compton resonance between the counterpropagating waves) and constant renormalization of the particle mass in the field because of the intensity effect of strong waves $\sim A_1^2 + A_2^2$. To determine the effect of quantum modulation at the harmonics of the fundamental frequency $\omega_1 - \omega_2$ the problem will be solved in the approximation of perturbation theory (besides, the wave intensities should be smaller than the critical value in the induced Compton process). It is found that, this renormalization in the field is rather small and since it vanishes after the interaction as well, we will omit this term. Then one needs to take into account the quantum recoil which has been vanished by consideration of the diffraction effect on the basis of eikonal-type wave function, when the second-order derivatives of the wave function have been neglected. Hence, we will keep the second-order derivatives in (5.61) and solve it within perturbation theory by the wave function. Then the solution of (5.62) is sought by the series of harmonics of the fundamental frequency $\omega_1 - \omega_2$:

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}} \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_0 x - \mathcal{E}_0 t)\right]$$

$$\times \sum_{s=-\infty}^{+\infty} \Psi_s \exp\left[is(\omega_1 - \omega_2)\left(t - \frac{\omega_1 + \omega_2}{\omega_1 - \omega_2}\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]. \tag{5.63}$$

(for N_0 particles per unit volume) corresponding to s-photon absorption by the particle from the wave of frequency ω_2 and s-photon coherent radiation into the wave of frequency ω_1 and vice versa (induced Compton effect with the conservation of the number of interacting photons). Substituting the wave function (5.63) into (5.62) we obtain the following recurrent equation for the amplitudes Ψ_s:

$$\left[4\hbar^2 s^2 \omega_1 \omega_2 + 2\mathcal{E}_0 s\hbar\left(\omega_1 - \omega_2 - (\omega_1 + \omega_2)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\right]\Psi_s$$

$$= -e^2 A_1 A_2 \left[\Psi_{s-1} + \Psi_{s+1}\right]. \tag{5.64}$$

Equation (5.64) will be solved in the approximation of perturbation theory by the wave function:

$$|\Psi_{\pm 1}| \ll |\Psi_0|; \qquad |\Psi_{\pm 2}| \ll |\Psi_{\pm 1}|, \ldots .$$

Thus, for the amplitude of the particles' wave function corresponding to absorption of s photons of frequency ω_2 and induced radiation of s photons of frequency ω_1 we obtain

$$\Psi_s = \frac{(-1)^s}{s!}\left(\frac{e^2 A_1 A_2}{2\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^s \prod_{s_1=1}^{s} \frac{1}{\omega_1 - \omega_2 - (\omega_1 + \omega_2)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} + 2s_1\frac{\hbar\omega_1\omega_2}{\mathcal{E}_0}}, \tag{5.65}$$

and for the inverse process (absorption of s photons of frequency ω_1 and induced radiation of s photons of frequency ω_2):

$$\Psi_{-s} = \frac{1}{s!}\left(\frac{e^2 A_1 A_2}{2\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^s \prod_{s_1=1}^{s} \frac{1}{\omega_1 - \omega_2 - (\omega_1 + \omega_2)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} - 2s_1\frac{\hbar\omega_1\omega_2}{\mathcal{E}_0}}. \tag{5.66}$$

Hence, for the total wave function of the particles after the interaction we have the equation

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}}\left\{1+\sum_{s=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{s!}\left(\frac{e^2A_1A_2}{2\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^s\right.$$

$$\times\left[\prod_{s_1=1}^{s}\frac{(-1)^s\exp\left[is(\omega_1-\omega_2)\left(t-\frac{\omega_1+\omega_2}{\omega_1-\omega_2}\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]}{\omega_1-\omega_2-(\omega_1+\omega_2)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}+2s_1\frac{\hbar\omega_1\omega_2}{\mathcal{E}_0}}\right.$$

$$\left.\left.+\prod_{s_1=1}^{s}\frac{\exp\left[-is(\omega_1-\omega_2)\left(t-\frac{\omega_1+\omega_2}{\omega_1-\omega_2}\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]}{\omega_1-\omega_2-(\omega_1+\omega_2)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}-2s_1\frac{\hbar\omega_1\omega_2}{\mathcal{E}_0}}\right]\right\}e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_0x-\mathcal{E}_0t)}. \tag{5.67}$$

Here, the dimensionless parameter of one-photon absorption–radiation is the small parameter of applied perturbation theory

$$\frac{e^2A_1A_2}{2\hbar\mathcal{E}_0\left|\omega_1-\omega_2-(\omega_1+\omega_2)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\pm 2\frac{\hbar\omega_1\omega_2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right|}\ll 1. \tag{5.68}$$

The denominators in (5.67) become zero at the fulfillment of exact resonance (with the quantum recoil $2\hbar\omega_1\omega_2/\ \mathcal{E}_0$) corresponding to the conservation law for the induced Compton process

$$\omega_1=\omega_2\frac{1+\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}}{1-\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\pm 2s\frac{\hbar\omega_2}{\mathcal{E}_0}}. \tag{5.69}$$

In this case, perturbation theory is not applicable and consideration must be given to secular perturbation theory.

Corresponding to wave function (5.67) the current density of the particles after the interaction will be expressed by the equation

$$\mathbf{j}(t,x)=\mathbf{j}_0\left\{1+2\sum_{s=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{s!}\left(\frac{e^2A_1A_2}{2\hbar\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^s\right.$$

$$\times\left[\prod_{s_1=1}^{s}\frac{(-1)^s}{\omega_1-\omega_2-(\omega_1+\omega_2)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}+2s_1\frac{\hbar\omega_1\omega_2}{\mathcal{E}_0}}\right.$$

$$\left.+\prod_{s_1=1}^{s}\frac{1}{\omega_1-\omega_2-(\omega_1+\omega_2)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}-2s_1\frac{\hbar\omega_1\omega_2}{\mathcal{E}_0}}\right]$$

$$\times\cos\left[s(\omega_1-\omega_2)\left(t-\frac{\omega_1+\omega_2}{\omega_1-\omega_2}\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]$$

$$+2\sum_{s=1}^{\infty}\sum_{s'=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{s}}{s!s'!}\left(\frac{e^{2}A_{1}A_{2}}{2\hbar\mathcal{E}_{0}}\right)^{s+s'}\cos\left[\left(s+s'\right)(\omega_{1}-\omega_{2})\left(t-\frac{\omega_{1}+\omega_{2}}{\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}}\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]$$

$$\times\prod_{s_{1}=1}^{s}\prod_{s_{2}=1}^{s'}\frac{1}{\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}-(\omega_{1}+\omega_{2})\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0}}{c}+2s_{1}\frac{\hbar\omega_{1}\omega_{2}}{\mathcal{E}_{0}}}$$

$$\left.\times\frac{1}{\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}-(\omega_{1}+\omega_{2})\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0}}{c}-2s_{2}\frac{\hbar\omega_{1}\omega_{2}}{\mathcal{E}_{0}}}\right\}, \tag{5.70}$$

where $\mathbf{j}_0 = \text{const}$ is the initial current density of the particles.

We present in explicit form the expression of modulated current density of the particles for the first three harmonics

$$\mathbf{j}(t,x)=\mathbf{j}_{0}\left\{1+B\left(\omega_{1,2}\right)\cos\left(\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}\right)\left(t-\frac{\omega_{1}+\omega_{2}}{\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}}\frac{x}{c}\right)\right.$$

$$+\frac{3}{4}B^{2}\left(\omega_{1,2}\right)\cos 2\left(\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}\right)\left(t-\frac{\omega_{1}+\omega_{2}}{\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}}\frac{x}{c}\right)$$

$$+\frac{5}{8}B^{3}\left(\omega_{1,2}\right)\cos 3\left(\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}\right)\left(t-\frac{\omega_{1}+\omega_{2}}{\omega_{1}-\omega_{2}}\frac{x}{c}\right)+\cdots, \tag{5.71}$$

where the modulation depth at the fundamental frequency $\omega_1 - \omega_2$

$$B\left(\omega_{1,2}\right)=\frac{\xi_{1}\xi_{2}}{\xi_{cr}^{2}\left(\omega_{1,2}\right)} \tag{5.72}$$

is represented by the parameter of critical field (5.9) in the induced Compton process. As was mentioned above for quantum modulation of the particle state at the harmonics of interference wave, the intensity of the latter should be smaller than the threshold value of nonlinear resonance in the field or the critical value in the induced Compton process. Equation (5.72) shows that this requirement ($\xi_1\xi_2 < \xi_{cr}^2(\omega_{1,2})$) holds in any case since in accordance with perturbation theory (condition (5.68)) $\xi_1\xi_2 \ll \xi_{cr}^2\left(\omega_{1,2}\right)$. Note that for the representation of modulation depth in the form of (5.72) it was assumed that the quantum recoil is smaller than the Compton resonance width because of nonmonochromaticity of actual particle beams.

5.6 Quantum Modulation of Particle Beam in the Undulator

If in the induced Compton process the particles' quantum modulation takes place at the difference of frequencies (and harmonics) of two waves, the induced interaction in the undulator leads to particles' quantum modulation at the stimulating wave frequency and its harmonics. The latter is similar to Cherenkov modulation, but it is important that in this case the modulation takes place in the vacuum.

The quantum equation of motion of the particle (5.49) in the undulator with circular polarization of the magnetic field in the presence of a plane monochromatic EM wave of circular polarization with vector potentials, respectively,

$$\mathbf{A}_2(x) = \left\{0, -\frac{lH}{2\pi}\cos\frac{2\pi}{l}x, \frac{lH}{2\pi}\sin\frac{2\pi}{l}x\right\},$$

$$\mathbf{A}_1(x,t) = \left\{0, A_0\cos\omega_0\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right), -A_0\sin\omega_0\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)\right\}$$

is written as

$$\hbar^2c^2\Delta\Psi - \hbar^2\frac{\partial^2\Psi}{\partial t^2} = \left\{e^2\left(A_0^2+\frac{l^2H^2}{4\pi^2}\right)+m^2c^4+2ie\hbar c\left[\mathbf{A}_1\left(t-\frac{x}{c}\right)\right.\right.$$
$$\left.\left.+\mathbf{A}_2\left(x\right)\right]\nabla - e^2\frac{lH}{\pi}A_0\cos\omega_0\left(t-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{x}{c}\right)\right\}\Psi. \tag{5.73}$$

The coherent interaction in this process which leads to particles' quantum modulation proceeds with the effective slowed wave $\sim HA_0$ (last term on the right-hand side of (5.73)). If the free-particle initial velocity is directed along the undulator axis ($\mathbf{p}_{0\perp}=0$) the noncoherent interaction with the EM wave $\sim A_1$ and magnetic field of the undulator $\sim A_2$ vanishes and we have the equation

$$\hbar^2c^2\Delta\Psi - \hbar^2\frac{\partial^2\Psi}{\partial t^2} = \left\{e^2\left(A_0^2+\frac{l^2H^2}{4\pi^2}\right)+m^2c^4\right.$$
$$\left.-e^2\frac{lH}{\pi}A_0\cos\omega_0\left(t-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{x}{c}\right)\right\}\Psi, \tag{5.74}$$

which describes the particle coherent interaction with the effective slowed wave in the undulator and constant renormalization of the particle mass in the field due to the intensity effect of strong wave $\sim A_0^2$ and powerful magnetic field of the wiggler $\sim H^2l^2$. With the same justification made at the solution of this problem in the induced Compton process these constant terms will be neglected and the solution of (5.74) will be sought in the form

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}}\exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(p_0x-\mathcal{E}_0t\right)\right]$$
$$\times\sum_{s=-\infty}^{+\infty}\Psi_s\exp\left[is\omega_0\left(t-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]. \tag{5.75}$$

Substituting the wave function (5.75) into (5.74) we obtain the recurrent equation for the amplitudes Ψ_s corresponding to s-photon induced absorption by the particle from the effective slowed wave ($s < 0$) and induced undulator radiation ($s > 0$)

$$\left[\frac{2\pi c\hbar}{l\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)s^2 + s\left(1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right)\right]\Psi_s$$

$$= \frac{e^2 lHA_0}{4\pi\mathcal{E}_0\hbar\omega_0}\left[\Psi_{s-1}+\Psi_{s+1}\right], \tag{5.76}$$

which will be solved in the approximation of perturbation theory by the wave function:

$$|\Psi_{\pm 1}| \ll |\Psi_0|; \qquad |\Psi_{\pm 2}| \ll |\Psi_{\pm 1}|, \ldots .$$

For the amplitude of the particle wave function corresponding to s-photon induced radiation we obtain

$$\Psi_s = \frac{1}{s!}\left(\frac{e^2 lHA_0}{4\pi\mathcal{E}_0\hbar\omega_0}\right)^s \prod_{s_1=1}^{s} \frac{1}{1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}+2s_1\frac{\pi c\hbar}{l\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)}, \tag{5.77}$$

and for s-photon absorption

$$\Psi_{-s} = \frac{(-1)^s}{s!}\left(\frac{e^2 lHA_0}{4\pi\mathcal{E}_0\hbar\omega_0}\right)^s \prod_{s_1=1}^{s} \frac{1}{1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}-2s_1\frac{\pi c\hbar}{l\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)}. \tag{5.78}$$

Hence, for total wave function of the particles after the interaction we have

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}}\left\{1+\sum_{s=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{s!}\left(\frac{e^2 lHA_0}{4\pi\mathcal{E}_0\hbar\omega_0}\right)^s\right.$$

$$\times\left[\prod_{s_1=1}^{s}\frac{\exp\left[is\omega_0\left(t-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]}{1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}+2s_1\frac{\pi c\hbar}{l\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)}\right.$$

$$\left.\left.+\prod_{s_1=1}^{s}\frac{(-1)^s\exp\left[-is\omega_0\left(t-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{x}{c}\right)\right]}{1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}-2s_1\frac{\pi c\hbar}{l\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)}\right]\right\} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_0x-\mathcal{E}_0t)}. \tag{5.79}$$

The small parameter of applied perturbation theory (dimensionless parameter of induced one-photon absorption–radiation in the undulator) is

$$\frac{e^2 lHA_0}{4\pi\mathcal{E}_0\hbar\omega_0\left|1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\pm 2\frac{\pi c\hbar}{l\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)\right|} \ll 1. \tag{5.80}$$

The denominators in (5.79) become zero at the fulfillment of exact resonance (with the quantum recoil) between the EM wave and undulator fields

$$\frac{\lambda}{l} = \frac{c}{\mathrm{v}_0} - 1 \pm 2s\frac{\pi\hbar c^2}{l\mathcal{E}_0\mathrm{v}_0}\left(1 + \frac{\lambda}{2l}\right), \tag{5.81}$$

for which the perturbation theory is not applicable and the consideration should be made in the scope of secular perturbation theory.

With the help of the wave function (5.79) for the current density of the particles after the interaction we obtain the equation

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathbf{j}(t,x) = \mathbf{j}_0 \Bigg\{ 1 + 2\sum_{s=1}^{\infty}\frac{1}{s!}\left(\frac{e^2 lHA_0}{4\pi\mathcal{E}_0\hbar\omega_0}\right)^s \\
\times \Bigg[\prod_{s_1=1}^{s}\frac{1}{1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} + 2s_1\frac{\pi c\hbar}{l\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)} \\
+ \prod_{s_1=1}^{s}\frac{(-1)^s}{1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} - 2s_1\frac{\pi c\hbar}{l\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)}\Bigg] \times \cos\left[s\omega_0\left(t-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{x}{c}\right)\right] \\
+ 2\sum_{s=1}^{\infty}\sum_{s'=1}^{\infty}\frac{(-1)^{s'}}{s!s'!}\left(\frac{e^2 lHA_0}{4\pi\mathcal{E}_0\hbar\omega_0}\right)^{s+s'}\cos\left[\left(s+s'\right)\omega_0\left(t-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{x}{c}\right)\right] \\
\times \prod_{s_1=1}^{s}\prod_{s_2=1}^{s'}\frac{1}{1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} + 2s_1\frac{\pi c\hbar}{l\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)} \\
\times \frac{1}{1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} - 2s_2\frac{\pi c\hbar}{l\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)}\Bigg\}.
\end{aligned} \tag{5.82}$$

From (5.82) for the modulation at the fundamental frequency of the stimulating wave we have

$$\mathbf{j}_1(t,x) = \mathbf{j}_0\left\{1 - B(\lambda/l)\cos\omega_0\left(t-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{x}{c}\right)\right\}, \tag{5.83}$$

where the modulation depth is

$$B(\lambda/l) = 2\xi_0\xi_H\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2\frac{\frac{\lambda}{l}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)}{\left[1-\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{l}\right)\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right]^2 - \frac{4\pi^2c^2\hbar^2}{l^2\mathcal{E}_0^2}\left(1+\frac{\lambda}{2l}\right)^2}. \tag{5.84}$$

The depth of quantum modulation can be represented by the parameter of critical field (5.30) in the induced undulator process. As the resonance width because of nonmonochromaticity of actual particle beams is rather larger than the quantum recoil, then neglecting the latter, for the modulation depth we will have

$$B(\lambda/l) = \frac{\xi_0 \xi_H}{\xi_{cr}^2(\lambda/l)}. \tag{5.85}$$

In accordance with perturbation theory the modulation depth $B(\lambda/l) \ll 1$ (condition (5.80)) and (5.85) shows that $\xi_0 \xi_H < \xi_{cr}^2(\lambda/l)$, i.e., the effective field in the undulator for the considered regime of coherent interaction holds under the threshold of nonlinear resonance or critical value in the undulator (above which the quantum modulation of particles, as well as the above-considered diffraction scattering, do not proceed).

5.7 Nonlinear Acceleration of Ions by Counterpropagating Laser Pulses: Generation of Ion/Nuclei Bunches from Nanotargets

The state-of-the-art laser systems are capable of generating electromagnetic pulses with intensities exceeding on several orders of the threshold of relativism for electrons. For heavier particles, laser intensities, at which an ion with atomic mass number $\mathcal{A}$ and charge number $\mathcal{Z}$ becomes relativistic, are defined by the condition $\varXi \gtrsim 1$, where

$$\varXi = \frac{\mathcal{Z} e E \lambdabar}{\mathcal{A} m_u c^2}$$

is the relativistic dimensionless parameter of a wave–particle interaction (m_u is the atomic mass unit: $m_u \simeq 1.66 \times 10^{-24}$g) and represents the work of the field with electric strength E on a wavelength λ ($\lambdabar = \lambda/2\pi$) in the units of particle rest energy. Laser intensities, at which relativistic effects become important for an ion ($\varXi = 1$ -threshold value) can be estimated as:

$$I_r = \varXi^2 \mathcal{A}^2 \mathcal{Z}^{-2} \times 4.55 \times 10^{24}\ \mathrm{W\,cm^{-2}}\,(\lambda/\mu\mathrm{m})^{-2}.$$

At first we consider nonlinear classical dynamics of an ion at the interaction in vacuum with the two counterpropagating ultrastrong plane waves of carrier frequencies ω_1, ω_2 (let $\omega_1 > \omega_2$), wavenumbers $\mathbf{k}_1 = \{\omega_1/c, 0, 0\}$, $\mathbf{k}_2 = \{-\omega_2/c, 0, 0\}$, and slowly varying electric field amplitudes $E_1(\tau_1), E_2(\tau_2)$ ($\tau_1 = t - x/c, \tau_2 = t + x/c$). Both waves are assumed to be linearly polarized along the OY direction:

$$\mathbf{E}_{1,2}(x, t) = \left\{0, E_{1,2}\left(\tau_{1,2}\right) \cos \omega_{1,2} \tau_{1,2}, 0\right\}. \tag{5.86}$$

Dynamics of an ion in the resulting electric $\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{E}_1 + \mathbf{E}_2$ and magnetic $\mathbf{H} = \widehat{\mathbf{x}} \times (\mathbf{E}_1 - \mathbf{E}_2)$ fields is governed by the equations:

$$\frac{d\mathbf{\Pi}}{dt} = \frac{e\mathcal{Z}}{\mathcal{A}m_u c}\left(\mathbf{E} + \frac{\mathbf{\Pi} \times \mathbf{H}}{\gamma}\right), \ \frac{d\gamma}{dt} = \frac{e\mathcal{Z}}{\mathcal{A}m_u c}\frac{\mathbf{\Pi} \cdot \mathbf{E}}{\gamma}. \tag{5.87}$$

Here, we have introduced normalized momentum $\mathbf{\Pi} = \mathbf{p}/(\mathcal{A}m_u c)$ and energy $\gamma = \sqrt{1 + \mathbf{\Pi}^2}$ (Lorentz factor) of an ion in the field. When the ion initial transverse momentum is zero, and the waves are turned on/off adiabatically at $t \to \mp\infty$, from (5.87) for transverse momentum in the field one can obtain (coordinate z is cyclic, so $\Pi_z = \text{const} \equiv 0$):

$$\Pi_y\left(\Xi_1, \Xi_2\right) = \Xi_1\left(\tau_1\right)\sin\omega_1\tau_1 + \Xi_2\left(\tau_2\right)\sin\omega_2\tau_2. \tag{5.88}$$

With the help of (5.88), one can obtain equations for longitudinal momentum and energy in the field, which include four nonlinear interaction terms: two of them are proportional to $\Xi_{1,2}^2\left(\tau_{1,2}\right)\sin 2\omega_{1,2}\tau_{1,2}$ and describe interaction with the separate waves that cannot provide real energy change for ion. The term proportional to $\Xi_1\left(\tau_1\right)\Xi_2\left(\tau_2\right)\sin\left(\omega_1\tau_1 + \omega_2\tau_2\right)$ describes interaction with the fast interference wave making no contribution to the real energy exchange too. This term is responsible for particle–antiparticle pair production from Dirac vacuum. The resonant interaction of the ion for acceleration is governed by the slowed interference wave $\Xi_1\left(\tau_1\right)\Xi_2\left(\tau_2\right)\sin\widetilde{\omega}\left(t - x/c\beta_{ph}\right)$, where $\widetilde{\omega} = \omega_1 - \omega_2$ and $\beta_{ph} = \widetilde{\omega}/\left(\omega_1 + \omega_2\right) < 1$ are the frequency and normalized phase velocity of the slowed wave. Hence, keeping only this resonant term, one can obtain the following integral of motion in average:

$$\gamma - \beta_{ph}\Pi_x \simeq \gamma_0 - \beta_{ph}\Pi_{0x}. \tag{5.89}$$

From (5.89), (5.88), and dispersion relation $\gamma = \sqrt{1 + \mathbf{\Pi}^2}$ one can see that for the certain values of $\Xi_{1,2}$ (which we call critical: Ξ_{cr}) the following relation for an ion average transverse momentum in the field may be satisfied:

$$\sqrt{\overline{\Pi_y^2\left(\Xi_1, \Xi_2\right)}} > \gamma_0\frac{\left|\beta_{ph} - \beta_{0x}\right|}{\sqrt{1 - \beta_{ph}^2}}, \tag{5.90}$$

($\beta_{0x} = \mathrm{v}_{0x}/c$, where v_{0x} is the initial longitudinal volocity of the ion) at which the slowed interference wave becomes a potential barrier causing ion reflection from such moving wave barrier—accelerating or decelerating the ion if $\Xi_{eff} > \Xi_{cr}$. The latter occurs since at $\Xi_{eff} = \Xi_{cr}$ the particle longitudinal velocity in the field becomes equal to phase velocity of the effective slowed wave, irrespective of its initial value v_{0x}:

$$\mathrm{v}_x(t, \Xi_{1,2})\big|_{x=x(t)} = \mathrm{v}_{ph} \equiv c\frac{|\omega_1 - \omega_2|}{\omega_1 + \omega_2}, \tag{5.91}$$

which is the classical condition (without quantum recoil) of induced Compton resonance with counterpropagating waves. Since $v_x(t, \Xi_{1,2})$ is determined by the expression depended on the intensities of strong waves (see, Chap. 2 for induced Cherenkov process) and Compton resonance becomes accessible in the field due to the waves' intensities effect (initially the particle is off resonance), then this resonance is of nonlinear and threshold nature. Hence, in this critical point nonlinear Compton resonance occurs, in the result of which the ion volocity becomes greater (induced inverse Compton effect at $v_{0x} < v_{ph}$) or smaller (induced direct Compton effect $v_{0x} > v_{ph}$) than the wave phase volocity and in both cases ion leaves the wave. So, at $\Xi_{eff} > \Xi_{cr}$ the ion acceleration or deceleration in the result of the reflection from the wave barrier occurs. Because of impact character of the particle–barrier interaction, the energy of the reflected particle depends neither on the waves' fields magnitudes nor the interaction length (only the threshold condition: $\Xi_{eff} > \Xi_{cr}$ must be satisfied).

After the interaction ($\Xi_{1,2} = 0$) for the reflected ion final energy we have:

$$\gamma_f \simeq \gamma_0 + 2\gamma_0\beta_{ph}\frac{\beta_{ph} - \beta_{0x}}{1 - \beta_{ph}^2}. \tag{5.92}$$

Formula (5.92) proves the aforementioned feature of considering phenomenon, i.e., ion acceleration effect does not depend on the interaction parameters. Namely, this feature of reflection phenomenon is used here for generation of monoenergetic and low emittance ions/nuclei bunches of ultrashort durations from the nanolayers-solid-plasma targets by femtosecond laser pulses of ultrarelativistic intensities.

Then for actual strongly nonplane and supershort ultrarelativistic laser pulses of certain configurations the problem is solved with the help of PIC simulations. Here, we represent the results of the 2D3V PIC simulations of counterpropagating waves interaction with nanolayers. We have used the code XOOPIC, which is a relativistic code based on PIC method. Then we consider fully ionized carbon $^{12}C^{6+}$ target. The simulation box size is $40\lambda_1 \times 20\lambda_1$ in xy plane. Number of cells are 4000×200. The total number of macroparticles is about 2.4×10^5. Target is assumed to be fully ionized. This is justified since the intensity for full ionization of carbon is about 10^{19} W/cm^2, while we use in simulation intensities at least of five orders of magnitude larger. So the target will become fully ionized well before the arrival of the pulses' peaks. Electrons and ions are assumed to be cold in the target, $T_e = T_i = 0$. The laser pulses have profiles $\sin^2\left(\pi t/\mathcal{T}_{1,2}\right)$ with pulse durations $\mathcal{T}_1 = 5\lambda_1/c$, $\mathcal{T}_2 = 3\lambda_2/c$ and Gaussian transverse profiles: $\exp(-r^2/w_{1,2}^2)$, with the waists $w_1 = 6\lambda_1$ and $w_2 = 3\lambda_2$. The carrier-envelope phase of the lasers is set to zero, so that the electric fields' maximums are at the pulses' centers. The first laser (ω_1) is introduced at the left boundary and propagates along the x-axis from left to right, is focused at the target layer. The second laser (ω_2) is introduced at the right boundary and is also focused at the target layer. We consider case $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2/2$ when $\lambda_2 = 800$ nm, which for the phase velocity of the slowed wave gives: $\beta_{ph} = 1/3$ and according to (5.92) for reflected particle normalized kinetic energy gives: $\gamma_f - 1 \approx 0.25$. In numerical simulations, for laser intensities it is assumed: $\Xi_1 = 0.6$, $\Xi_2 = 0.3$, at which the

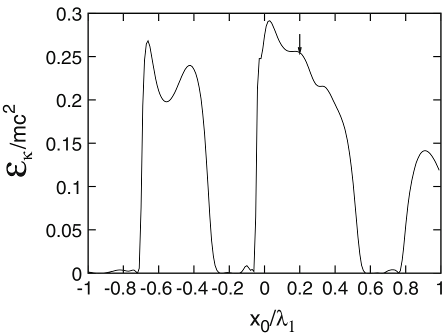


Fig. 5.2 The final-scaled kinetic energy versus the initial position of the ion x_0 in units of wavelength λ_1. The *arrow* shows position of the target layer

intensity of effective slowed wave is above the critical point. Before PIC simulations we have cleared up the role of initial conditions. For this goal, in Fig. 5.2 we display the role of initial conditions: the final energy versus the initial position x_0 of an ion for plane waves, at $\mathbf{v}_0 = 0$. In case of waves adiabatic turn on/off, the energy of reflected particles should be independent on the initial position x_0. However, for short laser pulses depending on the initial position of an ion, reflection will take place with various velocities, since before overlapping of laser pulses (for the formation of a slowed interference wave in vacuum responsible for reflection phenomenon) due to short rise time of laser profiles, ions will acquire various velocities depending on its initial positions. As is seen from Fig. 5.2, there are plateaus where one would have reflection independent on the ion initial position. Hence, the arrow in Fig. 5.2 (which corresponds to relative position of the target layer) shows the position of such plateau. Numerical results show that this model is almost accurate in predicting the final energies of reflected particles: $\gamma_f - 1 \approx 0.25$. Thus, taking into account this result, for PIC simulations the target layer is placed at the distance of $15.2\lambda_1$ from the left boundary, and the first laser is introduced with time delay to start pulse: $t_{del} = 10\lambda_1/c$ for economy of computational time. The simulation box size in the propagation direction have been taken to be $40\lambda_1$. Without time delay for the box size, one should take $50\lambda_1$ selecting the position of a nanolayer at the distance $25.2\lambda_1$ from the left boundary (with the additional $10\lambda_1$ one would describe only the free propagation of the first laser beam, which is eliminated choosing the appropriate time delay).

The results of PIC simulations for carbon foil of density $n_e = 80n_c$ and 4 nm thickness are shown in Figs. 5.3, 5.4, and 5.5. Here as a measure of density we take critical plasma density $n_c = 1.74 \times 10^{21}$ cm^{-3} calculated for 800 nm laser. Note that electrons are escaped from the target before the arrival of the pulses' peaks. After the time period $21T_2$ the ions are already free. The final kinetic energy $\mathcal{E}_k$ and angular $\phi = \tan^{-1}\left(\Pi_x/\Pi_y\right)$ distributions of accelerated ions versus the transverse position, are shown in Figs. 5.3 and 5.4, respectively. The number density of ions is displayed in Fig. 5.5.

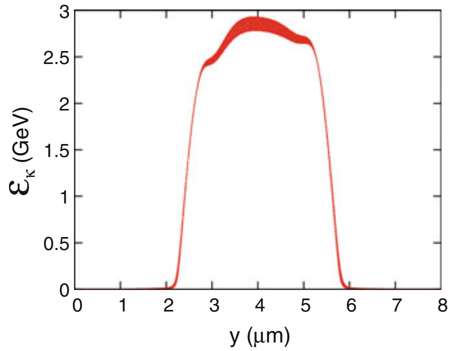


Fig. 5.3 (Color online) The final kinetic energy distribution of carbon ions versus the transverse position *y*

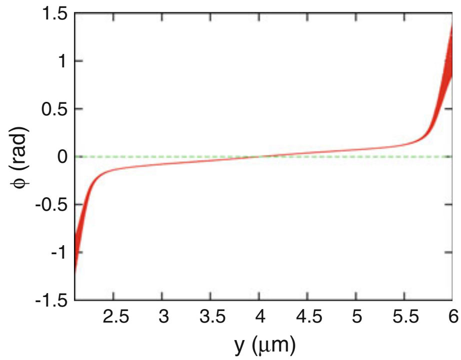


Fig. 5.4 (Color online) The angular distribution of accelerated carbon ions versus the transverse position *y*

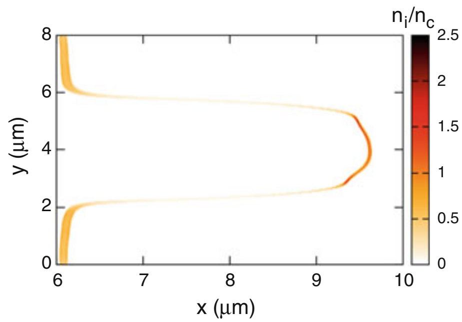


Fig. 5.5 (Color online) Density distribution for carbon ions at instant $21T_2$

To estimate emittances of the ions bunch we will consider the effective area limited to the central zone between 3.5 μm $< y <$ 4.5 μm. Estimations for transverse (ϵ_t) and longitudinal (ϵ_l) emittances of the ions bunch show that for carbon ions $\epsilon_t <$ 0.1π mm mrad and $\epsilon_l < 10^{-7}$ eV s. These results are on several orders of magnitude smaller than their counterparts in conventional ion accelerators. The corresponding energy spreads are: $\delta\mathcal{E}/\mathcal{E} \sim 10^{-2}$.

Thus because of impact feature of the particle–wave–barrier interaction at the extremely short lengths, the generation of fast ions/nuclei bunches based on the nonlinear threshold phenomenon allows to generate high brightness particle bunches of solid densities from nonrelativistic to relativistic energies due to variation of lasers' frequencies ratio in the wide range.

Bibliography

P.L. Kapitsa, P.A.M. Dirac, Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc. **29**, 297 (1933)
J.H. Eberly, Phys. Rev. Lett. **15**, 91 (1965)
L.S. Bartell, H.B. Thomson, R.R. Roskos, Phys. Rev. Lett. **143**, 851 (1965)
H. Schwarz, H.A. Tourtellotte, W.W. Gaertner, Phys. Lett. **19**, 202 (1965)
V.S. Letokhov, Usp. Fiz. Nauk **88**, 396 (1966)
M.V. Fedorov, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **52**, 1434 (1967)
S. Takede, T.J. Matsui, Phys. Soc. Japan **25**, 1202 (1968)
L.S. Bartell, R.R. Roskos, H.B. Thomson, Phys. Rev. **166**, 1494 (1968)
M.M. Nieto, Am. J. Phys. **37**, 162 (1969)
R. Gush, H.P. Gush, Phys. Rev. D **3**, 1712 (1971)
R.B. Palmer, J. Appl. Phys. **43**, 3014 (1972)
F. Ehlotzky, Opt. Commun. **10**, 175 (1974)
V.M. Haroutunian, H.K. Avetissian, Phys. Lett. A **51**, 320 (1975)
V.M. Haroutunian, H.K. Avetissian, Phys. Lett. A **59**, 115 (1976)
D.F. Alferov, Yu.A. Bashmakov, E.G. Bessonov, Zh. Tekh. Fiz. **46**, 2392 (1976). [in Russian]
H.Al. Abawi, F.A. Horf, P. Meystree, Phys. Rev. A **16**, 666 (1977)
H.K. Avetissian, Phys. Lett. A **67**, 101 (1978)
A.A. Kolomensky, A.N. Lebedev, Kvant. Electron. (Moscow) **7**, 1543 (1978). [in Russian]
D.F. Alferov, Yu.A. Bashmakov, E.G. Bessonov, Zh. Tekh. Fiz. **48**, 1592 (1978)
D.F. Alferov, Yu.A. Bashmakov, E.G. Bessonov, Zh. Tekh. Fiz. **48**, 1598 (1978)
H.K. Avetissian, A.A. Jivanian, R.G. Petrossian, Phys. Lett. A **66**, 161 (1978)
H.K. Avetissian, Zh. Tekh. Fiz. **49**, 2118 (1979). [in Russian]
J.K. McIver, M.V. Fedorov, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **76**, 1996 (1979)
P.G. Jukov et al., Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **76**, 2065 (1979)
V.L. Bratman et al., Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **76**, 930 (1979)
D.F. Alferov, E.G. Bessonov, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **49**, 777 (1979)
A.N. Didenko et al., Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **76**, 1919 (1979)
T.G. Kuper, G.T. Moore, M.O. Scully, Opt. Commun. **34**, 117 (1980)
W.B. Colson, S.B. Segall, J. Appl. Phys. **22**, 219 (1980)
W.B. Colson, S.K. Ride, Phys. Lett. A **76**, 379 (1980)
R. Bonifacio, M.O. Scully, Opt. Commun. **32**, 291 (1980)
A. Bambini, R. Bonifacio, S. Stenholm, Opt. Commun. **2**, 306 (1980)
T. Taguchi, K. Mima, T. Mochizuki, Phys. Rev. Lett. **46**, 824 (1981)
H.K. Avetissian, H.A. Jivanian, R.G. Petrossian, Pis'ma Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **34**, 561 (1981)
H.K. Avetissian, H.A. Jivanian, R.G. Petrossian, Phys. Lett. A **5**, 263 (1981)
K.T. McDonald, Phys. Rev. Lett. **80**, 1350 (1998)
H.K. Avetissian, H.A. Jivanian, R.G. Petrossian, Phys. Lett. A **9**, 449 (1981)
M.V. Fedorov, *Electron in a Strong Light Field* (Nauka, Moscow, 1991) [in Russian]
Y.I. Salamin, C.H. Keitel, J. Phys. B **33**, 5057 (2000)
Y.I. Salamin, C.H. Keitel, F.H.M. Faisal, J. Phys. A **34**, 2819 (2001)
Y.I. Salamin, G.R. Mocken, C.H. Keitel, Phys. Rev. E **67**, 016501 (2003)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. ST AB **10**, 030703 (2007)

S.C. Wilks et al., Phys. Plasmas **8**, 542 (2001)
D.H.H. Hoffmann et al., Laser Part. Beams **23**, 47 (2005)
T.Z. Esirkepov et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **89**, 175003 (2002)
H.B. Zhuo et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **105**, 065003 (2010)
S.S. Bulanov et al., Phys. Rev. E **78**, 026412 (2008)
T. Esirkepov et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **92**, 175003 (2004)
S.V. Bulanov et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **104**, 135003 (2010)
L.O. Silva et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **92**, 015002 (2004)
S. Ter-Avetisyan et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **96**, 145006 (2006)
A. Macchi et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **94**, 165003 (2005)
J.P. Verboncoeur, A.B. Langdon, N.T. Gladd, Comp. Phys. Comm. **87**, 199 (1995)
H.K. Avetissian, Kh.V. Sedrakian, Phys. Rev. ST AB **13**, 101304 (2010)
H.K. Avetissian, Kh.V. Sedrakian, Phys. Rev. ST AB **13**, 081301 (2010)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. ST AB **14**, 101301 (2011)

Chapter 6
Induced Nonstationary Transition Process

Abstract How will the nonstationarity of a medium reflect on the process of charged particle interaction with strong laser radiation? In the current laser fields of ultrashort pulse duration and relativistic intensities, any medium turns instantaneously (on a time span much smaller than one wave cycle) into a plasma, that is, abrupt change of the medium properties, particularly the dielectric permittivity, occurs in time. On the other hand, with the abrupt change in time of the dielectric permittivity of a medium, charged particle radiation occurs similar to transition radiation on the boundary of two media with different dielectric permittivity. In the presence of an external EM radiation field, this nonstationary transition process acquires induced character and the inverse process of radiation absorption by a charged particle is actualized, particularly in plasmas where in the stationary states the radiation or absorption of quanta of a transverse EM radiation field (monochromatic radiation such as a laser one) by a free particle cannot proceed. With the abrupt change in time of the medium dielectric permittivity, the production of hard quanta of relativistic energies from the laser radiation is possible and, consequently, electron–positron pair creation in nonstationary plasma of common densities is available. Meanwhile, for electron–positron pair production in a stationary plasma (a medium should be plasmalike for this process) by a γ—quantum, a superdense plasma with electron densities greater than 10^{34} cm^{-3} is necessary. Such superdense matter exists in astrophysical objects (in the core of neutron stars—pulsars), leading to special interest in the processes of electron–positron pair production and annihilation in superdense plasma. On the other hand, the matter in the astrophysical objects may also be in a strongly nonstationary state. Hence, it is important to study the induced nonstationary transition process in the strong EM radiation field in a medium with an arbitrary dielectric permittivity changing abruptly in time.

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_6

6.1 Effect of Abrupt Temporal Variation of Dielectric Permittivity of a Medium

In the investigation of a charged particle interaction with strong EM radiation in a medium, overall it was supposed that the electromagnetic properties of the latter, i.e., the dielectric (ε_0) and magnetic (μ_0) permittivities and, consequently, refractive index n_0, are not changed in the field and the medium being initially in the stationary state maintains its electromagnetic characteristics $n_0 = \sqrt{\varepsilon_0 \mu_0} = \text{const}$.

Consider now how the nonstationarity of a medium will reflect on the process of charged particle interaction with strong EM radiation. From the physical point of view, it is clear that the effects that arise here because of the nonstationarity of a medium will be essential at the abrupt temporal change of the dielectric permittivity (as it is generally assumed the magnetic permittivity of the medium will be taken as $\mu_0 = 1$). Under the abrupt change of ε here, we mean its change at the time $\Delta t \ll 2\pi/\omega$, where ω is the characteristic frequency because of the nonstationarity of a medium (then radiation frequency by a charged particle in this process). Such abrupt change of the dielectric permittivity occurs with the propagation of ultrashort laser pulses of relativistic intensities in a medium when the tunneling ionization of atoms on a time span smaller than a few femtoseconds/attoseconds occurs and the medium instantaneously becomes a plasma.

Let a charged particle with constant initial velocity $\mathbf{v}_0$ move in a spatially homogeneous and isotropic medium whose dielectric permittivity ε changes abruptly at the time from a value ε_1 to ε_2

$$\varepsilon = \begin{cases} \varepsilon_1, & t < 0, \\ \varepsilon_2, & t > 0, \end{cases} \tag{6.1}$$

and let a strong EM wave propagate in this medium. To determine the electromagnetic field in that type of nonstationary medium, one should solve the macroscopic Maxwell equations

$$\mathrm{rot}\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{1}{c}\frac{\partial \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{r}, t)}{\partial t} + \frac{4\pi}{c}\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{r}, t), \tag{6.2}$$

$$\mathrm{rot}\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t) = -\frac{1}{c}\frac{\partial \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}, t)}{\partial t} \tag{6.3}$$

for $t < 0$ and for $t > 0$, then the obtained solutions should be laced at the instant of time $t = 0$. At the discontinuity of the dielectric permittivity (in general, properties of the medium) only the derivatives of the physical quantities can have large values. Hence, the conditions of the lacing can be obtained by the integration of the Maxwell equations (6.2) and (6.3) over t in the arbitrary small region including the instant of time $t = 0$ at which the stepwise discontinuity of the dielectric permittivity (6.1) occurs. The latter means that the integration should be made between the moments

$t_1 = -\Delta t$ and $t_2 = \Delta t$ and then one should take the limit $\Delta t \to 0$. Taking into account that the quantities rot**H**, rot**E**, and **J** are finite, after this procedure, we obtain

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{r}, t)|_{t=-0} = \mathbf{D}(\mathbf{r}, t)|_{t=+0},$$

$$\mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}, t)|_{t=-0} = \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}, t)|_{t=+0}.$$

These equations can be written in terms of electric and magnetic field strengths with the help of the constitutive equations

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \varepsilon(t)\,\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t); \quad \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}, t),$$

which yield to "boundary conditions"

$$\varepsilon_1\,\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t)|_{t=-0} = \varepsilon_2\,\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t)|_{t=+0}, \tag{6.4}$$

$$\mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}, t)|_{t=-0} = \mathbf{H}(\mathbf{r}, t)|_{t=+0}. \tag{6.5}$$

Under the conditions (6.4) and (6.5) the charged particle radiation will occur in the nonstationary medium similar to transition radiation on the boundary of two media with different dielectric permittivity. This spontaneous radiation field can be obtained from the Maxwell equations (6.2), (6.3) with the corresponding current density of a charged particle $\mathbf{J}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ under the conditions (6.4) and (6.5). However, we will not describe here the spontaneous nonstationary transition radiation effect and refer the reader interested in this process to the original work presented in the bibliography of this chapter. We will consider the induced nonstationary transition process in the external EM wave field. For the latter one needs also to clear up the question of how the change of the dielectric permittivity (6.1) of the medium affects the external monochromatic wave.

If a plane monochromatic wave of frequency ω_0, wave vector $\mathbf{k}_0$, and electric field amplitude $\mathbf{E}_0$ propagates in a medium with the mentioned properties, then at $t < 0$ when $\varepsilon = \varepsilon_1$

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \mathbf{E}_0 e^{i(\omega_0 t - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r})} + \text{c.c.}; \quad t < 0 \tag{6.6}$$

and at $t > 0$ when $\varepsilon = \varepsilon_2$ there are two waves—transmitted and reflected:

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \mathbf{E}_1 e^{i(\omega_1 t - \mathbf{k}_1\mathbf{r})} + \mathbf{E}_2 e^{i(-\omega_2 t - \mathbf{k}_2\mathbf{r})} + \text{c.c.}; \quad t > 0. \tag{6.7}$$

Here ω_1, $\mathbf{k}_1$, $\mathbf{E}_1$ and ω_2, $\mathbf{k}_2$, $\mathbf{E}_2$ are the frequencies, wave vectors, and amplitudes of the electric fields of the transmitted and reflected waves, respectively. Since the medium is assumed to be spatially homogeneous, for the wave vectors the condition takes place:

$$\mathbf{k}_0 = \mathbf{k}_1 = \mathbf{k}_2 = \text{const}, \tag{6.8}$$

and the nonstationarity of the medium leads to a change of frequency. From the condition for the wave vectors (6.8) follows the relations between the frequencies of the incident, transmitted, and reflected waves:

$$\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1} = \omega_1\sqrt{\varepsilon_2} = \omega_2\sqrt{\varepsilon_2}. \tag{6.9}$$

Let the wave propagate along the axis OX with the vector of electric field amplitude $\mathbf{E}_0$ directed along the OY axis. Then using conditions (6.4) and (6.5) and Maxwell equations (6.2) and (6.3) for the field (6.6), (6.7) in the case of the wave linear polarization, for the amplitudes of the electric field of the transmitted and reflected waves, we obtain

$$E_1 = \frac{\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}(\sqrt{\varepsilon_1} + \sqrt{\varepsilon_2})}{2\varepsilon_2} E_0, \tag{6.10}$$

$$E_2 = \frac{\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}(\sqrt{\varepsilon_1} - \sqrt{\varepsilon_2})}{2\varepsilon_2} E_0. \tag{6.11}$$

Equations (6.10) and (6.11) with the analogous equations for the magnetic strengths, and (6.8), (6.9) determine the electromagnetic fields of the transmitted and reflected waves at the propagation of a plane monochromatic EM wave in a medium the dielectric permittivity of which changes abruptly at the time.

6.2 Classical Description of Induced Nonstationary Transition Process

As mentioned above in the presence of an external EM radiation field, the nonstationary transition process acquires induced character and the interaction of a charged particle with the incident plane monochromatic wave in a medium will proceed with the actual energy change and the acceleration of the particles or induced coherent radiation will take place. It is of special interest, in particular, in plasmas where for the stationary states the real energy change between a charged particle and a transverse EM wave cannot proceed because of the violation of the conservation law of energy-momentum for the absorption/emission of quanta in the field of a plane monochromatic wave by a free charged particle. Hence, we will study the classical and quantum dynamics of the induced nonstationary transition process in the external wave field on the basis of relativistic equations of motion for a charged particle.

Consider first the classical dynamics of the particle–wave interaction in a medium with the abrupt temporal change of the dielectric permittivity. Then, the initial monochromatic wave is transformed into a continuous wave spectrum (in general, finite since the change of ε actually occurs in finite time). This spectrum of frequencies (ω) depends on the time during which the electromagnetic properties of the medium are changed. If the characteristic time $\tau \ll 2\pi/\omega$, then the abrupt temporal change of the dielectric permittivity can be described by the stepwise function ε (6.1).

With the stepwise discontinuity of the dielectric permittivity (6.1), the initial monochromatic wave (of linear polarization) is transformed into a spectrum that can be found via Fourier transformation over t

$$E_y(x,t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} E_y(x,\omega)\, e^{i\omega t} d\omega. \tag{6.12}$$

Then for the fields (6.6) and (6.7), the Fourier transform $E_y(x,\omega)$ may be presented in the form

$$\begin{aligned} E_y(x,\omega) = \frac{e^{-ik_0x}}{2\pi} \Bigg\{ E_0 \int_{-\infty}^{0} e^{\epsilon t} e^{i(\omega_0-\omega)t} dt + E_1 \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\epsilon t} e^{i(\omega_1-\omega)t} dt \\ + E_2 \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\epsilon t} e^{-i(\omega_1+\omega)t} dt \Bigg\} + \frac{e^{ik_0x}}{2\pi} \Bigg\{ E_0 \int_{-\infty}^{0} e^{\epsilon t} e^{-i(\omega_0+\omega)t} dt \\ + E_1 \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\epsilon t} e^{-i(\omega_1+\omega)t} dt + E_2 \int_{0}^{\infty} e^{-\epsilon t} e^{i(\omega_1-\omega)t} dt \Bigg\}, \end{aligned} \tag{6.13}$$

where we have introduced an arbitrarily small damping factor $\epsilon \to 0$ to switch on/off adiabatically the wave at $t = \mp\infty$. After the integration in (6.13) for the Fourier transform of the field, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} E_y(x,\omega) = \frac{e^{-ik_0x}}{2\pi i} \left\{ \frac{E_2}{\omega+\omega_1-i\epsilon} + \frac{E_1}{\omega-\omega_1-i\epsilon} - \frac{E_0}{\omega-\omega_0+i\epsilon} \right\} \\ + \frac{e^{ik_0x}}{2\pi i} \left\{ \frac{E_2}{\omega-\omega_1-i\epsilon} + \frac{E_1}{\omega+\omega_1-i\epsilon} - \frac{E_0}{\omega+\omega_0+i\epsilon} \right\}. \end{aligned} \tag{6.14}$$

The infinitesimal quantity $i\epsilon$ in the poles of (6.14) indicates the path that should be chosen at the integration over ω (at the inverse Fourier transformation as well). Taking into account (6.9), (6.10), and (6.11) for the $E_y(x,\omega)$, we will have

$$E_y(x,\omega) = E(\omega)e^{-ik_0x} - E(-\omega)e^{ik_0x}, \tag{6.15}$$

where

$$E(\omega) = \frac{E_0}{2\pi i}\left(\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2} - 1\right) \frac{\omega^2}{(\omega-\omega_0)\left(\omega^2 - \omega_0^2\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right)}. \tag{6.16}$$

Here we have omitted the infinitesimal $i\epsilon$ bearing in mind the role of the poles bypass.

The analogous equations can be obtained for the magnetic field strength:

$$H_z(x,\omega) = H(\omega)e^{-ik_0x} - H(-\omega)e^{ik_0x}, \tag{6.17}$$

$$H(\omega) = \frac{\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\omega_0}{\omega}E(\omega).$$

Now the problem of the particle–wave interaction in a nonstationary medium with the abrupt temporal change of the dielectric permittivity reduces to the particle interaction with the EM field possesing the spectral components (6.15), (6.17). Consequently, the relativistic classical equations of motion of the particle take the form

$$\frac{dp_x}{dt} = \frac{e}{c}\mathrm{v}_y \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[H(\omega)e^{-ik_0x} - H(-\omega)e^{ik_0x}\right] e^{i\omega t} d\omega, \tag{6.18}$$

$$\frac{dp_y}{dt} = e \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[E(\omega)e^{-ik_0x} - E(-\omega)e^{ik_0x}\right] e^{i\omega t} d\omega$$

$$- \frac{e}{c}\mathrm{v}_x \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[H(\omega)e^{-ik_0x} - H(-\omega)e^{ik_0x}\right] e^{i\omega t} d\omega, \tag{6.19}$$

$$\frac{dp_z}{dt} = 0. \tag{6.20}$$

The energy change of the particle is given by the equation

$$\frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dt} = e\mathrm{v}_y \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[E(\omega)e^{-ik_0x} - E(-\omega)e^{ik_0x}\right] e^{i\omega t} d\omega. \tag{6.21}$$

The equations of motion (6.18)–(6.20) can be presented in the form

$$\frac{dp_x}{dt} = -i\frac{e}{c}k_0 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathrm{v}_y F(\omega, x, t) d\omega, \tag{6.22}$$

$$\frac{dp_y}{dt} = i\frac{e}{c} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (k_0\mathrm{v}_x - \omega)\, F(\omega, x, t) d\omega, \tag{6.23}$$

$$\frac{dp_z}{dt} = 0, \tag{6.24}$$

where the kernel in the integrals (6.22), (6.23)

$$F(\omega, x, t) = A(\omega) \exp[i(\omega t - k_0 x)] - A^*(\omega) \exp[-i(\omega t - k_0 x)],$$

and

$$A(\omega) = \frac{cE_0}{2\pi}\left(\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2} - 1\right)\frac{\omega}{(\omega - \omega_0)\left(\omega^2 - \omega_0^2\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right)} \tag{6.25}$$

is the spectral amplitude of the vector potential of the field (6.12).

We shall solve the set of equations (6.22)–(6.24) in the approximation of the perturbation theory by the field. The parameter of the perturbation theory is $\xi_0 = eE_0/mc\omega_0 \ll 1$. As long as the particle motion along the z axis remains free, we can choose the initial velocity of the particle in the xy plane: $\mathbf{v}_0 = \{\mathrm{v}_0 \cos\theta, \mathrm{v}_0 \sin\theta, 0\}$. According to perturbation theory

$$\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{p}_0 + \Delta\mathbf{p}; \quad |\Delta\mathbf{p}| \ll |\mathbf{p}_0|,$$

and from the (6.22), (6.23) in first-order approximation by ξ_0 (keeping only the uniform part of motion $x(t) = x_0 + \mathrm{v}_{0x}t$ on the right-hand side of the equations) for the changes of the particle momentum in the field $\Delta\mathbf{p}$ we will obtain the following equations:

$$\frac{d\Delta p_x}{dt} = -i\frac{e}{c}k_0\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mathrm{v}_{0y}F(\omega, x_0 + \mathrm{v}_{0x}t, t)d\omega, \tag{6.26}$$

$$\frac{d\Delta p_y}{dt} = i\frac{e}{c}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}(k_0\mathrm{v}_{0x} - \omega)\,F(\omega, x_0 + \mathrm{v}_{0x}t, t)d\omega. \tag{6.27}$$

Integrating (6.26) and (6.27) over t from $-\infty$ to $+\infty$, we obtain in first-order approximation by ξ_0 the following expressions for the particle momentum change after the interaction:

$$\Delta p_x = -i\frac{2\pi e k_0}{c}\mathrm{v}_{0y}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\left[A(\omega)\,e^{-ik_0x_0}\right.$$

$$\left.-A^*(\omega)\,e^{ik_0x_0}\right]\delta(\omega - k_0\mathrm{v}_{0x})\,d\omega, \tag{6.28}$$

$$\Delta p_y = i\frac{2\pi e}{c}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\infty}(k_0 \mathrm{v}_{0x} - \omega)\left[A(\omega)\, e^{-ik_0x_0}\right.$$

$$\left. - A^*(\omega)\, e^{ik_0x_0}\right]\delta(\omega - k_0\mathrm{v}_{0x})\, d\omega. \tag{6.29}$$

The δ-function in these expressions defines the condition of induced radiation/ absorption by a free charged particle in the field of a transverse monochromatic EM wave under the nonstationary transition process:

$$\omega - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{v}_0 = 0. \tag{6.30}$$

Integrating in the same way (6.21) and taking into account (6.30) for the particle momentum and energy changes after the interaction, we obtain the following ultimate formulas:

$$\triangle p_y = \triangle p_z = 0, \qquad \triangle p_x = \frac{\triangle \mathcal{E}}{\mathrm{v}_0 \cos\theta}, \tag{6.31}$$

$$\triangle \mathcal{E} = 2mc^2\xi_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_0^3}{c^3}(\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_2)\frac{\sin\theta\cos^2\theta}{\left(1 - \sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\theta\right)\left(1 - \varepsilon_2\frac{\mathrm{v}_0^2}{c^2}\cos^2\theta\right)}$$

$$\times \sin\left(\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0\cos\theta}{c}t_0\right). \tag{6.32}$$

Here t_0 is the instant of time corresponding to the initial phase of the particle in the external EM wave. Note that (6.32) besides the induced nonstationary transition process describes generally the induced Cherenkov effect as well (see the denominator) if a medium initially (at $t < 0$) was dielectriclike (in principle, it includes also the Cherenkov effect at $t > 0$ if $\varepsilon_2 > 1$, but for actual physical cases we assume that the stepwise discontinuity of ε (6.1) may be realistic at the abrupt transformation of a dielectric-like medium into a plasma for which $\varepsilon_2 < 1$ and the induced Cherenkov effect is excluded).

As is seen from (6.32) depending on the initial phase

$$\Phi_0 = \omega_0 t_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\,(\mathrm{v}_0/c)\cos\theta$$

the particle is either accelerated after the interaction or is decelerated radiating coherently into the wave. This real energy exchange is due to the direct and inverse induced nonstationary transition effect. In the case of a particle beam, various particles situated initially in the diverse phases Φ_0 will acquire or lose different energies in the field and the particles' free drift after the interaction will result in bunching of an initially homogeneous particle beam.

6.3 Quantum Description of Multiphoton Interaction

Consider now the quantum dynamics of the induced nonstationary transition process. Quantitative analysis of (6.31) and (6.32) shows that the classical energy exchange of a particle with strong EM radiation in a nonstationary medium as a result of the induced nonstationary transition effect corresponds to absorption and emission of a large number of photons. On the basis of the quantum theory such multiphoton process can be described by the quasiclassical-type wave function neglecting, in fact, the quantum recoil at the absorption/emission of photons by the particle. The latter corresponds to a slowly varying wave function for which the derivatives of the second order of the particle wave function can be neglected with respect to the first order ones that have been made in the consideration of the multiphoton processes in the previous chapters. The role of the particle spin is inessential here, hence by neglecting the spin interaction the Dirac equation in quadratic form is written as the Klein–Gordon equation (3.30) for the particle in the specified EM field. Assuming the same geometry as in Sect. 6.1, the latter takes the form

$$-\hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2 \Psi}{\partial t^2} = \left[-\hbar^2 c^2 \nabla^2 + 2iec\hbar \nabla_y A_y(x,t) + e^2 A_y^2(x,t) + m^2 c^4\right] \Psi, \quad (6.33)$$

where

$$A_y(x,t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[A(\omega) e^{-ik_0 x} + A(-\omega) e^{ik_0 x}\right] e^{i\omega t} d\omega \quad (6.34)$$

is the vector potential of the field (6.12) expressed via the spectral amplitude $A(\omega)$ (6.25).

Equation (6.33) will be solved in the mentioned approximation by the particle wave function

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}} f(x,t) \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathbf{p}_0 \mathbf{r} - \mathcal{E}_0 t)\right], \quad (6.35)$$

where $f(x,t)$ is a slowly varying function with respect to the free-particle wave function (see Sect. 3.5). Taking into account the conditions (3.92) and (6.35) from (6.33) for $f(x,t)$, we will obtain the differential equation of the first order:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial t} + \mathrm{v}_{0x} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x} = \frac{i}{2\hbar \mathcal{E}_0} \left[2ecp_{0y} A_y(x,t) + e^2 A^2(x,t)\right] f(x,t). \quad (6.36)$$

The conditions (3.92) correspond to a small change of the momentum and energy of the electron in the field compared with the initial values $\triangle p \ll p_0$ and $\triangle \mathcal{E} \ll \mathcal{E}_0$, that is, the approximation made in the classical consideration, where the intensity of the EM wave is restricted by the condition $\xi_0 \ll 1$. Then for actual values of parameters $p_{0y}/mc \gg \xi_0$ and the last term $\sim A^2$ in (6.36) will be neglected.

Passing from x, t to characteristic coordinates $\tau' = t - x/\mathrm{v}_{0x}$, $\eta' = t$ and integrating (6.36), we obtain

$$f\left(\tau', \eta'\right) = \exp\left\{\frac{ie\mathrm{v}_{0y}}{\hbar c}\int_{-\infty}^{\eta'} A_y(\mathrm{v}_{0x}\left(\eta'' - \tau'\right), \eta'')d\eta''\right\}. \tag{6.37}$$

Then after the interaction ($\eta' \to +\infty$) taking into account (6.34), we obtain

$$f\left(\tau\right) = \exp\left\{\frac{i4\pi e\mathrm{v}_{0y}}{\hbar c}A\left(\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c}\right)\cos\left(\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c}\tau\right)\right\}. \tag{6.38}$$

The spectral amplitude in (6.38) is determined by (6.25):

$$A\left(\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c}\right) = \frac{E_0}{2\pi\omega_0^2}\frac{\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_2}{\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0\cos\theta}{\left(\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\theta - 1\right)\left(\varepsilon_2\frac{\mathrm{v}_0^2}{c^2}\cos^2\theta - 1\right)}. \tag{6.39}$$

Returning to coordinates x, t and expanding the exponential (6.38) into a series by the Bessel functions and taking into account (6.39) for the total wave function (6.35) we will have

$$\Psi\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}}\exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}p_{0y}y\right]\sum_{s=-\infty}^{+\infty} i^s J_s\left(\alpha\right)$$

$$\times\exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left[p_{0x} - s\hbar\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\omega_0}{c}\right]x - \frac{i}{\hbar}\left[\mathcal{E}_0 - s\hbar\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\theta\right]t\right\}, \tag{6.40}$$

where the argument of the Bessel function is

$$\alpha = 2\xi_0\frac{m\mathrm{v}_0^2}{\hbar\omega_0}\frac{\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_2}{\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}}\frac{\sin\theta\cos\theta}{\left(1 - \sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\theta\right)\left(1 - \varepsilon_2\frac{\mathrm{v}_0^2}{c^2}\cos^2\theta\right)}. \tag{6.41}$$

As is seen from (6.40), due to the induced nonstationary transition effect, the particle absorbs or emits s photons as a result of which the momentum and energy after the interaction are changed as follows:

$$\triangle p_x = s\hbar\frac{\omega_0}{c}\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}, \quad \triangle p_y = 0, \qquad \triangle\mathcal{E} = s\hbar\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\theta. \tag{6.42}$$

The probability of the induced s-photon process is

$$W_s = J_s^2\left(\frac{2\xi_0 m\mathrm{v}_0^2\left(\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_2\right)\sin\theta\cos\theta}{\hbar\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\left(1 - \sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\theta\right)\left(1 - \varepsilon_2\frac{\mathrm{v}_0^2}{c^2}\cos^2\theta\right)}\right). \tag{6.43}$$

The comparison of the expression for α with the amplitude of the classical change of the particle momentum $(\triangle p_x)_{\max}$ (6.31) and energy $(\triangle \mathcal{E})_{\max}$ (6.32) shows that

$$\alpha = \frac{(\triangle p_x)_{\max}}{\hbar k_0}, \tag{6.44}$$

in accordance with the correspondence principle ($s \sim \alpha \gg 1$).

At the small value of α or small number of photons s when the interaction has entirely quantum character it is necessary to take into account the quantum recoil as well. It is especially important in this process, because at the abrupt temporal variation of the dielectric permittivity, the hard quanta in the spectrum of the initial radiation arise. We will solve for this purpose (6.33) keeping also the derivatives of the second order of the particle wave function for a single-photon absorption or emission. Correspondingly, in first-order approximation of the perturbation theory from (6.33) we have the following equation for the particle wave function at the single-photon interaction with the field (6.35) in the nonstationary transition process:

$$\frac{\partial^2 \Psi_1}{\partial x^2} - \frac{1}{c^2}\frac{\partial^2 \Psi_1}{\partial t^2} - \frac{1}{\hbar^2 c^2}\left(m^2c^4 + c^2 p_{0y}^2\right)\Psi_1$$

$$= -2\frac{ep_{0y}}{c\hbar^2}\left[A_y(t)\, e^{-ik_0x} + A_y^*(t)\, e^{ik_0x}\right]\Psi_0, \tag{6.45}$$

where

$$\Psi_0(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sqrt{\frac{N_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}} \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{r} - \mathcal{E}_0 t)\right] \tag{6.46}$$

is the initial wave function of the particle (normalized on N_0 particles per unit volume). The solution of (6.45) is sought in the form

$$\Psi_1(\mathbf{r}, t) = \left[\Phi_1(t)e^{-ik_0x} + \Phi_2(t)e^{ik_0x}\right] \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{r} - \mathcal{E}_0 t)\right]. \tag{6.47}$$

Substituting (6.47) in (6.45) for the functions $\Phi_1(t)$ and $\Phi_2(t)$, we obtain the equations:

$$\frac{d^2\Phi_1}{dt^2} - 2i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}\frac{d\Phi_1}{dt} - c^2k_0\left(2\frac{p_{0x}}{\hbar} - k_0\right)\Phi_1 = 2\sqrt{\frac{N_0}{\mathcal{E}_0}}\frac{ecp_{0y}}{\hbar^2}A_y(t), \tag{6.48}$$

$$\frac{d^2\Phi_2}{dt^2} - 2i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}\frac{d\Phi_2}{dt} + c^2k_0\left(2\frac{p_{0x}}{\hbar} + k_0\right)\Phi_2 = 2\sqrt{\frac{N_0}{\mathcal{E}_0}}\frac{ecp_{0y}}{\hbar^2}A_y^*(t). \tag{6.49}$$

The solution of (6.48) is

$$\Phi_1(t) = -2i\sqrt{\frac{N_0}{\mathcal{E}_0}}\frac{ecp_{0y}}{\hbar^2\left(\Omega_1 - \Omega_2\right)}$$

$$\times\left[e^{i\Omega_1 t}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{t} e^{-i\Omega_1 t'}A_y\left(t'\right)dt' - e^{i\Omega_2 t}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{t} e^{-i\Omega_2 t'}A_y\left(t'\right)dt'\right], \tag{6.50}$$

where the characteristic frequencies Ω_1 and Ω_2 are given by the expressions

$$\Omega_{1,2} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar} \mp \left[\left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar} - \omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c}\right)^2 + \omega_0^2\varepsilon_1\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}^2}{c^2}\right)\right]^{1/2} \tag{6.51}$$

with the signs "$\mp$" correspondingly.

Passing from $A_y(t)$ to the Fourier component of the field, we obtain for $\Phi_1(t)$ after the interaction ($t \to +\infty$)

$$\Phi_1(t) = -4i\sqrt{\frac{N_0}{\mathcal{E}_0}}\frac{\pi ecp_{0y}}{\hbar^2\left(\Omega_1 - \Omega_2\right)}\left[A\left(\Omega_1\right)e^{i\Omega_1 t} - A\left(\Omega_2\right)e^{i\Omega_2 t}\right], \tag{6.52}$$

where the spectral amplitudes of the wave vector potential $A(\Omega_1)$ and $A(\Omega_2)$ are determined by (6.25).

Solving (6.49) in an analogous way for the function $\Phi_2(t)$, we obtain

$$\Phi_2(t) = -4i\sqrt{\frac{N_0}{\mathcal{E}_0}}\frac{\pi ecp_{0y}}{\hbar^2\left(\Omega_1' - \Omega_2'\right)}\left[A^*\left(-\Omega_1'\right)e^{i\Omega_1' t} - A^*\left(-\Omega_2'\right)e^{i\Omega_2' t}\right], \tag{6.53}$$

with the characteristic frequencies

$$\Omega_{1,2}' = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar} \mp \left[\left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar} + \omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c}\right)^2 + \omega_0^2\varepsilon_1\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}^2}{c^2}\right)\right]^{1/2}. \tag{6.54}$$

Equations (6.51) and (6.54) correspond to the energy-momentum conservation law for a particle in the induced nonstationary transition process: the particle can emit only the photons with frequencies $\Omega_{1,2}$ and absorb photons with frequencies $\Omega_{1,2}'$. As long as $\mathcal{E}_0/\hbar \gg \omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\mathrm{v}_{0x}/c$ for the frequencies of a strong coherent radiation field, we expand the square roots in (6.51), (6.54) in a series and retain only the small terms of first order. We then obtain for the radiation frequencies:

$$\Omega_1 \simeq \omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c} - \varepsilon_1\frac{\hbar\omega_0^2}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}^2}{c^2}\right),$$

$$\Omega_2 \simeq 2\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar} - \omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c} + \varepsilon_1\frac{\hbar\omega_0^2}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}^2}{c^2}\right) \tag{6.55}$$

and for the absorption frequencies:

$$\Omega_1' \simeq -\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c} - \varepsilon_1\frac{\hbar\omega_0^2}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}^2}{c^2}\right),$$

$$\Omega_2' \simeq 2\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar} + \omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c} + \varepsilon_1\frac{\hbar\omega_0^2}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}^2}{c^2}\right). \tag{6.56}$$

These expressions show that the emission of a photon with frequency Ω_2 and absorption with frequency Ω_2' has a clearly quantum character, and its probability, as is seen from (6.25), depends on the change of the dielectric permittivity of the medium $\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_2$. We therefore consider two cases: $\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2 \lesssim 1$ and $\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2 \gg 1$.

If $\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2 \lesssim 1$ we get from (6.25)

$$A(\Omega_2) \simeq A\left(2\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}\right) \ll A(\Omega_1) \simeq A\left(\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0x}}{c}\right), \tag{6.57}$$

so that in this case we can neglect in (6.52) and (6.53) the pure quantum process of emission and absorption of hard quanta $\Omega_2 \simeq 2\mathcal{E}_0/\hbar$. Then for the amplitudes of the particle wave function $\Phi_1(t)$ and $\Phi_2(t)$, we will have correspondingly

$$\Phi_{1,2}(t) = i\sqrt{\frac{N_0}{\mathcal{E}_0}}\frac{e\mathrm{v}_0^2 E_0}{\hbar\omega_0^2 c}\frac{\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_2}{\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}}\frac{\sin\theta\cos\theta}{\left(1 - \sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\theta\right)\left(1 - \varepsilon_2\frac{\mathrm{v}_0^2}{c^2}\cos^2\theta\right)}$$

$$\times \exp\left\{i\omega_0\left[\pm\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\cos\theta - \frac{\varepsilon_1\hbar\omega_0}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0^2}{c^2}\cos^2\theta\right)\right]t\right\} \tag{6.58}$$

with the signs "±" correspondingly. Equation (6.58) with (6.47) determines the particle's wave function after the single-photon interaction with the field (6.35) in the nonstationary transition process. In this case ($\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2 \lesssim 1$), we obtain for the current density ($\sim |\Psi_0 + \Psi_1|^2$) of the particles after the interaction

$$\mathbf{j}(x,t) = \mathbf{j}_0\left\{1 + 2\alpha\sin\left[\varepsilon_1\frac{\hbar\omega_0^2}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0^2}{c^2}\cos^2\theta\right)t\right]\right.$$

$$\left.\times\cos\left[\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0\cos\theta}{c}\left(t - \frac{x}{\mathrm{v}_0\cos\theta}\right)\right]\right\}, \tag{6.59}$$

where $\mathbf{j}_0 = \text{const}$ is the particle's initial current density and α is defined by (6.41) or (6.44). As is seen from (6.59) as a result of the stimulated absorption and emission of the photons of frequency

$$\Omega_1 = \omega_0 \sqrt{\varepsilon_1} \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c} \cos\theta$$

the quantum modulation of the particle's probability density and, consequently, current density at this frequency occurs with a depth $\Gamma_1 = 2\alpha$. Also, in contrast to the effect of quantum modulation in coherent processes considered in previous chapters, the pure temporal modulation here takes place as well that is caused by the nonstationarity of the medium. The period of this temporal modulation is

$$T_1 = \frac{4\pi \mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar\omega_0^2 \varepsilon_1 \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0^2}{c^2}\cos^2\theta\right)}.$$

If we derive the particle's wave function in the next orders of perturbation theory, then we obtain the modulation at higher harmonics of the wave frequency. The modulation depth at the s-th harmonic will be $\Gamma_s \sim \Gamma_1^s$.

For $\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2 \gg 1$, it is necessary to also take into account in (6.52), (6.53) the pure quantum process of emission and absorption of hard quanta $\Omega_2 \simeq 2\mathcal{E}_0/\hbar$. The spectral amplitude of the wave vector potential $A\left(\Omega_2\right)$ at such frequencies is

$$A\left(\Omega_2\right) \simeq \frac{cE_0}{8\pi} \frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2} \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_0^2}{\hbar^2} - \frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\frac{\omega_0^2}{4}\right)^{-1}. \tag{6.60}$$

In an analogous way for the particles current density after the interaction, we will have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{j}(x,t) = \mathbf{j}_0 \Bigg\{ 1 + \Gamma_1 \sin\left[\varepsilon_1 \frac{\hbar\omega_0^2}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0^2}{c^2}\cos^2\theta\right) t\right] \\ \times \cos\left[\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0\cos\theta}{c}\left(t - \frac{x}{\mathrm{v}_0\cos\theta}\right)\right] \\ + \Gamma_2 \sin\left(2\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}t\right)\cos\left[\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1}\frac{\mathrm{v}_0\cos\theta}{c}\left(t + \frac{x}{\mathrm{v}_0\cos\theta}\right)\right]\Bigg\},\end{aligned} \tag{6.61}$$

where $\Gamma_1 = 2\alpha$, and the modulation depth Γ_2 due to the absorption-emission of hard quanta Ω_2 is

$$\Gamma_2 = \xi \frac{m\mathrm{v}_0 c\hbar\omega_0}{\mathcal{E}_0^2} \frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2} \frac{\sin\theta}{1 - \frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\left(\frac{\hbar\omega}{2\mathcal{E}_0}\right)^2}. \tag{6.62}$$

The period of temporal modulation in this case is $T_2 = \pi\hbar/\mathcal{E}_0$.

As the modulated particle beam radiates coherently, this mechanism can be of interest in astrophysics where the radiating matter may be in a strongly nonstationary state.

6.4 Electron–Positron Pair Production by a γ-Quantum in a Medium

The formation of hard γ-quanta of frequencies $\sim \mathcal{E}_0/\hbar$ in the spectrum of a strong monochromatic EM wave propagating in a nonstationary medium, the dielectric permittivity of which abruptly changes in time, makes available the single-photon production of electron–positron (e^-, e^+) pairs from the intense light fields in a nonstationary medium.

In general, the single-photon reaction $\gamma \rightarrow e^- + e^+$ as well as the inverse reaction of the electron–positron annihilation Electron–positron pair annihilation ($e^- + e^+ \rightarrow \gamma$) can proceed in a medium that must be plasmalike (for the satisfaction of conservation laws for these reactions one needs $n(\omega) < 1$). However, as will be shown below, excessively large densities of the plasma in this case are required. Meanwhile, the single-photon production of e^-, e^+ pairs in a nonstationary plasma is possible at ordinary densities. Moreover, this process can proceed in the strong light fields in an arbitrary medium turning abruptly into a plasma (with the temporal variation law of ε (6.1)). Hence, we will consider both single-photon reactions $\gamma \rightleftarrows e^- + e^+$ in a stationary plasma and the production of e^-, e^+ pairs from the intense light beam in a nonstationary medium.

Consider first the production of electron–positron pairs by a γ-quantum and its annihilation in a stationary medium. It is easy to see from the conservation laws of the energy and momentum for the single-photon reactions $\gamma \rightleftarrows e^- + e^+$

$$\hbar \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{p}_1 + \mathbf{p}_2; \quad \hbar\omega = \mathcal{E}_1 + \mathcal{E}_2 \tag{6.63}$$

(ω, $\mathbf{k}$ are the γ-quantum frequency and wave vector, $|\mathbf{k}| = n(\omega)\omega/c$, $\mathbf{p}_{1,2}$ and $\mathcal{E}_{1,2}$ are the momenta and energies of the electron and positron, respectively) that the phase velocity of a γ-quantum $\mathrm{v}_{ph} = c/n(\omega)$ must be larger than c, i.e., a medium for these processes must be plasmalike: $n(\omega) < 1$. The latter restricts the energy of a γ-quantum because of the dispersive properties of a medium. Indeed, for the macroscopic meaning of the refractive index of a medium for a γ-quantum at least one particle within a distance of the order of $\lambda/2$ is required (λ is the wavelength of the γ-quantum), that is, the condition $\lambda/2 \gtrsim l$ must be satisfied, where l is the distance between the electrons in a plasma. Therefore, besides the threshold condition that follows from the conservation laws (6.63):

$$\hbar\omega > \frac{2mc^2}{\sqrt{1 - n^2(\omega)}}, \tag{6.64}$$

for the reactions $\gamma \rightleftarrows e^- + e^+$ in a medium the following requirement on the plasma density N/V for a specified frequency ω of a γ-quantum arises:

$$\omega \lesssim \pi \left(\frac{N}{V}\right)^{1/3} \equiv \omega_{\lim}. \tag{6.65}$$

Hence, condition (6.65) determines the lower bound for the density of the medium or the upper bound for the energy of the γ-quantum, while threshold condition (6.64) determines the lower bound for the energy of the γ-quantum to cause the reactions $\gamma \rightleftarrows e^- + e^+$ to proceed in a medium.

From the standpoint of single-photon pair creation and annihilation in plasma, the latter must compensate the longitudinal momentum $\triangle p = [1 - n(\omega)]\hbar\omega/c$ transferred in these processes. Consequently, the characteristic length in the macroscopic description of the dispersion of the medium is the wavelength $\hbar/\triangle p$, which corresponds to the transferred momentum, and the condition necessary for this is $\hbar/\triangle p > (V/N)^{1/3}$. Since $n(\omega) < 1$, this condition is satisfied automatically when condition (6.65) is satisfied.

The plasma densities satisfying conditions (6.64) and (6.65) are at least: $N/V > 10^{33}\,\text{cm}^{-3}$. Such superdense matter exists only in astrophysical objects, particularly in the core of the neutron stars (pulsars). At these densities the electron component of the superdense plasma is highly degenerate (the dispersion of the transverse electromagnetic waves is determined by electrons). Actually, the degeneracy temperature of the electron component of such plasma is $T_F > 10^{10}$ K. On the other hand, because of neutrino energy losses, the physically attainable temperatures in an equilibrium system are much lower than this: $T \ll T_F$ and the superdense plasma is fully degenerate.

Since the Fermi energy at the densities $N/V > 10^{33}\,\text{cm}^{-3}$ is $\mathcal{E}_F > mc^2$ we need the dispersion law of the fully degenerate relativistic plasma. To determine the dispersion relation $n = n(\omega)$ of the latter, we shall solve the self-consistent set of Maxwell–Vlasov equations for the transverse monochromatic EM wave in the relativistic collisionless plasma with the distribution function $f(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{r}, t)$ (we will not consider the ions' motion).

The characteristic equations of $f(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{r}, t)$ coincide with the single particle equation of motion. The latter has been solved for an arbitrary medium in Sect. 2.1 and in the case of plasma, we have the following solutions in the wave field with the vector potential $\mathbf{A} = \{0, A_0 \cos(\omega t - n(\omega)\omega x/c), 0\}$:

$$p_x = p_{0x} - \frac{n(\omega)}{c\left(1 - n^2(\omega)\right)}\Big\{\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega)\,cp_{0x} - \sqrt{(\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega)\,cp_{0x})^2 + \left(1 - n^2(\omega)\right)\left[e^2A_y^2 - 2ecp_{0y}A_y\right]}\Big\}, \tag{6.66}$$

$$p_y = p_{0y} - \frac{e}{c}A_y; \quad p_z = p_{0z}, \tag{6.67}$$

and for the energy of the particle in the field:

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 - \frac{1}{1-n^2(\omega)}\Bigg\{\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega)\,cp_{0x} - \sqrt{(\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega)\,cp_{0x})^2 + \left(1-n^2(\omega)\right)\left[e^2A_y^2 - 2ecp_{0y}A_y\right]}\Bigg\}. \tag{6.68}$$

The density of the electric current induced in the plasma can be defined by the equation

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r},t) = e\int \mathbf{v} f(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{r},t)\,d\mathbf{p}, \tag{6.69}$$

where $\mathbf{v} = c^2\mathbf{p}/\mathcal{E}$ is the velocity of the electrons with the distribution function in the field $f(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{r},t)$. According to the Liouville theorem for the collisionless plasma, we have

$$f(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{r},t) = f_0(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{r}_0,t_0) = f_0(p_0), \tag{6.70}$$

since the electrons before the interaction were distributed stationary, uniformly and isotropic.

Defining from (6.66)–(6.68) the velocity of the electrons as a function of the $\mathbf{p}_0$, $\mathbf{r}$, and t and then passing from the integration over $\mathbf{p}$ to integration over $\mathbf{p}_0$ (taking into account (6.70)), (6.69) may be presented in the form

$$\mathbf{j}(\mathbf{r},t) = ec^2\int \frac{\mathbf{p}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{r},t)}{\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{r},t)} f_0(p_0)\,J(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{r},t)d\mathbf{p}_0, \tag{6.71}$$

where

$$J(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{r},t) = \frac{\partial(p_x,p_y,p_z)}{\partial(p_{0x},p_{0y},p_{0z})}$$

is the Jacobian of transformation. From (6.66), (6.67) for the latter we have

$$J(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{r},t) = 1 - \frac{n(\omega)}{1-n^2(\omega)}\left(\frac{cp_{0x}}{\mathcal{E}_0} - n(\omega)\right) \times\left[1 - \frac{\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega)\,cp_{0x}}{\sqrt{(\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega)\,cp_{0x})^2 + \left(1-n^2(\omega)\right)\left[e^2A_y^2 - 2ecp_{0y}A_y\right]}}\right]. \tag{6.72}$$

In the linear approximation by a weak wave field (since it will be applied for a γ-quantum), (6.72) can be written as follows:

$$J(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{r},t) = 1 + \frac{n(\omega)}{(\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega)\,cp_{0x})^2}\left(\frac{cp_{0x}}{\mathcal{E}_0} - n(\omega)\right) ecp_{0y}A_y. \tag{6.73}$$

The components of the electric current density (6.71) in this linear regime of interaction can be expressed in the form

$$j_y(\mathbf{r},t) = ec^2 \int \left\{ \frac{p_{0y}}{\mathcal{E}_0} \left(1 + \frac{\left(1 - n^2(\omega)\right) c p_{0y} e A_y}{\left(\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega) c p_{0x}\right)^2} \right) - \frac{e A_y}{\mathcal{E}_0} \right\}$$

$$\times f_0(p_0)\, d\mathbf{p}_0, \tag{6.74}$$

$$j_x = j_z = 0. \tag{6.75}$$

Then turning to spherical coordinates in (6.71)

$$p_{0x} = p_0 \cos\theta; \;\; p_{0y} = p_0 \sin\theta \cos\varphi; \;\; p_{0z} = p_0 \sin\theta \sin\varphi,$$

and taking into account that the initial distribution of the electrons in a plasma is isotropic, after the integration in the equation

$$j_y(\mathbf{r},t) = -e^2 c A_y \int \left\{ 1 - \frac{\left(1 - n^2(\omega)\right) c^2 p_{0y}^2}{\left(\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega) c p_{0x}\right)^2} \right\} \times \frac{f_0(p_0)\, p_0^2}{\mathcal{E}_0} \sin\theta d\theta d\varphi dp_0 \tag{6.76}$$

by the angles, for the electric current density induced by a wave field in the plasma we will have

$$j_y(\mathbf{r},t) = -\frac{4\pi e^2 c A_y}{n^2(\omega)} \int \frac{f(p_0) p_0^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}$$

$$\times \left\{ 1 - \frac{\mathcal{E}_0 \left(1 - n^2(\omega)\right)}{2n(\omega) c p_0} \ln \left\{ \frac{\mathcal{E}_0 + n(\omega) c p_0}{\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega) c p_0} \right\} \right\} dp_0. \tag{6.77}$$

The Maxwell equation for the vector potential

$$\left[\nabla^2 - \frac{1}{c^2} \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} \right] A_y(\mathbf{r},t) = -\frac{4\pi}{c} j_y(\mathbf{r},t) \tag{6.78}$$

with the current density (6.77) gives the following equation for the refractive index of a relativistic plasma:

$$n^2(\omega) = 1 - \frac{16\pi^2 e^2 c^2}{n^2(\omega)\,\omega^2} \int \frac{f(p_0) p_0^2}{\mathcal{E}_0}$$

$$\times \left\{ 1 - \frac{\mathcal{E}_0 \left(1 - n^2(\omega)\right)}{2n(\omega) c p_0} \ln \left\{ \frac{\mathcal{E}_0 + n(\omega) c p_0}{\mathcal{E}_0 - n(\omega) c p_0} \right\} \right\} dp_0. \tag{6.79}$$

Equation (6.79) describes, in general, the dispersion law of a relativistic plasma for an arbitrary electron distribution function. In principle, it is also valid for a nondegenerate (relativistic and Maxwellian) electron plasma if an equilibrium distribution with temperature $T \gtrsim T_F$ can be realized in nature.

Now consider the production of electron–positron pairs by a γ-quantum in a stationary medium (homogeneous and isotropic) with a refractive index $n(\omega) < 1$ (6.79). As this process is a QED effect of the first order, then using the general rules for constructing the matrix element of a single-vertex $\gamma \to e^- + e^+$ diagram in a dispersive medium the probability amplitude will be written in the form

$$S_{if} = -e\sqrt{\frac{1}{2\omega a_\omega n^2(\omega)}} \int \overline{\psi}_1 \widehat{\epsilon}^{(\lambda)} e^{ikx} \psi_2 d^4x. \quad (6.80)$$

Here

$$a_\omega = 1 + \frac{\omega}{n(\omega)} \frac{dn(\omega)}{d\omega},$$

$k^i(\omega, \mathbf{k})$ is the 4D wave vector of the photon, quantization volume $V = 1$, $\epsilon^{(\lambda)}$ is the 4D polarization vector of the photon ($\widehat{\epsilon}^{(\lambda)} = \epsilon_\mu^{(\lambda)} \gamma^\mu$), and

$$\psi_1 = u_1(\mathbf{p}_1) e^{i(\mathbf{p}_1\mathbf{r} - \mathcal{E}_1 t)}; \quad \psi_2 = u_2(-\mathbf{p}_2) e^{-i(\mathbf{p}_2\mathbf{r} - \mathcal{E}_2 t)} \quad (6.81)$$

are the free electron and positron wave functions. Here the units $\hbar = c = 1$ are used.

Performing integration in (6.80) with the wave functions (6.81) by the standard method for the differential probability of the $\gamma \to e^- + e^+$ process per unit time and unit space volume (in the momentum volumes $d\mathbf{p}_1/(2\pi)^3$ of the electrons and $d\mathbf{p}_2/(2\pi)^3$ of the positrons, respectively) we will have

$$dW = \frac{e^2}{8\pi^2 \omega a_\omega n^2(\omega)} \left| \overline{u}_1(\mathbf{p}_1) \widehat{\epsilon}^{(\lambda)} u_2(-\mathbf{p}_2) \right|^2 \delta(\omega - \mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_2)$$
$$\times \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{p}_2) d\mathbf{p}_1 d\mathbf{p}_2. \quad (6.82)$$

We will assume that the γ-quantum is nonpolarized and perform averaging by the polarization states of the γ-quantum and summation over the electron and positron spin projections. Then the probability of the e^-, e^+ pair production per unit time is given by the expression

$$W = \frac{e^2}{8\pi^2 a_\omega \omega n^2(\omega)} \int \frac{\mathcal{E}_1\mathcal{E}_2 + m^2 - p_1 p_2 \cos\vartheta_1 \cos\vartheta_2}{\mathcal{E}_1\mathcal{E}_2} \delta(\omega - \mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_2)$$
$$\times \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{p}_2) d\mathbf{p}_1 d\mathbf{p}_2, \quad (6.83)$$

where $\vartheta_{1,2}$ is the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{p}_{1,2}$, respectively.

Integrating (6.83) over the positron momentum $\mathbf{p}_2$, we obtain the following expression for the pair production probability:

$$W = \frac{e^2}{8\pi^2 a_\omega \omega n^2(\omega)} \int \left(1 + \frac{m^2 + p_1 \cos\vartheta_1 (p_1 \cos\vartheta_1 - k)}{\mathcal{E}_1 \sqrt{\mathcal{E}_1^2 + k^2 + kp_1 \cos\vartheta_1}}\right)$$

$$\times\, \delta\left(\omega - \mathcal{E}_1 - \sqrt{\mathcal{E}_1^2 + k^2 + kp_1 \cos\vartheta_1}\right) d\mathbf{p}_1. \tag{6.84}$$

For the integration over the electron momentum $\mathbf{p}_1$ note that because of azimuthal symmetry

$$d\mathbf{p}_1 = 2\pi p_1 \mathcal{E}_1 d\mathcal{E}_1 \sin\vartheta_1 d\vartheta_1$$

and the integration over ϑ_1 reduces formally to the following replacement in (6.84):

$$\delta\left(\omega - \mathcal{E}_1 - \sqrt{\mathcal{E}_1^2 + k^2 + kp_1 \cos\vartheta_1}\right) \sin\vartheta_1 d\vartheta_1$$

$$\to \frac{\omega - \mathcal{E}_1}{kp_1} \left[H\left(\mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_{\min}(\omega)\right) - H\left(\mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_{\max}(\omega)\right)\right],$$

where $H(x)$ is the Heaviside function

$$H(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & x \geq 0, \\ 0, & x < 0. \end{cases}$$

After the integration over ϑ_1, (6.84) becomes

$$W = \frac{e^2}{4\pi a_\omega \omega^2 n^5(\omega)} \int\limits_{\mathcal{E}_{\min}(\omega)}^{\mathcal{E}_{\max}(\omega)} \Bigg[\left(1 - n^2(\omega)\right)\left(\mathcal{E}_1^2 - \omega\mathcal{E}_1\right) + n^2(\omega) m^2$$

$$+ \frac{1 - n^4(\omega)}{4}\omega^2 \Bigg] d\mathcal{E}_1. \tag{6.85}$$

The limits of integration over $\mathcal{E}_1 \in [\mathcal{E}_{\min}, \mathcal{E}_{\max}]$ in (6.85)

$$\mathcal{E}_{\min,\max}(\omega) = \frac{\omega}{2} \mp \frac{n(\omega)}{2}\left[\omega^2 - \frac{4m^2}{1 - n^2(\omega)}\right]^{1/2} \tag{6.86}$$

are determined by the conservation laws for the $\gamma \rightleftarrows e^- + e^+$ processes in a medium (6.63) with the threshold value (6.64). Taking into account (6.86) after the integration over the electron energy in (6.85) we obtain the total probability for the single-photon e^-, e^+ pair production in a plasma:

$$W = \frac{e^2 m^2}{6\pi\omega^2 a_\omega n^2(\omega)} \left[\omega^2 - \frac{4m^2}{1-n^2(\omega)}\right]^{1/2} \times \left\{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{\omega}{m}\right)^2 \left[1-n^2(\omega)\right] + 1\right\}. \tag{6.87}$$

Equation (6.86) with the dispersion law (6.79) of a relativistic plasma for an arbitrary electron distribution function determine the probability of the electron–positron pair production by a γ-quantum. As the electron component the of superdense plasma required for this process is fully degenerate the Pauli principle must also be taken into account that imposes an additional restriction on the $\gamma \to e^- + e^+$ reaction. The general picture of this process taking into account the conditions (6.64), (6.65) and the Pauli principle will be analyzed together with the electron–positron annihilation process in the next section.

6.5 Annihilation of Electron–Positron Pairs in a Medium

Now we will consider the inverse process of a single-photon annihilation of an electron–positron pair in a stationary plasma. This process is also a QED effect of the first order and the matrix element of a single-vertex $e^- + e^+ \to \gamma$ diagram is the complex conjugate to the $\gamma \to e^- + e$ diagram matrix element:

$$S'_{if} = -e\sqrt{\frac{1}{2\omega a_\omega n^2(\omega)}} \int \overline{\psi}_2 \widehat{\epsilon}^{(\lambda)} e^{-ikx} \psi_1 d^4x. \tag{6.88}$$

The differential probability of the annihilation process per unit time and unit space volume, summed by the polarization states of the created γ-quantum in the momentum volume $d\mathbf{k}/(2\pi)^3$, is given by the expression

$$dW_\gamma = \frac{\pi e^2}{2\omega a_\omega n^2(\omega)} \frac{\mathcal{E}_1\mathcal{E}_2 + m^2 - p_1 p_2 \cos\vartheta_1 \cos\vartheta_2}{\mathcal{E}_1\mathcal{E}_2} \times \delta(\omega - \mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_2)\, \delta(\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{p}_2)\, d\mathbf{k}. \tag{6.89}$$

Equation (6.89) determines the annihilation probability for a single e^-, e^+ pair in plasma. To obtain the total probability of annihilation of an initial positron with the plasma electrons, one must define the probability of annihilation of a positron of specified energy $\mathcal{E}_2$ with the electrons of the medium in the momentum range $\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_1 + d\mathbf{p}_1$:

$$W_\gamma = \frac{\pi e^2}{2\omega a_\omega n^2(\omega)} \int f(p_1) \frac{\mathcal{E}_1\mathcal{E}_2 + m^2 - p_1 p_2 \cos\vartheta_1 \cos\vartheta_2}{\mathcal{E}_1\mathcal{E}_2}$$

$$\times \delta (\omega - \mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_2) \, \delta (\mathbf{k} - \mathbf{p}_1 - \mathbf{p}_2) \, d\mathbf{k} d\mathbf{p}_1, \tag{6.90}$$

where $f(p_1)$ is the distribution function of the plasma electrons. We first integrate over $\mathbf{k}$ in (6.90) and then over $\mathbf{p}_1$ taking into account that $d\mathbf{p}_1 = 2\pi p_1 \mathcal{E}_1 d\mathcal{E}_1 \sin\vartheta d\vartheta$, where ϑ is the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{p}_1$ and $\mathbf{p}_2$. The integration over ϑ reduces formally to the following replacement in (6.90):

$$\delta (\omega - \mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_2) \sin\vartheta d\vartheta$$

$$\to \frac{\omega a_\omega n^2(\omega)}{p_1 p_2} \left[H (\mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_{\min}(\omega)) - H (\mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_{\max}(\omega)) \right],$$

where the quantities $\mathcal{E}_{\min(\max)}(\omega)$ are given by (6.86) and ω must be replaced by $\mathcal{E}_1 + \mathcal{E}_2$ according to conservation law (6.63). Then for the probability of annihilation of a positron (with an energy $\mathcal{E}_2$) with the electrons of the medium we will have

$$W_\gamma = \frac{\pi e^2}{p_2 \mathcal{E}_2} \int f(p_1) \left\{ m^2 + (\mathcal{E}_1 + \mathcal{E}_2)^2 \frac{1 - n^4(\omega)}{4n^2(\omega)} - \frac{1 - n^2(\omega)}{n^2(\omega)} \mathcal{E}_1 \mathcal{E}_2 \right\}$$

$$\times \left[H (\mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_{\min}(\omega)) - H (\mathcal{E}_1 - \mathcal{E}_{\max}(\omega)) \right] d\mathcal{E}_1. \tag{6.91}$$

In contrast to the pair production process (its probability can be obtained without resorting to the explicit form of $n(\omega)$), here we must have the explicit form of the function $n = n(\omega)$ in order to be able to integrate over the electron energy $\mathcal{E}_1$ (ω is now a function of $\mathcal{E}_1$, since $\omega = \mathcal{E}_1 + \mathcal{E}_2$).

As the considered processes $\gamma \rightleftarrows e^- + e^+$ are possible in the superdense plasma where the electrons are fully degenerate, then the dispersion law of such relativistic plasma can be obtained substituting the Fermi distribution function for a fully degenerate electron gas

$$f(p_1) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{4\pi^3}, & p_1 \leq p_F \\ 0, & p_1 > p_F \end{cases} \tag{6.92}$$

in (6.79), describing in general the dispersion law of a relativistic plasma for an arbitrary distribution function of electrons $f(p_0)$. Here p_F is the boundary Fermi momentum:

$$p_F = \left(3\pi^2 \rho_e\right)^{1/3}, \tag{6.93}$$

and ρ_e is the electron density of a degenerate Fermi gas.

Integrating in (6.79) with the distribution function (6.92) over the electron momenta, we obtain the following dispersion law of a relativistic degenerate plasma:

$$n^2(\omega) = 1 - \frac{2e^2}{n^2(\omega) \pi \omega^2}$$

$$\times \left\{ p_F \mathcal{E}_F - \frac{\mathcal{E}_F^2 - n^2(\omega)\, p_F^2}{2n(\omega)} \ln \left\{ \frac{\mathcal{E}_F + n(\omega)\, p_F}{\mathcal{E}_F - n(\omega)\, p_F} \right\} \right\}, \tag{6.94}$$

where $\mathcal{E}_F$ is the relativistic Fermi energy corresponding to boundary momentum (6.93). Inserting the dimensionless parameter

$$\beta = \frac{n(\omega)\, p_F}{\mathcal{E}_F}$$

Equation (6.94) can be written in the form

$$n^2(\omega) = 1 - \frac{2e^2 p_F \mathcal{E}_F}{n^2(\omega)\, \pi \omega^2} \left\{ 1 - \frac{1-\beta^2}{2\beta} \ln \left\{ \frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta} \right\} \right\}, \tag{6.95}$$

or in the form more convenient for further investigation

$$n^2(\omega) = 1 - \frac{2e^2 p_F^3}{\omega^2 \pi \mathcal{E}_F} \phi(\beta), \tag{6.96}$$

where the function $\phi(\beta)$ is

$$\phi(\beta) = \frac{1}{\beta^2} \left\{ 1 - \frac{1-\beta^2}{2\beta} \ln \frac{1+\beta}{1-\beta} \right\}. \tag{6.97}$$

By analogy with the usual determination of a plasma frequency, from the equation $n(\omega_p) = 0$, we obtain the plasma frequency for a relativistic degenerate one

$$\omega_p = \sqrt{\frac{4e^2 p_F^3}{3\pi \mathcal{E}_F}}. \tag{6.98}$$

The frequency range corresponding to transverse waves that can propagate in a superdense relativistic degenerate plasma—$\omega_p \leq \omega < \infty$—can then be obtained by varying the refractive index in the range $0 \leq n < 1$. Therefore, we present the dispersion relation (6.96) in the inverted form $\omega = \omega(n)$:

$$\omega^2 = \frac{2e^2}{\pi} \frac{p_F^3}{\mathcal{E}_F} \frac{1}{1-n^2} \phi(\beta). \tag{6.99}$$

The parameter β in (6.99) then varies in the range $0 \leqslant \beta < p_F/\mathcal{E}_F$. The analysis of the function $\phi(\beta)$, which can be expressed in the form

$$\phi(\beta) = 2 \sum_{s=1}^{\infty} \frac{\beta^{2s-2}}{4s^2 - 1},$$

shows that throughout the physically admissible range $0 \le \beta < 1$ (for superdense ultrarelativistic plasma $p_F/\mathcal{E}_F \sim 1$) the function $\phi(\beta)$ varies monotonically between the values $2/3$ and 1.

The problem now reduces to the determination of the range of variation of the energies of electrons that actually participate in the annihilation process taking account of conditions (6.64), (6.65) and $\mathcal{E}_1 \le \mathcal{E}_F$ for the annihilation process. The situation may be clarified by defining this region graphically. Figure 6.1 shows the $\mathcal{E}_{\min(\max)}(\omega)$ curves and the lines corresponding to frequencies $\omega = \omega_{\lim} = (\pi/3)^{1/3} p_F$ (see (6.65)) and $\omega = \omega_{\max} = \mathcal{E}_F + \mathcal{E}_2$. The energies of the particles and γ-quantum can vary within the region $ABCA$, and the limits of integration with respect to the electron energy $\mathcal{E}_{1\,\min}$ and $\mathcal{E}_{1\,\max}$ are determined by the points at which the $\mathcal{E}_1 = \omega - \mathcal{E}_2$ line cuts the boundaries of this region.

Evaluating the integral in (6.91) with the dispersion law (6.99), we obtain a bulky expression for the total probability of the annihilation process. However, for the admissible values of $n(\omega)$ and electron density ρ_e with a great accuracy for the function $\phi(\beta)$ we have: $\phi(np_F/\mathcal{E}_F) \approx 2/3$ and the ultimate expression for the probability of the $e^- + e^+ \to \gamma$ process is rather simplified. The points of intersection of the line $\mathcal{E}_1 = \omega - \mathcal{E}_2$ and the boundaries of the region $ABCA$ then correspond to

$$\omega_1 = \frac{\omega_p}{2m^2}\left[\omega_p \mathcal{E}_2 - p_2\left(\omega_p^2 - 4m^2\right)^{1/2}\right],$$

$$\omega_2 = \begin{cases} \frac{\omega_p}{2m^2}\left[\omega_p \mathcal{E}_2 + p_2\left(\omega_p^2 - 4m^2\right)^{1/2}\right], & \mathcal{E}_2 \le \mathcal{E}_{\min}(\omega = \omega_{\lim}), \\ \omega_{\lim}, & \mathcal{E}_{\min}(\omega = \omega_{\lim}) < \mathcal{E}_2 < \mathcal{E}_{\max}(\omega = \omega_{\lim}). \end{cases} \tag{6.100}$$

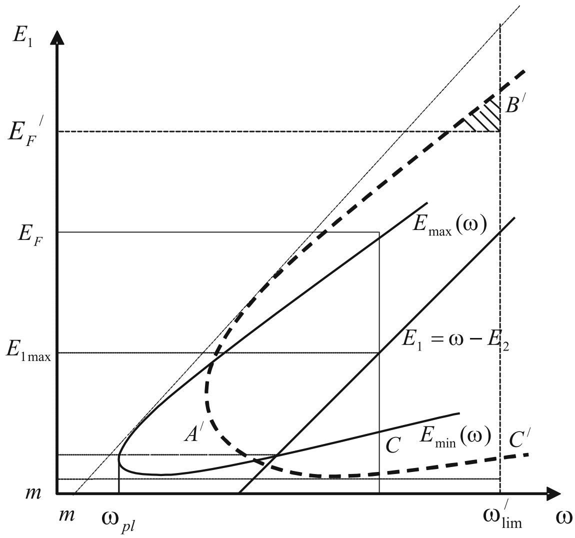


Fig. 6.1 Curves of $\mathcal{E}_{\min}(\omega)$, $\mathcal{E}_{\max}(\omega)$ and the lines corresponding to frequencies $\omega = \omega_{\lim} = (\pi/3)^{1/3} p_F$ and $\omega = \omega_{\max} = \mathcal{E}_F + \mathcal{E}_2$. The energies of the particles and γ-quantum can vary within the region $ABCA$, and the limits of integration with respect to the electron energy $\mathcal{E}_{1\,\min}$ and $\mathcal{E}_{1\,\max}$ are determined by the points at which the $\mathcal{E}_1 = \omega - \mathcal{E}_2$ line cuts the boundaries of this region

Finally, the total probability of the annihilation process is

$$W_\gamma = \frac{e^2}{4\pi p_2 \mathcal{E}_2} \left[\left(m^2 + \frac{\omega_p^2}{2} \right) (\omega_2 - \omega_1) + \frac{1}{2}\omega_p \left(\mathcal{E}_2^2 + \frac{\omega_p^2}{4} \right) \right.$$

$$\left. \times \ln \frac{(\omega_2 - \omega_p)(\omega_1 + \omega_p)}{(\omega_2 + \omega_p)(\omega_1 - \omega_p)} - \frac{\mathcal{E}_2 \omega_p^2}{2} \ln \frac{(\omega_2 - \omega_p)(\omega_2 + \omega_p)}{(\omega_1 - \omega_p)(\omega_1 + \omega_p)} \right]. \tag{6.101}$$

The lower limit for the density of the medium, above which pair annihilation is possible, can be defined from the reaction threshold condition (6.64) and the dispersion law (6.96). Thus, we obtain $\omega_p > 2m$, which is equivalent to $\mathcal{E}_F > \sqrt{3\pi} m/e \approx 36m$. The electron density of the plasma corresponding to this value of $\mathcal{E}_F$ is $\rho_e > p_F^3/3\pi^2 \approx 3 \cdot 10^{34}\,\text{cm}^{-3}$.

For a nonrelativistic positron annihilation in an electron plasma, we have a simple formula for the total probability:

$$W_\gamma = \frac{e^2 \omega_p^3}{8\pi m^3} \left(\omega_p^2 - 4m^2 \right)^{1/2}, \qquad p_2 \ll m. \tag{6.102}$$

Let us now analyze the results for the electron–positron pair production in a superdense relativistic degenerate plasma with the dispersion law (6.96). The Pauli principle in this case demands the satisfaction of the condition $\mathcal{E}_1 > \mathcal{E}_F$ which together with conditions (6.64) and (6.65) substantially reduces the range of parameter values for this process to proceed even in the required superdense plasma. The range of integration with respect to $\mathcal{E}_1$ in (6.85) shrinks to a point and the probability of the process $\gamma \to e^- + e^+$ tends practically to zero. With the increase of the electron density when $\mathcal{E}_F \gtrsim 150m$ ($\mathcal{E}_{\max}(\omega_{\lim}) > \mathcal{E}_F$, see Fig. 6.1), a narrow region appears and (6.65), (6.100) show that the creation of a pair by a γ-quantum with energy $\omega_1(\mathcal{E}_2 = \mathcal{E}_F) < \omega < \omega_{\lim}$ becomes possible in this region. As a result, the lower bound of the energy of a created electron instead of $\mathcal{E}_{\min}(\omega)$ should be $\mathcal{E}_F$ and from (6.85), we obtain

$$W = \frac{e^2 (\mathcal{E}_{\max}(\omega) - \mathcal{E}_F)}{4\pi a_\omega \omega^2 n^5(\omega)} \left\{ \frac{1 - n^2(\omega)}{3} \left(\mathcal{E}_{\max}^2(\omega) + \mathcal{E}_F \mathcal{E}_{\max}(\omega) + \mathcal{E}_F^2 \right) \right.$$

$$\left. - \frac{1 - n^2(\omega)}{2} \omega \left(\mathcal{E}_{\max}(\omega) + \mathcal{E}_F \right) + n^2(\omega) m^2 + \frac{1 - n^4(\omega)}{4} \omega^2 \right\}. \tag{6.103}$$

However, it is important to recall that this region $\omega \simeq \omega_{\lim}$ lies at the limit of validity of the macroscopic concept for a refractive index of a medium (one particle within the length $\lambda/2$).

6.6 Electron–Positron Pair Production by Strong EM Wave in Nonstationary Medium

As the probability of the single-quantum production of an electron–positron pair in a stationary plasma, as a macroscopic dispersive medium, practically equals zero (even at the required superdensities of electrons) it is reasonable to consider an exclusive possibility for a single-photon pair production in a nonstationary medium of ordinary densities by strong light fields. Namely, we assume the abrupt temporal change of the dielectric permittivity of a medium which may be described by the stepwise function ε (6.1).

In order to describe pair production in the field (6.6), (6.7) we shall employ the Dirac model (all negative-energy states of the vacuum are filled with electrons). The Dirac equation in the field (6.6), (6.7) has the form ($\hbar = c = 1$)

$$i\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t} = \left[\widehat{\alpha}(\mathbf{p} - e\mathbf{A}) + \widehat{\beta}m\right]\Psi, \tag{6.104}$$

where

$$\mathbf{A}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \begin{cases} i\frac{\mathbf{E}_0}{\omega_0}e^{i(\omega_0 t - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r})} + \text{c.c.}, & t < 0 \\ i\frac{\mathbf{E}_1}{\omega_1}e^{i\omega_1 t - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}} - i\frac{\mathbf{E}_2}{\omega_1}e^{-i\omega_1 t - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}} + \text{c.c.}, & t \geqslant 0 \end{cases} \tag{6.105}$$

is the vector potential of the EM field and $\widehat{\alpha}$, $\widehat{\beta}$ are the Dirac matrices in the standard representation (3.2).

We solve (6.104) by perturbing in the field of the wave. This method is valid if

$$\left[1 + \left(\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right)^{1/2}\right]\xi_0 \ll 1, \qquad \xi_0 = \frac{eE_0}{m\omega_0}. \tag{6.106}$$

We expand the perturbed first-order wave function $\Psi_1(\mathbf{r}, t)$ in a complete set of orthonormalized wave functions of the electrons (positrons) with momenta $\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_0$ and $\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{k}_0$:

$$\Psi_1(\mathbf{r}, t) = \Psi_1^{(-)}(t)e^{i(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k}_0)\mathbf{r}} + \Psi_1^{(+)}(t)e^{i(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{k}_0)\mathbf{r}},$$

$$\Psi_1^{(-)}(t) = \sum_{l=1}^{4} a_l(t)u_l\left(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_0, t\right), \tag{6.107}$$

$$\Psi_1^{(+)}(t) = \sum_{j=1}^{4} b_j(t)u_j\left(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{k}_0, t\right).$$

Here $a_l(t)$ and $b_j(t)$ are unknown functions and $u_i\left(\mathbf{p}', t\right)$ are orthonormalized bispinor functions which describe the particle states with energies $\pm\mathcal{E}' = \pm\sqrt{p'^2 + m^2}$:

$$u_{1,2}\left(\mathbf{p}', t\right) = \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}' + m}{2\mathcal{E}'}\right)^{1/2} \begin{pmatrix} \varphi_{1,2} \\ \frac{\sigma\mathbf{p}'}{\mathcal{E}'+m}\varphi_{1,2} \end{pmatrix} \exp\left(-i\mathcal{E}'t\right), \tag{6.108}$$

$$u_{3,4}\left(\mathbf{p}', t\right) = \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}' + m}{2\mathcal{E}'}\right)^{1/2} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{-\sigma\mathbf{p}'}{\mathcal{E}'+m}\chi_{3,4} \\ \chi_{3,4} \end{pmatrix} \exp\left(i\mathcal{E}'t\right). \tag{6.109}$$

These functions are normalized to one particle per unit volume: $u_i^+ u_j = \delta_{ij}$; the constant spinors $\varphi_{1,2}$ and $\chi_{3,4}$ are

$$\varphi_1 = \chi_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \qquad \varphi_2 = \chi_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Under the transformations (6.107)–(6.109) the Dirac equation for the perturbed wave function $\Psi = \Psi_0 + \Psi_1 + \cdots$, ($|\Psi_1| \ll |\Psi_0|$):

$$\left(i\frac{\partial}{\partial t} - \widehat{\alpha}\mathbf{p} - \widehat{\beta}m\right)\Psi_1 = -e\widehat{\alpha}\mathbf{A}\Psi_0 \tag{6.110}$$

transforms into a system of 16 equations for the unknown functions $a_l(t)$ and $b_j(t)$:

$$\begin{aligned} &\left(i\frac{\partial}{\partial t} - \widehat{\alpha}\mathbf{p} - \widehat{\beta}m\right)\left[\sum_{l=1}^{4} a_l(t)u_l\left(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_0, t\right)e^{i(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k}_0)\mathbf{r}}\right. \\ &\qquad\left. + \sum_{j=1}^{4} b_j(t)u_j\left(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{k}_0, t\right)e^{i(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{k}_0)\mathbf{r}}\right] \\ &= -e\widehat{\alpha}\left[\mathbf{A}_{(-)}(t)e^{-i\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}} + \mathbf{A}_{(+)}(t)e^{i\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}}\right]u_s\left(\mathbf{p}, t\right)e^{i\mathbf{p}\mathbf{r}}, \end{aligned} \tag{6.111}$$

where $s = 3, 4$ and

$$\mathbf{A}_{(-)}(t) = \begin{cases} i\frac{\mathbf{E}_0}{\omega_0}e^{i\omega_0 t}, & t < 0, \\ i\frac{\mathbf{E}_1}{\omega_1}e^{i\omega_1 t} - i\frac{\mathbf{E}_2}{\omega_1}e^{-i\omega_1 t}, & t \geqslant 0, \end{cases} \qquad \mathbf{A}_{(+)}(t) = \mathbf{A}^*_{(-)}(t). \tag{6.112}$$

The bispinor functions $u_s\left(\mathbf{p}, t\right)$ in (6.111) correspond to the unperturbed states of the Dirac vacuum (they are determined by (6.109) with $s = 3$ and $s = 4$, where $\mathbf{p}' = \mathbf{p}$ and $\mathcal{E}' = \mathcal{E}$ are the momenta and energies of the free vacuum electrons).

According to this model, a pair is produced because of the interaction of the external field with the electrons of negative energies of the Dirac vacuum. In the first-order perturbation theory in the field this leads to electron states in the region of positive energies with the values

$$\mathcal{E}_{(-)} = \sqrt{(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_0)^2 + m^2}, \qquad \mathcal{E}_{(+)} = \sqrt{(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{k}_0)^2 + m^2}.$$

The probabilities of these transitions are determined by the amplitudes $a_{1,2}$ and $b_{1,2}$, respectively (the indices 1 and 2 correspond to two different spin states). Therefore the problem reduces to determining the functions $a_{1,2}(t)$ and $b_{1,2}(t)$ by integrating the set of (6.111). From the latter, we obtain the following set of equations:

$$\sum_{l=1}^{4} i \frac{da_l}{dt} u_l \left(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_0, t\right) = -e\widehat{\alpha}\mathbf{A}_{(-)}(t) u_s \left(\mathbf{p}, t\right), \tag{6.113}$$

$$\sum_{j=1}^{4} i \frac{db_j}{dt} u_j \left(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{k}_0, t\right) = -e\widehat{\alpha}\mathbf{A}_{(+)}(t) u_s \left(\mathbf{p}, t\right). \tag{6.114}$$

Multiplying (6.113) on the left by $u_l^{\dagger}\left(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_0, t\right)$ and (6.114) by $u_j^{\dagger}\left(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{k}_0, t\right)$ and taking into account that the bispinors are orthonormal ($u_l^{\dagger} u_m = \delta_{lm}$), we obtain eight equations for the transitions amplitudes $a_l(t)$ and $b_j(t)$ for a given spinor state s of a vacuum electron ($s = 3$ or $s = 4$):

$$\frac{da_l(t)}{dt} = ieu_l^{\dagger}\left(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_0, t\right) \widehat{\alpha}\mathbf{A}_{(-)}(t) u_s \left(\mathbf{p}, t\right), \qquad l = 1, ..., 4, \tag{6.115}$$

$$\frac{db_j(t)}{dt} = ieu_j^{\dagger}\left(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{k}_0, t\right) \widehat{\alpha}\mathbf{A}_{(+)}(t) u_s \left(\mathbf{p}, t\right), \qquad j = 1, ..., 4. \tag{6.116}$$

Orienting the z axis parallel to the electric field $\mathbf{E}_0$ of the wave and the x axis parallel to the wave vector $\mathbf{k}_0$, we obtain for the amplitudes $a_{1,2}$ and $b_{1,2}$

$$a_{1,2}(t) = ieu_{1,2}^{\dagger}\left(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_0\right) \alpha_z u_s \left(\mathbf{p}\right) \int_{-\infty}^{t} A_{(-)}(t') e^{i\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(-)}\right)t'} dt', \tag{6.117}$$

$$b_{1,2}(t) = ieu_{1,2}^{\dagger}\left(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{k}_0\right) \alpha_z u_s \left(\mathbf{p}\right) \int_{-\infty}^{t} A_{(+)}(t') e^{i\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(+)}\right)t'} dt', \tag{6.118}$$

where $u_{1,2}^{\dagger}\left(\mathbf{p} \mp \mathbf{k}_0\right)$ and $u_s\left(\mathbf{p}\right)$ are constant bispinors determined by (6.108) and (6.109) (preexponential factors in (6.108), (6.109)).

The probability of electron production from a definite vacuum state $\mathbf{p}$, s is determined by the quantity $|a_1(t)|^2 + |a_2(t)|^2 + |b_1(t)|^2 + |b_2(t)|^2$ (the probability of the production of a positron with a momentum $\mathbf{p}$ in a definite spinor state s). The differential probability of pair production, summed over the initial spin states of the Dirac vacuum, in an element of the phase volume $d\mathbf{p}/(2\pi)^3$ (the spatial normalization volume $V = 1$), is

$$dW = 2\left[|a_1(t)|^2 + |a_2(t)|^2 + |b_1(t)|^2 + |b_2(t)|^2\right] |_{t\to+\infty} \frac{d\mathbf{p}}{(2\pi)^3}. \tag{6.119}$$

Integrating (6.117) and (6.118) over time with (6.112) and assuming that the EM wave is switched on and switched off adiabatically: $\mathbf{E}_0(t = -\infty) = \mathbf{E}_1(t = +\infty) = \mathbf{E}_2(t = +\infty) = 0$ (the amplitudes of the incident, transmitted, and reflected waves are assumed to be slowly varying functions of time), we obtain the following expressions for the amplitudes $a_{1,2}$ and $b_{1,2}$ after the wave interaction with the Dirac vacuum:

$$a_{1,2}(t = +\infty) = \frac{ieE_0\,(\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_2)\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(-)}\right)}{\varepsilon_2\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(-)} + \omega_0\right)\left(\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(-)}\right)^2 - \omega_0^2\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right)} \times \left[u^{\dagger}_{1,2}\,(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{k}_0)\,\alpha_z u_s\,(\mathbf{p})\right], \tag{6.120}$$

$$b_{1,2}(t = +\infty) = \frac{ieE_0\,(\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon_2)\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(+)}\right)}{\varepsilon_2\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(+)} - \omega_0\right)\left(\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(+)}\right)^2 - \omega_0^2\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right)} \times \left[u^{\dagger}_{1,2}\,(\mathbf{p} + \mathbf{k}_0)\,\alpha_z u_s\,(\mathbf{p})\right]. \tag{6.121}$$

Evaluating the transition matrix elements in (6.120), (6.121), we obtain with the help of (6.119) the differential probability of pair production by a strong EM wave in a nonstationary medium:

$$dW = \frac{e^2}{(2\pi)^3}\frac{E_0^2}{\mathcal{E}}\left(\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2} - 1\right)^2 \times \left\{\frac{\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(-)}\right)^2\left[\mathcal{E}\mathcal{E}_{(-)} + m^2 + p_x(p_x - k_0) + p_y^2 - p_z^2\right]}{\mathcal{E}_{(-)}\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(-)} + \omega_0\right)^2\left[\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(-)}\right)^2 - \omega_0^2\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right]^2} + \frac{\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(+)}\right)^2\left[\mathcal{E}\mathcal{E}_{(+)} + m^2 + p_x(p_x + k_0) + p_y^2 - p_z^2\right]}{\mathcal{E}_{(+)}\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(+)} - \omega_0\right)^2\left[\left(\mathcal{E} + \mathcal{E}_{(+)}\right)^2 - \omega_0^2\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right]^2}\right\} d\mathbf{p}. \tag{6.122}$$

As one can see from (6.122), the process exhibits azimuthal asymmetry with respect to the direction of propagation of the wave. Orienting the polar axis in this direction ($d\mathbf{p} = p\mathcal{E}d\mathcal{E}\sin\theta d\theta d\varphi$, where θ is the angle between the vectors $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{k}_0$ and φ is the azimuthal angle relative to the direction of polarization of the wave) and integrating over the energy, we obtain the angular distribution of the produced electrons (positrons). As the case of physical interest is an EM wave of frequencies $\omega \ll m$, (6.122) simplifies greatly and takes the form

$$dW = \frac{e^2E_0^2}{2\pi^3}\left(\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}-1\right)^2\frac{\sqrt{\mathcal{E}^2-m^2}}{\mathcal{E}}$$

$$\times\frac{m^2\sin^2\theta\cos^2\varphi+\mathcal{E}^2\left(1-\sin^2\theta\cos^2\varphi\right)}{\left(4\mathcal{E}^2-\omega_0^2\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right)^2}\sin\theta d\theta d\varphi d\mathcal{E}. \tag{6.123}$$

Integrating (6.123) over the energy, we obtain the number of pairs produced in the element of solid angle $do = \sin\theta d\theta d\varphi$:

$$dW(\theta,\varphi) = \frac{e^2E_0^2}{128\pi^2 m}\left(\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}-1\right)^2\left[F\left(2;\frac{1}{2};2;\frac{\omega_0^2\varepsilon_1}{4m^2\varepsilon_2}\right)\right.$$

$$\left.\times\left(1-\sin^2\theta\cos^2\varphi\right)+\frac{1}{4}F\left(2;\frac{3}{2};3;\frac{\omega_0^2\varepsilon_1}{4m^2\varepsilon_2}\right)\sin^2\theta\cos^2\varphi\right]do, \tag{6.124}$$

where $F(\nu;\mu;\lambda;z)$ is the hypergeometric function.

For the energy distribution of the produced electrons (positrons) we have

$$dW(\mathcal{E}) = \frac{2e^2E_0^2}{3\pi^2}\left(\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}-1\right)^2\frac{\sqrt{\mathcal{E}^2-m^2}\left(2\mathcal{E}^2+m^2\right)}{\left(4\mathcal{E}^2-\omega_0^2\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right)^2}d\mathcal{E}. \tag{6.125}$$

Integrating (6.124) over the angles θ and φ (or (6.125) over the energy), we obtain the total number of electron–positron pairs produced by a strong EM wave in a nonstationary medium:

$$W = \frac{2e^2E_0^2}{48\pi m}\left(\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}-1\right)^2\left[F\left(2;\frac{1}{2};2;\frac{\omega_0^2\varepsilon_1}{4m^2\varepsilon_2}\right)\right.$$

$$\left.+\frac{1}{8}F\left(2;\frac{3}{2};3;\frac{\omega_0^2\varepsilon_1}{4m^2\varepsilon_2}\right)\right]. \tag{6.126}$$

Note that in (6.123) and (6.125) the denominators become zero for $\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2} = 2\mathcal{E}$. This is the conservation law for the single-photon pair production by a wave of the frequency $\omega_1 = \omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2}$ (by the transmitted and reflected waves) in a medium with the index of refraction $n_2 = \sqrt{\varepsilon_2} < 1$ (plasma). Since (6.123)–(6.126) correspond to the case $\omega \ll m$, the pole in (6.123) can be reached, i.e., the conservation laws of energy and momentum for the process $\gamma \to e^- + e^+$ can be satisfied only if $\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2 \gg 1$. Actually this is possible if $\varepsilon_2 \ll 1$, in agreement with the fact that pair production by a photon field requires a plasmalike medium. It is obvious from (6.126) that the total probability of the process diverges when $\omega_0^2 \varepsilon_1/4m^2\varepsilon_2 = 1$. The latter is associated with the fact that these probabilities were determined for an infinitely long interaction time. In perturbation theory probabilities are proportional to the interaction time (under stationary conditions) and diverge as $t \to \infty$. Thus, this divergence is not associated with the process studied here, which is governed by the time dependence of the medium, and it can be eliminated by assuming $\omega_0^2\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2 < 4m^2$. Moreover, for laser frequencies and realistic values of the dielectric permittivities $\omega_0\sqrt{\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2} \ll 2\mathcal{E}$ and from (6.126), we obtain the following expression for the total number of e^-, e^+ pairs produced in the volume V due only to the medium nonstationary properties:

$$W = \frac{3e^2 E_0^2 V}{128\pi m}\left(1 - \frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right)^2. \tag{6.127}$$

In the general case, for arbitrary frequency of EM wave and temporal variation of the dielectric permittivity of the medium $\varepsilon_1/\varepsilon_2$ from (6.122), the following formula for the pair's probability distribution over the total energy $\mathcal{E}_t = \mathcal{E}_{e^-} + \mathcal{E}_{e^+}$ of the produced particles can be derived:

$$\frac{dW}{d\mathcal{E}_t} = \frac{e^2 E_0^2}{6\pi^2}\left(1 - \frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right)^2 \left(1 - \frac{4m^2}{\mathcal{E}_t^2 - k_0^2}\right)^{1/2} \times \frac{\mathcal{E}_t^2\left(\mathcal{E}_t^2 + \omega_0^2\right)\left(\mathcal{E}_t^2 + 2m^2 - k_0^2\right)}{\left(\mathcal{E}_t^2 - \omega_0^2\right)\left(\mathcal{E}_t^2 - \omega_0^2\frac{\varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_2}\right)^2}. \tag{6.128}$$

Bibliography

G.S. Sahakyan, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **38**, 843 (1960)
G.S. Sahakyan, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **38**, 1593 (1960)
V.L. Ginzburg, Izv. Vuzov, Radiofizika **16**, 512 (1973). (in Russian)
V.L. Ginzburg, V.N. Tsitovich, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **65**, 132 (1973)
H.K. Avetissian, A.K. Avetissian, R.G. Petrossian, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **75**, 382 (1978)
V.L. Ginzburg, *Theoretical Physics and Astrophysics* (Pergamon Press, Oxford, 1979)
H.K. Avetissian, A.K. Avetissian, KhV Sedrakian, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **94**, 21 (1988)
H.K. Avetissian, A.K. Avetissian, KhV Sedrakian, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **100**, 82 (1991)

Chapter 7
Induced Channeling Process in a Crystal

Abstract It is known that due to the relativistic motion of a charged particle in a crystal, an exotic situation takes place when the effective potential of the crystal planes or axes becomes a potential well for the particle in the transverse direction with respect to its initial motion, and so-called channeling of the particle occurs accompanied by spontaneous channeling radiation. The channeling radiation of ultrarelativistic electrons and positrons in a crystal is of great interest for two major reasons: the radiation is in the shortwave region (X-ray and γ-ray domains) and its spectral intensity considerably exceeds that of the other types of radiation in this range of frequencies. Induced channeling radiation in the presence of an external coherent radiation field becomes important as a potential source for shortwave coherent radiation, which may be considered as a version of a free electron laser. As a periodic system with high coherency and owing to the similar periodic character of particle motion, the crystal channel may be compared with an undulator—it is a "micro-undulator" with the space period much smaller than that of an undulator. On the other hand, the particle–external coherent EM wave interaction process in the channel of a crystal proceeds with the inverse stimulated effect reducing the particle acceleration and other classical and quantum coherent effects. Hence, this chapter will consider the induced channeling process with regard to general aspects of coherent interaction of relativistic electrons and positrons with a plane transverse EM wave in a crystal.

7.1 Positron–Strong Wave Interaction at the Planar Channeling in a Crystal

If a charged particle with relativistic velocity enters a crystal at the angle with respect to a crystal plane or crystallographic axis smaller than some specified angle (Lindhard angle)

$$\theta_\alpha = \sqrt{\frac{2U_0}{\mathcal{E}}}, \tag{7.1}$$

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_7

then the effective electrostatic field of the crystal becomes a transverse potential well related to the particle motion and the latter moves in the crystal channel—the channeling of the particle occurs. Here U_0 is the depth of the potential well and $\mathcal{E}$ is the particle energy. In the most interesting case of ultrarelativistic energies for channeling phenomenon, the transverse de Broglie wavelength of the particle

$$\lambda_D = \frac{\hbar c}{\sqrt{2U_0\mathcal{E}}} \tag{7.2}$$

is much smaller than the interplanar or interaxial distance d in a crystal (U_0 is of the order of the kinetic energy of the particle transverse motion) and consequently $d/\lambda_D \gg 1$. On the other hand, the quantity d/λ_D with the coefficient coincides with the number of bound states l of the particle transverse motion in the crystal channel. Hence, in the most important region of energies $l \gg 1$ and the particle motion at the channeling can be described classically.

We will study the induced interaction of a charged particle channeled in a crystal with the external coherent radiation field within the scope of the classical theory. In this section, the case of the planar channeling will be considered.

As is known for a positron planar channeling, the effective electrostatic potential of the crystal planes within the channel is well enough described by the parabolic law

$$U(x) = 4\frac{U_0}{d^2}x^2, \tag{7.3}$$

where d is the distance between the crystal planes, and the transverse coordinate x is evaluated from the median plane. The classical relativistic equation of motion for a positron in the fields (7.3) and an external plane monochromatic EM wave

$$\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{E}_0 \cos(\omega_0 t - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}); \qquad \mathbf{k}_0 = \nu\frac{n_0\omega_0}{c} \tag{7.4}$$

($n_0 = n_0(\omega_0)$ is the refractive index of the crystal on the wave frequency) is written as

$$\frac{d\mathbf{p}}{dt} = e\mathbf{E} + \frac{e}{c}[\mathbf{vH}] - \nabla U(x). \tag{7.5}$$

As for the permitted maximal values of the wave intensities in the dielectric media, the characteristic interaction parameter $\xi_0 = eE_0/mc\omega_0 \ll 1$ (see Sect. 2.2), then for the ultrarelativistic energies of the channeled particles the interaction with the EM wave in a crystal with great accuracy can be described by the classical perturbation theory over the field (7.4). Consequently, in the zero order over the EM wave field from (7.5) we have the equations

$$\frac{dp_x}{dt} = -\frac{dU(x)}{dx}, \tag{7.6}$$

$$\frac{dp_y}{dt} = 0; \qquad \frac{dp_z}{dt} = 0. \tag{7.7}$$

Choosing the axis z along the initial motion of the particle from (7.6) and (7.7) for the particle energy and momentum, we obtain respectively

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{mc^2}{\sqrt{1 - \left(\mathrm{v}_x^2 + \mathrm{v}_z^2\right)/c^2}} + U(x), \tag{7.8}$$

$$p_y = 0; \qquad p_z = \frac{m\mathrm{v}_z}{\sqrt{1 - \left(\mathrm{v}_x^2 + \mathrm{v}_z^2\right)/c^2}}. \tag{7.9}$$

For the transverse velocity of the particle from (7.8) and (7.9), we have

$$\mathrm{v}_x^2 = c^2 \frac{[\mathcal{E} - U(x)]^2 - \mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}^2}{[\mathcal{E} - U(x)]^2}, \tag{7.10}$$

where

$$\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel} = c\sqrt{p_{\shortparallel}^2 + m^2c^2} \tag{7.11}$$

is the energy of the longitudinal motion. Equation (7.10) is the exact equation for the particle transverse motion. One can make some simplification of this equation taking into account the smallness of the potential energy related to the energy of the ultrarelativistic particle:

$$U_{\max}(x) \ll \mathcal{E}.$$

Representing the particle energy in the form

$$\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel} + \mathcal{E}_{\perp},$$

where $\mathcal{E}_{\perp}$ is the energy of the transverse motion, and taking into account that for the channeled particles

$$\mathcal{E}_{\perp} \lesssim U_{\max}(x) \ll \mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel},$$

then the equation for the particle transverse motion (7.10) with the accuracy of the small quantity $\mathcal{E}_{\perp}/\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel} \ll 1$ will take the form

$$\mathrm{v}_x^2 = \frac{2c^2}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}} [\mathcal{E}_{\perp} - U(x)]. \tag{7.12}$$

Formally (7.10) has a nonrelativistic character where instead of particle rest mass, the relativistic mass $m_{rel} \simeq \mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}/mc^2$ stands.

The longitudinal velocity of the particle is determined from (7.9) and has the form

$$\mathrm{v}_z(t) \simeq c\left\{1 - \frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{\mathrm{v}_x^2}{c^2} + \left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}\right)^2\right]\right\}. \tag{7.13}$$

In the case of planar channeling of a positron when the effective electrostatic potential of the crystal may be approximated by (7.3), the integration of (7.12) gives the following law for the transverse motion:

$$x(t) = x_m \sin\left[\Omega(t - t_0) + \varphi\right]. \tag{7.14}$$

Here

$$\Omega = \frac{2c}{d}\sqrt{\frac{2U_0}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}} \tag{7.15}$$

is the frequency of the positron transverse oscillations in the potential well of the crystal channel,

$$x_m = \frac{d}{2}\sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\perp}}{U_0}} \tag{7.16}$$

is the amplitude and φ is the phase of the transverse oscillations at the moment t_0 when the positron enters into the crystal. Corresponding to (7.14), the transverse velocity of the positron is

$$\mathrm{v}_x(t) = \mathrm{v}_{xm}\cos\left[\Omega(t - t_0) + \varphi\right], \tag{7.17}$$

where

$$\mathrm{v}_{xm} = \frac{d\Omega}{2}\sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\perp}}{U_0}} \tag{7.18}$$

is the maximal velocity of the transverse motion of the positron in the crystal channel. Then using (7.17) after the integration of (7.13), we will have

$$z(t) = \overline{\mathrm{v}}_z t - z_m \sin\left[2\Omega(t - t_0) + 2\varphi\right] + z_m \sin 2\varphi, \tag{7.19}$$

where

$$\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z = c\left\{1 - \frac{1}{2}\left[\left(\frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}\right)^2 + \frac{\mathcal{E}_{\perp}}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}\right]\right\} \tag{7.20}$$

is the mean longitudinal velocity of the positron, and the amplitude of the longitudinal oscillations z_m is

$$z_m = \frac{c\mathcal{E}_{\perp}}{4\Omega\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}. \tag{7.21}$$

Now we can evaluate the induced channeling effect in the field of an external EM wave, by the classical perturbation theory in the first order over the field (7.4). The energy change of the channeled positron at the interaction with the plane transverse EM wave is given by

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = e\int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{E}(t - \nu\mathbf{r}n_0/c)\mathbf{v}(t)dt, \tag{7.22}$$

where the law of motion $\mathbf{r} = \mathbf{r}(t)$ and velocity $\mathbf{v}(t)$ of the positron in the crystal channel are determined by (7.14), (7.19) and (7.13), (7.17), respectively. The induced interaction time $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$ actually will be determined by the length of the channel ($t_1$and t_2 are correspondingly the moments of the wave entrance in the crystal and exit from the channel).

For the concreteness and evaluation of the energy change (7.22), we introduce a new Cartesian coordinate system x', y', z' and assume that a quasimonochromatic EM wave linearly polarized along the axis x' propagates along the axis z', at a small angle with respect to a crystal plane (see (7.1)). The coordinate system x', y', z' is related to the system x, y, z via Eulerian angles α, β, γ as follows:

$$\begin{pmatrix} x' \\ y' \\ z' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos\gamma & \sin\gamma & 0 \\ -\sin\gamma & \cos\gamma & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \cos\beta & 0 & -\sin\beta \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \sin\beta & 0 & \cos\beta \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos\alpha & \sin\alpha \\ 0 & -\sin\alpha & \cos\alpha \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}. \tag{7.23}$$

At the motion of the positron in the crystal channel by the trajectory (7.14), (7.19), the wave phase in (7.22) corresponding to induced interaction is

$$\phi = \omega_0 t - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r} = \omega t - \varkappa_1 \sin\left[\Omega\left(t - t_0\right) + \varphi\right] + \varkappa_2 \sin 2\left[\Omega\left(t - t_0\right) + \varphi\right] + \psi, \tag{7.24}$$

where

$$\omega = \omega_0\left(1 - \frac{n_0\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z}{c}\cos\alpha\cos\beta\right) \tag{7.25}$$

is the Doppler-shifted wave frequency, and the parameters $\varkappa_1$, $\varkappa_2$, ψ are

$$\varkappa_1 = n_0\omega_0\frac{x_m}{c}\sin\beta; \qquad \varkappa_2 = n_0\omega_0\frac{z_m}{c}\cos\alpha\cos\beta,$$
$$\psi = -n_0\frac{\omega_0}{c}\cos\alpha\cos\beta\left(z_m\sin 2\varphi - \overline{\mathrm{v}}_z t_0\right). \tag{7.26}$$

Substituting (7.24) as well as (7.13) and (7.17) in (7.22) for the energy change of the positron due to the induced channeling effect, in the first order by the wave field, we will have

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e}{\omega - s\Omega} \{E_{0x} \mathrm{v}_{xm} A_1(s, \varkappa_1, \varkappa_2) + E_{0z}(\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z + \mathrm{v}_{zm}) A_0(s, \varkappa_1, \varkappa_2)$$
$$- 2E_{0z} \mathrm{v}_{zm} A_2(s, \varkappa_1, \varkappa_2)\} \{\sin[(\omega - s\Omega) t_2 + s\Omega t_0 - s\varphi + \psi]$$
$$- \sin[(\omega - s\Omega) t_1 + s\Omega t_0 - s\varphi + \psi]\}, \tag{7.27}$$

where

$$A_n(s, \alpha, \beta) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} \cos^n \varphi' e^{i\left(\alpha \sin\varphi' - \beta \sin 2\varphi' - s\varphi'\right)} d\varphi'$$

is the generalized Bessel function with the definitions

$$A_0(s, \alpha, \beta) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} J_{s+2k}(\alpha) J_k(\beta),$$

$$A_1(s, \alpha, \beta) = \frac{1}{2}[A_0(s-1, \alpha, \beta) + A_0(s+1, \alpha, \beta)],$$

$$A_2(s, \alpha, \beta) = \frac{1}{4}[A_0(s-2, \alpha, \beta) + 2A_0(s, \alpha, \beta) + A_0(s+2, \alpha, \beta)],$$

and

$$\mathrm{v}_{zm} = \frac{c\mathcal{E}_\perp}{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}} \tag{7.28}$$

is the amplitude of the positron longitudinal velocity oscillations.

Equation (7.27) shows that the energy change of the positron after the interaction differs from zero (will have nonoscillating character in the time) if the condition

$$\omega_0 \left(1 - n_0 \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z}{c} \cos\alpha \cos\beta\right) = s\Omega; \qquad s = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, ... \tag{7.29}$$

is satisfied for a specified s. The latter is the condition of the resonance between the transverse oscillations of the positron in the potential well of the crystal channel and EM wave. Only at the fulfillment of this condition does the coherent energy exchange of the channeled positron with the monochromatic wave become real. Then for the energy change of the positron after the interaction, we have

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = eE_0 \Delta t \{\mathrm{v}_{xm} \cos\beta \cos\gamma A_1(s, \varkappa_1, \varkappa_2) + (\sin\alpha \sin\gamma - \cos\alpha \sin\beta \cos\gamma)$$
$$\times \left[(\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z + \mathrm{v}_{zm}) A_0(s, \varkappa_1, \varkappa_2) - 2\mathrm{v}_{zm} A_2(s, \varkappa_1, \varkappa_2)\right]\}$$
$$\times \cos\left[s\Omega t_0 - s\varphi + n_0 \frac{\omega_0}{c} \cos\alpha \cos\beta (\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z t_0 - z_m \sin 2\varphi)\right]. \tag{7.30}$$

Expressing the functions $A_{0,1,2}(s, \varkappa_1, \varkappa_2)$ via the ordinary Bessel functions, (7.30) can be presented in the form

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = eE_0\Delta t \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \left\{ \frac{1}{2} \mathrm{v}_{xm} \cos\beta\cos\gamma \left[J_{s-1+2k}(\varkappa_1) + J_{s+1+2k}(\varkappa_1) \right] \right.$$
$$+ \overline{\mathrm{v}}_z (\sin\alpha\sin\gamma - \cos\alpha\sin\beta\cos\gamma) J_{s+2k}(\varkappa_1)$$
$$\left. - \mathrm{v}_{zm} (\sin\alpha\sin\gamma - \cos\alpha\sin\beta\cos\gamma) \left[J_{s-2+2k}(\varkappa_1) + J_{s+2+2k}(\varkappa_1) \right] \right\} J_k(\varkappa_2)$$
$$\times \cos\left[s\Omega t_0 - s\varphi + n_0 \frac{\omega_0}{c} (\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z t_0 - z_m \sin 2\varphi) \cos\alpha\cos\beta \right]. \tag{7.31}$$

For the X-ray and γ-ray frequencies when $n_0(\omega_0) \lesssim 1$ the resonance condition (7.29) corresponds to the normal Doppler effect at which the energy absorption from the EM wave is accompanied by enhancement of the transverse oscillations of the positron (in these cases $s > 0$ in (7.31)). For the optical frequencies when $n_0(\omega_0) > 1$ the anomalous Doppler effect is possible as well:

$$1 - n_0 \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z}{c} \cos\alpha\cos\beta < 0, \tag{7.32}$$

which corresponds to enhancement of transverse oscillations of the positron at the induced radiation (in (7.31) in this case $s < 0$). Under the condition

$$1 - n_0 \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z}{c} \cos\alpha\cos\beta = 0, \tag{7.33}$$

that is, the Cherenkov condition in the crystal channel corresponding to $s = 0$, (7.29) expresses the real energy exchange at the positron–wave induced Cherenkov interaction.

Equation (7.31) for the general geometry of the positron planar channeling at the arbitrary propagation and polarization directions of the wave is very bulky. It can be simplified in the case of a particular geometry of the induced interaction—if the EM wave propagates along the direction of the positron motion in the channel (axis z) with the electric field directed along the axis x—and the positron energy $\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel} \lesssim m^2c^4/\mathcal{E}_{\perp}$. Then, for the number of harmonic s we have: $s = 0, \pm 1$ (for the coherent accumulation of energy exchange), and for the frequencies satisfying the resonance condition (7.29) one can suppose $n_0(\omega_0) \simeq 1$. The latter excepts the possibility of the induced Cherenkov effect ($s = 0$) and the anomalous Doppler effect ($s = -1$) as well. Thus, for the induced energy exchange, we have a simple formula

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = \frac{eE_0\mathrm{v}_{xm}}{2} \Delta t \cos\left[\left(\Omega + \omega_0 \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z}{c} \right) t_0 - \varphi \right]. \tag{7.34}$$

As is seen from (7.31) and (7.34) depending on the initial conditions—a moment t_0 when the positron enters into the crystal and a phase φ of the transverse oscillations—either the direct or the inverse induced channeling effect occurs, i.e., positron deceleration or acceleration, respectively. Hence, at the interaction of the channeled positron beam with the monochromatic EM wave, the diverse particles entering into a crystal at the different moments and in the different oscillation phases will acquire or lose different energies. As a result, the modulation of the particles' velocities will take place leading to beam bunching if the longitudinal size of the latter $l_z > \pi \overline{\mathrm{v}}_z/\omega_0$.

7.2 Induced Interaction of Electrons with Strong EM Wave at the Axial Channeling

As is known, for an electron axial channeling the effective electrostatic potential of the atomic chain along the crystal axis is well enough described by the two-dimensional Coulomb potential

$$U(\rho) = -\frac{\alpha_c}{\rho}, \tag{7.35}$$

where α_c is a constant depending on the type of crystal and the particular geometry, and ρ is the distance from the crystal axis. The transverse motion of the electron in the field (7.35) with a nonzero momentum occurs by the Keplerian elliptic trajectory. If one directs the coordinate axes *OX* and *OY* correspondingly along the major and minor semiaxes of the ellipse and the axis *OZ* along the crystal axis, and if at the moment $t = t_0$ the electron is situated in the perihelion of the orbit of the transverse motion with the coordinate $z = z_0$, then the electron trajectory may be presented in the known parametric form

$$\begin{gathered}
x = a(\cos\zeta - \epsilon); \qquad y = (-1)^{s'} b \sin\zeta, \\
z = \overline{\mathrm{v}}_z (t - t_0) - a^2 \frac{\epsilon \Omega}{c} \sin\zeta + z_0, \\
t = \frac{\zeta - \epsilon \sin\zeta}{\Omega} + t_0,
\end{gathered} \tag{7.36}$$

where for a full rotation of the electron by the elliptic orbit the parameter ζ varies from zero to 2π. Here the parameters

$$a = \frac{\alpha_c}{2|\mathcal{E}_\perp|}; \qquad b = a\sqrt{1-\epsilon^2} \tag{7.37}$$

are the major and minor semiaxes of the ellipse,

$$\epsilon = \sqrt{1 - \frac{2\,|\mathcal{E}_{\perp}|\,M_z^2 c^2}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\alpha_c^2}} \tag{7.38}$$

is the eccentricity (M_z is the z-component of the orbital moment),

$$\Omega = c\frac{(2\,|\mathcal{E}_{\perp}|)^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\alpha_c\sqrt{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}} \tag{7.39}$$

is the rotation frequency, and

$$\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z = c\left(1 - \frac{m^2c^4}{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}^2}\right) - \frac{c\,|\mathcal{E}_{\perp}|}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}} \tag{7.40}$$

is the mean longitudinal velocity of the electron. The parameter s' in (7.36) determines the right-hand or left-hand rotation of the electron by the elliptic orbit:

$$s' = \begin{cases} 0, & \frac{M_z}{|M_z|} > 0, \\ 1, & \frac{M_z}{|M_z|} < 0. \end{cases} \tag{7.41}$$

As the electron trajectory at the axial channeling is of helical type from the point of view of the symmetry in this issue, we will suppose that an EM wave has a circular polarization:

$$E_{x'} = E_0 \cos(\omega_0 t - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}); \quad E_{y'} = E_0\,(-1)^{s''} \sin(\omega_0 t - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}) \tag{7.42}$$

correspondingly with the left-hand and right-hand rotations:

$$s'' = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{left-hand,} \\ 1, & \text{right-hand.} \end{cases}$$

The coordinate system $x'y'z'$ relates to the xyz one in accordance with (7.23) and in the case of the wave circular polarization one can assume that the Eulerian angle $\gamma = 0$.

We will evaluate the induced effect at the axial channeling by (7.22) again in the first order by the EM wave field. As far as the particle velocity and law of motion in the channel in this case are determined in parametric form (7.36), it is necessary to pass in (7.22) from the variable t to ζ. Then the induced energy exchange between the channeled electron and EM wave will be written in the form

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = e\int\limits_{\zeta(t_1)}^{\zeta(t_2)} \mathbf{E}(\phi(\zeta))\frac{d\mathbf{r}(\zeta)}{d\zeta}d\zeta, \tag{7.43}$$

where $\Delta t = t_2 - t_1$ is the duration of electron–wave coherent interaction at the axial channeling. In the first-order approximation for the wave phase in the integral (7.43) with the help of (7.36)–(7.41), we have

$$\phi(\zeta) = \omega_0 t - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r} \; = \; \frac{\omega_0 - k_{0z}\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z}{\Omega}\zeta - \varkappa_1\sin\zeta - \varkappa_2\cos\zeta + \psi, \tag{7.44}$$

where

$$\mathbf{k}_0 = n_0\frac{\omega_0}{c}(\sin\beta, -\sin\alpha\cos\beta, \cos\alpha\cos\beta),$$

and the parameters $\varkappa_1$, $\varkappa_2$, ψ in this case are

$$\varkappa_1 = \frac{\epsilon}{\Omega}(\omega_0 - k_{0z}\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z) + (-1)^{s'}k_{0y}b - k_{0z}a^2\epsilon\frac{\Omega}{c}; \quad \varkappa_2 = ak_{0x},$$
$$\psi = \omega_0 t_0 + k_{0x}a\epsilon - k_{0z}z_0.$$

Performing integration in (7.43) with the help of (7.36) and (7.44), we obtain the following ultimate equation for the coherent energy exchange between the electron and external strong EM wave at the axial channeling:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Delta\mathcal{E} = &-eE_0\Omega\Delta t\Bigg\{J_s(\varkappa)\left[(-1)^{s''}\sin\alpha\sin\varphi - \cos\alpha\sin\beta\cos\varphi\right]\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z}{\Omega}\\
&+\frac{s}{\varkappa}J_s(\varkappa)\Bigg[a\cos\beta\sin\varphi_1\cos\varphi + (-1)^{s'}b\sin\alpha\sin\beta\cos\varphi\cos\varphi_1\\
&+(-1)^{s'+s''}b\cos\alpha\sin\varphi\cos\varphi_1 + \left(1+\frac{2c\,|\mathcal{E}_\perp|}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}\right)\frac{\epsilon\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z}{\Omega}\\
&\left(\cos\alpha\sin\beta\cos\varphi\cos\varphi_1 - (-1)^{s''}\sin\alpha\sin\varphi\cos\varphi_1\right)\Bigg]\\
&+J_s'(\varkappa)\Bigg[a\cos\beta\sin\varphi\cos\varphi_1 + (-1)^{s'}b\sin\alpha\sin\beta\sin\varphi\sin\varphi_1\\
&+(-1)^{s'+s''}b\cos\alpha\cos\varphi\sin\varphi_1 - \left(1+\frac{2c\,|\mathcal{E}_\perp|}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}\right)\frac{\epsilon\overline{\mathrm{v}}_z}{\Omega}\\
&\times\left(\cos\alpha\sin\beta\sin\varphi\sin\varphi_1 + (-1)^{s''}\sin\alpha\sin\varphi_1\cos\varphi\right)\Bigg]\Bigg\},
\end{aligned} \tag{7.45}$$

where the parameters $\varkappa$, φ_1, and φ are

$$\varkappa = \sqrt{\varkappa_1^2 + \varkappa_2^2},$$

$$\varphi_1 = \frac{\varkappa_1}{|\varkappa_1|} \arcsin \frac{\varkappa_2}{\varkappa}, \tag{7.46}$$

$$\varphi = \omega_0 t_0 - n_0 \frac{\omega_0}{c} z_0 \cos\alpha \cos\beta + a\epsilon n_0 \frac{\omega_0}{c} \sin\beta - s\varphi_1.$$

The physical analysis of (7.45) is the same as was made for the positron planar channeling. So, we will not repeat the analogous analysis, noting only that the condition of resonance at the axial channeling for coherent energy exchange (7.45) is given by (7.29), where the frequency of transverse oscillations Ω of the electron is determined by (7.39).

Equation (7.46) corresponding to general geometry of the electron axial channeling in the arbitrary propagation and polarization directions of the wave is very bulky. It is rather simplified if the wave propagates along the direction of the electron motion in the channel (axis z) with the components of the electric field strength directed along the axes x and y , as well as the electron energy should not exceed the value $m^2c^4/\mathcal{E}_\perp$. For the induced energy exchange, we have the following ultimate equation:

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = -eE_0\Omega\Delta t \left\{ aJ_s'(\varkappa) + b(-1)^{s'+s''} \frac{s}{\varkappa} J_s(\varkappa) \right\} \times \sin\left(\omega_0 t_0 - n_0 \frac{\omega_0}{c} z_0 \right). \tag{7.47}$$

The existence of diverse harmonics in (7.47) is related to the anharmonic character of the electron transverse oscillations in the field (7.35) (in contrast to (7.34) for the planar channeling, at which the positron is a harmonic oscillator in the channel).

In addition, note that (7.45) and (7.47), due to their coherent dependence on the interaction phase, lead to the electron beam classical modulation and bunching after the interaction with the stimulating wave at the axial channeling analogously to the positron beam bunching at the planar channeling.

7.3 Quantum Description of the Induced Planar Channeling Effect

Consider the interaction of the particles channeled in a crystal and a plane monochromatic EM wave in the scope of the quantum theory. First, we will study the case of a weak wave when the one-photon absorption and emission processes dominate and the induced channeling effect may be described within the quantum perturbation theory by the particle wave function in the linear over the field approximation with respect to the initial state in the potential field of the crystal channel. It means that the latter should be described exactly.

We will start from the Dirac equation which in the case of the planar channeling of a positron in the field of an external EM wave is written as

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial t}=\left(\widehat{H}_0+\widehat{V}\right)\Psi, \tag{7.48}$$

$$\widehat{H}_0=c\widehat{\alpha}\widehat{\mathbf{p}}+\widehat{\beta}mc^2+U\left(x\right); \quad \widehat{V}=-e\widehat{\alpha}\mathbf{A}, \tag{7.49}$$

where $\widehat{\alpha}$, $\widehat{\beta}$ are the Dirac matrices in the standard representation (3.2). According to perturbation theory, we seek the solution of (7.49) in the form

$$\Psi=\Psi_0+\Psi_1+\cdots; \quad |\Psi_1|\ll|\Psi_0|\,,...,$$

where Ψ_0 satisfies the following equation for the positron in the electrostatic field of the crystal channel:

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi_0}{\partial t}=\left[c\widehat{\alpha}\widehat{\mathbf{p}}+\widehat{\beta}mc^2+U\left(x\right)\right]\Psi_0 \tag{7.50}$$

with the effective potential $U\left(x\right)$ (7.3). The particular solution of (7.50) may be presented in the form

$$\Psi_0\left(\mathbf{r},t\right)=b\begin{pmatrix}\varphi\\ \chi\end{pmatrix}e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}t}, \tag{7.51}$$

where φ and χ are spinor functions, $\mathcal{E}$ is the total energy of the positron in the potential field of the channel, and b is the normalization coefficient. From (7.50) for the spinor functions φ and χ, we obtain the following set of equations:

$$\mathcal{E}\varphi=c\left(\sigma\widehat{\mathbf{p}}\right)\chi+mc^2\varphi+U\left(x\right)\varphi,$$

$$\mathcal{E}\chi=c\left(\sigma\widehat{\mathbf{p}}\right)\varphi-mc^2\chi+U\left(x\right)\chi, \tag{7.52}$$

where $\sigma=\left(\sigma_x,\sigma_y,\sigma_z\right)$ are the Pauli matrices (1.79). Eliminating χ from the first equation (7.52):

$$\chi=\frac{c\sigma\widehat{\mathbf{p}}}{\mathcal{E}+mc^2-U\left(x\right)}\varphi, \tag{7.53}$$

for the spinor function φ, we obtain a differential equation of the second order:

$$\Delta\varphi+\frac{1}{\hbar^2c^2}\left(\left[\mathcal{E}-U\left(x\right)\right]^2-m^2c^4\right)\varphi+\frac{\sigma\nabla U\left(x\right)}{\mathcal{E}+mc^2-U\left(x\right)}\left(\sigma\nabla\right)\varphi=0. \tag{7.54}$$

The solution of (7.54) is sought in the form

$$\varphi=w\psi\left(x\right)e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}\mathbf{r}}=\begin{pmatrix}w_1\\ w_2\end{pmatrix}\psi\left(x\right)e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}\mathbf{r}}, \tag{7.55}$$

where $\psi(x)$ is the positron wave function corresponding to the transverse motion in the potential well of the channel, and w is a constant spinor which should be defined from the wave function normalization condition

$$w^{\dagger}w = w_1^* w_1 + w_2^* w_2 = 1.$$

Neglecting the small terms of the order $U_{\max}/\mathcal{E} \ll 1$ (or $\mathcal{E}_{\perp}/\mathcal{E} \ll 1$) in (7.54), for the positron wave function describing the transverse motion in the crystal channel, we obtain a one-dimensional Schrödinger equation in the potential field $U(x)$

$$\frac{d^2\psi(x)}{dx^2} + \frac{2m_{eff}}{\hbar^2}\left[\mathcal{E}_{\perp} - U(x)\right]\psi(x) = 0, \tag{7.56}$$

with the effective mass m_{eff} corresponding to the energy $\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}$ of relativistic longitudinal motion

$$m_{eff} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}{c^2} = \sqrt{\frac{\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}^2}{c^2} + m^2}. \tag{7.57}$$

In (7.56) $\mathcal{E}_{\perp} = \mathcal{E} - \mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}$ is the energy of transverse motion, which parametrically depends on the energy of longitudinal motion $\mathcal{E}_{\perp} = \mathcal{E}_{\perp}\left(\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\right)$. In the case of planar channeling of positrons with the harmonic potential (7.3), (7.56) describes the quantum harmonic oscillator the solution of which is given by

$$\psi_n(x) = \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\Omega}{\pi\hbar c^2}\right)^{\frac{1}{4}} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^n n!}} e^{-\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\Omega}{2\hbar c^2}x^2} \mathcal{H}_n\left(\sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\Omega}{\hbar c^2}}x\right), \tag{7.58}$$

where

$$\mathcal{H}_n(\xi) = (-1)^n e^{\xi^2} \frac{d^n e^{-\xi^2}}{d\xi^n} \tag{7.59}$$

are the Hermit polynomials, and the quantization law for the positron transverse energy is

$$\mathcal{E}_{\perp}\left(n, \mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\right) = \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\hbar\Omega, \tag{7.60}$$

where Ω is given by (7.15).

Finally, with the help of (7.55) and (7.51), the solution of (7.48) for the positron wave function with the longitudinal momentum $\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}$ in the n-th bound state of the transverse motion and spin state σ can be written as

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel},n,\sigma}(\mathbf{r},t) = \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel} + mc^2}{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}} \begin{pmatrix} \varphi_{\sigma} \\ \frac{c\sigma\widehat{\mathbf{p}}}{\mathcal{E}+mc^2-U(x)}\varphi_{\sigma} \end{pmatrix} \psi_n(x)\, e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}\mathbf{r} - \mathcal{E}t\right)}, \tag{7.61}$$

where φ_σ are the spinors (3.11), and the total energy $\mathcal{E}$ is given by the relation

$$\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}, n\right) = \sqrt{c^2\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}^2 + m^2c^4} + \left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)\hbar\Omega . \tag{7.62}$$

Now we can evaluate the wave function of the channeled positron at the induced interaction with an external EM wave in the first approximation of perturbation theory (Ψ_1) on the basis of (7.61), (7.62) for unperturbed (by the wave) state in the crystal channel (Ψ_0).

Before the interaction with a plane monochromatic EM wave assume that a positron with an initial longitudinal momentum $\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel} = (0, p_y, p_z)$ is situated in the bound state of the crystal channel characterized by the quantum numbers n, σ, that is, the initial state is described by the wave function

$$\Psi_0\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) = \Psi_{\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel},n,\sigma}\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) . \tag{7.63}$$

The positron wave function Ψ_1 perturbed by the EM wave will be expanded in terms of the full basis of the eigenstates (7.63) with (7.61), (7.62):

$$\Psi_1\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) = \sum_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n',\sigma'} a_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n',\sigma'}\left(t\right)\Psi_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n',\sigma'}\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) , \tag{7.64}$$

where $a_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n',\sigma'}\left(t\right)$ are unknown functions, and the summation is made over all possible states of the positron transverse motion in the potential well corresponding to planar channeling. Substituting the wave function $\Psi = \Psi_0 + \Psi_1$ with (7.63) and (7.64) in the Dirac equation (7.48) and neglecting the small terms of the second order by the quantity $\sim e\widehat{\alpha}\mathbf{A}\Psi_1$ (in accordance with the perturbation theory), we obtain the following differential equation for the expansion coefficients $a_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n',\sigma'}$:

$$\sum_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n',\sigma''} \hbar\frac{\partial a_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n',\sigma'}}{\partial t}\Psi_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n',\sigma'}\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) = ie\widehat{\alpha}\mathbf{A}\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right)\Psi_{\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel},n,\sigma}\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) . \tag{7.65}$$

Multiplying (7.65) on the left-hand side by $\Psi^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n',\sigma'}\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right)$ and integrating over $d\mathbf{r}dt$ one can present the solution of (7.65) in the form

$$\begin{aligned} a_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n',\sigma'} = i\frac{eA_0}{4}\sqrt{\frac{2\hbar\Omega}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}}\delta_{\sigma'\sigma}\left[\sqrt{n}\delta_{n'+1,n} - \sqrt{n+1}\delta_{n'-1,n}\right] \\ \times\left[\delta_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}+\hbar\mathbf{k}_0}\frac{e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel},n\right)-\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n'\right)+\hbar\omega_0\right)t}}{\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel},n\right) - \mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n'\right) + \hbar\omega_0}\right. \\ \left. + \delta_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}-\hbar\mathbf{k}_0}\frac{e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel},n\right)-\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n'\right)-\hbar\omega_0\right)t}}{\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel},n\right) - \mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel},n'\right) - \hbar\omega_0}\right] . \end{aligned} \tag{7.66}$$

In (7.66) it was assumed that the wave propagates in the plane yz with the vector potential directed along the axis x:

$$A_x = A_0 \cos\left(\omega_0 t - \mathbf{k}_0 \mathbf{r}\right),$$

and was taken into account that for actual cases $\hbar\omega_0/\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel} \ll 1$ and the positron energies $\mathcal{E} < m^2c^4/U_0$ as well.

As is seen from (7.66) only the following expansion coefficients differ from zero

$$\begin{aligned}
a_{\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}+\hbar\mathbf{k}_0,n-1,\sigma}(t) &= \mathcal{D}\sqrt{n}\frac{e^{-i(\omega+\Omega)t}}{\omega+\Omega}, \\
a_{\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}+\hbar\mathbf{k}_0,n+1,\sigma}(t) &= -\mathcal{D}\sqrt{n+1}\frac{e^{-i(\omega-\Omega)t}}{\omega-\Omega}, \\
a_{\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}-\hbar\mathbf{k}_0,n-1,\sigma}(t) &= -\mathcal{D}\sqrt{n}\frac{e^{i(\omega-\Omega)t}}{\omega-\Omega}, \\
a_{\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}-\hbar\mathbf{k}_0,n+1,\sigma}(t) &= \mathcal{D}\sqrt{n+1}\frac{e^{i(\omega+\Omega)t}}{\omega+\Omega},
\end{aligned} \tag{7.67}$$

where the quantity $\mathcal{D}$ is

$$\mathcal{D} = i\frac{eA_0}{2\hbar}\sqrt{\frac{\hbar\Omega}{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}}, \tag{7.68}$$

and the Doppler-shifted wave frequency ω is

$$\omega = \omega_0 - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{v}_{\shortparallel}; \quad \mathbf{v}_{\shortparallel} = \frac{c^2\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}. \tag{7.69}$$

The expressions in (7.67) show that the second and third coefficients have a resonance character due to which the induced channeling effect occurs—resonance absorption of the wave photons by a channeled particle and coherent emission of the photons into the wave. Hence, neglecting in (7.64) the small terms with nonresonant expansion coefficients (first and fourth ones in (7.67)) of the perturbed wave function for the probability density of the positron at the planar channeling we will have

$$\begin{aligned}
W(\mathbf{r},t) = \varphi_n^2(x) &+ \frac{eA_0}{\hbar(\omega-\Omega)}\sqrt{\frac{\hbar\Omega}{2\mathcal{E}}}\varphi_n(x) \\
&\times\left[\sqrt{n+1}\varphi_{n+1}(x) - \sqrt{n}\varphi_{n-1}(x)\right]\sin\left(\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r} - \omega_0 t\right).
\end{aligned} \tag{7.70}$$

In the case of the exact resonance ($\omega = \Omega$) (7.70) is not applicable. In this case the solution of (7.65) for the probability density of the positron gives

$$W(\mathbf{r},t) = \varphi_n^2(x) + \frac{eA_0}{\hbar}\sqrt{\frac{\hbar\Omega}{2\mathcal{E}}}\varphi_n(x) \times \left[\sqrt{n}\varphi_{n-1}(x) - \sqrt{n+1}\varphi_{n+1}(x)\right]\Delta t\cos(\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r} - \omega_0 t), \tag{7.71}$$

where Δt is the period of channeled positron interaction with EM wave.

As is seen from the (7.70) and (7.71) the probability density of the positron due to the induced channeling effect is modulated at the stimulating wave frequency (in the one-photon approximation; in the next orders of perturbation theory, we will obtain modulation at the harmonics of the wave fundamental frequency).

The condition of validity of the perturbation theory at which the obtained formulas are applicable can be obtained from (7.71):

$$\frac{eE_0 \mathrm{v}_{xm}\Delta t}{\hbar\omega_0} \ll 1, \tag{7.72}$$

where v_{xm} is the maximal velocity of transverse motion of the positron in the channel of the crystal (see (7.18)):

$$\mathrm{v}_{xm} = c\sqrt{\frac{2n\hbar\Omega}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}} = c\sqrt{\frac{2\mathcal{E}_{\perp}}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}}. \tag{7.73}$$

7.4 Quantum Description of the Induced Axial Channeling Effect

At the axial channeling the state of the electron is characterized by the projection of the momentum p_z on the crystal axis z, and due to the axial symmetry of the effective electrostatic potential of an atomic chain within the channel the projection of the orbital moment of the electron on the same axis is conserved.

The Dirac equation for an electron at the axial channeling is written in the form (7.48) with the Hamiltonian

$$\widehat{H}_0 = c\widehat{\alpha}\widehat{\mathbf{p}} + \widehat{\beta}mc^2 + U(\rho), \tag{7.74}$$

where $U(\rho)$ is given by (7.35). The interaction of the electron with the external EM wave will again be taken into account by perturbation theory (in the one-photon approximation):

$$\Psi = \Psi_0 + \Psi_1; \quad |\Psi_1| \ll |\Psi_0|,$$

where Ψ_0 is the electron wave function in a crystal at the axial channeling, which satisfies the equation

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi_0}{\partial t} = \left[c\widehat{\alpha}\widehat{\mathbf{p}} + \widehat{\beta}mc^2 + U(\rho)\right]\Psi_0. \quad (7.75)$$

The solution of (7.75) may be presented in the form

$$\Psi_0(\mathbf{r}, t) = b\begin{pmatrix}\Phi \\ \chi\end{pmatrix} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_z z - \mathcal{E}t)}, \quad (7.76)$$

where $\mathcal{E}$ is the total energy of the electron and b is the normalization coefficient. The bispinors Φ and χ are connected by the relation

$$\chi = \frac{cp_z\sigma_z + c\widehat{\mathbf{p}}\sigma}{\mathcal{E} + mc^2 - U(\rho)}\Phi. \quad (7.77)$$

From (7.75) for the wave function of the electron transverse motion in the channel with the accuracy of a small term $\sim U_0/\mathcal{E}$, we obtain the equation

$$\Delta_{\rho,\varphi}\Phi(\rho, \varphi) + \frac{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}{\hbar^2 c^2}\left[\mathcal{E}_{\perp} - U(\rho)\right]\Phi(\rho, \varphi) = 0, \quad (7.78)$$

where

$$\Delta_{\rho,\varphi} = \frac{1}{\rho}\frac{\partial}{\partial\rho}\left(\rho\frac{\partial}{\partial\rho}\right) + \frac{1}{\rho^2}\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\varphi^2}$$

is the two-dimensional Laplacian,

$$\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel} = \sqrt{c^2 p_z^2 + m^2 c^4}$$

is the energy of the electron longitudinal motion, and $\mathcal{E}_{\perp} = \mathcal{E} - \mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}$ is the transverse one.

As is seen from (7.78) for wave function $\Phi(\rho, \varphi)$ the variables are separated and the eigenvalue of the operator

$$\widehat{L}_z = -i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial\varphi}$$

—the projection of the orbital moment of the electron on the z axis is conserved. Then the wave function $\Phi(\rho, \varphi)$ can be represented in the form

$$\Phi(\rho, \varphi) = \Phi(\rho)\, e^{i\mathfrak{m}\varphi}; \quad \mathfrak{m} = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, ..., \quad (7.79)$$

where $\mathfrak{m}$ is the azimuthal quantum number, and from (7.78) for the function

$$R(\rho) = \frac{\Phi(\rho)}{\sqrt{\rho}}, \quad (7.80)$$

we obtain the equation

$$R'' + \frac{2}{\rho} R' + \left[\frac{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}{\hbar^2 c^2} \left(\mathcal{E}_{\perp} + \frac{\alpha_c}{\rho} \right) - \frac{\mathfrak{m}^2 - 1/4}{\rho^2} \right] R = 0. \tag{7.81}$$

For the solution of (7.81) we pass from ρ to a new variable

$$r = \frac{2}{\hbar c} \sqrt{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel} \left| \mathcal{E}_{\perp} \right|} \rho, \tag{7.82}$$

and making a notation

$$n = \frac{\alpha_c}{\hbar c} \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}{2 \left| \mathcal{E}_{\perp} \right|}}, \tag{7.83}$$

then introducing the function $R(r)$ in the form

$$R(r) = r^{|\mathfrak{m}| - 1/2} e^{-r/2} w(r), \tag{7.84}$$

for the new function $w(r)$, we obtain the equation

$$r w'' + \left[2 \left(|\mathfrak{m}| - \frac{1}{2} \right) + 2 - r \right] w' + \left(n - |\mathfrak{m}| - \frac{1}{2} \right) w = 0. \tag{7.85}$$

The solution of (7.85) should not diverge at infinity more quickly than a limited power r and must be confined at $r = 0$. The function satisfying the second condition is the degenerated hypergeometric function

$$w(r) = F \left(-n + |\mathfrak{m}| + \frac{1}{2}, 2|\mathfrak{m}| + 1, r \right), \tag{7.86}$$

and the solution satisfying the first condition at infinity will be obtained only at the integer negative (or equal to zero) values of the argument $-n + |\mathfrak{m}| + 1/2$ when the function (7.86) turns to polynomial with the power $n - |\mathfrak{m}| - 1/2$. Otherwise it diverges at infinity as e^r. Hence, the number n must be a positive half-integer, and at the specified number $\mathfrak{m}$ it is necessary that

$$n \geq |\mathfrak{m}| + \frac{1}{2}; \quad n = |\mathfrak{m}| + \frac{1}{2} + n_\rho; \quad n_\rho = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{7.87}$$

These conditions determine the quantization law of the electron transverse motion in the potential well of the crystal at the axial channeling. Thus, from (7.83) for the spectrum of the transverse energy eigenvalues of the electron bound states in the potential field (7.35), we obtain

$$\mathcal{E}_{\perp} = -\frac{\alpha_c^2 \mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}{2\hbar^2 c^2 n^2}. \tag{7.88}$$

With the help of (7.77), (7.79), (7.84) and (7.86) for the wave function of the channeled electron (7.76), normalized for one particle per unit volume, we will have the equation

$$\Psi_0(\mathbf{r}, t) = \Psi_{p_z,n,\mathfrak{m},\sigma}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel} + mc^2}{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}} \begin{pmatrix} \varphi_\sigma \\ \frac{c\sigma p}{\mathcal{E}+mc^2-U(\rho)}\varphi_\sigma \end{pmatrix} \times \sqrt{\frac{\rho}{2\pi}} R_{n,|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2}(\rho)\, e^{i\mathfrak{m}\varphi} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(p_z z - \mathcal{E}t)}, \tag{7.89}$$

where φ_σ is a constant spinor determined in (7.61), and the function $R_{n,|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2}(\rho)$ is

$$R_{n,|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2}(\rho) = \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\alpha_c}{\hbar^2 c^2}\right)^{3/2} \frac{4}{n^{|\mathfrak{m}|+3/2}} \sqrt{\frac{2\,(n+|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2)!}{(n-|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2)!}} \left(\frac{4\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\alpha_c\rho}{\hbar^2 c^2}\right)^{|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2} \times \exp\left\{-\frac{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\alpha_c}{n\hbar^2 c^2}\rho\right\} F\left(-n+|\mathfrak{m}|+1/2, 2\,|\mathfrak{m}|+1, \frac{4\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\alpha_c}{n\hbar^2 c^2}\rho\right). \tag{7.90}$$

The total energy $\mathcal{E}$ in (7.89) is given by the relation

$$\mathcal{E}(p_z, n) = \sqrt{c^2 p_z^2 + m^2 c^4} - \frac{2\alpha_c^2 \mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}{\hbar^2 c^2 n^2}. \tag{7.91}$$

To determine the electron wave function Ψ_1 perturbed by the EM wave in the next approximation of perturbation theory, one needs the concrete form of the wave vector potential. Let it have the form

$$A_x = A_0 \cos(\omega_0 t - k_0 z),$$
$$A_y = A_0 \sin(\omega_0 t - k_0 z). \tag{7.92}$$

Expanding Ψ_1 in terms of the full basis of the eigenstates (7.89)

$$\Psi_1(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sum_{p_z', n', m', \sigma'} c_{p_z', n', \mathfrak{m}', \sigma'}(t)\, \Psi_{p_z', n', \mathfrak{m}'\sigma'}(\mathbf{r}, t), \tag{7.93}$$

and substituting the wave function in the first approximation of perturbation theory $\Psi_0 + \Psi_1$ into (7.48) with (7.89)–(7.92), then after the solution of the obtained equation for unknown expansion coefficients $c_{p_z', n', \mathfrak{m}'}(t)$ we will have

$$c_{p_z',n',\mathfrak{m}',\sigma'} = -i\frac{eA_0}{2c}\Omega_{n'n}\mathcal{D}_{n'n}^{\mathfrak{m}'\mathfrak{m}}\delta_{\sigma\sigma'}\left\{\frac{e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathcal{E}(p_z,n)-\mathcal{E}\left(p_z',n'\right)+\hbar\omega_0\right)t}}{\mathcal{E}\left(p_z,n\right)-\mathcal{E}\left(p_z',n'\right)+\hbar\omega_0}\delta_{\mathfrak{m}',\mathfrak{m}+1}\right.$$
$$\left.\times\,\delta_{p_z',p_z+\hbar k_0}+\frac{e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathcal{E}(p_z,n)-\mathcal{E}\left(p_z',n'\right)-\hbar\omega_0\right)t}}{\mathcal{E}\left(p_z,n\right)-\mathcal{E}\left(p_z',n'\right)-\hbar\omega_0}\delta_{\mathfrak{m}',\mathfrak{m}-1}\delta_{p_z,p_z-\hbar k_0}\right\}, \tag{7.94}$$

where

$$\mathcal{D}_{n'n}^{\mathfrak{m}'\mathfrak{m}} = \int_0^\infty \rho^3 R_{n',|\mathfrak{m}'|-1/2}\left(\rho\right)R_{n,|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2}\left(\rho\right)d\rho, \tag{7.95}$$

and

$$\Omega_{n'n} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_{\perp n'}-\mathcal{E}_{\perp n}}{\hbar} = -\frac{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\alpha_c^2}{\hbar^3c^2n'^2n^2}\left(n'+n\right)\left(n'-n\right) \tag{7.96}$$

is the transition frequency between the initial and excited states of the transverse motion of the electron in the crystal channel.

Equations (7.93) and (7.94) determine the wave function of the one-photon induced axial channeling effect. With the help of the latter, the probability density $(\Psi^+\Psi)$ of the electron after the interaction can be presented in the form

$$W = \frac{\rho}{2\pi}R_{n,|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2}^2\left(\rho\right)+\frac{eA_0\rho}{2\pi\hbar}R_{n,|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2}\left(\rho\right)$$
$$\times\left\{\sum_{n'\geqslant|\mathfrak{m}+1|+1/2}\Omega_{n'n}\frac{R_{n,|\mathfrak{m}+1|-1/2}\left(\rho\right)}{\omega-\Omega_{n'n}}\mathcal{D}_{n'n}^{\mathfrak{m}+1\mathfrak{m}}\right.$$
$$\left.+\sum_{n'\geqslant|\mathfrak{m}-1|+1/2}\Omega_{n'n}\frac{R_{n',|\mathfrak{m}-1|-1/2}\left(\rho\right)}{\omega+\Omega_{n'n}}\mathcal{D}_{n'n}^{\mathfrak{m}-1\mathfrak{m}}\right\}\sin\left(k_0z-\omega_0t+\varphi\right), \tag{7.97}$$

where the Doppler-shifted wave frequency ω is

$$\omega = \omega_0\left(1-n_0\frac{cp_z}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}\right). \tag{7.98}$$

As in the case of the planar channeling the electron probability density is modulated at the wave frequency. Consequently, the electric current density in the case of an electron beam will be modulated at the stimulating wave frequency and its harmonics (corresponding equations for the modulation at the harmonics can be found in the next approximation of perturbation theory). Equation (7.97) is complicated enough for general forms of the functions $R_{n,\mathfrak{m}}\left(\rho\right)$ and $\mathcal{D}_{n'n}^{\mathfrak{m}'\mathfrak{m}}$. It is rather simplified for resonant transitions of the electron from the initial bound state of transverse motion to the neighbor ones. Thus, from (7.88), (7.95), and (7.96), we obtain that in the expression of the modulation depth quantity $\Omega_{n'n}\mathcal{D}_{n'n}^{\mathfrak{m}'\mathfrak{m}} \sim \sqrt{\mathcal{E}_{\perp}/\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}$. The latter is the amplitude of the velocity of the electron transverse motion in the channel $\mathrm{v}_{\perp m}$. Besides, the resonant denominators in (7.97) define the period of coherent interaction of the electron with the EM wave in the channel: $(\omega - \Omega_{n'n})^{-1} \to \Delta t$. Hence, the modulation depth $\sim eE_0\mathrm{v}_{\perp m}\Delta t/\omega \ll 1$ in accordance with the perturbation theory.

Note that in general the function $\mathcal{D}_{n'n}^{\mathfrak{m}'\mathfrak{m}}$ determined by (7.95) may be presented in the form

$$\mathcal{D}_{n'n}^{\mathfrak{m}'\mathfrak{m}} = \frac{\hbar^2 c^2}{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\alpha_c} \frac{2^{|\mathfrak{m}|+|\mathfrak{m}'|}}{n^{|\mathfrak{m}|+3/2} n'^{|\mathfrak{m}'|+3/2} (2|\mathfrak{m}|)!\,(2|\mathfrak{m}'|)!}$$
$$\times \sqrt{\frac{(n+|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2)!\,(n'+|\mathfrak{m}'|-1/2)!}{(n-|\mathfrak{m}|-1/2)!\,(n'-|\mathfrak{m}'|-1/2)!}} \int_0^\infty z^{|\mathfrak{m}|+|\mathfrak{m}'|+2} e^{-(1/n'+1/n)z}$$
$$\times F\left(-n+|\mathfrak{m}|+\frac{1}{2}, 2|\mathfrak{m}|+1, \frac{2z}{n}\right) F\left(-n'+\left|\mathfrak{m}'\right|+\frac{1}{2}, 2\left|\mathfrak{m}'\right|+1, \frac{2z}{n'}\right) dz. \tag{7.99}$$

In (7.95) integral is known as a function

$$\mathcal{J}_\gamma^{sp}\left(\alpha, \alpha'\right) = \int_0^\infty e^{-\frac{\varkappa+\varkappa'}{2}z} z^{\gamma-1+s} F\left(\alpha, \gamma, \varkappa z\right) F\left(\alpha', \gamma-p, \varkappa' z\right) dz,$$

which is expressed via $\mathcal{J}_\gamma^{00}\left(\alpha, \alpha'\right)$ by the recurrent relations.

7.5 Multiphoton Induced Channeling Effect

In the quantum description of the induced channeling effect in the previous two sections, the wave field was a weak enough so that the interaction process had mainly one-photon character. The coherent (resonant) interaction of the channeled particles with a strong EM wave from the quantum point of view has multiphoton character. Here we will consider the induced channeling effect in the strong wave fields in the scope of quantum theory, that is, we will solve the quantum equations of motion for channeled electrons or positrons in the strong plane EM wave field.

We will assume that the wave propagates in the yz plane of a crystal and is polarized in the xy plane with the vector potential

$$\mathbf{A} = \left\{A_x\left(t - n_0\frac{z}{c}\right), A_y\left(t - n_0\frac{z}{c}\right), 0\right\}, \tag{7.100}$$

where $n_0 \equiv n(\omega_0)$ is the refractive index of the medium at the carrier frequency of the wave. We will consider the case when averaged potential of the crystal for a plane channeled particle is satisfactorily described by the harmonic potential

$$U(x) = \kappa \frac{x^2}{2}. \tag{7.101}$$

For the positron at the planar channeling

$$\kappa = \frac{8U_0}{d^2} \tag{7.102}$$

(see the potential (7.3)), while for the electrons the approximate potential of the channel is actually not harmonic and described by the potential

$$U(x) = -\frac{U_0}{\cosh^2\left(\frac{x}{b}\right)}. \tag{7.103}$$

Nevertheless, for the high energies it can be approximated by the harmonic potential (7.101). As we saw in previous sections, for the channeled particles the depth of the potential hole $U_0 \ll \mathcal{E}$, where $\mathcal{E}$ is the particle energy. The spin interaction, which is $\sim \nabla U(x)$, is again less than $\mathcal{E}$. For this reason, the transverse motion of the channeled particle is described by the Schrödinger equation (7.56) with the effective mass $m_{eff} = \mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}/c^2$. On the other hand, the spin interaction can play a role in the particle–wave interaction process at the energy of the photon comparable with the particle one: $\hbar\omega_0 \sim \mathcal{E}$. If the particle energy is not high enough, i.e., $\mathcal{E} \ll m^2c^4/\mathcal{E}_\perp$ (optimal cases for the channeling), then the resonant interaction of the channeled particles with an external EM wave takes place at $\hbar\omega_0 \ll \mathcal{E}$ and the spin effects are not essential. Hence, one may ignore the spin interaction and instead of the Dirac equation solve the Klein–Gordon equation

$$\left[i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t} - U(x)\right]^2 \Psi = \left[c^2\left(\widehat{\mathbf{p}} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}\left(t - n_0\frac{z}{c}\right)\right)^2 + m^2c^4\right]\Psi. \tag{7.104}$$

As we saw in Sect. 7.3 the channeled particle initial motion (before the interaction with EM wave) is separated into longitudinal (y, z) and transverse (x) degrees of freedom. For the longitudinal motion, we assume an initial state with a momentum $\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel} = \{0, p_y, p_z\}$, while for the transverse motion we assume a quantum state $\{n\}$, where by n we indicate the energy levels in the harmonic potential (7.101). As the plane wave field depends only on the retarding coordinate $\tau = t - n_0 z/c$, then using the problem symmetry the wave function of a channeled particle can be sought in the form

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = f(x, \tau) e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}\mathbf{r} - \mathcal{E}t)}. \tag{7.105}$$

The multiphoton interaction of the charged particles with a strong EM wave, in general, as was shown in diverse processes is well enough described by the eikonal-type wave function corresponding to a slowly varying function $f(x, \tau)$ on the wave coordinate τ. Hence, neglecting the second derivatives of this function compared with the first-order ones in accordance with the conditions (3.92) for the function $f(x,\tau)$ we will obtain the equation

$$\left[\hbar^2\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}+\frac{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}{c^2}(\mathcal{E}_\perp-U(x))+2i\frac{\widetilde{p}\hbar}{c}\frac{\partial}{\partial\tau}-2i\frac{e\hbar}{c}A_x(\tau)\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right.$$
$$\left.+2\frac{e}{c}p_yA_y(\tau)-\frac{e^2}{c^2}\mathbf{A}^2(\tau)\right]f(x,\tau)=0, \tag{7.106}$$

where

$$\widetilde{p}=\frac{1}{c}\left(\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}-n_0cp_z\right). \tag{7.107}$$

In (7.106), the transverse and longitudinal motions are not separated. But after the definite unitarian transformation for the transformed function, the variables are separated. The corresponding unitarian transformation operator is

$$\widehat{S}=e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\{g_1(\tau)x-g_2(\tau)\widehat{p}_x\}}, \tag{7.108}$$

where the functions $g_1(\tau)$, $g_2(\tau)$ will be chosen to separate the transverse and longitudinal motions and to satisfy the initial condition. Taking into account (4.54) for transformed function

$$\Phi(x,\tau)=\widehat{S}f(x,\tau), \tag{7.109}$$

we obtain the equation

$$\left[\hbar^2\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}+\frac{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}{c^2}(\mathcal{E}_\perp-U(x))+2i\hbar\left(\frac{\widetilde{p}}{c}\frac{dg_2(\tau)}{d\tau}-g_1(\tau)-\frac{e}{c}A_x(\tau)\right)\frac{\partial}{\partial x}\right.$$
$$\left.+\frac{2}{c}\left(\widetilde{p}\frac{dg_1(\tau)}{d\tau}+\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\kappa}{c}g_2(\tau)\right)x+\frac{2i\widetilde{p}\hbar}{c}\frac{\partial}{\partial\tau}+Q(\tau)\right]\Phi(x,\tau)=0, \tag{7.110}$$

where

$$Q(\tau)=\frac{\widetilde{p}}{c}\left(\frac{dg_2(\tau)}{d\tau}g_1(\tau)-\frac{dg_1(\tau)}{d\tau}g_2(\tau)\right)-g_1^2(\tau)-\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\kappa}{c^2}g_2^2(\tau)$$
$$-\frac{2e}{c}A_x(\tau)g_1(\tau)+\frac{2e}{c}p_yA_y(\tau)-\frac{e^2}{c^2}\mathbf{A}^2(\tau). \tag{7.111}$$

Let us choose $g_1(\tau)$ and $g_2(\tau)$ in such a form that the coefficients of x and $\partial/\partial x$ in (7.110) become zero. Then for the functions $g_1(\tau)$ and $g_2(\tau)$, we will obtain a classical equation of motion describing stimulated oscillations in the harmonic potential:

$$\frac{dg_1(\tau)}{d\tau}=-\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}\kappa}{c\widetilde{p}}g_2(\tau), \tag{7.112}$$

$$\frac{dg_2(\tau)}{d\tau} = \frac{c}{\widetilde{p}}g_1(\tau) + \frac{e}{\widetilde{p}}A_x(\tau). \tag{7.113}$$

The solutions of (7.112) and (7.113) can be written as

$$g_1(\tau) = \frac{e\Omega'}{c}\mathrm{Im}\left[e^{-i\Omega'\tau}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\tau} A_x(\tau)\, e^{i\Omega'\tau'}d\tau'\right], \tag{7.114}$$

$$g_2(\tau) = \frac{e}{\widetilde{p}}\mathrm{Re}\left[e^{-i\Omega'\tau}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\tau} A_x(\tau)\, e^{i\Omega'\tau'}d\tau'\right], \tag{7.115}$$

where

$$\Omega' = \frac{\Omega}{1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_z}{c}}; \quad \Omega = c\sqrt{\kappa/\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}. \tag{7.116}$$

In (7.114) and (7.115) we have taken into account the initial condition

$$g_1(-\infty) = g_2(-\infty) = 0.$$

After the unitarian transformation (7.109) for the function $\Phi(x,\tau)$ the following equation is obtained:

$$\left[\hbar^2\frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2} + \frac{2\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}{c^2}(\mathcal{E}_{\perp} - U(x)) + \frac{2i\widetilde{p}\hbar}{c}\frac{\partial}{\partial\tau} + Q(\tau)\right]\Phi(x,\tau) = 0. \tag{7.117}$$

Now in (7.117) the variables are separated and the solution can be written as follows:

$$\Phi(x,\tau) = N\varphi_n(x)\exp\left\{i\frac{c}{2\hbar\widetilde{p}}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\tau} Q(\tau)\, d\tau'\right\}, \tag{7.118}$$

where $\varphi_n(x)$ coincides with the harmonic oscillator wave function (7.58) and $N = 1/\sqrt{L_y L_z}$ is the normalization constant (L_y and L_z are the quantization lengths). By inverse transformation

$$f(x,\tau) = \widehat{S}^{\dagger}\Phi(x,\tau),$$

with the help of (4.66), we obtain the solution of the initial equation (7.104) (taking into account (7.105)):

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = N\exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}\mathbf{r}-\mathcal{E}t\right)\right\}\varphi_n\left(x+g_2\left(\tau\right)\right)$$
$$\times\exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left[\frac{c}{2\widetilde{p}}\int_{-\infty}^{\tau}Q\left(\tau\right)d\tau'-\frac{1}{2}g_1(\tau)g_2\left(\tau\right)-g_1(\tau)x\right]\right\}, \quad (7.119)$$

where the function $Q\left(\tau\right)$ can be represented in the form

$$Q\left(\tau\right)=\frac{2e}{c}p_yA_y\left(\tau\right)-\frac{e}{c}A_x\left(\tau\right)g_1(\tau)-\frac{e^2}{c^2}\mathbf{A}^2\left(\tau\right). \quad (7.120)$$

This wave function describes the multiphoton interaction of the channeled particle with the strong EM radiation field. Thus, for a monochromatic wave

$$\mathbf{A}=\left\{A_0\cos\left(\omega_0t-k_0z\right),0,0\right\},$$

from (7.114) and (7.115) for the functions $g_1(\tau)$ and $g_2(\tau)$, we obtain

$$g_1\left(\tau\right)=\frac{e}{c}A_0\frac{\Omega'^2}{\Delta}\cos\omega_0\tau,$$
$$g_2\left(\tau\right)=\frac{eA_0}{\widetilde{p}}\frac{\omega_0}{\Delta}\sin\omega_0\tau, \quad (7.121)$$

and we will have the following wave function for the particle in the field of a strong EM wave at the planar channeling:

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = N\exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}\mathbf{r}-\mathcal{E}t-\frac{e^2A_0^2\omega_0^2}{4c\widetilde{p}\Delta}\tau\right)\right\}\varphi_n\left(x+\frac{eA_0\omega_0}{\widetilde{p}\Delta}\sin\omega_0\tau\right)$$
$$\times\exp\left\{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\left[\frac{eA_0\Omega'^2}{c\Delta}x\cos\omega_0\tau+\frac{e^2A_0^2\omega_0\left(\omega_0^2+\Omega'^2\right)}{8c\widetilde{p}\Delta^2}\sin\left(2\omega_0\tau\right)\right]\right\}, \quad (7.122)$$

where

$$\Delta=\omega_0^2-\Omega'^2$$

is the resonance detuning.

On the basis of the obtained wave function (7.119) consider the possibility of multiphoton excitation of transverse levels by the strong EM wave at the resonance

$$\omega_0\simeq\frac{\Omega}{\left|1-n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_z}{c}\right|}. \quad (7.123)$$

The Doppler factor $1-n_0\mathrm{v}_z/c$ may be positive as well as negative—anomalous Doppler effect at $n_0>1$. We will consider the actual case of a quasimonochromatic

EM wave with a slowly varying amplitude $A_0(\tau)$. After the interaction with the wave ($t \to +\infty$) from (7.114) and (7.115) at the resonance condition (7.123), we have

$$g_1(\tau) = \frac{e\overline{A}_0 T \Omega'}{2c} \sin \omega_0 \tau, \tag{7.124}$$

$$g_2(\tau) = \frac{e\overline{A}_0 T}{2\widetilde{p}} \cos \omega_0 \tau, \tag{7.125}$$

where T is the coherent interaction time (for actual laser radiation T is the pulse duration) and $\overline{A}_0$ is the average value of the slowly varied envelope. Substituting (7.124) and (7.125) into the expression for the wave function (7.119) and expanding the latter in terms of the full basis of the particle eigenstates

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sum_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel}, n'} a_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel}, n'}(t)\, \Psi_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel}, n'}(\mathbf{r}, t), \tag{7.126}$$

we find the probabilities of the multiphoton induced transitions between the transverse levels. To calculate the expansion coefficients

$$a_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel}, n'}(t) = \int \Psi^*_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel}, n'}(\mathbf{r}, t)\, \Psi(\mathbf{r}, t)\, d\mathbf{r}, \tag{7.127}$$

we will take into account the result of the integration (4.73). Taking into account (7.124), (7.125), (7.119), and (7.127), we get the following expansion coefficients:

$$\begin{aligned} a_{\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel}, n'}(t) &= I_{n,n'}(\alpha)\, \delta_{p'_y, p_y} \delta_{p'_z, p_z + \mu\hbar k_0 (n'-n)} \\ &\times \exp\left\{ \frac{i}{\hbar} (\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}'_{\shortparallel}, n') - \mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}, n) - \mu\hbar\omega_0 (n' - n)) t + i\phi \right\}, \end{aligned} \tag{7.128}$$

where

$$\mu = \frac{1 - n_0 \frac{v_z}{c}}{\left|1 - n_0 \frac{v_z}{c}\right|},$$

and

$$\phi \equiv \frac{c}{2\hbar\widetilde{p}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} Q(\tau)\, d\tau'$$

is the constant phase. Here the argument of the Lagger function $I_{n,n'}(\alpha)$ is

$$\alpha = \frac{e^2 \overline{A}_0^2 T^2}{8\hbar} \frac{\Omega'}{c\widetilde{p}}. \tag{7.129}$$

According to (7.128) the transition of the particle from an initial state $\{p_y, p_z, n\}$ to a state $\{p'_y, p'_z, n'\}$ is accompanied by the emission or absorption of $|n - n'|$ number of photons. Consequently, substituting (7.128) into (7.126), we can rewrite the particle wave function in the form

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = N \sum_{n'=0}^{\infty} I_{n,n'}(\alpha) \exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(p_y y + (p_z + \mu\hbar k_0(n' - n))z\right)\right\}$$
$$\times \exp\left\{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}_{\shortparallel}, n) + \mu\hbar\omega_0(n' - n)\right)t + i\phi\right\}\varphi_{n'}(x)\,. \qquad (7.130)$$

Hence, the probability of the induced transitions $n \to n'$ between the energy levels of the particle transverse motion in the channel finally is defined from (7.130):

$$W_{n,n'} = I^2_{n,n'}\left(\frac{e^2\overline{A}_0^2 T^2 \Omega'}{8\hbar c\widetilde{p}}\right). \qquad (7.131)$$

Equation (7.130) shows that in the field of a strong EM wave the transverse levels are excited at the absorption of the wave quanta if $1 - n_0 \mathrm{v}_z/c > 0$ and $\mu = 1$, corresponding to the normal Doppler effect, while in the case $1 - n_0 \mathrm{v}_z/c < 0$ and $\mu = -1$ the transverse levels are excited at the emission of coherent quanta due to the anomalous Doppler effect.

Let us now estimate the average number of emitted (absorbed) photons by the particle at the resonance for the high excited levels ($n \gg 1$) and for the strong EM wave. In this case, the most probable number of photons in the strong wave field corresponds to the quasiclassical limit ($|n - n'| \gg 1$) when multiphoton processes dominate and the nature of the interaction process is very close to the classical one. In this case, the argument of the Lagger function can be represented as

$$\alpha = \frac{1}{4n}\left(\frac{\triangle\mathcal{E}_{cl}}{\hbar\omega_0}\right)^2, \qquad (7.132)$$

where

$$\triangle\mathcal{E}_{cl} = \frac{eE_0T}{2}\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}_\perp}{\left|1 - n_0\frac{\mathrm{v}_z}{c}\right|}$$

is the maximal energy change of the particle according to classical perturbation theory (E_0 is the amplitude of the electric field strength of the EM wave, $\overline{\mathrm{v}}_\perp \simeq c\sqrt{2n\hbar\Omega/\mathcal{E}_{\shortparallel}}$ is the particle mean transverse velocity). Note that according to conditions (3.92) of the considered eikonal approximation $\Delta\mathcal{E} \ll \mathcal{E}$.

The Lagger function is maximal at $\alpha \to \alpha_0 = \left(\sqrt{n'} - \sqrt{n}\right)^2$, exponentially falling beyond α_0. Hence, for the transition $n \to n'$ and when $|n - n'| \ll n$ we have

$$\alpha_0 \simeq \frac{\left(n' - n\right)^2}{4n}.$$

The comparison of this expression with (7.132) shows that the most probable transitions are

$$\left|n - n'\right| \simeq \frac{\triangle\mathcal{E}_{cl}}{\hbar\omega_0},$$

in accordance with the correspondence principle.

Bibliography

I. Lindhard, Usp. Fiz. Nauk **99**, 249 (1969)
M.A. Kumakhov, Phys. Lett. A **57**, 17 (1976)
M.A. Kumakhov, Phys. Status Solidi B **84**, 41 (1977)
V.A. Bazylev, N.K. Zhevago, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **73**, 1697 (1977)
M.A. Kumakhov, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **72**, 1489 (1977)
M.A. Kumakhov, R. Wedell, Phys. Status Solidi B **84**, 581 (1977)
V.V. Beloshitski, M.A. Kumakhov, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **74**, 1244 (1978)
N.K. Zhevago, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **75**, 1389 (1978)
V.A. Bazylev, N.K. Zhevago, Usp. Fiz. Nauk **127**, 529 (1979)
A.V. Andreev et al., Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **84**, 798 (1979)
V.A. Bazylev, N.K. Zhevago, Phys. Status Solidi B **97**, 63 (1980)
V.A. Bazylev, I.V. Globov, N.K. Zhevago, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **78**, 62 (1980)
A.V. Tulupov, Pis'ma. Zh. Tekh. Fiz. **7**, 460 (1981). [in Russian]
A.V. Tulupov, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **81**, 1639 (1981)
V.A. Bazylev et al., Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **80**, 608 (1981)
V.A. Bazylev, N.K. Zhevago, Usp. Fiz. Nauk **137**, 605 (1982)
R.H. Pantell, M.J. Alguard, J. Appl. Phys. **50**, 5433 (1982)
A.V. Tulupov, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **86**, 1365 (1984)
I.M. Ternov, V.R. Khalilov, B.V. Kholomay, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **88**, 329 (1985)
V.N. Bayer, A.I. Milstein, Nucl. Instrum. Methods Phys. Res. **17**, 25 (1986)
M.A. Kumakhov, *Emission By Channeled Particles In Crystals* (Energoatomizdat, Moscow, 1986) [in Russian]
S.A. Bogacz, J.B. Kefterson, G.K. Wong, Nucl. Instrum. Methods Phys. Res. **250**, 328 (1986)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Dokl. Acad. Nauk Arm. SSR **85**, 164 (1987) [in Russian]
V.A. Bazylev, N.K. Zhevago, *Emission by Fast Particles in Matter and External Fields* (Nauka, Moscow, 1987) [in Russian]
G. Kurizki, Adv. Laser Sci. **3**, 56 (1988)
K.B. Oganesyan, A.M. Prokhorov, M.V. Fedorov, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **94**, 80 (1988)
M.V. Fedorov et al., Appl. Phys. Lett. **53**, 353 (1988)
H.K. Avetissian, A.K. Avetissian, KhV Sedrakian, Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **100**, 82 (1991)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Lett. A **206**, 141 (1995)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **109**, 1159 (1996)
A.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Lett. A **299**, 331 (2002)

Chapter 8
Nonlinear Mechanisms of Free Electron Laser

Abstract The problem of creation of shortwave coherent EM radiation sources in general aspects reduces to the implementation of free electron lasers (FEL). The principal advantage of a FEL with respect to traditional quantum generators operating on discrete transitions in atomic/molecular systems is that the radiation frequency is continuously Doppler upshifted due to high relativism of electron beams, providing rapid tunability over a broad range of frequencies up to γ-ray. Among the diverse versions of FEL at present the undulator scheme is being actively developed. Although the amplifying frequencies are still far from X-ray, the main hopes for an efficient X-ray FEL remain associated with the undulator scheme based on the accumulation of coherent radiation of ultrarelativistic electron beams in the Self-Amplified Spontaneous Emission (SASE) regime, in which the initial shot noise on the electron beam is amplified over the course of propagation through a long wiggler. For that it is required that the lengths are on the order of several ten to hundred meters. The recent experimental success shows the feasibility of construction of such facilities. Nevertheless, because there are no drivers or mirrors operable at X-ray wavelengths the problem reduces to amplification/generation of coherent radiation in the single-pass regime. It is clear that the latter can be achieved with more efficiency via the nonlinear schemes of FEL induced by strong pump EM fields. The latter will considerably abbreviate the amplification length as well and one can expect small setup FEL devices. On the other hand, as the photon wavelength moves into the deep UV and X-ray regions the interaction becomes quantum mechanical, i.e., quantum recoil becomes comparable to or larger than the gain bandwidth and quantum effects play an essential role. The quantum effects are also essential if one considers the FEL versions where one or two degrees of freedom of the charged particles are quantized and the resonant enhancement of electron–photon interaction cross section holds. This takes place for the X-ray laser schemes based on the electron/positron beam channeling radiation in crystals. The smallness of the electron–photon interaction cross section can also be compensated and the quality of the output X-ray radiation can be enhanced in the hybrid schemes of FEL and atomic laser. It can be achieved by means of fast high-density ion beam interaction with a strong counterpropagating pump laser field or with a crystal periodic electrostatic potential. Investigation of the nonlinear schemes and quantum aspects of FEL on the basis of a self-consistent set of Maxwell and quantum kinetic equations is the subject of the present chapter.

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_8

8.1 Self-consistent Maxwell and Relativistic Quantum Kinetic Equations for Compton FEL with Strong Pump Laser Field

In contrast to conventional laser devices in atomic systems, the FEL is usually regarded as a classical device that also exhibits non-Poissonian photon statistics. But this is not a universal property of FELs as in some cases quantum effects may play a significant role. In the quantum description the small signal gain of the FEL is usually represented as a convolution integral of the electron beam momentum distribution with the difference between the probability distributions of emission and absorption per photon. Since the electron recoils in opposite direction depending on whether it emits or absorbs photons with the same wave vector $\mathbf{k}'$, the resonant momenta of an electron for emission p_e and absorption p_a are different. Hence, the probability distributions of emission and absorption are centered at p_e and p_a, and when these distributions are much narrower than the spread of the electron beam distributions $f(p)$, the small signal gain is proportional to the so-called "population inversion" $f(p_e) - f(p_a)$. In the quasiclassical limit when photon energy $\hbar\omega'$ satisfies the condition

$$\hbar\omega' \ll \max\left\{\Delta\varepsilon_\gamma, \Delta\varepsilon_\vartheta, \Delta\varepsilon_L\right\} \tag{8.1}$$

($\Delta\varepsilon_\gamma$ and $\Delta\varepsilon_\vartheta$ are the resonance widths due to energetic and angular spreads, and $\Delta\varepsilon_L$ is the resonance width caused by the finite interaction length), the quantum expression for the gain coincides with its classical counterpart, being antisymmetric about the classical resonant momentum $p_c = (p_e + p_a)/2$ and proportional to the derivative of the momentum distribution $df(p)/dp$ at resonant value p_c. The result is that amplification takes place only if the initial momentum distribution is centered above p_c as the electrons whose momenta are above p_c contribute on average to the small signal gain, and the electrons whose momenta are below p_c contribute on average to the corresponding loss. This severely limits the FEL gain performance at short wavelengths. In the more conventional undulator devices, to achieve the X-ray frequency domain one should increase the electron energies up to several gigaelectron volts, which in turn significantly reduces the small signal gain ($\sim\gamma_L^{-3}$). To achieve the X-ray domain with moderate relativistic electron beams (energy of electrons $\leq 50\,\mathrm{MeV}$), the frequency of electron self-oscillation should be high enough $\sim 10^{14} \div 10^{15}\,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$ (in undulator $10^{10}\,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$). The latter can be realized, e.g., in the Compton backscattering scheme suggested over 40 years ago.

Another way to increase the efficiency of a FEL is to achieve the quantum regime of generation

$$\hbar\omega' \geq \max\left\{\Delta\varepsilon_\gamma, \Delta\varepsilon_\vartheta, \Delta\varepsilon_L\right\}, \tag{8.2}$$

as in this case the absorption and emission line shapes are separated and the simultaneous absorption of a probe wave is excluded. From this point of view, the scheme of an X-ray Compton laser has an advantage with respect to the conventional undulator devices connected with the satisfaction of condition (8.2) for the quantum regime of generation. To achieve this condition for current FEL devices operating in undulators is problematic as it presumes severe restrictions on the beam spread. Thus, the scheme of an X-ray Compton laser in the quantum regime of generation is preferable, since it requires considerably lower energies of the electron beam and moderate restrictions on the beam spreads.

Consider a scheme of X-ray coherent radiation generation in the nonlinear quantum regime by means of a mildly relativistic high-density electron beam and a strong pump laser field. This makes it possible to achieve the quantum regime of generation at X-ray frequencies as well, due to radiation of high harmonics of Doppler-shifted pump frequencies in the strong laser field. In addition, concerning the further process of X-ray radiation amplification it is necessary to realize a single-pass FEL, as long as the construction of resonators in the X-ray domain is problematic. In the linear regime this demands very long interaction lengths. Here the main emphasis is on the nonlinear regime of generation. The consideration is based on a self-consistent set of Maxwell and quantum kinetic equations. Because the energy–momentum levels are not equidistant, the probe wave resonantly couples only two Volkov states, and the coupled equations will be solved in the slowly varying envelope approximation.

We will consider given pump EM wave with four-wave vector $k \equiv (\omega/c, \mathbf{k})$ which is described by the four-vector potential

$$A^{\mu} = (0, \mathbf{A}), \tag{8.3}$$

where $\mathbf{A}$ is defined by (1.48). As we saw in Sect. 1.4 the Dirac equation allows the exact solution in the field of a plane EM wave (Volkov solution). Although the Volkov states are not stationary, as there are no real transitions in the monochromatic EM wave (due to violation of energy and momentum conservation laws), the state of a particle in an EM wave can be characterized by the quasimomentum $\mathbf{\Pi}$ and polarization σ and the particle state in the field (8.3) is given by the wave function (1.94).

We assume the probe EM wave to be linearly polarized with the carrier frequency ω' and four-vector potential

$$A_w = \frac{\epsilon}{2}\left\{A_e(t, \mathbf{r})e^{-ik'x} + \text{c.c.}\right\}, \tag{8.4}$$

where $A_e(t, \mathbf{r})$ is a slowly varying envelope, $k' = (\omega'/c, \mathbf{k}')$ is the four-wave vector, ϵ is the unit polarization four vector $\epsilon k' = 0$, and $x = (ct, \mathbf{r})$ is the four-component radius vector.

Cast in the second quantization formalism, the Hamiltonian is

$$\widehat{H} = \int \widehat{\Psi}^{+}\widehat{H}_0\widehat{\Psi}d\mathbf{r}+\widehat{H}_{int}, \tag{8.5}$$

where $\widehat{\Psi}$ is the fermionic field operator, $\widehat{H}_0$ is the one-particle Hamiltonian in the plane EM wave (8.3), and the interaction Hamiltonian is

$$\widehat{H}_{int} = \frac{1}{c}\int \widehat{j} A_w d\mathbf{r}, \tag{8.6}$$

with the current density operator

$$\widehat{j} = e\widehat{\Psi}^{+}\gamma_0\gamma\widehat{\Psi}. \tag{8.7}$$

We pass to the Furry representation and write the Heisenberg field operator of the electron in the form of an expansion in the quasistationary Volkov states (1.97)

$$\widehat{\Psi}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sum_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma} \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}(t)\Psi_{\mathbf{\Pi}\sigma}(\mathbf{r}, t), \tag{8.8}$$

where we have excluded the antiparticle operators, since the contribution of particle–antiparticle intermediate states will lead only to small corrections to the processes considered. The creation and annihilation operators, $\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}(t)$ and $\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}(t)$, associated with positive energy solutions satisfy the anticommutation rules at equal times

$$\{\widehat{a}^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}(t), \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma'}(t')\}_{t=t'} = \delta_{\mathbf{\Pi},\mathbf{\Pi}'}\delta_{\sigma,\sigma'}\ , \tag{8.9}$$

$$\{\widehat{a}^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}(t), \widehat{a}^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma'}(t')\}_{t=t'} = \{\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}(t), \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma'}(t')\}_{t=t'} = 0. \tag{8.10}$$

Taking into account (8.8), (8.7), (8.6), and (1.97), the second quantized interaction Hamiltonian can be expressed in the form

$$\widehat{H}_{int} = \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}\sum_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma,\sigma'}\left\{\frac{eA_e}{2c}M^{(-s)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma;\mathbf{\Pi}-\hbar\mathbf{k}'+s\hbar\mathbf{k},\sigma'\right)e^{-i\Delta(s,\mathbf{\Pi})t}\right.$$

$$\times\widehat{a}^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}(t)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi}-\hbar\mathbf{k}'+s\hbar\mathbf{k},\sigma'}(t) + \frac{eA_e^{*}}{2c}M^{(s)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi}-\hbar\mathbf{k}'+s\hbar\mathbf{k},\sigma';\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma\right)e^{i\Delta(s,\mathbf{\Pi})t}$$

$$\left.\times\,\widehat{a}^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{\Pi}-\hbar\mathbf{k}'+s\hbar\mathbf{k},\sigma'}(t)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}(t)\right\}. \tag{8.11}$$

Here,

$$M^{(s)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma';\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma\right) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\Pi_0'\Pi_0}}\overline{u}_{\sigma'}(p')\left\{\frac{e^2(k\epsilon)Q_{2s}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)}{2c^2(kp')(kp)}\widehat{k}\right.$$

$$\left.+\left(\frac{e\widehat{Q}_{1s}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\widehat{k}\widehat{\epsilon}}{2c(kp')}+\frac{e\widehat{\epsilon}\widehat{k}\widehat{Q}_{1s}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)}{2c(kp)}\right)+\widehat{\epsilon}Q_{0s}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\right\}u_{\sigma}(p), \tag{8.12}$$

where the vector functions $Q_{1s}^{\mu} = (0, \mathbf{Q}_{1s})$ and scalar functions Q_{0s}, Q_{2s} are expressed via generalized Bessel functions $G_s(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)$:

$$Q_{0s} = G_s(\alpha, \beta, \varphi), \tag{8.13}$$

$$\mathbf{Q}_{1s} = \frac{A_0}{2} \{\mathbf{e}_1 \left(G_{s-1}(\alpha, \beta, \varphi) + G_{s+1}(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)\right)$$

$$+ i\mathbf{e}_2 g \left(G_{s-1}(\alpha, \beta, \varphi) - G_{s+1}(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)\right)\}, \tag{8.14}$$

$$Q_{2s} = A_0^2 \frac{(1+g^2)}{2} G_s(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)$$

$$+ A_0^2 \frac{(1-g^2)}{2} \left(G_{s-2}(\alpha, \beta, \varphi) + G_{s+2}(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)\right). \tag{8.15}$$

The definition of arguments α, β, φ are the same as in (1.103)–(1.105). The resonance detuning in (8.11) is

$$\hbar\Delta\left(s, \mathbf{\Pi}\right) = \sqrt{c^2 \left(\mathbf{\Pi} - \hbar\mathbf{k}' + s\hbar\mathbf{k}\right)^2 + m^{*2}c^4} + \hbar\omega'$$

$$- \sqrt{c^2 \mathbf{\Pi}^2 + m^{*2}c^4} - s\hbar\omega. \tag{8.16}$$

We will use Heisenberg representation, where evolution of the operators are given by the equation

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \widehat{L}}{\partial t} = \left[\widehat{L}, \widehat{H}\right], \tag{8.17}$$

and expectation values are determined by the initial density matrix $\widehat{D}$

$$\langle \widehat{L} \rangle = Sp\left(\widehat{D}\widehat{L}\right). \tag{8.18}$$

Equation (8.17) should be supplemented by the Maxwell equation for $\overline{A}_e$ which is reduced to

$$\frac{\partial A_e}{\partial t} + \frac{c^2\mathbf{k}'}{\omega'} \frac{\partial A_e}{\partial \mathbf{r}} = -i \frac{4\pi c}{\omega'} \overline{< \epsilon\widehat{j} > \exp(ik'x)}, \tag{8.19}$$

where the bar denotes averaging over time and space much larger than $(1/\omega', 1/k')$ and

$$\langle \epsilon\widehat{j} \rangle = Sp\left(\epsilon\widehat{j}\widehat{D}\right). \tag{8.20}$$

Taking into account (8.7) and (8.8) we obtain

$$\epsilon\widehat{j}\exp(ik'x) = e\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}\sum_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma',\sigma}\Big\{\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma'}(t)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}(t)$$

$$\times M^{(s)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma';\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma\right)e^{\frac{1}{\hbar}(\Pi'-\Pi-s\hbar k+\hbar k')x}\Big\}. \tag{8.21}$$

As we are interested in amplification of the wave with a certain ω', $\mathbf{k}'$, then we can keep only resonant terms in (8.21) with $\mathbf{\Pi}' = \mathbf{\Pi} - \hbar\mathbf{k}' + s\hbar\mathbf{k}$. In principle, because of the electron beam energy and angular spreads different harmonics may contribute to the process considered, but in the quantum regime (see below (8.44), (8.45)) we can keep only one harmonic $s = s_0$. For the resonant current amplitude, we will have the expression

$$-i\overline{(\epsilon\widehat{j})\exp(ik'x)} = \int\widehat{J}(\mathbf{\Pi},t)d\mathbf{\Pi}, \tag{8.22}$$

where

$$\widehat{J}(\mathbf{\Pi},t) = -\frac{ie}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma}\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi}_f,\sigma'}(t)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}(t)M^{(s_0)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi}_f,\sigma';\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma\right)e^{i\Delta(s_0,\mathbf{\Pi})t} \tag{8.23}$$

and the summation over $\mathbf{\Pi}$ has been replaced by integration according to

$$\sum_{\mathbf{\Pi}}\rightarrow\frac{1}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}\int d\mathbf{\Pi}.$$

Here, we have introduced the notation

$$\mathbf{\Pi}_f = \mathbf{\Pi} - \hbar\mathbf{k}' + s_0\hbar\mathbf{k}. \tag{8.24}$$

The physical meaning of (8.23) with (8.24) is obvious: it describes the process where a particle with quasimomentum $\mathbf{\Pi}$ is annihilated and is created in the state with quasimomentum $\mathbf{\Pi} - \hbar\mathbf{k}' + s_0\hbar\mathbf{k}$ with the emission of a photon with the frequency ω' and momentum $\mathbf{k}'$.

Taking into account (8.11), (8.17), (8.9), and (8.10) for the operator $\widehat{J}(\mathbf{\Pi},t)$ we obtain the equation

$$\frac{\partial\widehat{J}(\mathbf{\Pi},t)}{\partial t} - i\Delta\left(s_0,\mathbf{\Pi}\right)\widehat{J}(\mathbf{\Pi},t) = \frac{e^2A_e}{2c\hbar(2\pi\hbar)^3}$$

$$\times\sum_{\sigma',\sigma,\sigma_1}\Big\{M^{(s_0)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi}_f,\sigma';\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma\right)M^{(-s_0)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma_1;\mathbf{\Pi}_f,\sigma'\right)\widehat{a}^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma_1}(t)\widehat{a}_{\Pi,\sigma}(t)$$

$$-M^{(s_0)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi}_f,\sigma';\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma\right)M^{(-s_0)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma;\mathbf{\Pi}_f,\sigma_1\right)\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi}_f,\sigma'}(t)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi}_f,\sigma_1}(t)\Big\}, \tag{8.25}$$

where we have kept only resonant terms. These terms are predominant in near-resonant emission/absorption, since their detuning is much smaller than that of non-resonant terms, which are detuned from resonance by $\omega \gg |\varDelta\,(s_0, \mathbf{\Pi})|$.

We will assume that the electron beam is nonpolarized. This means that the initial single-particle density matrix in momentum space is

$$\rho_{\sigma_1\sigma_2}(\mathbf{\Pi}_1, \mathbf{\Pi}_2, 0) = \langle \widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi}_2,\sigma_2}(0)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi}_1,\sigma_1}(0)\rangle = \rho_0(\mathbf{\Pi}_1, \mathbf{\Pi}_2)\delta_{\sigma_1,\sigma_2}. \tag{8.26}$$

Here $\rho_0(\mathbf{\Pi}, \mathbf{\Pi})$ is connected to the classical momentum distribution function $F(\mathbf{\Pi})$ by the equation

$$\rho_0(\mathbf{\Pi}, \mathbf{\Pi}) = \frac{(2\pi\hbar)^3}{2} F_0(\mathbf{\Pi}). \tag{8.27}$$

For the expectation value of $\widehat{J}(\mathbf{\Pi}, t)$ from (8.25) we have

$$\frac{\partial J(\mathbf{\Pi}, t)}{\partial t} - i\varDelta\,(s_0, \Pi)\, J(\mathbf{\Pi}, t) = \frac{e^2 M^2}{4\hbar c} A_e \left(F(\mathbf{\Pi}, t) - F(\mathbf{\Pi}_f, t)\right), \tag{8.28}$$

where

$$F(\mathbf{\Pi}_1, t) = \frac{2}{(2\pi\hbar)^3} \langle \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi}_1,\sigma_1}(t)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi}_1,\sigma_1}(t)\rangle, \tag{8.29}$$

$$M^2 = \sum_{\sigma',\sigma} M^{(s_0)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi}_f, \sigma'; \mathbf{\Pi}, \sigma\right) M^{(-s_0)}\left(\mathbf{\Pi}, \sigma; \mathbf{\Pi}_f, \sigma'\right). \tag{8.30}$$

The M^2 is reduced to the usual calculation of a trace (see (1.112), where summation over the photon polarizations should not be made), and in our notations we have

$$M^2 = \frac{2c^4}{\varPi_{f0}\varPi_0} \left\{ \left|\left[\left(p\epsilon'\right) Q_{0s} - \frac{e}{c}\left(Q_{1s}\epsilon'\right)\right]\right|^2 \right.$$
$$\left. - \frac{e^2}{4c^2} \frac{(\hbar k' k)^2}{(kp')(kp)} \left[|Q_{1s}|^2 + Re\left(Q_{2s} Q^*_{0s}\right)\right] \right\}, \tag{8.31}$$

where

$$\epsilon' = \epsilon - k^{'} \left(\frac{k\epsilon}{kk^{'}}\right). \tag{8.32}$$

In (8.31) one can neglect the terms on the order of $(\hbar k' k/(kp))^2 \ll 1$ as for a FEL this condition is always satisfied. Taking into account (8.11), (8.17), (8.9), (8.10), and (8.29) for $F(\mathbf{\Pi}, t)$ and $F(\mathbf{\Pi}_f, t)$ we obtain

$$\frac{\partial F(\mathbf{\Pi}, t)}{\partial t} = -\frac{1}{2\hbar c}\left(A_e^* J(\mathbf{\Pi}, t) + A_e J^*(\mathbf{\Pi}, t)\right), \tag{8.33}$$

$$\frac{\partial F(\mathbf{\Pi}_f, t)}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{2\hbar c}\left(A_e^* J(\mathbf{\Pi}, t) + A_e J^*(\mathbf{\Pi}, t)\right). \tag{8.34}$$

To take into account the pulse propagation effects we can replace the time derivatives by the following expression:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} \to \frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \overline{\mathbf{v}}\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{r}},$$

where $\overline{\mathbf{v}} = c^2 \mathbf{\Pi}/\Pi_0$ is the mean velocity of the electron beam and the convectional part of the derivative expresses the pulse propagation effects. Introducing the new quantity

$$\delta F(\mathbf{\Pi}, t) = F(\mathbf{\Pi}, t) - F(\mathbf{\Pi}_f, t), \tag{8.35}$$

which physically expresses population inversion in momentum space, from (8.19), (8.22), (8.28), (8.33), and (8.34) we obtain the self-consistent set of equations:

$$\begin{gathered}
\frac{\partial J(\mathbf{\Pi})}{\partial t} + \overline{\mathbf{v}}\frac{\partial J(\mathbf{\Pi})}{\partial \mathbf{r}} - i\Delta(s_0, \mathbf{\Pi})\, J(\mathbf{\Pi}) = \frac{e^2 M^2}{4\hbar c} A_e \delta F(\mathbf{\Pi}), \\
\frac{\partial \delta F(\mathbf{\Pi})}{\partial t} + \overline{\mathbf{v}}\frac{\partial \delta F(\mathbf{\Pi})}{\partial \mathbf{r}} = -\frac{1}{\hbar c}\left(A_e^* J(\mathbf{\Pi}) + A_e J^*(\mathbf{\Pi})\right), \qquad (8.36)\\
\frac{\partial A_e}{\partial t} + \frac{c^2 \mathbf{k}'}{\omega'}\frac{\partial A_e}{\partial \mathbf{r}} = \frac{4\pi c}{\omega'}\int J(\mathbf{\Pi})\, d\mathbf{\Pi}.
\end{gathered}$$

These equations yield the conservation laws for the energy of the system and particle number:

$$\frac{\partial |A_e|^2}{\partial t} + \frac{c^2 \mathbf{k}'}{\omega'}\frac{\partial |A_e|^2}{\partial \mathbf{r}} = -\frac{4\pi\hbar c^2}{\omega'}\int \left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \overline{\mathbf{v}}\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{r}}\right)\delta F(\mathbf{\Pi})\, d\mathbf{\Pi}, \tag{8.37}$$

$$\left(\frac{\partial}{\partial t} + \overline{\mathbf{v}}\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{r}}\right)\left((\delta F(\mathbf{\Pi}))^2 + \frac{8}{e^2 M^2}|J(\mathbf{\Pi})|^2\right) = 0. \tag{8.38}$$

Note that from the set of (8.36) one can obtain a small signal gain passing into perturbation theory which in the quasiclassical limit will coincide with the classical one (the latter will be done for a wiggler).

8.2 Nonlinear Quantum Regime of X-Ray Compton Backscattering Laser

In the quantum regime the emission and absorption are characterized by the widths

$$\Delta_e = \Delta\left(s_0, \mathbf{\Pi}\right) = \omega'(1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\theta)$$

$$- s_0\omega(1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\vartheta_0) + \frac{s_0\hbar\omega\omega'}{\Pi_0}(1 - \cos\theta_r), \tag{8.39}$$

$$\Delta_a = \Delta\left(s_0, \mathbf{\Pi} + \hbar\mathbf{k}' - s_0\hbar\mathbf{k}\right) = \Delta_e - \frac{2s_0\hbar\omega\omega'}{\Pi_0}(1 - \cos\theta_r), \tag{8.40}$$

where ϑ_0, ϑ are the incident and scattering angles of the pump and probe photons with respect to the direction of the particle mean velocity $\overline{\mathbf{v}}$, and ϑ_r is the angle between the propagation directions of the pump and probe photons.

The quantum regime assumes that

$$\Delta_e - \Delta_a = \frac{2s_0\hbar\omega\omega'}{\Pi_0}(1 - \cos\theta_0)$$

$$> \max\left\{\left|\frac{\partial\Delta_e}{\partial\eta_i}\delta\eta_i + \frac{\partial^2\Delta_e}{\partial\eta_i^2}(\delta\eta_i)^2\right|, \frac{\omega}{N_\omega}\right\}, \tag{8.41}$$

where by η_i we denote the set of quantities characterizing the electron beam and pump field and by $\delta\eta_i$ their spreads. The second term in the curly brackets of (8.41) expresses the resonance width caused by the finite interaction length and N_ω is the number of periods of the pump field. In particular, for the energetic ($\Delta\mathcal{E}$) and angular ($\Delta\vartheta$) spreads from (8.41) (for $\theta_r = \theta_0 \simeq \pi$, $\theta \ll 1$) we will have

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} < \hbar\omega', \tag{8.42}$$

$$\left|\theta\Delta\vartheta + \frac{\Delta\vartheta^2}{2}\right| < \frac{4s_0\hbar\omega}{\mathcal{E}}. \tag{8.43}$$

The conditions for keeping only one harmonic $s = s_0$ in the resonant current are

$$\frac{\Delta \mathcal{E}}{\mathcal{E}} \ll \frac{1}{s_0}, \tag{8.44}$$

$$\left| \theta \Delta \vartheta + \frac{\Delta \vartheta^2}{2} \right| \ll \frac{\omega}{\omega'}. \tag{8.45}$$

As we see, for not very high harmonics the conditions (8.44) and (8.45) are weaker than the conditions in the quantum regime (8.42), (8.43), or (8.2) and are well enough satisfied for current accelerator beams.

Our goal is to determine the conditions under which we will have nonlinear amplification. We assume steady-state operation, i.e., dropping of all partial time derivatives in (8.36). The considered setup is either a single-pass amplifier for which an injected input signal is necessary, or self-amplified coherent spontaneous emission for which a modulated beam is necessary. In addition, we will consider the case of exact resonance neglecting detuning in (8.36) assuming that electron beam momentum distribution is centered at $\Delta_e = 0$, i.e.,

$$J\left(\mathbf{r}, t, \mathbf{\Pi}\right) = \overline{J}\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) \delta(\mathbf{\Pi} - \mathbf{\Pi}_e), \tag{8.46}$$

$$\delta F\left(\mathbf{r}, t, \mathbf{\Pi}\right) = F\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) \delta(\mathbf{\Pi} - \mathbf{\Pi}_e), \tag{8.47}$$

where for $\mathbf{\Pi}_e$

$$\Delta_e = \Delta\left(s_0, \mathbf{\Pi}_e\right) = 0.$$

To achieve maximal Doppler shift and optimal conditions of amplification, we will assume counterpropagating electron and pump photon beams (X-axis, $\theta_r = \theta_0 = \pi$). In this case the optimal condition for the linearly polarized pump wave is $\theta = 0$, while for the circular wave $\theta \sim \xi/\gamma_L$ ($\theta \ll 1$). For the on-axis radiation we have the following known formula for the radiation wavelengths

$$\lambda' = \frac{1}{4} \frac{\lambda}{s_0 \gamma_L^2} \left(1 + \frac{1 + g^2}{2} \xi_0^2\right), \tag{8.48}$$

where λ is the wavelength of the pump wave. For both cases, we will assume that the envelope of the probe wave depends only on x. Then the set of (8.36) and conservation laws (8.37), (8.38) are reduced to

$$\frac{d\overline{J}}{dx} = \frac{e^2 M^2}{4\hbar c \overline{\mathrm{v}}} A_e F,$$

$$\frac{dF}{dx} = -\frac{2}{\hbar c \overline{\mathrm{v}}} A_e \overline{J}, \tag{8.49}$$

$$\frac{dA_e}{dx} = \frac{4\pi}{\omega'}\overline{J},$$

$$F^2 + \frac{8}{e^2M^2}\left|\overline{J}\right|^2 = N_0^2,$$

$$W = W_0 + \frac{\hbar\omega'\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{2}\left(F_0 - F\right),$$

where N_0 is the electron beam density, W is the probe wave intensity, and W_0 is the initial one. From (8.49) we have the following expressions for $\overline{J}$ and F:

$$F = N_0 \cos\left\{\frac{e\left|M\right|}{2^{1/2}\hbar c\overline{\mathrm{v}}}\int\limits_0^x A_e dx' + \varphi_0\right\}, \tag{8.50}$$

$$\overline{J} = \frac{e\left|M\right|}{2^{3/2}} N_0 \sin\left\{\frac{e\left|M\right|}{2^{1/2}\hbar c\overline{\mathrm{v}}}\int\limits_0^x A_e dx' + \varphi_0\right\}, \tag{8.51}$$

where φ_0 is determined by boundary conditions. Denoting

$$\varphi = \frac{e\left|M\right|}{2^{1/2}\hbar c\overline{\mathrm{v}}}\int\limits_0^x A_e dx' + \varphi_0, \tag{8.52}$$

we arrive at the nonlinear pendulum equation

$$\frac{d^2\varphi}{dx^2} = \chi^2 \sin\varphi, \tag{8.53}$$

where

$$\chi^2 = \frac{\pi e^2 M^2 N_0}{\hbar\omega' c\overline{\mathrm{v}}} \tag{8.54}$$

is the main characteristic parameter of amplification: $L_c = 1/\chi$ is the characteristic length of amplification. For the linearly polarized pump wave from (8.13), (8.14), (8.15), and (8.31) we have

$$\chi_L = \frac{\xi_0\left|A_1(0,\beta,s_0)\right|}{2\gamma_L^2}\sqrt{\alpha_0\frac{c\lambda}{s_0\overline{\mathrm{v}}}N_0(1+\xi_0^2/2)}. \tag{8.55}$$

Here α_0 is the fine structure constant and the function $\Lambda_1(0, \beta, s)$ is expressed by the ordinary Bessel functions:

$$\Lambda_1(0, \beta, s_0) \simeq \frac{1}{2}\left\{J_{\frac{s_0-1}{2}}\left(\frac{s_0\xi_0^2}{4+2\xi_0^2}\right) - J_{\frac{s_0+1}{2}}\left(\frac{s_0\xi_0^2}{4+2\xi_0^2}\right)\right\}. \tag{8.56}$$

In this case only odd harmonics are possible. For the circularly polarized pump wave, we have

$$\chi_c = \frac{\xi_0}{2\gamma_L^2}\left(\frac{\theta\gamma_L}{\xi_0} + \frac{s_0}{\alpha}\right)\left|J_{s_0}(\alpha)\right|\sqrt{\alpha_0\frac{c\lambda}{s_0\overline{\mathrm{v}}}N_0(1+\xi_0^2+\theta^2\gamma_L^2)}, \tag{8.57}$$

and the argument of the Bessel function is

$$\alpha \simeq \frac{2s_0\xi_0\theta\gamma_L}{1+\xi_0^2+\theta^2\gamma_L^2}. \tag{8.58}$$

We will consider two regimes of amplification which are determined by initial conditions. For the first regime the initial macroscopic transition current of the electron beam is zero and it is necessary to have a seeding electromagnetic wave. In this case the following boundary conditions are imposed:

$$F\mid_{x=0} \; = N_0; \quad \overline{J}\mid_{x=0} \; = 0; \quad W\mid_{x=0} \; = W_0. \tag{8.59}$$

The solution for the probe wave intensity in this case is written as

$$W(x) = W_0 dn^{-2}\left(\frac{\chi}{\kappa}x; \kappa\right), \tag{8.60}$$

$$\kappa = \left(1 + \frac{W_0}{N_0\hbar\omega'\overline{\mathrm{v}}}\right)^{-\frac{1}{2}}, \tag{8.61}$$

where $dn\,(x, \kappa)$ is the elliptic function of Jacobi and κ its module.

As is known, $dn\,(x, \kappa)$ is the periodic function with the period $2K(\kappa)$, where $K(\kappa)$ is the complete elliptic integral of first order. At the distances $L = (2r+1)\kappa K(\kappa)/\chi$ $(r = 0, 1, 2, ...)$ the wave intensity reaches its maximal value which equals

$$W_{\max} = W_0 + N_0\hbar\omega'\overline{\mathrm{v}}. \tag{8.62}$$

For the short interaction length $x \ll L_c$ from (8.60) we have

$$W(x) = W_0\left(1 + \chi^2 x^2\right),$$

and the wave gain is rather small. To extract maximal energy from the electron beam the interaction length should be at least on the order of half the spatial period of the wave envelope variation—$\kappa K(\kappa)/\chi$. Under this condition the intensity value $W_{\max} = W_0 + N\hbar\omega'\overline{\mathrm{v}}$ is achieved, because all electrons make a contribution in the radiation field. Taking into account that seed power is much smaller than $W_{\max}$ and if $1 - \kappa \ll 1$

$$K(\kappa) \to \frac{1}{2}\ln\left[\frac{16}{1-\kappa^2}\right],$$

for amplification length we will have

$$L \simeq L_c \ln\left(4\frac{W_{\max}}{W_0}\right). \tag{8.63}$$

Let us now consider the other regime of wave amplification when the electron beam is modulated—"macroscopic transition current" J differs from zero. This regime can operate without any initial seeding power ($W_0 = 0$). Thus, we will consider the optimal case with the following initial conditions:

$$\overline{J}\mid_{x=0} \ = J_0; \qquad F\mid_{x=0} \ = \delta N_0; \qquad W\mid_{x=0} \ = 0. \tag{8.64}$$

Then the wave intensity is expressed by

$$W(x) = \frac{N_0\hbar\omega'\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{2}\left(1 - \frac{\delta N_0}{N_0}\right)\left[\frac{1}{dn^2(\chi x; k)} - 1\right], \tag{8.65}$$

and module κ of Jacobi elliptic function is determined by

$$\kappa = \frac{1}{2}(1 + \frac{\delta N_0}{N_0}). \tag{8.66}$$

As is seen from (8.65) in this case the intensity varies periodically with the distances as well, with the maximal value of intensity

$$W'_{\max} = \frac{N_0\hbar\omega'\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{2}\left(1 + \frac{\delta N_0}{N_0}\right). \tag{8.67}$$

The second regime is more interesting. It is the regime of amplification without initial seeding power and has superradiant nature. For the short interaction length $x \ll L_c$ according to (8.65)

$$W(x) = \frac{N_0\hbar\omega'\overline{\mathrm{v}}\chi^2 x^2}{4}\left(1 - \frac{\delta N_0}{N_0}\right). \tag{8.68}$$

The intensity is scaled as N_0^2 ($\chi^2 \sim N_0$) which means that we have a superradiation. The radiation intensity in this regime reaches a significant value even at $x \ll L_c$.

The coherent interaction time of electrons with probe radiation is confined by the several relaxation processes. To be more precise in the self-consistent set of (8.36) we should add the terms describing spontaneous transitions and other relaxation processes. Since we have not taken into account the relaxation processes, this consideration is correct only for the distances $L \preceq c\tau_{\min}$, where $\tau_{\min}$ is the minimum of all relaxation times. Due to spontaneous radiation electrons will lose energy $\sim\hbar\omega'$ at the distances

$$L_s \simeq c\frac{\hbar\omega'}{W_s} = \frac{3}{2\pi}\frac{s_0\lambda}{\alpha_0(1+\xi_0^2/2)\xi_0^2}, \tag{8.69}$$

where W_s is the intensity of spontaneous radiation (for linearly polarized pump wave; for circularly polarized wave one should replace $\xi_0^2 \to 2\,\xi_0^2$). Although the cutoff harmonic increases with the increase of ξ_0 ($s_c \sim \xi_0^3$), for the high laser intensities $\xi_0 \gtrsim 1$ the role of spontaneous radiation increases as $L_s \sim \xi_0^{-4}$ and the above-mentioned regimes will be interrupted. Therefore, the obtained solutions are correct at the distances $\sim L_s$. At $\xi_0 \gtrsim 1$ for the high harmonics L_c decreases and simultaneously the quantum recoil $\hbar\omega'/\mathcal{E}$ increases, but $L_s \sim L_c$. The first regime will effectively work as a single-pass amplifier if $L_c \gtrsim 10L_s$ (see (8.63): $W_{\max} \simeq e^{L/L_c}W_0/4$).

The second regime may be more promising as it allows considerable output intensities even for the small interaction lengths (8.68). It is expected that the effects of energy and angular spreads will not have a significant influence on this regime as it is governed by the initial current and only Doppler dephasing and spontaneous lifetime may interrupt the superradiation process. Note that necessary for the second regime initially quantum modulation of the particle beam at the above optical frequencies can be obtained through multiphoton transitions in the laser field at the presence of a "third body". The possibilities of quantum modulation at hard X-ray frequencies in the induced Compton, undulator, and Cherenkov processes have been studied in Chaps. 3 and 5.

8.3 Quantum Description of FEL Nonlinear Dynamics in a Wiggler

To evaluate the nonlinear gain of a FEL in a wiggler on the basis of quantum theory we need the relativistic wave function of an electron in a wiggler. We will consider linear (LW) as well as helical wigglers (HW). The magnetic field of a wiggler is described by the following vector potential:

$$\mathbf{A}_H = \{0, A_0\cos(\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}), gA_0\sin(\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r})\}\,, \tag{8.70}$$

where

$$\mathbf{k}_0 \equiv \left\{ \frac{2\pi}{\ell}, 0, 0 \right\}, \tag{8.71}$$

with the wiggler step ℓ. In (8.70) $g = \pm 1$ correspond to HW, while $g = 0$ corresponds to LW.

The quantum dynamics of an electron in a wiggler will be described by the Dirac equation which in the quadratic form (see (1.82), (1.83)), taking into account the specified field configuration (8.70), can be represented in the form

$$\left\{ \hbar^2 \frac{\partial^2}{\partial t^2} + c^2 \hat{\mathbf{p}}^2 - 2ce\mathbf{A}_H \hat{\mathbf{p}} + e^2 \mathbf{A}_H^2 + m^2 c^4 - ec\hbar \widehat{\mathbf{\Sigma}} \mathbf{H} \right\} \Psi = 0, \tag{8.72}$$

where

$$\widehat{\mathbf{\Sigma}} = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\sigma} & 0 \\ 0 & \boldsymbol{\sigma} \end{pmatrix} \tag{8.73}$$

is the spin operator with the $\widehat{\boldsymbol{\sigma}}$ Pauli matrices and

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathrm{rot} \mathbf{A}_H \tag{8.74}$$

is the magnetic field of a wiggler.

As the magnetic field depends only on the $\phi = \mathbf{k}_0 \mathbf{r}$, then raising from the symmetry, we seek a solution of (8.72) in the form

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = F(\phi) e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathbf{pr} - \mathcal{E} t)}, \tag{8.75}$$

where $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ are the energy and momentum of a free electron.

To solve (8.72) we will consider $F(\phi)$ as a slowly varying bispinor function of ϕ (on the scale of $\mathbf{pk}_0/(\hbar k_0^2)$) and neglect the second derivative compared with the first order, which restricts the magnetic field strength by the condition

$$\xi_H \equiv \frac{eA_0}{mc^2} = \frac{eH_0 \ell}{2\pi mc^2} \ll \gamma_L. \tag{8.76}$$

Here, $\gamma_L = \mathcal{E}/mc^2$ is the Lorentz factor (ξ_H is the so-called wiggler parameter (5.28)).

Hence, from (8.72) and (8.75) for $F(\phi)$ we will have the following equation:

$$\left\{ 2i\hbar \left(\mathbf{pk}_0 \right) \frac{d}{d\phi} + 2\frac{e}{c} \mathbf{pA}_H - \frac{e^2}{c^2} \mathbf{A}_H^2 + \frac{e\hbar}{c} \widehat{\mathbf{\Sigma}} \mathbf{H} \right\} F(\phi) = 0. \tag{8.77}$$

The solution of (8.77) can be written in the operator form

$$F(\phi) = \exp\left\{\frac{i}{2\hbar\mathbf{p}\mathbf{k}_0}\int_{-\infty}^{\phi}\left(\frac{2e}{c}\mathbf{p}\mathbf{A}_H - \frac{e^2}{c^2}\mathbf{A}_H^2\right)d\phi'\right\}$$

$$\times \exp\left\{\frac{ie}{2c\mathbf{p}\mathbf{k}_0}\widehat{\mathbf{\Sigma}}\left[\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{A}_H\right]\right\}\frac{u_\sigma}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}, \quad (8.78)$$

where u_σ is the bispinor amplitude of a free electron with polarization σ (it is assumed adiabatic entry of the electron into the wiggler—$\mathbf{H}(-\infty) = 0$).

Then taking into account the property of spin operator

$$\exp\left[\widehat{\mathbf{\Sigma}}\mathbf{a}\right] = \frac{1}{2}(\exp(a) + \exp(-a)) + \widehat{\mathbf{\Sigma}}\mathbf{a}\frac{1}{2a}(\exp(a) - \exp(-a)),$$

and taking into account the condition (8.76), which in this case restricts the parameter $a \ll 1$, for the wave function (8.75) we will have the expression

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \left(1 + \frac{ie}{2c\left(\mathbf{p}\mathbf{k}_0\right)}\widehat{\mathbf{\Sigma}}\left[\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{A}_H\right]\right)\frac{u_\sigma}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}$$

$$\times \exp\left\{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left[\mathbf{p}\mathbf{r} - \mathcal{E}t + \frac{1}{2\left(\mathbf{p}\mathbf{k}_0\right)}\int_{-\infty}^{\phi}\left(2\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{p}\mathbf{A}_H - \frac{e^2}{c^2}\mathbf{A}_H^2\right)d\phi'\right]\right\}. \quad (8.79)$$

The wave function (8.77) is an analogy of the Volkov wave function (1.93). Therefore, it is reasonable to represent the wave function in the four-dimensional notation making analogy more evident. Introducing four-dimensional vector potential and "wave vector"

$$A_H = (0, \mathbf{A}_H); \quad k \equiv (0, -\frac{2\pi}{\ell}, 0, 0),$$

and taking into account that

$$\widehat{\mathbf{\Sigma}}\left[\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{A}_H\right] = i\widehat{k}\widehat{A}_H,$$

the wave function (8.77) can be written as

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \left(1 + \frac{e}{2c\,(pk)}\widehat{k}\widehat{A}_H\right)\frac{u_\sigma}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}$$

$$\times \exp\left\{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\left[px + \frac{1}{2\,(pk)}\int_{-\infty}^{\phi}\left(2\frac{e}{c}pA_H - \frac{e^2}{c^2}A_H^2\right)d\phi'\right]\right\}. \quad (8.80)$$

Here $p = (\mathcal{E}/c, \mathbf{p})$ is the four-momentum of a free electron and $\widehat{a} = a^{\mu}\gamma_{\mu}$. As we see this wave function by the form coincides with the Volkov wave function (1.93). Hence, we will not repeat all calculations which have been done for the Compton effect and use the obtained results for spontaneous as well as for induced undulator radiation. The main difference in this case is that $k^2 \neq 0$ but taking into account (8.76) we can neglect the terms which come from $k^2 \neq 0$ (quantum recoil). This will be more evident in the Weizsäcker–Williams approach, when in the frame concerned with electrons the wiggler field is well enough described by a plane EM wave field.

Performing integration in (8.80), taking into account (8.70), for the electron wave function we will have

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{\Pi}\sigma} = \left[1 + \frac{e\widehat{k}\widehat{A}_H}{2c(kp)}\right] \frac{u_{\sigma}(p)}{\sqrt{2\Pi_0}} \exp\left[-\frac{i}{\hbar}\Pi x - \frac{i}{\hbar}\frac{e^2A_0^2}{8c^2\,(pk)}\left(1-g^2\right)\sin\left(2\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}\right)\right]$$
$$\times \exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}\frac{eA_0}{c\,(pk)}\left(p_y \sin\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r} - p_z g\cos\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}\right)\right], \tag{8.81}$$

where by further analogy with the Volkov states we have introduced four-quasi-momentum

$$\Pi = p + k\frac{m^2c^2}{4kp}(1+g^2)\xi_H^2. \tag{8.82}$$

Hence, the state of an electron in the wiggler field (8.70) is characterized by the quasimomentum $\mathbf{\Pi}$ and polarization σ and the wave function (8.81) is normalized by the condition

$$\frac{1}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}\int \Psi^{\dagger}_{\mathbf{\Pi}'\sigma'}\Psi_{\mathbf{\Pi}\sigma}d\mathbf{r} = \delta(\mathbf{\Pi}-\mathbf{\Pi}')\delta_{\sigma,\sigma'}.$$

The FEL dynamics in the wiggler will be described by the same self-consistent set of (8.36) with

$$M^2 = \frac{2c^4}{\mathcal{E}^2}\left|\left[\left(p\epsilon'\right)Q_{0s}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi) - \frac{e}{c}\left(Q_{1s}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\epsilon'\right)\right]\right|^2, \tag{8.83}$$

and the parameters α, β, and φ are

$$\alpha = \frac{eA_0}{\hbar c}\left[\left(\frac{p_y}{\mathbf{pk}_0} - \frac{p'_y}{\mathbf{p}'\mathbf{k}_0}\right)^2 + g^2\left(\left(\frac{p_z}{\mathbf{pk}_0} - \frac{p'_z}{\mathbf{p}'\mathbf{k}_0}\right)^2\right)^2\right]^{1/2},$$

$$\beta = \frac{e^2A_0^2}{8c^2}(g^2-1)\frac{\mathbf{k}'\mathbf{k}_0}{(\mathbf{pk}_0)^2}, \tag{8.84}$$

$$\tan\varphi = \frac{g\left(\frac{p_z}{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{k}_0} - \frac{p'_z}{\mathbf{p}'\mathbf{k}_0}\right)^2}{\left(\frac{p_y}{\mathbf{p}\mathbf{k}_0} - \frac{p'_y}{\mathbf{p}'\mathbf{k}_0}\right)}.$$

The resonance detuning for the wiggler is

$$\hbar\Delta\left(s_0, \boldsymbol{\Pi}\right) = \sqrt{c^2\left(\boldsymbol{\Pi} - \hbar\mathbf{k}' - s_0\hbar\mathbf{k}_0\right)^2 + m^{*2}c^4} - \sqrt{c^2\boldsymbol{\Pi}^2 + m^{*2}c^4} + \hbar\omega'. \tag{8.85}$$

The spectrum of emitted photons is determined from the conservation laws $\Delta\left(s_0, \boldsymbol{\Pi}\right) = 0$:

$$\omega' = \frac{s_0\frac{2\pi}{\ell}\overline{\mathrm{v}}\cos\vartheta_0}{1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\cos\theta + \frac{2\pi c\hbar s_0}{\mathcal{E}\ell}\cos\theta_r}, \tag{8.86}$$

where θ and θ_r are the scattering angles of probe photons with respect to the electron beam direction of motion and undulator axis, respectively, and ϑ_0 is the angle of the electron beam direction of motion with respect to undulator axis. The last term in the denominator is the quantum recoil. Neglecting the latter for the on-axis radiation $\theta = \vartheta_0$ we obtain the following known formula for the radiation wavelengths

$$\lambda' = \frac{1}{2}\frac{\ell}{s_0\gamma_L^2}\left(1 + \frac{1+g^2}{2}\xi_H^2\right). \tag{8.87}$$

Note that the spectrum (8.87) coincides with the spectrum of Compton effect (8.48) with the factor 1/4 instead of 1/2. As has been mentioned, the scheme of an X-ray Compton laser has an advantage with respect to the conventional undulator devices concerned with the satisfaction of condition (8.2) for the quantum regime of generation. To achieve this condition for current FEL devices operating in undulators is problematic as it presumes severe restrictions on the beam spreads.

8.4 High-Gain Regime of FEL

Now we will solve the self-consistent set of (8.36) for FEL at an arbitrary detuning of resonance. As the most effective case the hydrodynamic instability of a cold electron beam will be considered and the criteria will be obtained showing that either high-gain or quantum regime of generation takes place depending on the beam parameters and amplifying photon energy.

We assume steady-state operation of FEL at which one can drop all partial time derivatives in (8.36). To achieve maximal Doppler shift and optimal conditions of amplification we will assume that the electron beam propagates along the wiggler axis (OX) (or counterpropagating electron and pump photon beams). Consequently, the electron beam dynamics will be considered one dimensional.

Our goal is to determine the conditions under which we will have collective instability, which causes exponential growth of the probe wave. Hence, we will assume a small density perturbation for the electron beam and seek the solution of (8.36) in the form

$$\delta F = \delta F_0 (\varPi_x) + \delta F_1 (\varPi_x, x) .$$

Then in the first order by the field we will obtain the following set of linear equations:

$$\overline{\mathrm{v}}\frac{dJ(x, \varPi_x)}{dx} - i\varDelta (s_0, \varPi_x)\, J(x, \varPi_x) = \frac{e^2 M^2}{4\hbar c}\delta F_0 (\varPi_x)\, A_e (x) , \tag{8.88}$$

$$\frac{dA_e (x)}{dx} = \frac{4\pi}{\omega'}\int J(x, \varPi_x) d\Pi_x, \tag{8.89}$$

where

$$\delta F_0 (\varPi_x) = F_0 (\varPi_x) - F_0 \left(\varPi_x - \hbar k' - s_0 \hbar k_0\right) \tag{8.90}$$

is defined via initial distribution function $F_0 (\varPi_x)$.
Performing Laplace transformation

$$f (q) = \int_0^\infty f (x) e^{-qx} dx \tag{8.91}$$

for the functions $J(q, \varPi_x)$ and $A_e (q)$, we obtain

$$(\overline{\mathrm{v}}q - i\varDelta (s_0, \varPi_x))\, J(q, \varPi_x) = \frac{e^2 M^2}{4\hbar c}\delta F_0 (\varPi_x)\, A_e (q) , \tag{8.92}$$

$$q A_e (q) = \frac{4\pi}{\omega'}\int J(q, \varPi_x) d\varPi_x . \tag{8.93}$$

From these equations, we arrive at the following characteristic equation for variable q:

$$q = \frac{\pi e^2 M^2}{\hbar\omega' c}\int \frac{\delta F_0 (\varPi_x)}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}q - i\varDelta (s_0, \varPi_x)} d\varPi_x . \tag{8.94}$$

For the initial cold electron beam with the distribution function

$$F_0\left(\Pi_x\right) = N_0\delta\left(\Pi_x - \Pi_{0x}\right) \tag{8.95}$$

from (8.94) one can obtain the equation

$$q = \chi^2\left[\frac{1}{q - i\frac{\Delta_e}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}} - \frac{1}{q - i\frac{\Delta_a}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}}\right], \tag{8.96}$$

where

$$\Delta_e = \Delta\left(s_0, \Pi_{0x}\right),$$

$$\Delta_a = \Delta\left(s_0, \Pi_{0x} + \hbar k' + s_0\hbar k_0\right)$$

are the resonance widths for the emission and absorption and χ is the main characteristic parameter of amplification in the quantum regime (see (8.54)). Equation (8.96) is the cubic equation known in the FEL theory, but it is more generalized and includes the quantum effects. We will solve the latter in the opposite limits, which characterize the quantum and classical high-gain regimes.

In the quantum regime when the electron beam momentum distribution is centered at $\Delta_e = 0$ and

$$|\chi| \ll \frac{|\Delta_a|}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}, \tag{8.97}$$

the second term in the square brackets of (8.96) can be neglected and we obtain

$$q = \pm\chi,$$

whence the exponential growth rate in the quantum regime will be

$$G_q = \chi. \tag{8.98}$$

This result is predictable from the nonlinear solutions (8.54) and (8.65) for the short interaction lengths.

In the classical limit the quantum recoil can be neglected and since in this limit $\Delta_a = -\Delta_e$ (classical resonance), (8.96) under the condition

$$|q|^2 \gg \frac{\Delta_e^2}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}^2} \tag{8.99}$$

can be rewritten as

$$q^3 = 2i\chi^2\frac{\Delta_e}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}, \tag{8.100}$$

whence the unstable root defines the classical result for exponential growth rate:

$$G_{cl} \equiv \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(2\chi^2\frac{\Delta_e}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}\right)^{1/3}. \tag{8.101}$$

For joint consideration of Compton and undulator FELs the resonance widths (8.39) and (8.85) at the classical resonance for the emission/absorption can be written as

$$\Delta_e = \epsilon\frac{\hbar\omega'}{\mathcal{E}}\frac{2\pi c s_0}{\lambda}, \tag{8.102}$$

where the factor $\epsilon = 2$ for Compton FEL and $\epsilon = 1$ for undulator FEL, and λ is the wavelength of the pump wave or wiggler step. Recalling the definition (8.54) for the parameter χ and using (8.102) the classical exponential growth rate can be written as

$$G_{cl} \equiv \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(4\epsilon s_0\frac{\pi^2 e^2 M^2 N_0}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}^2\mathcal{E}\lambda}\right)^{1/3}. \tag{8.103}$$

In particular, at the linear polarization of the pump field for the on-axis radiation from (8.31) and (8.83) we have

$$M^2 = c^2\frac{\xi_p^2}{2\gamma_L^2}\Lambda^2,$$

where

$$\Lambda = J_{\frac{s_0+1}{2}}\left(\frac{s_0\xi_p^2}{4+2\xi_p^2}\right) - J_{\frac{s_0-1}{2}}\left(\frac{s_0\xi_p^2}{4+2\xi_p^2}\right),$$

and $\xi_p = \xi_0$ and $\xi_p = \xi_H$ for Compton and undulator FELs, respectively. Then for the classical exponential growth rate (8.103) we obtain the known equation

$$G_{cl} \equiv \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(\frac{2\epsilon s_0\pi^2 c^2 r_e N_0\Lambda^2}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}^2\lambda}\frac{\xi_p^2}{\gamma_L^3}\right)^{1/3}. \tag{8.104}$$

Finally, we note that the condition (8.99) for the classical high-gain regime can be written as

$$\chi \gg \frac{\Delta_e}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}, \tag{8.105}$$

which is opposite to the condition for the quantum regime (8.97).

8.5 Quantum SASE Regime of FEL

In the previous sections, we have described the FEL dynamics by the universal self-consistent set of (8.36) which were derived in detail to reveal the FEL dynamics in general. In particular, it has been solved in the steady-state regime neglecting the dependence on time. This is appropriate for the FEL when slippage due to the difference between the light and electron velocities is neglected. Here we describe the FEL dynamics in the Self-Amplified Spontaneous Emission (SASE) regime taking into account the propagation effects. Thus, we will not consider diffraction or saturation effects and the FEL dynamics will be considered to be one dimensional. Taking into account the mentioned fact and keeping the time derivatives in (8.36), in a similar way as was done with respect to (8.88) and (8.89) we will obtain the following set of linear equations:

$$\frac{\partial J(x,t,\Pi_x)}{\partial t}+\overline{\mathrm{v}}\frac{\partial J(x,t,\Pi_x)}{\partial x}-i\Delta\left(s_0,\Pi\right)J(x,t,\Pi_x)$$
$$=\frac{e^2M^2}{4\hbar c}\delta F_0\left(\Pi_x\right)A_e\left(x,t\right), \tag{8.106}$$

$$\frac{\partial A_e\left(x,t\right)}{\partial t}+c\frac{\partial A_e\left(x,t\right)}{\partial x}=\frac{4\pi c}{\omega'}\int J(x,t,\Pi_x)d\Pi_x, \tag{8.107}$$

where $\delta F_0\left(\Pi_x\right)$ is defined again by (8.90) via initial distribution function of the electron beam.

By Fourier transformation for slowly varying envelopes of the probe EM wave and electric current density

$$A_e(x,t)=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}A_{\varpi}(x)e^{i\varpi t}d\varpi, \tag{8.108}$$

$$J(x,t,\Pi_x)=\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}J_{\varpi}(x,\Pi_x)e^{i\varpi t}d\varpi, \tag{8.109}$$

Equations (8.106) and (8.107) are reduced to the equations

$$\frac{\partial J_{\varpi}(x,\Pi_x)}{\partial x}-i\Theta_{\varpi}\left(\Pi_x\right)J_{\varpi}(x,\Pi_x)=\frac{e^2M^2}{4\hbar c\overline{\mathrm{v}}}A_{\varpi}(x)\delta F_0\left(\Pi_x\right), \tag{8.110}$$

$$\frac{\partial A_{\varpi}(x)}{\partial x}+i\frac{\varpi}{c}A_{\varpi}(x)=\frac{4\pi}{\omega'}\int J_{\varpi}(x,\Pi_x)d\Pi_x, \tag{8.111}$$

where

$$\Theta_{\varpi}(\Pi_x) = \frac{\Delta(s_0, \Pi_x) - \varpi}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}. \tag{8.112}$$

The solution of (8.110) can be written as

$$J_{\varpi}(x, \Pi_x) = J_{\varpi}(0, \Pi_x) e^{i\Theta_{\varpi}(\Pi_x)x}$$

$$+ \frac{e^2 M^2}{4\hbar c \overline{\mathrm{v}}} \int_0^x e^{i\Theta_{\varpi}(\Pi_x)(x - x')} A_{\varpi}(x') \delta F_0(\Pi_x) \, dx'. \tag{8.113}$$

Here, it is assumed that

$$J_{\varpi}(0, \Pi_x) = \overline{J}_{\varpi} \delta(\Pi_x - \Pi_{0x}), \tag{8.114}$$

where $\overline{J}_{\varpi}$ characterizes the shot noise in the electron beam or modulation depth for the initially modulated beam. Substituting (8.113) into (8.111) we obtain an integro-differential equation for the phase transformed amplitude $\widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x)$ of the amplifying wave field:

$$\frac{\partial \widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x)}{\partial x} + i\left(\frac{\varpi}{c} + \Theta_{\varpi}(\Pi_{0x})\right) \widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x) = \frac{4\pi}{\omega'} \overline{J}_{\varpi},$$

$$+ \frac{\pi e^2 M^2}{\hbar \omega' c \overline{\mathrm{v}}} \int \int_0^x e^{i(\Theta_{\varpi}(\Pi_x) - \Theta_{\varpi}(\Pi_{0x}))(x - x')} \widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x') \delta F_0(\Pi_x) \, dx' d\Pi_x, \tag{8.115}$$

where

$$\widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x) = A_{\varpi}(x) e^{-i\Theta_{\varpi}(\Pi_{0x})x}. \tag{8.116}$$

In the quantum regime, when condition (8.97) holds one can neglect the second term in (8.90) (which is equivalent to neglecting the absorption probability compared with the emission one) and put

$$\delta F_0(\Pi_x) \simeq N_0 \delta(\Pi_x - \Pi_{0x}); \quad \Delta(s_0, \Pi_{0x}) = 0 \tag{8.117}$$

in (8.115). Then we will obtain

$$\frac{\partial \widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x)}{\partial x} - i\left(1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\right) \frac{\varpi}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}} \widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x) = \frac{4\pi}{\omega'} \overline{J}_{\varpi} + \chi^2 \int_0^x \widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x') dx'. \tag{8.118}$$

Performing Laplace transformation (8.91) on (8.118) we arrive at the following characteristic equation for variable q:

$$q^2 - i\left(1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\right)\frac{\varpi}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}q - \chi^2 = 0, \tag{8.119}$$

and the solution of (8.118) can be written as

$$\widetilde{A}_\varpi(x) = \frac{1}{2i\pi}\oint \frac{q\widetilde{A}_\varpi(0) + \frac{4\pi}{\omega'}\overline{J}_\varpi}{(q-q_1)(q-q_2)}e^{qx}dq, \tag{8.120}$$

where $\widetilde{A}_\varpi(0)$ characterizes a coherent input signal. The contour integration in (8.120) is the result of the inverse Laplace transformation and encloses the poles which are the solutions of the characteristic equation (8.119):

$$q_1 = \frac{i}{2}\left(1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\right)\frac{\varpi}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}} + \chi\sqrt{1 - \frac{\left(1-\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\right)^2}{4\chi^2}\frac{\varpi^2}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}^2}}, \tag{8.121}$$

$$q_2 = \frac{i}{2}\left(1 - \frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\right)\frac{\varpi}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}} - \chi\sqrt{1 - \frac{\left(1-\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\right)^2}{4\chi^2}\frac{\varpi^2}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}^2}}. \tag{8.122}$$

In (8.120) the term proportional to $\widetilde{A}_\varpi(0)$ describes the amplification of the coherent input signal, while the second term proportional to $\overline{J}_\varpi$ describes either the amplification of the shot noise or coherent spontaneous emission (for the initially modulated electron beam). Since the main propose of this section is to study the amplification process without initial seed the first term will not be considered further. Hence, at $\widetilde{A}_\varpi(0) = 0$, (8.120) yields

$$\widetilde{A}_\varpi(x) = \frac{4\pi}{\omega'}\frac{\overline{J}_\varpi}{q_1 - q_2}e^{q_1 x} + \frac{4\pi}{\omega'}\frac{\overline{J}_\varpi}{q_2 - q_1}e^{q_2 x}. \tag{8.123}$$

The root q_1 has a positive real part that gives rise to an exponentially growing term in the radiation intensity. Keeping only this term and taking into account that $q_1 - q_2 \simeq 2\chi$, we have

$$\widetilde{A}_\varpi(x) = \frac{2\pi}{\omega'\chi}\overline{J}_\varpi e^{q_1 z}. \tag{8.124}$$

The spectral property of output radiation is defined by the dependence of q_1 on ϖ and from (8.121) we obtain

$$Req_1 \simeq \chi - \frac{\left(1-\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\right)^2}{8\chi}\frac{\varpi^2}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}^2}. \tag{8.125}$$

For the average spectral intensity

$$I_{\varpi}(x) = \frac{c}{8\pi}\left\langle |E_{\varpi}(x)|^2 \right\rangle = \frac{\omega'^2}{8\pi c}\left\langle \left|\widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x)\right|^2 \right\rangle \tag{8.126}$$

with the help of (8.124) and (8.125) we will have

$$I_{\omega}(x) = \frac{\pi}{2c\chi^2}\left\langle \left|\overline{J}_{\varpi}\right|^2 \right\rangle \exp\left[-\frac{\left(\omega-\omega'\right)^2}{2\Delta_q^2\left(x\right)}\right] e^{2\chi x}, \tag{8.127}$$

where ω' is the resonant frequency ($\varpi \to \omega - \omega'$) and the spectral width in the quantum SASE regime is defined as follows:

$$\Delta_q\left(x\right) = \sqrt{\frac{2\chi}{x}}\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{1-\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}}. \tag{8.128}$$

In the classical regime when condition (8.105) holds the electrons have almost the same probability of absorption or emission of a photon and the net gain factor is proportional to the derivative of the momentum distribution function $F_0(\Pi_x)$. Hence, from (8.90) one can put

$$\delta F_0\left(\Pi_x\right) \simeq \frac{\partial F_0(\Pi_x)}{\partial \Pi_x}\frac{\hbar\omega'}{c}. \tag{8.129}$$

For the initial cold electron beam (8.95) from (8.115) in this case we obtain

$$\frac{\partial \widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x)}{\partial x} - i\left(1-\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\right)\frac{\varpi}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}\widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x) = \frac{4\pi}{\omega'}\overline{J}_{\varpi}$$
$$+\,iG_{cl}^3\int_0^x\left(x-x'\right)\widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x')dx', \tag{8.130}$$

where G_{cl} is the classical exponential growth rate (8.101). Without initial seed the solution of (8.130) is given as

$$\widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x) = -i\frac{2}{\omega'}\oint\frac{\overline{J}_{\varpi}qe^{qx}}{\left(q-q_1\right)\left(q-q_2\right)\left(q-q_3\right)}dq, \tag{8.131}$$

where $q_{1,2,3}$ are the solutions of the characteristic equation

$$q^3 - i\left(1-\frac{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}{c}\right)\frac{\varpi}{\overline{\mathrm{v}}}q^2 - iG_{cl}^3 = 0. \tag{8.132}$$

The unstable solution (suppose $Req_1 > 1$) in this case is given as

$$\widetilde{A}_{\varpi}(x) = \frac{4\pi}{\omega'} \overline{J}_{\varpi} \frac{q_1}{(q_1 - q_2)(q_1 - q_3)} e^{q_1 x}, \tag{8.133}$$

where one can put

$$Re q_1 \simeq G_{cl} - \frac{\left(1 - \frac{\overline{v}}{c}\right)^2}{12 G_{cl}} \frac{\varpi^2}{\overline{v}^2}, \tag{8.134}$$

$$\left| \frac{q_1}{(q_1 - q_2)(q_1 - q_3)} \right|^2 \simeq \frac{1}{12 G_{cl}^2}. \tag{8.135}$$

Hence, for the average spectral intensity (8.126) we have

$$I_{\varpi}(x) = \frac{\pi}{6c G_{cl}^2} \left\langle \left| \overline{J}_{\varpi} \right|^2 \right\rangle \exp\left[-\frac{\left(\omega - \omega'\right)^2}{2\Delta_{cl}^2(x)} \right] e^{2G_{cl} x}. \tag{8.136}$$

The spectral width in the classical SASE regime is defined as follows:

$$\Delta_{cl}(x) = \sqrt{\frac{3G_{cl}}{x}} \frac{\overline{v}}{1 - \frac{\overline{v}}{c}}. \tag{8.137}$$

Comparing (8.136) with its quantum counterpart (8.127) one can see that for the same initial shot noise in the quantum regime the start-up intensity is enhanced by the factor $G_{cl}^2/\chi^2 \gg 1$ (see conditions (8.97), (8.99)) and the spectrum of the SASE intensity is narrowed by the factor $\sqrt{2\chi/3G_{cl}} \ll 1$, while for the quantum SASE regime a longer amplification length is required.

8.6 High-Gain FEL on the Coherent Bremsstrahlung in a Crystal

To achieve the condition of coherency for generation of shortwave radiation by electron beams of considerably lower energies, in the problem of X-ray FEL it may be reasonable to consider other versions of stimulated radiation in the crystals, based on the coherent bremsstrahlung of charged particles on the periodic ionic lattice. It is clear that the coherent length in this scheme is confined by the multiple scattering of electrons in a crystal. The latter drastically increases the lasing threshold for the beam density. To compensate it we will consider the case when the electron beam current density is initially modulated.

Thus, we will investigate the lasing in the X-ray domain due to the coherent bremsstrahlung in a crystal, in the high-gain regime, when the electron beam moves close to the crystal lattice plane or axis. To avoid the channeling effect in a crystal we assume that the incident angle θ of an electron with respect to a crystalline plane or axis is larger than the Lindhard angle $\theta_L = \sqrt{2U_0/\mathcal{E}}$, where U_0 is the height of the barrier of a crystal plane (axis) potential, and $\mathcal{E}$ is the energy of an electron. In this case, when the radiation coherence length $l_c \sim \gamma^2 \mathrm{v}/\omega$ (γ being the Lorentz factor, v the electron velocity, and ω the radiation frequency) exceeds the crystal lattice periods: $l_c \gg d_i$, the bremsstrahlung emitted from the various centers interfere with each other and the enhancement of radiation occurs, which is referred to as coherent bremsstrahlung. The trajectory of a particle can be considered as quasilinear and the trajectory period will be determined by the space period of the crystal potential. In this respect the coherent bremsstrahlung is close to the undulator radiation, where the trajectory period is determined by the space period of the magnetic field. We will assume that

$$N_c Z_a e^2/\hbar \mathrm{v} \gg 1; \quad l_c > R/\theta, \tag{8.138}$$

where Z_a is the nuclear charge number of the crystal atoms, R is the radius of screening, N_c is the number of atoms on the radiation coherence length l_c, and $\theta \ll 1$. In this case one can treat the particle motion by the classical theory (the first condition is contrary to the Born one) and approximate the interaction of the particle with the crystal by the continuous potential (second condition of (8.138)) of atomic planes or strings, i.e., the atomic potential is averaged over the given crystallographic plane or axis, which is oriented at a small angle to the incident beam. For the concreteness we will consider the case of the atomic plane, then the generalization for the crystal axis will be obvious. The potential of the atomic plane, which governs the particle motion, can be represented as a superposition of the potentials

$$U(x) = \sum_l U_p(x - l d_1),$$

$$U_p(x) = \frac{1}{d_2 d_3} \int u(\mathbf{r}) dy dz, \tag{8.139}$$

where $u(\mathbf{r})$ is the single atomic potential. Considering $U(x)$ as a perturbation, from the classical equations of motion one can obtain the perturbed velocity of the electron, which is responsible for the coherent bremsstrahlung. The latter can be expressed in the form

$$\mathrm{v}'_x \simeq \sum_n \frac{u_n}{m\mathrm{v}\theta\gamma} \exp\left[i \frac{2\pi}{d_1} n \mathrm{v} \theta t \right], \tag{8.140}$$

where

$$u_n = \frac{4\pi N_a Z_a e^2}{\left(\frac{2\pi n}{d_1}\right)^2 + \frac{1}{R^2}} \tag{8.141}$$

is the Fourier component of the potential $U_p(x)$ (8.139). Here N_a is the atomic concentration in the crystal and for the single atomic potential we have taken a screening Coulomb potential. We will consider the more reasonable case of amplification of forward radiation of the electrons. Ignoring space charge effects, the probe EM wave can be treated as transverse, propagating parallel to the electron beam. We assume the probe wave to be linearly polarized with the carrier frequency ω, wave vector k, and electric field strength

$$E = E_0(t, z_l)e^{i(kz_l - \omega t)} + \text{c.c.}, \tag{8.142}$$

where $E_0(t, z_l)$ is a slowly varying envelope and z_l is the coordinate along the electron beam propagation. Taking into account (8.140), the rate of energy exchange between the electrons and probe wave can be expressed in the form

$$\frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dz_l} \simeq \sum_n \frac{u_n e E_0(t, z_l)}{m^2 \text{v}\theta\gamma} \exp[i\Psi_n] + \text{c.c.}, \tag{8.143}$$

where

$$\Psi_n = kz_l - \omega t + \frac{2\pi}{d_1} n\text{v}\theta t. \tag{8.144}$$

Then, the coherence condition, at which the bremsstrahlung emitted from various crystal centers along the electron path interfere constructively, is the following:

$$\frac{d\Psi_n}{dz_l} = 0; \quad \omega = \frac{2\pi n \text{v}\theta}{d_1(1 - \frac{\text{v}}{c})}, \tag{8.145}$$

which represents the general resonance condition for the forward radiation. Though the consideration can be easily generalized to higher harmonics, we will consider the fundamental resonance and keep only the resonant term ($n = 1$) in (8.143). For the formulation of the Maxwell–Vlasov equations it is convenient to change the independent variables from (z_l, t) to $(z_l, \Psi_1 \equiv \psi)$ and the conjugate variable to ψ will be

$$\chi = (\gamma - \gamma_0)/\gamma_0, \tag{8.146}$$

where $mc^2\gamma_0$ is the electron resonant energy defined from (8.145). From (8.143) and (8.144) one can obtain the equations for (ψ, χ), generally known as the pendulum equations in the conventional undulator version of FEL:

$$\frac{d\psi}{dz_l} = \frac{4\pi}{d_1}\theta\chi, \tag{8.147}$$

$$\frac{d\chi}{dz_l} = \frac{e\xi_{cb}}{2mc\text{v}\gamma_0^2} E_0(\psi, z_l)e^{i\psi} + \text{c.c.}, \tag{8.148}$$

where by further analogy with the undulator or Compton FEL we have introduced the effective interaction parameter ξ_{cb} for coherent bremsstrahlung

$$\xi_{cb} = \frac{8\pi c N_a Z_a r_e R^2}{\mathrm{v}\theta}, \tag{8.149}$$

which has the same physical meaning as the usual ξ_H parameter for conventional undulators (r_e is the electron classical radius). Hence, taking into account (8.147) and (8.148) the Vlasov equation for the phase space distribution function $F(z_l, \psi, \chi)$ will be

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial z_l} + \frac{4\pi\theta\chi}{d_1}\frac{\partial F}{\partial \psi} + \frac{e\xi_{cb}}{2mc\mathrm{v}\gamma_0^2} \times \left(E_0(t, z_l)e^{i\psi} + \text{c.c.}\right)\frac{\partial F}{\partial \chi} = 0. \tag{8.150}$$

The Maxwell equation for the slowly varying envelope of the probe wave can be written as

$$\frac{\partial E_0}{\partial z_l} + \frac{2\pi\theta}{d_1}\frac{\partial E_0}{\partial \psi} + \mu E_0 = -\pi e\frac{\xi_{cb}}{\gamma_0}\overline{e^{-i\psi}\int F d\chi}, \tag{8.151}$$

where the bar denotes averaging over time and space much larger than $(1/\omega, 1/k)$, and to take into account the probe wave damping because of absorption and scattering in the crystal, we have introduced absorption coefficient μ. Equations (8.150) and (8.151) are the self-consistent set of equations for the considered scheme of FEL. The main impending factor in the coherent bremsstrahlung process, which we have not taken into account in (8.150), is the multiple scattering of electrons in a crystal. The latter will not violate the electron coupling with the radiation field and, consequently, will not have essential bearing on the amplification process, if the detuning of the phase ψ due to multiple scattering is less than π. For the forward radiation we have the condition $L\delta\vartheta_{ms}^2/2 < \lambda$ (where λ is the wavelength of the amplifying wave), which restricts the effective interaction length of the electrons in a crystal

$$L < L_{ms} = \left(8\pi r_e^2 Z_a^2 N_a d^{-1}\theta \ln 183 Z_a^{-1/3}\right)^{-1/2}, \tag{8.152}$$

where L_{ms} and ϑ_{ms} are the characteristic length and angle of multiple scattering.

We shall determine the conditions under which the collective instability develops in the coherent bremsstrahlung process causing the exponential growth of the probe wave. Correspondingly, we will assume steady-state operation and a small density perturbation for the electron beam and seek the solution of (8.150) in the form

$$F = F_0 + F_1 e^{i\psi} + \text{c.c.},$$

dropping all partial derivatives with respect to ψ in the equations for F_1 and E_0. For the initial cold electron beam at the exact resonance with distribution function

$$F_0(\chi) = N_0\delta(\chi)$$

(N_0 is the mean density of the electron beam) from (8.150) and (8.151) one can obtain the integro-differential equation for the slowly varying envelope E_0:

$$\frac{dE_0}{dz_l} + \mu E_0 = -\frac{\pi e\xi_{cb}\delta N_0}{\gamma_0} + i\alpha_g \int_0^z (z - z')E_0(z')dz'. \tag{8.153}$$

Here, we introduced the gain parameter

$$\alpha_g = \frac{2\pi^2 c r_e \xi_{cb}^2 N_0 \theta}{\text{v}\gamma_0^3 d_1}, \tag{8.154}$$

and for the initially modulated electron beam, it was assumed that

$$F_1(z = 0, \chi) = \delta N_0 \delta(\chi),$$

where $\delta N_0/N_0$ is the modulation depth. Performing Laplace transformation (8.91) on (8.153), we obtain the following characteristic equation:

$$q^3 + \mu q^2 - i\alpha_g = 0, \tag{8.155}$$

which for the values $\alpha_g > \mu$ gives the exponential growth rate for coherent bremsstrahlung

$$G = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left(\frac{2\pi^2 c r_e \xi_{cb}^2 N_0 \theta}{\text{v}\gamma_0^3 d_1}\right)^{1/3}. \tag{8.156}$$

For the high-gain regime the growth rate (8.156) is required to be larger than the characteristic ones for the impending effects of radiation absorption and multiple scattering of electrons in the crystal: $G > \max\{\mu, L_{ms}^{-1}\}$.

For the electron beam low currents $G \ll \{\mu, L_{ms}^{-1}\}$ and for the initially modulated current densities ($\delta N_0 \neq 0$), with no input signal, the solution of (8.153) gives

$$E_0 \simeq \frac{\pi e\xi_{cb}\delta N_0}{\gamma_0 \mu}\left(e^{-\frac{\mu}{2}z} - 1\right). \tag{8.157}$$

In (8.157) the amplification length z is restricted by the length of the multiple scattering of electrons in the crystal L_{ms}. At the large absorption of amplifying radiation in the crystal, when $\mu \gg 1/L_{ms}$, for the maximal power of output radiation, which has a superradiant nature, we have

$$I \simeq \frac{c}{2\pi}\left[\frac{\pi e \xi_{cb} \delta N_0}{\gamma_0 \mu}\right]^2. \tag{8.158}$$

In the inverse case of small absorption $\mu \ll 1/L_{ms}$ from (8.157) we have

$$I \simeq \frac{c}{8\pi}\left[\frac{\pi e \xi_{cb} \delta N_0}{\gamma_0} L_{ms}\right]^2. \tag{8.159}$$

Although the regimes (8.158) and (8.159) require low electron beam currents, they nevertheless may provide considerable output intensities for coherent X-ray. Hence, the considered setup of coherent bremsstrahlung in a crystal may serve as a powerful mechanism for prebunched electron beam superradiation, at moderate relativistic energies of electron beams.

8.7 Nonlinear Scheme of X-Ray FEL on the Channeling Particle Beam in a Crystal

As the channeling radiation of ultrarelativistic electrons and positrons lies in the X-ray and γ-ray domain, and its spectral intensity exceeds that of other radiation sources in this frequency range, the stimulated channeling radiation of charged particles is of certain interest as a potential FEL in the short wavelength domain. As the absorption coefficients of X-rays and γ-rays in crystals are very high ($\sim 10^2 \div 10^3 \mathrm{cm}^{-1}$) and the construction of mirrors in this domain is very problematic, it is necessary to study the possibilities of realization of the single-pass nonlinear regimes of X-ray amplification.

To obtain coherent radiation in the crystal channel it is most appropriate to use electron beams with comparatively low energies ($\mathcal{E} \lesssim 50$ MeV for planar channeled electrons and $\mathcal{E} \lesssim 10$ MeV for axial ones). First, the states of channeled electrons are most stable in this energy region, i.e., the scattering of channeled particles on atomic electrons and nuclei of the lattice is suppressed. Then, at these energies a few discrete energy levels in the transverse potential well of the channeled electron are formed that are not equidistant. In this case by means of varying the angle of incidence of the electron beam to the crystal an inverted population of electron states in the transverse potential can be reached. In addition, at low energies it is possible to use electron beams with high densities and increase the population inversion. Because the energy levels are not equidistant the stimulating EM wave resonantly couples only two energy levels, and the physical processes in the above-mentioned case of the channeling are similar to those of a two-level atom (two dimensional "atom" in the case of axial channeling, and one dimensional in the case of planar channeling) moving with relativistic velocity.

The problem concerned with controlling the overpopulation of channeled particles can be overcome by two component laser-assisted schemes. In particular, the stimulated Compton scattering by channeled particles is of certain interest as the necessity of inverse population of transverse levels for lasing vanishes and the cross section of the considered process is resonantly enhanced by several orders with respect to the Compton process on free electrons.

For the description of a FEL operating in the crystal, where transverse degrees of freedom of the particles are fully quantized, we will begin from the second quantization formalism. The second quantized Hamiltonian is

$$\widehat{H} = \int \widehat{\Psi}^{+} \widehat{H}_0 \widehat{\Psi} d\mathbf{r} + \widehat{H}_{int}, \tag{8.160}$$

where $\widehat{\Psi}$ is the fermionic field operator, $\widehat{H}_0$ is the one-particle Hamiltonian in the channel of the crystal (along the axis OZ) with average electrostatic potential $U(\rho)$ ($\rho \equiv x$ in case of a planar channeling and $\rho \equiv \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$ for the axial one), and $\widehat{H}_{int}$ is the interaction Hamiltonian:

$$\widehat{H}_{int} = -\frac{1}{c} \int \widehat{\mathbf{j}} (\mathbf{A}_e + \mathbf{A}) \, d\mathbf{r}. \tag{8.161}$$

Here, $\widehat{j} = e\widehat{\Psi}^{+}\widehat{\Psi}$ is the current density operator ($\widehat{}$is the Dirac matrix) and $\mathbf{A}_e$, $\mathbf{A}$ are the vector potentials of the probe and pump EM waves, respectively. To achieve maximal Doppler shift and optimal conditions of amplification, we will assume a co-propagating probe EM wave and channeled particle beam and counterpropagating pump EM wave. We will consider a linearly polarized (along OX) pump EM wave with the frequency ω and wave vector k that is described by the vector potential

$$\mathbf{A} = \widehat{\mathbf{x}} \frac{A_0}{2} \left\{ e^{i(\omega t + kz)} + \text{c.c.} \right\}. \tag{8.162}$$

We assume the probe wave to be linearly polarized with the carrier frequency ω', wave vector k', and vector potential

$$\mathbf{A}_e = \widehat{\mathbf{x}} \frac{1}{2} \left\{ A_e(t, z) e^{i(\omega' t - k' z)} + \text{c.c.} \right\}, \tag{8.163}$$

where $A_e(t, z)$ is a slowly varying envelope.

As in Sect. 8.1 we write the Heisenberg field operator of the particles in the form of an expansion in the stationary states

$$\widehat{\Psi}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sum_{\mu, p_z} \widehat{a}_{\mu, p_z}(t) e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar} \mathcal{E}_{\mu}(p_z) t} \psi_{\mu, p_z}. \tag{8.164}$$

The creation and annihilation operators $\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mu,p_z}(t)$ and $\widehat{a}_{\mu,p_z}(t)$, associated with positive energy $\mathcal{E}_\mu(p_z)$ solutions of the Dirac equation, satisfy the usual anticommutation rules at equal times (see (8.9), (8.10)). Here μ, p_z are the complete set of quantum numbers $\mu = \{p_y, n, \sigma\}$ for the planar channeling and $\mu = \{\mathfrak{m}, n, \sigma\}$ for the axial one, n is the main quantum number and $\mathfrak{m}$ is the magnetic quantum number, σ characterizes spin polarization and p_y, p_z are the components of particle momentum, ψ_{μ,p_z} are the normalized eigenvectors of channeled particle corresponding to the given set of quantum numbers. We will assume that probe and pump waves resonantly couple only two transverse levels, which will be labeled (0) and (1). It is also assumed that the particle beam is nonpolarized and the probability of transitions with the spin flip is negligible (this imposes a restriction on the wave frequency $\hbar\omega' \ll \mathcal{E}_\mu(p_z)$). As a result, taking into account (8.161)–(8.164) and keeping only the resonant terms (Rotating Frame Approximation) the Hamiltonian (8.160) can be reduced to the form

$$\widehat{H} = \sum_{p_z}\left[\mathcal{E}_0(p_z)\widehat{a}^{+}_{0,p_z}\widehat{a}_{0,p_z} + \mathcal{E}_1(p_z)\widehat{a}^{+}_{1,p_z}\widehat{a}_{1,p_z}\right] + \widehat{H}_{int} \tag{8.165}$$

with the interaction Hamiltonian:

$$\widehat{H}_{int} = \sum_{p_z}\Bigg[\frac{\beta_\perp}{2c}\Big\{ieA_0\widehat{a}^{+}_{0,p_z+\hbar k}\widehat{a}_{1,p_z}e^{i\Gamma(p_z+\hbar k,p_z,\omega)t}$$

$$+ieA_e\widehat{a}^{+}_{0,p_z-\hbar k'}\widehat{a}_{1,p_z}e^{i\Gamma\left(p_z-\hbar k',p_z,\omega'\right)t} + \text{h.c.}\Big\}\Bigg]. \tag{8.166}$$

Included in (8.166) the resonance detuning $\Gamma\left(p, p', \varpi\right)$ as a function of any three parameters has the following definition:

$$\Gamma\left(p, p', \varpi\right) = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0(p) - \mathcal{E}_1(p') + \hbar\varpi}{\hbar}, \tag{8.167}$$

and $\beta_\perp$ is the transition matrix element for the transverse velocity operator:

$$\beta_\perp = \Omega_{nn'}x_{\mu\mu'}, \tag{8.168}$$

where

$$\Omega_{nn'} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_{\perp n'} - \mathcal{E}_{\perp n}}{\hbar} \tag{8.169}$$

is the transition frequency between the initial and excited states of the transverse motion of the particle in the crystal channel. The resonant frequencies of the probe and pump waves for resonant coupling of the two transverse levels are defined from the conditions

$$\Gamma\left(p_z + \hbar k, p_z, \omega\right) = 0, \quad \Gamma\left(p_z - \hbar k', p_z, \omega'\right) = 0$$

and are written as

$$\omega = \frac{\Omega_{01}}{1 + n\left(\omega\right) \frac{\mathrm{v}_z}{c}}, \tag{8.170}$$

$$\omega' = \frac{\Omega_{01}}{1 - n\left(\omega'\right) \frac{\mathrm{v}_z}{c}}. \tag{8.171}$$

Here v_z is the electrons' mean longitudinal velocity in the beam and $n\left(\varpi\right)$ is the index of refraction of a crystal medium ($n\left(\omega'\right) \simeq 1$ for the frequency region under consideration).

The energy spectrum of the planar channeled electron in the potential well (7.103) has the form

$$\mathcal{E}_{\perp n} = -\frac{\hbar^2}{2b^2 m\gamma}\left[s - n\right]^2; \quad n = 0, 1, \ldots, [s], \tag{8.172}$$

where

$$s = -\frac{1}{2} + \sqrt{\frac{1}{4} + \frac{2b^2 m\gamma U_0}{\hbar^2}},$$

and for the axial channeled electron in the potential (7.35):

$$\varepsilon_{\perp n} = -\frac{m\gamma\alpha^2}{2\hbar^2}\frac{1}{\left(n + \frac{1}{2}\right)^2}; \quad n = 0, 1, 2, \ldots. \tag{8.173}$$

The selection rules for transitions are determined by the matrix element of dipole momentum and for the axial channeling are: $\Delta\mathfrak{m} = \pm 1$. For the planar channeling, $x_{\mu\mu'}$ differs from zero between the states having different parities. For the axial channeling there is degeneracy by the magnetic quantum number and in the case of the wave of linear polarization both of the states $\mathfrak{m} = \pm 1$ will have a contribution in the resonant interaction process. Because $\beta_\perp$ depends on $|\mathfrak{m}|$ for $\Delta\mathfrak{m} = \pm 1$ transitions, the $\mathfrak{m} = \pm 1$ states are equally populated if the initial populations are also equal.

In the channeling potential (7.103) for the $\mu_0 = \{0, 0\} \longrightarrow \mu = \{0, 1\}$ transition we have

$$\beta_\perp = \frac{\hbar}{2bm\gamma}\left(2s - 1\right)\left(\frac{s - 1}{2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}\frac{\Gamma^2\left(s - \frac{1}{2}\right)}{\Gamma^2\left(s\right)}, \tag{8.174}$$

where $\Gamma(s)$ is the Euler gamma function. In the potential (7.35) for the transition $\mu_0 = \{0, 0\} \longrightarrow \mu = \{\pm 1, 1\}$ we have

$$\beta_\perp = \sqrt{2}\frac{\alpha_c}{\hbar}\sqrt{\frac{3}{32}}\,, \tag{8.175}$$

where the factor $\sqrt{2}$ is related to the degeneracy for axial channeling.

For the determination of the self-consistent field, we need the evolution equation for the single-particle density matrix

$$\rho_{ij}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}', t) = \langle \widehat{a}^{+}_{j,\mathbf{p}'} \widehat{a}_{i,\mathbf{p}} \rangle. \tag{8.176}$$

From the Heisenberg equation (8.17) in the interaction representation we obtain the following equations for the populations of ground and excited states:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial \rho_{00}(p_z, p_z', t)}{\partial t} &= \frac{e}{2\hbar c}\beta_\perp \Big[A_0 \rho_{01}(p_z, p_z' - \hbar k, t) e^{-i\Gamma\left(p_z', p_z' - \hbar k, \omega\right)t} \\ &\quad + A_0 \rho_{10}(p_z - \hbar k, p_z', t) e^{i\Gamma(p_z, p_z - \hbar k, \omega)t} \\ &\quad + A_e^* \rho_{01}(p_z, p_z' + \hbar k', t) e^{-i\Gamma\left(p_z', p_z' + \hbar k', \omega'\right)t} \\ &\quad + A_e \rho_{10}(p_z + \hbar k', p_z', t) e^{i\Gamma\left(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', \omega'\right)t}\Big],\end{aligned} \tag{8.177}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial \rho_{11}(p_z, p_z', t)}{\partial t} &= -\frac{e}{2\hbar c}\beta_\perp \Big[A_0 \rho_{10}(p_z, p_z' + \hbar k, t) e^{i\Gamma\left(p_z' + \hbar k, p_z', \omega\right)t} \\ &\quad + A_e \rho_{10}(p_z, p_z' - \hbar k', t) e^{i\Gamma\left(p_z' - \hbar k', p_z', \omega'\right)t} \\ &\quad + A_0 \rho_{01}(p_z + \hbar k, p_z', t) e^{-i\Gamma(p_z + \hbar k, p_z, \omega)t} \\ &\quad + A_e^* \rho_{01}(p_z - \hbar k', p_z', t) e^{-i\Gamma\left(p_z - \hbar k', p_z, \omega'\right)t}\Big],\end{aligned} \tag{8.178}$$

and for the nondiagonal elements we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial \rho_{01}(p_z, p_z', t)}{\partial t} &= -\frac{e}{2\hbar c}\beta_\perp \Big[A_0 \rho_{00}(p_z, p_z' + \hbar k, t) e^{i\Gamma\left(p_z' + \hbar k, p_z', \omega\right)t} \\ &\quad + A_e \rho_{00}(p_z, p_z' - \hbar k', t) e^{i\Gamma\left(p_z' - \hbar k', p_z', \omega'\right)t} \\ &\quad - A_0 \rho_{11}(p_z - \hbar k, p_z', t) e^{i\Gamma(p_z, p_z - \hbar k, \omega)t}\end{aligned}$$

$$-A_e\rho_{11}(p_z+\hbar k', p'_z, t)e^{i\Gamma(p_z,p_z+\hbar k',\omega')t}\Big], \tag{8.179}$$

$$\rho_{10}(p_z, p'_z, t) = \rho^*_{01}(p'_z, p_z, t). \tag{8.180}$$

This set of equations should be supplemented by the Maxwell equation, which is reduced to

$$\frac{\partial A_e}{\partial t} + c\frac{\partial A_e}{\partial z} = \frac{4\pi ce}{\omega'}\beta_\perp \sum_{p_z} \rho_{01}(p_z, p_z+\hbar k')e^{-i\Gamma(p_z,p_z+\hbar k',\omega')t}. \tag{8.181}$$

Equations (8.177)–(8.181) define the FEL dynamics in the crystal channel with the pump EM wave.

First, we consider the case when there is no pump field ($A_0 = 0$). In this case for the X-ray generation process it is necessary to have an inverted population of the energy levels in transverse potential or one should have an initial macroscopic dipole momentum, i.e., the electrons should be in the coherent superposition state of transverse levels.

If $A_0 = 0$ from (8.177)–(8.180) one can find the closed set of equations for the density matrix elements $\rho_{00}(p_z, p_z, t)$, $\rho_{11}(p_z+\hbar k', p_z+\hbar k', t)$, and $\rho_{01}(p_z, p_z+\hbar k', t)$:

$$\frac{\partial\rho_{00}(p_z, p_z, t)}{\partial t} = \frac{e}{2\hbar c}\beta_\perp\Big[A^*_e\rho_{01}(p_z, p_z+\hbar k', t)e^{-i\Gamma(p_z,p_z+\hbar k',\omega')t}$$

$$+A_e\rho^*_{01}(p_z, p_z+\hbar k', t)e^{i\Gamma(p_z,p_z+\hbar k',\omega')t}\Big], \tag{8.182}$$

$$\frac{\partial\rho_{11}(p_z+\hbar k', p_z+\hbar k', t)}{\partial t} = -\frac{\partial\rho_{00}(p_z, p_z, t)}{\partial t}, \tag{8.183}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial\rho_{01}(p_z, p_z+\hbar k', t)}{\partial t} = \frac{e}{2\hbar c}\beta_\perp A_e e^{i\Gamma(p_z,p_z+\hbar k',\omega')t}$$

$$\times\left[\rho_{11}(p_z+\hbar k', p_z+\hbar k', t) - \rho_{00}(p_z, p_z, t)\right]. \tag{8.184}$$

Introducing the new quantities

$$\rho_{11}(p_z+\hbar k', p_z+\hbar k', t) - \rho_{00}(p_z, p_z, t) = 2\pi\hbar\delta F(p_z),$$

$$J(p_z) = \frac{e\beta_\perp}{2\pi\hbar}\rho_{01}(p_z, p_z+\hbar k', t)e^{-i\Gamma(p_z,p_z+\hbar k',\omega')t}$$

and replacing the time derivatives $\partial/\partial t \to \partial/\partial t + \mathrm{v}_z\partial/\partial z$, we obtain

$$\frac{\partial \delta F\left(p_z\right)}{\partial t}+\mathrm{v}_z \frac{\partial \delta F\left(p_z\right)}{\partial z}=-\frac{e}{\hbar c}\left(A_e^* J\left(p_z\right)+A_e J^*\left(p_z\right)\right),$$

$$\frac{\partial J\left(p_z\right)}{\partial t}+\mathrm{v}_z \frac{\partial J\left(p_z\right)}{\partial z}+i \Gamma\left(p_z-\hbar k^{\prime}, p_z, \omega^{\prime}\right) J\left(p_z\right)=\frac{e^2 \beta_{\perp}^2}{2 \hbar c} A_e \delta F\left(p_z\right),$$

$$\frac{\partial A_e}{\partial t}+c \frac{\partial A_e(t, z)}{\partial z}=\frac{4 \pi c}{\omega^{\prime}} \int J\left(p_z\right) d p_z. \tag{8.185}$$

This set of equations is equivalent to the set (8.36) for the Compton and undulator FELs. One should make only the replacement in (8.36)

$$M^2 \rightarrow 2 \beta_{\perp}^2. \tag{8.186}$$

Hence, we will not repeat all calculations which have done for Compton and undulator FELs and will use the obtained results. In particular, for steady-state regimes we have the same solutions (8.60), (8.65), where the main characteristic parameter of amplification (the characteristic length of amplification) will be

$$L_{ch}=\frac{1}{\chi_{ch}}; \quad \chi_{ch}=\sqrt{\frac{2 \pi \beta_{\perp}^2 e^2 N_0}{\hbar \omega^{\prime} c \mathrm{v}_z}}. \tag{8.187}$$

The coherent interaction time of channeled particles with EM radiation is confined by the lifetime of eigenstates of channeled particles and dechanneling effects. For the axial channeling of mildly relativistic electrons, the eigenstate width is of order of 1 eV (at $\hbar\omega' \sim 1$ keV) which corresponds to relaxation length $L_r \sim 1\ \mu$m. For planar channeling this length is a little large. To fulfill the condition $L_{ch} \lesssim L_r$ one needs high electron currents. However, the maximal current that can be used in this process is strongly restricted because of the effects of damaging the crystal as well as increasing the beam divergence and the strong bremsstrahlung background. As we saw in Sect. 8.2 the regime of wave amplification when the electron beam is modulated —"macroscopic transition current" differs from zero—may operate without any initial seeding power, and radiation intensity in this regime reaches a significant value even for small interaction lengths. In the considered case initially electrons should be in the coherent superposition state of transverse levels and the maximal intensity that can be extracted here is

$$W \sim N_0 \hbar \omega^{\prime} \mathrm{v}_z\left(\frac{L_r}{L_{ch}}\right)^2,$$

which for allowable electron currents at the frequency $\hbar\omega' \sim 1$ keV is of order of $1\ \mathrm{kW/cm}^2$.

8.8 Compton FEL on the Channeling Particle Beam

Consider the scheme of X-ray coherent radiation generation by means of mildly relativistic high-density channeled particle beam and strong counterpropagating pump laser field. In this case the necessity of inverse population of transverse levels for lasing vanishes and as we will see the exponential growth rate of the considered process is resonantly enhanced by several orders with respect to the Compton FEL. We will assume that the pump laser field is not too strong (the Rabi frequency is small compared with resonance detuning) and, consequently, the population of transverse excited state remains small. The main terms responsible for the wave amplification in this case are $\rho_{00}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k, t)$ and $\rho_{01}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', t)$. Hence, from the set of (8.177)–(8.180) in the first order by the fields when

$$\rho_{ij}(p_z, p_z', t) = \rho_{ij}^{(0)}(p_z, p_z', t) + \rho_{ij}^{(1)}(p_z, p_z', t)$$

and keeping only the resonant terms, we will obtain

$$\frac{\partial \rho_{00}^{(1)}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k, t)}{\partial t} = \frac{e\beta_\perp}{2\hbar c}\Big[A_e \rho_{10}^{(0)}(p_z + \hbar k', p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k, t) \times e^{i\Gamma\left(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', \omega'\right)t} + A_0 \rho_{01}^{(0)}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', t) \times e^{-i\Gamma\left(p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k, p_z + \hbar k', \omega\right)t}\Big], \tag{8.188}$$

$$\frac{\partial \rho_{01}^{(1)}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', t)}{\partial t} = -\frac{eA_0\beta_\perp}{2\hbar c}\rho_{00}^{(1)}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k, t)e^{i\Gamma\left(p_z' + \hbar k, p_z', \omega\right)t}, \tag{8.189}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial \rho_{01}^{(0)}(p_z, p_z', t)}{\partial t} = -\frac{e\beta_\perp}{2\hbar c}\Big[A_0 \rho_{00}^{(0)}(p_z, p_z' + \hbar k, t)e^{i\Gamma\left(p_z' + \hbar k, p_z', \omega\right)t} + A_e \rho_{00}^{(0)}(p_z, p_z' - \hbar k', t)e^{i\Gamma\left(p_z' - \hbar k', p_z', \omega'\right)t}\Big]. \tag{8.190}$$

The Maxwell equation (8.181) for this process is

$$\frac{\partial A_e}{\partial t} = \frac{4\pi c e}{\omega'}\beta_\perp \times \sum_{p_z}\Big[\rho_{01}^{(0)}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k') + \rho_{01}^{(1)}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k')\Big] e^{-i\Gamma\left(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', \omega'\right)t}. \tag{8.191}$$

Here, we will consider the probe wave amplification in time at which the spatial dependence of the quantities will be neglected. It is also assumed that the initial electron beam is uniform and, consequently,

$$\rho_{00}^{(0)}(p_z, p_z', t) = 2\pi\hbar F_0\left(\frac{p_z + p_z'}{2}\right)\delta_{p_z p_z'}, \tag{8.192}$$

where $F(p_z)$ is the classical momentum distribution function of electrons.

Taking into account (8.192), the solution of (8.190) for the first-order nondiagonal elements of the electrons' density matrix is

$$\rho_{01}^{(0)}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', t) = i\frac{\pi\beta_\perp}{c}eA_e F_0(p_z)\frac{e^{i\Gamma(p_z, p_z+\hbar k', \omega')t}}{\Gamma(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', \omega')}, \tag{8.193}$$

$$\rho_{10}^{(0)}(p_z + \hbar k', p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k, t) = -i\frac{\pi\beta_\perp}{c}eA_0 F_0\left(p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k\right)$$
$$\times\frac{e^{-i\Gamma\left(p_z+\hbar k'+\hbar k, p_z+\hbar k', \omega\right)t}}{\Gamma(p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k, p_z + \hbar k', \omega)}. \tag{8.194}$$

Substituting (8.193) and (8.194) into (8.188) and (8.191) and taking into account that

$$\Gamma\left(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', \omega'\right) - \Gamma\left(p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k, p_z + \hbar k', \omega\right) = \Gamma_{0p_z}$$

(see the definition (8.167)), where

$$\Gamma_{0p_z} = \frac{\mathcal{E}_0(p_z) - \mathcal{E}_0(p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k) + \hbar\omega' - \hbar\omega}{\hbar} \tag{8.195}$$

is the resonance detuning for the Compton scattering, we obtain the self-consistent set of equations which determines the evolution and dynamics of the considered FEL:

$$\frac{dA_e}{dt} = i\Delta A_e + \frac{4\pi c}{\omega'}\int e^{-i\Gamma(p_z, p_z+\hbar k', \omega')t}J(p_z, t)dp_z, \tag{8.196}$$

$$\frac{dJ}{dt} = -\frac{A_0 e^2\beta_\perp^2}{2\hbar c}e^{i\Gamma(p_z+\hbar k'+\hbar k, p_z+\hbar k', \omega)t}\delta n(p_z, t), \tag{8.197}$$

$$\frac{d\delta n}{dt} = i\frac{A_0 A_e e^2\beta_\perp^2}{4\hbar^2 c^2}e^{i\Gamma_{0p_z}t}\left[\frac{F_0(p_z)}{\Gamma(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', \omega')}\right.$$
$$\left.-\frac{F_0(p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k)}{\Gamma(p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k, p_z + \hbar k', \omega)}\right]. \tag{8.198}$$

Here for convenience we have introduced new quantities

$$\delta n(p_z, t) \equiv \frac{1}{2\pi\hbar}\rho_{00}^{(1)}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k, t),$$

$$J(p_z, t) \equiv \frac{e\beta_\perp}{2\pi\hbar}\rho_{01}^{(1)}(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', t),$$

and the summation is replaced by integration. Then

$$\Delta = \frac{2\pi e^2 \beta_\perp^2}{\hbar\omega'} \int dp_z \frac{F_0(p_z)}{\Gamma\,(p_z, p_z + \hbar k', \omega')} \tag{8.199}$$

is the frequency shift due to the particle beam polarization (induced dipole moment).

Performing Laplace transformation on (8.196), (8.197), and (8.198) we arrive at the following characteristic equation:

$$q - i\Delta = -i\frac{\pi e^4 \beta_\perp^4 A_0^2}{2\hbar^3 c^2 \omega'} \int \frac{dp_z}{\left(q + i\Gamma_{0p_z}\right)\left(q + i\Gamma_{p_z, p_z+\hbar k', \omega'}\right)}$$

$$\times \left[\frac{F_0(p_z)}{\Gamma_{p_z, p_z+\hbar k', \omega'}} - \frac{F_0(p_z + \hbar k' + \hbar k)}{\Gamma_{p_z+\hbar k'+\hbar k,\, p_z+\hbar k', \omega}}\right]. \tag{8.200}$$

This is a transcendental equation that allows one to determine the small signal gain in various regimes. For the cold electron beam (8.95), taking into account the condition $|q| \gg \left|\Gamma_{0p_z}\right|, |\Delta|$ (high-gain regime) and neglecting the quantum recoil, from (8.200) one can obtain the exponential growth rate:

$$G = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left[\frac{4\pi r_e}{\lambda_c}\frac{mc}{\hbar\Omega_{01}\gamma}\frac{\xi_0^2}{\delta^2}\beta_\perp^4 N_0\right]^{1/3}. \tag{8.201}$$

Here $\lambda_c = \hbar/mc$ is the particle Compton wavelength, r_e is the electron classical radius, and

$$\delta = \frac{|\omega + \mathrm{v}_z k - \Omega_{01}|}{\Omega_{01}}$$

is the relative detuning of the resonance.

Equation (8.201) defines the exponential growth rate of X-rays in the crystal at "Compton" scattering of a strong pump laser radiation on the channeled particle beam at the resonance. Instead of ξ_0^2 in the Compton effect on the free electrons the effective interaction parameter in the channeling process is determined by the resonance parameter ξ_0^2/δ^2. For the high-gain regime it is necessary that $GL_r/c > 1$, where L_r is the relaxation length in the crystal.

The obtained results are also applicable for positron beams channeled in the zeolite crystals containing hollow channels with the diameter $R \sim 10 \div 100$ Å. In this case, main time channeled particles move in the hollow channel and atomic electrons are disposed in the thin layer of the internal surface of the channel and the scattering processes are suppressed and the relaxation time is much larger than in the monocrystals ($L_r \sim 0.1$ cm). Besides, if $\lambda < R$ (λ is the wavelength of amplifying radiation) the X-ray absorption and scattering process is also suppressed, which in turn reduces the threshold currents and the considered setup will be more preferable. In this case, the potential of the channel can be approximated by the potential $U(\rho) = 0$, if $\rho < R$; and ∞, if $\rho \geq R$. Then the resonance can be achieved by the infrared pump lasers as $\hbar\Omega_{01} \sim 0.1$ eV and one can consider the SASE regime as a small setup single-pass soft X-ray FEL.

8.9 Nonlinear Scheme of X-Ray Laser on the Ion and Pump Laser Beams

As an alternative version of FEL we will consider the problem of generation of coherent shortwave radiation by relativistic ion beams when due to the existence of bound states, the ion–photon interaction cross section resonantly increases with respect to the electron–photon scattering one. From this point of view, stimulated radiation from relativistic ion beams is a synthesis of conventional quantum generators and FELs in the X-ray domain.

We consider as our model a relativistic beam of two-level ions, co-propagating (Z axis) probe EM wave with a frequency ω and wave vector $\mathbf{k}$, and counterpropagating strong pump EM wave of frequency ω_0 and wave vector $\mathbf{k}_0$. The EM waves are treated as classical fields and the total electrical field is given by

$$\mathbf{E}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_0 E_0 e^{i\omega_0 t - i\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}} + \frac{1}{2}\boldsymbol{\epsilon} E_e(t, \mathbf{r}) e^{i\omega t - i\mathbf{k}\mathbf{r}} + \text{c.c.}. \tag{8.202}$$

The probe wave is characterized by slowly varying amplitude $E_e(t, \mathbf{r})$ and unit polarization vector $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}$, while a pump wave is characterized by a given amplitude E_0 and polarization vector $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_0$ (both waves are linearly polarized). We assume that an internal ionic electron is nonrelativistic and the transition takes place from an S state to a P state. The Hamiltonian governing the evolution of the ion beam in the field (8.202) takes the following second quantized form in the resonant approximation:

$$\widehat{H} \simeq \sum_{\mathbf{p}, s=1,2} \mathcal{E}_s(\mathbf{p}) \widehat{a}^+_{s,\mathbf{p}} \widehat{a}_{s,\mathbf{p}} + \sum_{\mathbf{p}} \Big[\hbar\Omega_{0\mathbf{p}} e^{i\omega_0 t} \widehat{a}^+_{1,\mathbf{p}-\hbar\mathbf{k}_0} \widehat{a}_{2,\mathbf{p}} + \hbar\Omega_{\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{r}, t) e^{i\omega t} \widehat{a}^+_{1,\mathbf{p}-\hbar\mathbf{k}} \widehat{a}_{2,\mathbf{p}} + \text{h.c.} \Big]. \tag{8.203}$$

Here,

$$\mathcal{E}_s(\mathbf{p}) = \sqrt{c^2\mathbf{p}^2 + (m_i c^2 + w_s)^2}; \quad s = 1, 2 \tag{8.204}$$

is the total energy of the ion with the momentum $\mathbf{p}$ of the center-of-mass motion and w_1, w_2 are the binding energies of the internal ionic electron in the ground and excited states, respectively (m_i is the ion mass). Then $\widehat{a}^+_{s,\mathbf{p}}$, $\widehat{a}_{s,\mathbf{p}}$ denote ionic creation and annihilation operators for the internal states $s = 1, 2$ with center-of-mass momentum $\mathbf{p}$. These operators satisfy the usual either bosonic or fermionic type equal time commutation rules. The couplings

$$\Omega_{0\mathbf{p}} = \frac{E_0\epsilon_0\mathbf{d}_{12}}{2\hbar}\left(1 - \frac{\mathbf{v}\mathbf{k}_0}{\omega_0}\right), \tag{8.205}$$

$$\Omega_{\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{E_e(t, \mathbf{r})\epsilon \boldsymbol{d}_{12}}{2\hbar}\left(1 - \frac{\mathbf{v}\mathbf{k}}{\omega}\right) \tag{8.206}$$

take into account the dipole interaction as well as the interaction of magnetic moment $[\mathbf{d}_{12} \times \mathbf{v}]/c$ (because of moving electric dipole) with the magnetic field of the waves. In (8.206) $\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{p}/m_i\gamma$ is the ion velocity, γ is the Lorentz factor, and $\mathbf{d}_{12}$ is the ionic transition dipole moment.

We will use again the Heisenberg representation where evolution of the operators are given by (8.17) and expectation values are determined by the initial density matrix of the ion beam (see (8.18)). Then the Heisenberg equations should be supplemented by the Maxwell equation for slowly varying amplitude $E_e(t, \mathbf{r})$ analogously to (8.19). The resonant current for ion beam is defined by the nondiagonal element of the single-particle density matrix

$$\rho_{12}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p} + \hbar\mathbf{k}, t) = \langle \widehat{a}^+_{2,\mathbf{p}+\hbar\mathbf{k}}\widehat{a}_{1,\mathbf{p}}\rangle. \tag{8.207}$$

We will assume that initially ions are in the ground state and the pump laser field is not so strong or it is far off resonance and consequently, the excited state population remains small. In analogy with the previous section introducing the functions

$$\rho_{11}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p} + \hbar\mathbf{k} - \hbar\mathbf{k}_0, t) = \rho^{(0)}_{11}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p} + \hbar\mathbf{k} - \hbar\mathbf{k}_0) + (2\pi\hbar)^3 e^{i(\omega-\omega_0)t}\delta n(\mathbf{p}, t), \tag{8.208}$$

$$\rho_{12}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p} + \hbar\mathbf{k}, t) = \rho^{(0)}_{12}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p} + \hbar\mathbf{k}) + (2\pi\hbar)^3 e^{i\omega t} J(\mathbf{p}, t) \tag{8.209}$$

from the Heisenberg and Maxwell equations one can obtain the self-consistent set of equations which determines the evolution and dynamics of the considered system:

$$\frac{\partial E_e}{\partial t} + \frac{c^2\mathbf{k}}{\omega}\frac{\partial E_e}{\partial \mathbf{r}} - i\Delta E_e = 4\pi i\omega\epsilon \boldsymbol{d}^*_{12}\int\left(1 - \frac{\mathbf{v}\mathbf{k}}{\omega}\right) J(\mathbf{p}, t)d\mathbf{p}, \tag{8.210}$$

$$\frac{\partial J}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v}_0\frac{\partial J}{\partial \mathbf{r}} + i\Gamma_1(\mathbf{p})J = i\Omega_{0\mathbf{p}}\delta n(\mathbf{p}, t), \tag{8.211}$$

$$\frac{\partial \delta n}{\partial t} + \mathbf{v}_0\frac{\partial \delta n}{\partial \mathbf{r}} + i\Gamma_0(\mathbf{p})\delta n = i\Omega^*_{0\mathbf{p}}\Omega_{\mathbf{p}}$$

$$\times \left[\frac{F_0\left(\mathbf{p}+\hbar\mathbf{k}-\hbar\mathbf{k}_0\right)}{\Gamma_1(\mathbf{p})-\Gamma_0(\mathbf{p})} - \frac{F_0\left(\mathbf{p}\right)}{\Gamma_1(\mathbf{p})} \right]. \tag{8.212}$$

To take into account the pulse propagation effects we have replaced the time derivatives $\partial/\partial t \to \partial/\partial t + \mathbf{v}_0\partial/\partial\mathbf{r}$, where $\mathbf{v}_0$ is the mean velocity of the ion beam. Here, it is assumed that the initial beam is uniform and consequently

$$\rho_{11}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}',0) = (2\pi\hbar)^3 F_0\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{p}'}{2}\right)\delta_{\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}'}, \tag{8.213}$$

where $F_0\left(\mathbf{p}\right)$ is the ions' classical center-of-mass momentum distribution function and $\delta_{\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}'}$ is the Kronecker symbol (summation is replaced by integration). Then

$$\Delta = \frac{2\pi\omega\left|\epsilon\boldsymbol{d}_{12}\right|^2}{\hbar}\int d\mathbf{p}\frac{\left(1-\frac{\mathbf{vk}}{\omega}\right)^2 F_0\left(\mathbf{p}\right)}{\Gamma_1(\mathbf{p})} \tag{8.214}$$

is the frequency shift because of the ion beam polarization (refractive index caused by ion beam) and

$$\Gamma_0(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{\mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p}) - \mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p}+\hbar\mathbf{k}-\hbar\mathbf{k}_0) + \hbar\omega - \hbar\omega_0}{\hbar} \tag{8.215}$$

is the resonance detuning for the Compton scattering of the strong wave on ions, while

$$\Gamma_1(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{\mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p}) + \hbar\omega - \mathcal{E}_2\left(\mathbf{p}+\hbar\mathbf{k}\right)}{\hbar} \tag{8.216}$$

is the resonance detuning for absorption/emission of the probe wave's quanta.

To determine the conditions under which we will have collective instability and consequently the exponential growth of the probe wave, one should perform the same procedure as was made for the high-gain regime of amplification on an electron beam. We will assume again the steady-state operation at which one can drop all partial time derivatives in (8.210), (8.211), and (8.212). Performing Laplace transformation (8.91) on (8.210), (8.211), and (8.212) we arrive at the following characteristic equation for variable q:

$$q - i\Delta = \int \frac{K(\mathbf{p})d\mathbf{p}}{\left(q+i\Gamma_0(\mathbf{p})\right)\left(q+i\Gamma_1(\mathbf{p})\right)}, \tag{8.217}$$

where

$$K\left(\mathbf{p}\right) = \frac{2\pi i\omega\left|\epsilon\boldsymbol{d}_{12}\right|^2\left|\Omega_{0\mathbf{p}}\right|^2}{\hbar \mathrm{v}_{0z}^2 c}\left(1-\frac{\mathbf{vk}}{\omega}\right)^2$$

$$\times\left[\frac{F_0\left(\mathbf{p}\right)}{\Gamma_1(\mathbf{p})}-\frac{F_0\left(\mathbf{p}+\hbar\mathbf{k}-\hbar\mathbf{k}_0\right)}{\Gamma_1(\mathbf{p})-\Gamma_0(\mathbf{p})}\right]. \tag{8.218}$$

This is the transcendental equation which allows one to determine a small signal gain in various regimes.

For initially cold ion beam

$$F_0\left(\mathbf{p}\right)=N_{i0}\delta(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{p}_0)$$

(N_{i0} is the beam density) taking into account (8.215), (8.216), as well as the conditions $|q|\gg|\Gamma_0(\mathbf{p}_0)|$, $|\Delta|$ (high-gain regime), and $|q|\ll|\Gamma_1(\mathbf{p}_0)|$ and neglecting the quantum recoil, from (8.217) one can obtain the exponential growth rate of the probe X-ray:

$$G=\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\left[\frac{\Omega_r^2}{\delta^2}\frac{2\pi\omega^3\left|\epsilon\boldsymbol{d}_{12}\right|^2}{\mathrm{v}_{0z}^2\gamma_0^5m_ic^3}N_{i0}\right]^{1/3}. \tag{8.219}$$

Here,

$$\Omega_r=\frac{E_0\epsilon_0\mathbf{d}_{12}}{2\hbar} \tag{8.220}$$

is the Rabi frequency associated with the pump wave,

$$\delta=\omega_{12}-\omega_0\gamma_0\left(1+\frac{\mathrm{v}_{0z}}{c}\right) \tag{8.221}$$

is the resonance detuning, and

$$\omega_{12}=\frac{w_2-w_1}{\hbar}$$

is the transition frequency for internal ionic electron.

Equation (8.219) defines the exponential growth rate of X-rays at the induced "Compton" scattering of a strong pump laser radiation on the ion beam, which is resonantly enhanced with respect to the Compton laser on free electrons.

8.10 Crystal Potential as a Pump Field for Generation of Coherent X-Ray

Consider now the possibility of coherent X-ray radiation generation by a fast, multiply charged, channeled ion beam in a crystal without a pump laser field. In the proposed process the X-ray transitions involving the K or L shell electrons in ions can be resonantly excited by the periodic crystal potential seen by fast channeled ions. The emission frequencies in this case are determined by the discrete spectrum of the electron states in ions and by the Doppler shift due to the ion center-of-mass motion. With respect to moving ions, the crystal electrostatic potential plays the role of an effective pumping field with the Rabi frequency corresponding to a high power "X-ray laser". By varying the crystal thickness, one can obtain diverse equivalent "X-ray pulses" leading to various coherent superposition states, from which one can obtain coherent X-ray radiation from the ion beam spontaneous superradiation.

Below we will consider superradiant coherent X-ray generation when an ion beam moves close to the crystal lattice axis. This radiation is predicted by the second quantized Maxwell and quantum equations governing the motion of an ion beam in a crystal.

For channeling an ion beam in a crystal, we assume that the incident angle of ions (with a charge number of the nucleus Z_i) with respect to a crystalline axis (OZ) is smaller than the Lindhard angle. Then the potential of the atomic chain, which governs the ion motion, can be represented in the form

$$V(z, r_\perp) = \sum_n V_n(r_\perp) \exp\left[i\frac{2\pi n}{d}z\right], \tag{8.222}$$

where d is the crystal lattice period along the channel axis, $V_n(r_\perp)$ is defined by the single atomic potential of the crystal, which is given by the screening Coulomb potential with the radius of screening R and a charge number of the nucleus Z_c that has the form

$$V_n(r_\perp) = \frac{2eZ_c}{d} K_0\left(r_\perp q_n\right),$$

$$q_n = \sqrt{\frac{1}{R^2} + \left(\frac{2\pi n}{d}\right)^2}, \tag{8.223}$$

where K_0 is a modified Bessel function.

The potential (8.222) acts on the internal electron as well as on the ion center-of-mass motion, providing channeling. The center of mass of the ion represents slow oscillations in the transverse direction ($\mathbf{r}_\perp$) and free motion (on average) along the crystalline axis. For the ionic electron the atomic chain potential acts as an exciting field. The latter is obvious in the rest frame of reference of the ion (neglecting transverse oscillations) where there is an oscillating time/space electromagnetic field with a fundamental frequency $2\pi\gamma \mathrm{v}_z/d$ (γ is the Lorentz factor, v_z is the ion longitudinal velocity). If one of the harmonics (n) of this frequency is close to the frequency ω_{12} associated with the energy difference of the ionic electron levels

$$\frac{2\pi n\gamma \mathrm{v}_z}{d} \simeq \omega_{12}, \tag{8.224}$$

we can expect resonant excitation of ions. The latter represents the conservation law for the total energy (neglecting quantum recoil) in the laboratory frame of reference.

As the physical picture of the considered process is more evident in the frame of reference connected with the ion beam and the problem becomes nonrelativistic in this frame, then it is more convenient to pass to the rest frame of the ion beam (moving with the mean velocity v_0 of the beam). If the resonance condition (8.224) holds, we can keep only the resonant harmonic in the potential (8.222) and the Hamiltonian describing the quantum kinetics of the channeled ion beam takes the following second quantized form in the resonant approximation:

$$\widehat{H}_{ic} \simeq \sum_{\mathbf{p},s=1,2} \mathcal{E}_s(\mathbf{p})\widehat{a}^+_{s,\mathbf{p}}\,\widehat{a}_{s,\mathbf{p}} + \sum_{\mathbf{p}}\left[\hbar\Omega_c e^{i\omega_c t}\widehat{a}^+_{1,\mathbf{p}-\hbar\mathbf{g}_n}\,\widehat{a}_{2,\mathbf{p}} + \text{h.c.}\right]. \tag{8.225}$$

Here, we have introduced the lattice vector

$$\mathbf{g}_n = \left(0, 0, -\frac{2\pi n\gamma_0}{d}\right),$$

where $\gamma_0 = (1 - \mathrm{v}_0^2/c^2)^{-1/2}$, and $\widehat{a}^+_{s,\mathbf{p}}$, $\widehat{a}_{s,\mathbf{p}}$ denote ionic creation and annihilation operators for the states $s = 1, 2$ with center-of-mass momentum $\mathbf{p}$ and energy

$$\mathcal{E}_s(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m_i} + w_s$$

(w_s is the binding energy of the ionic electron). These operators satisfy either the usual bosonic or fermionic type equal time commutation rules. The coupling is

$$\Omega_c = \frac{2eZ_c\gamma_0}{\hbar d}\left\{-ig_n f_z K_0\left(\overline{r}_\perp q_n\right) + \frac{\mathbf{f}\mathbf{r}_\perp}{r_\perp} q_n K_1\left(\overline{r}_\perp q_n\right)\right\}, \tag{8.226}$$

where $\mathbf{f}$ is the ionic transition dipole moment, which represents the Rabi frequency, with the assumption that the crystal potential acts as a quasimonochromatic wave with the frequency

$$\omega_c = \mathrm{v}_0 g_n; \quad g_n = \frac{2\pi n\gamma_0}{d}. \tag{8.227}$$

In (8.226) we have neglected the ion transverse oscillations, since they are much slower than the frequency of collisions of ions with the atoms of the crystalline axis. Here $\overline{r}_\perp$ is the ion mean transverse displacement.

The full Hamiltonian describing also the radiation processes will be

$$\widehat{H} = \widehat{H}_{ic} + \sum_{\mathbf{k},\mu=1,2} \hbar\omega\widehat{c}^+_{\mathbf{k},\mu}\widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\mu}$$

$$+ \sum_{\mathbf{p},\mathbf{k},\mu} \left[\hbar \Omega_{\mathbf{k},\mu} \widehat{a}^{+}_{1,\mathbf{p}-\hbar\mathbf{k}} \, \widehat{a}_{2,\mathbf{p}} \widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\mu} + \text{h.c.} \right], \tag{8.228}$$

where the second term is the Hamiltonian of the photon field with the creation and annihilation operators $\widehat{c}^{+}_{\mathbf{k},\mu}$, $\widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\mu}$ of photons with momentum $\hbar\mathbf{k}$ and linear polarization $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_\mu$ ($\mu = 1, 2$). The last term is the Hamiltonian of interaction of the ions with the photon field and

$$\Omega_{\mathbf{k},\mu} = \sqrt{2\pi\hbar\omega} \left(\boldsymbol{\epsilon}_\mu \mathbf{f} \right) \tag{8.229}$$

is the Rabi frequency for the quantized photon field (the quantization volume is taken to be $V = 1$).

If the effective Rabi frequency is large enough and the crystal length is short enough, the spontaneous emission and the relaxation processes may be neglected during the time of interaction of ions with the crystal. In this case, the Heisenberg equation (8.17) for the operators $\widehat{a}_{s,\mathbf{p}}$ may be solved analytically. This gives the following solution:

$$\widehat{a}_{1,\mathbf{p}} = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p})t} \, e^{-i\frac{1}{2}\delta_{\mathrm{v}_z}\tau} \left\{ \cos \Omega\tau + i \frac{\delta_{\mathrm{v}_z}}{2\Omega} \sin \Omega\tau \right\} \widehat{a}^{(0)}_{1,\mathbf{p}},$$

$$\widehat{a}_{2,\mathbf{p}} = -i e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_2(\mathbf{p})t} e^{i\frac{1}{2}\delta_{\mathrm{v}_z}\tau} \sin \Omega\tau \frac{\Omega_c}{\Omega} \widehat{a}^{(0)}_{1,\mathbf{p}-\hbar\mathbf{g}_n}. \tag{8.230}$$

Here $\widehat{a}^{(0)}_{1,\mathbf{p}}$ is the initial operator, τ is the ion interaction time with the crystal,

$$\delta_{\mathrm{v}_z} = \omega_{12} - \omega_c - g_n \mathrm{v}_z \tag{8.231}$$

is the resonance detuning, and

$$\Omega = \sqrt{|\Omega_c|^2 + \frac{\delta^2_{\mathrm{v}_z}}{4}} \tag{8.232}$$

is the effective Rabi frequency. We assume that initially ions are in the ground state, so that in (8.230) we have not written the terms with the operator $\widehat{a}^{(0)}_{2,\mathbf{p}}$. As we see, the population of electrons oscillates coherently between the states depending on the crystal length $L_c \simeq \mathrm{v}_z\tau$. If $|\Omega_c| \gg \left|\delta_{\mathrm{v}_z}\right|$ and the crystal length corresponds to "pulse area" $|\Omega_c|\,\tau = j\pi/4$ ($j = 1, 2, ...$), the ion beam will then have the maximal polarization (macroscopic dipole moment).

To investigate the properties of ion beam radiation (in free space) we come back to the full Hamiltonian and perturbatively calculate the photonic operators $\widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\mu}(t)$:

$$\widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\mu}(t) = -i\pi\hbar\Omega_{\mathbf{k},\mu} \sum_{\mathbf{p}} \widehat{a}^{+}_{1,\mathbf{p}-\hbar\mathbf{k}} \, \widehat{a}_{2,\mathbf{p}}$$

$$\times\, \delta(\hbar\omega + \mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p} - \hbar\mathbf{k}) - \mathcal{E}_2(\mathbf{p})). \tag{8.233}$$

The output spectrum consists of coherent and incoherent radiation. The coherent superradiation is defined by the mean value of the photonic operators $\langle \widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k}\mu}(t)\rangle$, i.e., it is proportional to the Fourier transform of the mean ion polarization $\langle \widehat{a}^+_{1,\mathbf{p}-\hbar\mathbf{k}}\, \widehat{a}_{2,\mathbf{p}}\rangle$. To determine the intensity of coherent radiation we will assume that the mean number of photons is much smaller than the total number of ions: $N_{ph} \ll N_i$. In accordance with this assumption, one can neglect the retro radiation effects. Otherwise, ions would respond collectively, and as is known the N-particle spontaneous emission rate might be much larger than a single-particle spontaneous emission rate, consequently the considered equations for the photon and ion operators should be solved self-consistently.

From (8.233) we obtain the following equation for the total number of emitted photons with momentum $\hbar\mathbf{k}$ and polarization μ per unit time:

$$\frac{\partial N^{(coh)}_{\mathbf{k}\mu}}{\partial t} = 2\pi\hbar \left|\Omega_{\mathbf{k},\mu}\right|^2 \sum_{\mathbf{p}_1,\mathbf{p}} Re\left\{\rho_{12}\left(\mathbf{p}_1 - \hbar\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{p}_1\right)\right.$$

$$\left.\times\, \rho_{21}\left(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p} - \hbar\mathbf{k}\right) \delta\left(\hbar\omega + \mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p} - \hbar\mathbf{k}) - \mathcal{E}_2(\mathbf{p})\right)\right\}, \tag{8.234}$$

where $\rho_{12}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}', t) = \langle \widehat{a}^+_{2,\mathbf{p}'}\widehat{a}_{1,\mathbf{p}}\rangle$ is the nondiagonal element of the single-particle density matrix defined by the operators (8.230). By summing over photon polarization and integrating over frequency one can obtain the following expression for the angular distribution of superradiant power per unit solid angle (dO):

$$\frac{dI_{coh}}{dO} = N_i^2 I_1(\widehat{\mathbf{k}}) \left|G\left(\widehat{\mathbf{k}}\frac{\omega_{12}}{c} - \mathbf{g}_n\right)\right|^2$$

$$\times \left|\int \exp\left(i\frac{\widehat{\mathbf{k}}\mathbf{v}}{c}\omega_{12}t\right) P(\mathrm{v}_z)F(\mathbf{v})d\mathbf{v}\right|^2, \tag{8.235}$$

where

$$G(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{1}{N_i}\int n(\mathbf{r})e^{i\mathbf{q}\mathbf{r}}d\mathbf{r} \tag{8.236}$$

is the beam form factor with $n(\mathbf{r})$ being the ion beam density function, $F(\mathbf{v})$ is the velocity distribution function of ions, $I_1(\widehat{\mathbf{k}})$ is the single ion radiation power with the unit vector $\widehat{\mathbf{k}}$ in the radiation direction, and

$$P(\mathrm{v}_z) = \frac{\Omega_c}{\Omega}\sin\Omega\tau\left\{\cos\Omega\tau + i\frac{\delta_{\mathrm{v}_z}}{2\Omega}\sin\Omega\tau\right\}\exp\left(-ig_n\mathrm{v}_z\tau\right). \tag{8.237}$$

For the beam spatial and velocity distributions we will assume Gaussian functions with isotropic transverse distributions. Then, from (8.235) for the differential power of the ion beam superradiation we obtain

$$\frac{dI_{coh}}{dO} = N_i^2 I_1(\widehat{\mathbf{k}}) \exp\left[-\frac{\delta \mathrm{v}_\perp^2}{c^2}\omega_{12}^2 t^2 \sin^2\vartheta\right] |P(t,\vartheta)|^2$$

$$\times \exp\left[-\frac{l_\perp^2 \omega_{12}^2}{c^2}\sin^2\vartheta - l_z^2 g_n^2 (1+\frac{\omega_{12}}{c g_n}\cos\vartheta)^2\right], \tag{8.238}$$

where

$$P(t,\vartheta) = \int P(\mathrm{v}_z) \exp\left[i\frac{\mathrm{v}_z \cos\vartheta}{c}\omega_{12} t - \frac{\mathrm{v}_z^2}{2\delta \mathrm{v}_z^2}\right] \frac{d\mathrm{v}_z}{\sqrt{2\pi}\delta \mathrm{v}_z}. \tag{8.239}$$

Here $l_\perp$, l_z are the transverse and longitudinal bunch sizes of the beam with the transverse and longitudinal velocity spreads $\delta \mathrm{v}_\perp$, $\delta \mathrm{v}_z$. As is seen from (8.238), if the observed wavelengths are much smaller than the transverse size of an ion beam, the superradiation from the ion beam will occur primarily along the Z axis and will cover only a tiny solid angle, which will be defined by the transverse size of the ion beam

$$\Delta O \simeq \pi \frac{c^2}{l_\perp^2 \omega_{12}^2}. \tag{8.240}$$

The superradiant pulse duration depends on velocity spreads of the beam and will be defined by the function $P(t,\vartheta)$. The analysis of (8.238) shows the existence of two superradiant regimes of X-ray generation. For the first regime when the phase matching condition holds

$$\omega_{12} = c g_n, \tag{8.241}$$

the superradiation from the ion beam may occur primarily in the backward direction and the longitudinal bunch size l_z of the ion beam should not be smaller than the wavelength of superradiation. On the other hand, for the resonant excitation the condition $|\delta_0| \ll \omega_{12}$ should be fulfilled. Then taking into account the phase matching condition (8.241), for the detuning (8.231) we have

$$\delta_0 \simeq \omega_{12}\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_0}{c}\right). \tag{8.242}$$

The latter means that for the backward superradiation it is necessary for a relativistic ion beam to satisfy the resonance condition $\delta_0 \simeq \omega_{12}/2\gamma_0^2 \ll \omega_{12}$.

For the mean power of backward superradiation from (8.238) one can obtain the following approximate formula:

$$I_{mean} \simeq N^2 I_1 |P(0,\pi)|^2 \Delta O. \tag{8.243}$$

In the opposite case when the resonance condition holds: $\omega_{12} = \omega_c = \mathrm{v}_0 g_n$, one can easily fulfill the condition for maximal dipole moment $|\Omega_c| \gg \delta_0$ for the light ion beams ($Z_i < 10$, $\gamma_0 \simeq 1$), but since the phase matching condition (8.241) is violated: $\omega_{12} < c g_n$, the superradiation will take place if the longitudinal bunch size of the ion beam is smaller than the crystal lattice period d.

Bibliography

V.L. Ginzburg, Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **56**, 145 (1947)
R.H. Pantell, G. Soncini, H.E. Puthoff, IEEE J. Quantum Electron. **4**, 905 (1968)
J.M.J. Madey, J. Appl. Phys. **42**, 1906 (1971)
M.L. Ter-Mikaelian, *High-Energy Electromagnetic Processes in Condensed Media* (Wiley-Interscience, New York, 1972)
L.R. Elias et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **36**, 771 (1976)
D.A. Deacon et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **38**, 892 (1977)
P. Sprangle, C.M. Tang, W.M. Manheimer, Phys. Rev. Lett. **43**, 1932 (1979)
A.M. Kondratenko, E.L. Saldin, Part. Accel. **10**, 207 (1980)
G. Dattoli, A. Renieri, Nuovo Cimento B **59**, 1 (1980)
C.M. Tang, P. Sprangle, J. Appl. Phys. **53**, 831 (1981)
H. Haus, IEEE J. Quantum Electron. QE-17, 1427 (1981)
S.F. Jacobs, H.S. Pilloff, M. Sargent III, M.O. Scully, R. Spitzer, Free-Electron Generators of Coherent Radiation. Physics of Quantum Electronics, vols. 5, 7-9 (Addison-Wesley, Reading, 1982)
P. Sprangle, C.M. Tang, I. Bernstein, Phys. Rev. A **28**, 2300 (1983)
P. Dobiasch, P. Meystre, M.O. Scully, IEEE J. Quantum Electron. **19**, 1812 (1983)
R. Bonifacio, C. Pellegrini, L.M. Narducci, Opt. Commun. **50**, 373 (1984)
T.C. Marshall, *Free Electron Lasers* (MacMillan, New York, 1985)
E. Jerby, A. Gover, IEEE J. Quantum Electron. QE **21**, 1041 (1985)
J.B. Murphy, C. Pellegrini, Nucl. Instrum. Methods A **237**, 159 (1985)
Kwang-Je Kim, Phys. Rev. Lett. **57**, 1871 (1986)
K.J. Kim, Nucl. Instrum. Methods A **250**, 396 (1986)
J.M. Wang, L.H. Yu, Nucl. Instrum. Methods A **250**, 484 (1986)
S. Krinsky, L.H. Yu, Phys. Rev. A **35**, 3406 (1987)
J. Gea-Banacloche, G.T. Moore, R.R. Schlichter et al., IEEE J. Quantum Electron. **23**, 1558 (1987)
A. Friedman et al., Rev. Mod. Phys. **60**, 471 (1988)
G. Dattoli et al., Phys. Rev. A **37**, 4334 (1988)
A. Yariv, *Quantum Electron.*, 3rd edn. (Wiley, New York, 1989)
H.K. Avetissian, A.K. Avetissian, K.Z. Hatsagortsian, Phys. Lett. A **137**, 463 (1989)
C.A. Brau, *Free-Electron Lasers* (Academic Press, New York, 1990)
P. Luchini, H. Motz, *Undulators and Free-Electron Lasers* (Oxford Science Publications, Oxford, 1990)
W.B. Colson, C. Pellegrini, A. Renieri, *Laser Handbook*, vol. 6 (North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1990)
Proceedings of the Annual International Free Electron Laser Conferences published in Nucl. Instrum. Methods, Vol. A528, A507, A483, A475, A445, A407, A358, A341, A331, A318, A304
M. Xie, D.A.G. Deacon, J.M.J. Madey, Phys. Rev. A **41**, 1662 (1990)
G. Dattoli, A. Renieri, A. Torre, *Lectures on the Free Electron Laser Theory and Related Topics* (World Scientific, London, 1993)
P.G. O'Shea et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **71**, 3661 (1993)
G. Kurizki, M.O. Scully, C. Keitel, Phys. Rev. Lett. **70**, 1433 (1993)

E.M. Belenov et al., Zh. Éksp. Teor. Fiz. **105**, 808 (1994)
R. Bonifacio et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **73**, 70 (1994)
H.P. Freund, Phys. Rev. E **52**, 5401 (1995)
H.P. Freund, T.M. Antonsen Jr, *Principles of Free-Electron Lasers* (Chapman and Hall, London, 1996)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. A **56**, 4121 (1997)
R. Brinkmann, G. Materlik, J. Rossbach, A. Wagner (eds.), DESY Report No. 1997-048
J. Arthur et al., LCLS-Design Study Report No. SLAC-R-521, 1998
K.Z. Hatsagortsian, A.L. Khachatryan, Opt. Commun. **146**, 114 (1998)
E.L. Saldin, E.A. Schneidmiller, M.V. Yurkov, *The Physics Of Free Electron Lasers* (Springer, Berlin, 2000)
S.V. Milton et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **85**, 988 (2000)
J. Andruszkow et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **85**, 3825 (2000)
P.G. O'Shea, H.P. Freund, Science **292**, 1853 (2001)
S.V. Milton et al., Science **292**, 2037 (2001)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. E **65**, 046505 (2002)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Nucl. Instrum. Methods A **483**, 548 (2002)
V. Ayvazyan et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **88**, 104802 (2002)
V. Ayvazyan et al., Eur. Phys. J. D **20**, 149 (2002)
H.K. Avetissian, A.L. Khachatryan, G.F. Mkrtchian, Nucl. Instrum. Methods A **507**, 31 (2003)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Nucl. Instrum. Methods A **507**, 479 (2003)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Nucl. Instrum. Methods A **528**, 530 (2004)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Nucl. Instrum. Methods A **528**, 534 (2004)
C.A. Brau, Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams **7**, 020701 (2004)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. ST AB **10**, 030703 (2007)

Chapter 9
Electron–Positron Pair Production in Superstrong Laser Fields

Abstract Considering the interaction of charged particles with strong radiation fields in vacuum, we looked at the non-quantum electrodynamic (QED) properties of electromagnetic vacuum. At such consideration, vacuum stipulates only the classical dispersion properties of EM waves propagating with the speed of light c. However, the latter is valid for radiation fields that are not superstrong ($\xi_0 < 1$), otherwise the excitation of QED vacuum and production of electron–positron pairs becomes possible. As follows from the physical meaning of the wave intensity parameter ξ_0, at values of $\xi_0 > 1$ the energy acquired by an electron over a wavelength of a coherent radiation field exceeds the electron rest energy mc^2. On the other hand, the energetic width of the vacuum gap or the threshold value for the electron–positron pair production is $2mc^2$. This means that electrons of the Dirac vacuum acquiring the energy $\mathcal{E} > 2mc^2$ at the interaction with the wave field of intensity $\xi_0 > 1$ will pass from negative-energy states to positive ones (excitation of the Dirac vacuum) and electron–positron pair production becomes a fact (with the presence of a third body for the satisfaction of the conservation laws for this process). The production of electron–positron pairs by plane EM waves of relativistic intensities ($\xi_0 \gg 1$) is essentially a multiphoton process, which principally differs from the known "Klein paradox"—production of electron–positron pairs in stationary and homogeneous electric field proceeding over the electron Compton wavelength. The latter corresponds to the tunnel effect through the effective energetic barrier of finite width formed from the vacuum gap of infinite width by the presence of a uniform electric field (Schwinger mechanism). The physical mechanisms are similar to two different limits of the above-threshold ionization of atoms in strong radiation fields—multiphoton and tunnel ionization. This chapter considers the excitation of the Dirac vacuum in superstrong EM fields and the electron–positron pair production process in the presence of a diverse-type third body.

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_9

9.1 Vacuum in Superstrong Electromagnetic Fields. Klein Paradox

It has long been well known that in the background of a stationary and homogeneous electric fields the QED vacuum is unstable and electron–positron (e^-, e^+) pair production from the vacuum occurs (this mechanism is often referred to as the Schwinger mechanism). However, a measurable rate for pair production requires extraordinarily strong electric field strengths comparable to the critical vacuum field strength

$$E_c = \frac{m^2 c^3}{e\hbar}, \tag{9.1}$$

the work of which on an electron over the Compton wavelength $\lambda_c = \hbar/mc$ equals the electron rest energy. We will see that the probability of this process reaches the optimal values when

$$\zeta = \frac{E_0}{E_c} \gtrsim 1, \tag{9.2}$$

where E_0 is the magnitude of a uniform electric field strength.

Fortunately, it seems possible to produce EM fields with electric field strengths of the order of the Schwinger critical field in the focus of expected X-ray FEL and consideration of this problem is theoretically important, since it requires one to go beyond perturbation theory, and its experimental observation would verify the validity of theory in the domain of strong fields.

To solve the problem of e^-, e^+ pair production in the given electric field, we shall make use of the Dirac model—all vacuum negative-energy states are filled with electrons and e^-, e^+ pair production by the electric field occurs when the vacuum electrons with initial negative energies $\mathcal{E}_0 < 0$ due to "acceleration" pass to the final states with positive energies $\mathcal{E} > 0$. To distinguish the free particle states, we will switch on and switch off the electric field elaborating on a model which retains the main features of the spatially uniform electric field and allows one to obtain an exact solution for the Dirac equation and final expressions for the pair production rate in closed form. Thus, we will assume an electric field of the form

$$\mathbf{E}(t) = \frac{E_0}{\cosh^2\left(\frac{t}{T}\right)} \widehat{\mathbf{z}}, \tag{9.3}$$

where T is the characteristic period of the field and $\widehat{\mathbf{z}}$ is the unit vector along the field strength. The vector potential corresponding to this field may be written as

$$\mathbf{A}(t) = -c \int_{-\infty}^{t} \mathbf{E}(t) dt = -c E_0 T \widehat{\mathbf{z}} \left[\tanh\left(\frac{t}{T}\right) + 1 \right]. \tag{9.4}$$

We will solve the Dirac equation in the spinor representation (see (1.77), (1.78)). Since the interaction Hamiltonian does not depend on the space coordinates, the generalized momentum $\mathbf{p}_0$ is conserved. Hence, the solution of (1.77) may be represented in the form

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = \Psi_{\mathbf{p}_0}(t)\, e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{r}}, \tag{9.5}$$

and from (1.77) for the function $\Psi_{\mathbf{p}_0}(t)$ we obtain the following equation:

$$i\hbar\frac{d\Psi_{\mathbf{p}_0}}{dt} = \left[c\boldsymbol{\alpha}\left(\mathbf{p}_0+\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(t)\right)+mc^2\beta\right]\Psi_{\mathbf{p}_0}. \tag{9.6}$$

In this section the electron charge will be assumed to be $-e$. Since $\mathbf{A}(-\infty)=0$ the solution of (9.6) at $t\to-\infty$ should be superposition of the free particle solutions $\psi^{(\varkappa)}_{\mathbf{p}_0,\sigma}$ with negative ($\varkappa=-1$) and positive ($\varkappa=1$) energies and polarizations $\sigma=\pm\frac{1}{2}$ (spin projections $S_z=\pm\frac{1}{2}$ in the rest frame of the particle):

$$\psi^{(\varkappa)}_{\mathbf{p}_0,1/2} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2\mathcal{E}_0\left(\mathcal{E}_0-\varkappa c p_{0z}\right)}}\begin{pmatrix}\varkappa mc^2 w^{(1/2)}\\ \left(\mathcal{E}_0-\varkappa c\boldsymbol{\sigma}\mathbf{p}_0\right)w^{(1/2)}\end{pmatrix}e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\varkappa\mathcal{E}_0 t}, \tag{9.7}$$

$$\psi^{(\varkappa)}_{\mathbf{p}_0,-1/2} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2\mathcal{E}_0\left(\mathcal{E}_0+\varkappa c p_{0z}\right)}}\begin{pmatrix}\left(\mathcal{E}_0+\varkappa c\boldsymbol{\sigma}\mathbf{p}_0\right)w^{(-1/2)}\\ \varkappa mc^2 w^{(-1/2)}\end{pmatrix}e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\varkappa\mathcal{E}_0 t}, \tag{9.8}$$

where $\mathcal{E}_0=\sqrt{c^2\mathbf{p}_0^2+m^2c^4}$, $\boldsymbol{\sigma}$ are Pauli matrices, and the spinors $w^{(\pm1/2)}$ are

$$w^{(1/2)}=\begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix}; \qquad w^{(-1/2)}=\begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix}.$$

At $t\to\infty$, the electric field $\mathbf{E}(\infty)=0$ but

$$\mathbf{A}(\infty)=-2cE_0T\widehat{\mathbf{z}}, \tag{9.9}$$

and the solution of (9.6) at $t\to\infty$ should be superposition of the free particle solutions (9.7), (9.8) where the "final momentum"

$$\mathbf{p}=\mathbf{p}_0-e\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\mathbf{E}(t)dt=\mathbf{p}_0+\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}(\infty) \tag{9.10}$$

stands for $\mathbf{p}_0$. Equation (9.6) in the quadratic form (see (1.82), (1.83)) for the bispinor components

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{p}_0}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} f_1 \\ f_2 \\ f_3 \\ f_4 \end{pmatrix} \tag{9.11}$$

gives the following set of equations:

$$\left\{\hbar^2 \frac{d^2}{dt^2} + \mathcal{E}_0^2 + e^2 A^2(t) + 2ecp_{0z} A(t) \mp iec\hbar E(t)\right\} f_{1,2} = 0, \tag{9.12}$$

$$\left\{\hbar^2 \frac{d^2}{dt^2} + \mathcal{E}_0^2 + e^2 A^2(t) + 2ecp_{0z} A(t) \pm iec\hbar E(t)\right\} f_{3,4} = 0. \tag{9.13}$$

Thus, solving the equation

$$\left\{\hbar^2 \frac{d^2}{dt^2} + \mathcal{E}_0^2 + e^2 A^2(t) + 2ecp_{0z} A(t) - \delta iec\hbar E(t)\right\} \Phi = 0 \tag{9.14}$$

with $\delta = \pm 1$ one can construct the whole bispinor (9.11). Passing in (9.14) to the new variable

$$z = -e^{2\frac{t}{T}},$$

and seeking the solution in the form

$$\Phi(t) = (-z)^{i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0 T}{2\hbar}} (1-z)^{i\delta\frac{eE_0T^2c}{\hbar}} F(z), \tag{9.15}$$

we obtain the equation for hypergeometric function $F(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, z)$:

$$z(1-z) F'' + (\gamma - (\alpha + \beta + 1) z) F' - \alpha\beta F = 0. \tag{9.16}$$

The parameters α, β, γ are defined as follows:

$$\alpha(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta) = i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0 + \mathcal{E} + 2i\delta eE_0cT}{2\hbar} T,$$
$$\beta(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta) = i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0 - \mathcal{E} + 2i\delta eE_0cT}{2\hbar} T, \tag{9.17}$$
$$\gamma(\mathcal{E}_0) = 1 + i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar} T,$$

where according to (9.10) and (9.9)

$$\mathcal{E} = \sqrt{c^2 (\mathbf{p}_0 - 2eE_0T\hat{\mathbf{z}})^2 + m^2c^4}.$$

The general solution for hypergeometric equation (9.16) is

$$F(z) = F(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, z) + z^{1-\gamma} F(\alpha - \gamma + 1, \beta - \gamma + 1, 2 - \gamma, z). \tag{9.18}$$

Taking into account the relations

$$\alpha(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta) - \gamma(\mathcal{E}_0) + 1 = \alpha(-\mathcal{E}_0, \delta),$$

$$\beta(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta) - \gamma(\mathcal{E}_0) + 1 = \beta(-\mathcal{E}_0, \delta),$$

$$2 - \gamma = \gamma(-\mathcal{E}_0),$$

$$i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{2\hbar}T + 1 - \gamma(\mathcal{E}_0) = -i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{2\hbar}T,$$

the general solution for bispinor $\Psi_{\mathbf{p}_0}(t)$ can be written as follows:

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{p}_0}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} A_1\Phi(\mathcal{E}_0, 1; z) + A_2\Phi(-\mathcal{E}_0, 1; z) \\ B_1\Phi(\mathcal{E}_0, -1; z) + B_2\Phi(-\mathcal{E}_0, -1; z) \\ C_1\Phi(\mathcal{E}_0, -1; z) + C_2\Phi(-\mathcal{E}_0, -1; z) \\ D_1\Phi(\mathcal{E}_0, 1; z) + D_2\Phi(-\mathcal{E}_0, 1; z) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{9.19}$$

where

$$\Phi(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta; z) = (-z)^{i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{2\hbar}T}(1 - z)^{i\delta\frac{eE_0c}{\hbar}T^2} \times F(\alpha(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta), \beta(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta), \gamma(\mathcal{E}_0), z), \tag{9.20}$$

and the coefficients $A_{1,2}, B_{1,2}, C_{1,2}, D_{1,2}$ should be defined from the initial condition.

To determine the probability of e^-, e^+ pair production we use the initial condition: at $t \to -\infty$ when $\mathbf{A}(-\infty) = 0$ this wave function must turn into the free Dirac equation solution with negative energy in accordance with the Dirac model. Then taking into account that at

$$t \to -\infty; \quad z \to 0,$$

$$\Phi(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta; z \to 0) = (-z)^{i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{2\hbar}T} = e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_0 t},$$

we obtain

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{p}_0,1/2}^{(-1)} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2\mathcal{E}_0\left(\mathcal{E}_0 + cp_{0z}\right)}} \begin{pmatrix} -mc^2\Phi\left(\mathcal{E}_0, 1; z\right) \\ 0 \\ \left(\mathcal{E}_0 + cp_{0z}\right)\Phi\left(\mathcal{E}_0, -1; z\right) \\ \left(cp_{0x} + icp_{0y}\right)\Phi\left(\mathcal{E}_0, 1; z\right) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{9.21}$$

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{p}_0,-1/2}^{(-1)} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{2\mathcal{E}_0\left(\mathcal{E}_0 - cp_{0z}\right)}} \begin{pmatrix} \left(-cp_{0x} + icp_{0y}\right)\Phi\left(\mathcal{E}_0, 1; z\right) \\ \left(\mathcal{E}_0 + cp_{0z}\right)\Phi\left(\mathcal{E}_0, -1; z\right) \\ 0 \\ -mc^2\Phi\left(\mathcal{E}_0, 1; z\right) \end{pmatrix}. \tag{9.22}$$

After the interaction at $t \to +\infty; \quad z \to -\infty$ these wave functions become the superposition of the free Dirac equation solutions. To determine the asymptotes of these functions we will use the following property of the hypergeometric function:

$$F\left(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, z\right) = \frac{\Gamma\left(\gamma\right)\Gamma\left(\beta - \alpha\right)}{\Gamma\left(\beta\right)\Gamma\left(\gamma - \alpha\right)}\left(-z\right)^{-\alpha} F\left(\alpha, \alpha + 1 - \gamma, \alpha + 1 - \beta, \frac{1}{z}\right) + \frac{\Gamma\left(\gamma\right)\Gamma\left(\alpha - \beta\right)}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\right)\Gamma\left(\gamma - \beta\right)}\left(-z\right)^{-\beta} F\left(\beta, \beta + 1 - \gamma, \beta + 1 - \alpha, \frac{1}{z}\right). \tag{9.23}$$

Hence, for the function Φ we obtain

$$\Phi\left(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta; z \to -\infty\right) = e^{-\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}t} \frac{\Gamma\left(\gamma\left(\mathcal{E}_0\right)\right)\Gamma\left(\beta\left(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta\right) - \alpha\left(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta\right)\right)}{\Gamma\left(\beta\left(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta\right)\right)\Gamma\left(\gamma\left(\mathcal{E}_0\right) - \alpha\left(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta\right)\right)} + e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}t} \frac{\Gamma\left(\gamma\left(\mathcal{E}_0\right)\right)\Gamma\left(\alpha\left(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta\right) - \beta\left(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta\right)\right)}{\Gamma\left(\alpha\left(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta\right)\right)\Gamma\left(\gamma\left(\mathcal{E}_0\right) - \beta\left(\mathcal{E}_0, \delta\right)\right)}. \tag{9.24}$$

Taking into account the relations

$$\frac{\mathcal{E} - \mathcal{E}_0 + 2eE_0cT}{\mathcal{E}_0 - \mathcal{E} + 2eE_0cT} = \frac{\mathcal{E} - cp_z}{\mathcal{E}_0 + cp_{0z}},$$

$$p_{0z} - p_z = 2eE_0T,$$

for the bispinor wave function (9.21) we obtain

$$\Psi^{(-1)}_{\mathbf{p}_0,1/2}\left(t \to +\infty\right) = C\left(\mathcal{E}\right)\psi^{(1)}_{\mathbf{p},1/2} + C\left(-\mathcal{E}\right)\psi^{(-1)}_{\mathbf{p},1/2}, \tag{9.25}$$

where

$$C\left(\mathcal{E}\right) = \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}\mathcal{E}_0}{\left(\mathcal{E}_0 - \mathcal{E} + 2eE_0cT\right)\left(\mathcal{E} - \mathcal{E}_0 + 2eE_0cT\right)}} \times \frac{2\Gamma\left(i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}T\right)\Gamma\left(-i\frac{\mathcal{E}}{\hbar}T\right)}{\Gamma\left(i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0 - \mathcal{E} + 2eE_0cT}{2\hbar}T\right)\Gamma\left(i\frac{\mathcal{E}_0 - \mathcal{E} - 2eE_0cT}{2\hbar}T\right)}. \tag{9.26}$$

The probability of the e^-, e^+ pair production summed over the spin states is

$$W(\mathcal{E}) = 2\left|C\left(\mathcal{E}\right)\right|^2. \tag{9.27}$$

Taking into account that

$$\left|\Gamma\left(iy\right)\right|^2 = \frac{\pi}{y\sin\pi i y},$$

for the probability (9.27) we obtain

$$W(\mathcal{E}) = 2\frac{\cosh\left(\pi\frac{2eE_0cT^2}{\hbar}\right) - \cosh\left(\pi\frac{\mathcal{E}-\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}T\right)}{\cosh\left(\pi\frac{\mathcal{E}+\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}T\right) - \cosh\left(\pi\frac{\mathcal{E}-\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}T\right)}. \tag{9.28}$$

The number of created e^-, e^+ pairs per unit space volume is

$$N = \int W(\mathcal{E})\frac{d\mathbf{p}_0}{(2\pi\hbar)^3},$$

which with (9.28) is written as

$$N = \frac{2}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}\int \frac{\cosh\left(\pi\frac{2eE_0cT^2}{\hbar}\right) - \cosh\left(\pi\frac{\mathcal{E}-\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}T\right)}{\cosh\left(\pi\frac{\mathcal{E}+\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}T\right) - \cosh\left(\pi\frac{\mathcal{E}-\mathcal{E}_0}{\hbar}T\right)} dp_{0z}dp_{0x}dp_{0y}. \tag{9.29}$$

The probability (9.28) has a maximum at $p_{0z} = eE_0T$ (the electrons and positrons are created with the same energy, i.e., $p_z = -eE_0T$). In the limit $T \to \infty$ the electric field (9.3) tends to a constant one: $\mathbf{E}(t) \to E_0\widehat{\mathbf{z}}$ and from (9.28) one can obtain the probability of the e^-, e^+ pair production in the static, spatially uniform electric field. In this case in the integral (9.29) over p_{0z} the main contribution gives the maximum point with the width $\delta p_{0z} \approx eE_0T$. Hence, at

$$(ceE_0T)^2 \gg m^2c^4 + c^2p_{0\perp}^2; \quad p_{0\perp} = \sqrt{p_{0x}^2 + p_{0y}^2},$$

we have

$$\mathcal{E}_0 \approx \mathcal{E} \approx ceE_0T + \frac{m^2c^4 + c^2p_{0\perp}^2}{2ceE_0T},$$

and for the number of e^-, e^+ pairs created per unit time and unit space volume we obtain

$$\frac{N}{T} \approx \frac{2}{(2\pi\hbar)^3} eE_0 \int \exp\left[-\pi \frac{m^2c^4 + c^2p_{0\perp}^2}{ceE_0\hbar}\right] dp_{0x}dp_{0y}. \tag{9.30}$$

Integrating in (9.30) over transverse momentum, we obtain the Schwinger formula:

$$\frac{N_{Sch}}{T} = \frac{e^2E_0^2}{4\pi^3\hbar^2c} \exp\left[-\pi\frac{m^2c^3}{e\hbar E_0}\right], \tag{9.31}$$

or in the terms of critical field

$$\frac{N_{Sch}}{T} = \frac{\zeta^2}{4\pi^3\lambda_c^3}\frac{mc^2}{\hbar} \exp\left[-\frac{\pi}{\zeta}\right]. \tag{9.32}$$

If $\zeta \ll 1$ the probability of pair production is exponentially suppressed and reaches the optimal values when $\zeta \gtrsim 1$ at which

$$\frac{N_{Sch}}{T} \gtrsim 10^{49}\,\mathrm{cm}^{-3}\mathrm{c}^{-1}.$$

9.2 Electron–Positron Pair Production by Superstrong Laser Field and γ-Quantum

The electron–positron pair production by superstrong laser fields of relativistic intensities as a third body for the satisfaction of conservation laws in physically more interesting cases can serve a γ-quantum or a nucleus/ion.

The e^-, e^+ pair production process by a plane monochromatic radiation field and a γ-quantum in the scope of QED is described by the first-order Feynman diagram (Fig. 9.1) where wave functions (1.94) correspond to electron/positron lines. As in the QED the production of electron and positron with quasimomentums Π_- and Π_+, respectively, is interpreted as a transition of an electron from the vacuum state "$-\Pi_+$" to state Π_-. The Feynman diagram is topologically equivalent to that of the Compton effect. Hence, the S-matrix amplitude of this process can be obtained from the Compton-effect S-matrix amplitude (1.114) by the substitutions $\epsilon_\mu^* \to \epsilon_\mu$, $k' \to -k'$, $\Pi \to -\Pi_+$, $\Pi' \to \Pi_-$:

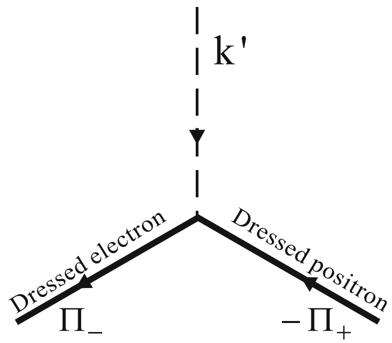


Fig. 9.1 Feynman diagram for electron–positron pair production by laser field and γ-quantum

$$S_{fi} = -i\,(2\pi\hbar)^4 \sqrt{\frac{\pi\alpha_0}{2\omega' c \Pi_{0+}\Pi_{0-}V^3}}\,\overline{u}_{\sigma'}(p_-) \times \widehat{M}_{fi}^{(Compton)}\left(\epsilon^* \to \epsilon, k' \to -k', \Pi \to -\Pi_+, \Pi' \to \Pi_-\right) u_\sigma(-p_+). \tag{9.33}$$

We will assume that the γ-quantum is nonpolarized and corresponding summation over the electron and positron polarizations will be made. Taking into account that at the summation over the positron polarizations one should replace $u(-p_+)\overline{u}(-p_+)$ by $c^2(\widehat{p}_+ - mc)$ one can see that

$$\frac{1}{2}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma,\epsilon}\left|S_{fi}\right|^2 = -\frac{1}{2}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma,\epsilon,\epsilon}\left|S_{fi}\right|^2_{(Compton)}\left(k' \to -k', \Pi \to -\Pi_+, \Pi' \to \Pi_-\right). \tag{9.34}$$

For the differential probability of e^-, e^+ pair production per unit time we have

$$dW = \frac{1}{2\Delta t}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma,\epsilon}\left|S_{fi}\right|^2 V\frac{d\mathbf{\Pi}_-}{(2\pi\hbar)^3} V\frac{d\mathbf{\Pi}_+}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}. \tag{9.35}$$

Hence, using (1.114) for the Compton effect and taking into account relation (9.34) for the differential probability (9.35) we obtain

$$dW = \sum_{s>s_m}^{\infty} W^{(s)}\delta\left(\Pi_- + \Pi_+ - \hbar k' - s\hbar k\right) d\mathbf{\Pi}_- d\mathbf{\Pi}_+, \tag{9.36}$$

where

$$W^{(s)} = \frac{\alpha_0 m^2 c^6}{2\pi\omega' \hbar^2 \Pi_{0+}\Pi_{0-}} \left[|G_s|^2 - \left(1 - \frac{\hbar^2 \left(kk'\right)^2}{2\,(p_+k)\,(p_-k)}\right) \right.$$
$$\times \left(\frac{(1+g^2)\xi_0^2}{4} \left(|G_{s-1}|^2 + |G_{s+1}|^2 - 2\,|G_s|^2\right) \right.$$
$$\left.\left. + \frac{(1-g^2)\xi_0^2}{4} Re\left[2G_{s-1}^* G_{s+1} - G_s^*\left(G_{s-2} + G_{s+2}\right)\right] \right) \right]. \qquad (9.37)$$

The arguments of the functions $G_s\,(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)$ in this case are

$$\alpha = \frac{eA_0}{\hbar c} \left[\left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{p}_-}{p_-k} - \frac{\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{p}_+}{p_+k} \right)^2 + g^2 \left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_2\mathbf{p}_-}{p_-k} - \frac{\mathbf{e}_2\mathbf{p}_+}{p_+k} \right)^2 \right]^{1/2}, \qquad (9.38)$$

$$\beta = -\frac{e^2 A_0^2}{8\hbar c^2}(1-g^2)\left(\frac{1}{p_+k} + \frac{1}{p_-k}\right), \qquad (9.39)$$

$$\tan\varphi = \frac{g\left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_2\mathbf{p}_-}{p_-k} - \frac{\mathbf{e}_2\mathbf{p}_+}{p_+k}\right)}{\left(\frac{\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{p}_-}{p_-k} - \frac{\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{p}_+}{p_+k}\right)}. \qquad (9.40)$$

Since the pair production is a threshold effect, the number of photons absorbed from the strong wave must exceed the threshold value

$$s_m = \frac{2m^{*2}c^2}{\hbar^2\,(k'k)}, \qquad (9.41)$$

which follows from the conservation law of this process expressed by the δ-function in (9.36) and the dispersion law for quasimomentum (1.96). Note that in (9.41) the effective mass appears which depends on the laser intensity. If $s_m > 1$ (for low photon energies), production of the electron–positron pair may only proceed by nonlinear channels (even for $\xi_0 \ll 1$). Besides, this process does not have a classical limit and the quantum recoil is always essential.

For the concreteness we will investigate the case of circular polarization of the incident wave ($g = \pm 1$). In this case $|G_s|^2 = J_s^2(\alpha)$ and from (9.37) for the partial probabilities we have

$$W^{(s)} = \frac{e^2 m^2 c^5}{2\pi\omega' \hbar^3 \Pi_{0+}\Pi_{0-}}\left[J_s^2(\alpha) - \xi_0^2\left(1 - \frac{\hbar^2\left(kk'\right)^2}{2\left(p_+k\right)\left(p_-k\right)}\right)\right.$$
$$\left.\times\left(\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha^2} - 1\right)J_s^2(\alpha) + J_s'^2(\alpha)\right)\right]. \tag{9.42}$$

Taking into account the conservation laws, as well as the relations $p_-k = \Pi_-k$ and $p_+k = \Pi_+k$, the argument of the Bessel function can be written as

$$\alpha = \xi_0\frac{mc^2}{\hbar\omega}\left|\left[\mathbf{k}\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}_-}{p_-k} - \frac{\mathbf{p}_+}{p_+k}\right)\right]\right|$$
$$= \xi_0\frac{mc}{\hbar}\left[2s\hbar\left(\frac{1}{\Pi_-k} + \frac{1}{\Pi_+k}\right) - m_*^2c^2\left(\frac{1}{\Pi_-k} + \frac{1}{\Pi_+k}\right)^2\right]^{1/2}. \tag{9.43}$$

For a weak EM wave, $\xi_0 \ll 1$ and $s_m < 1$ (linear theory), the argument of the Bessel function $\alpha \ll 1$ and the main contribution to the probability of the pair production is the one-photon process. In this case $J_1^2(\alpha_1) \simeq \alpha_1^2/4$, $J_1'^2(\alpha_1) \simeq 1/4$, $\Pi_{0+} \simeq \mathcal{E}_+$, $\Pi_{0-} \simeq \mathcal{E}_-$ and taking into account that

$$1 - \frac{\left(kk'\right)^2}{2\left(p_+k\right)\left(p_-k\right)} = -\frac{1}{2}\left[\frac{p_-k}{p_+k} + \frac{p_+k}{p_-k}\right],$$

we obtain the G. Breit, A. Wheeler formula:

$$W^{(1)} = \frac{e^2 m^2 c^5}{8\pi\omega' \hbar^3 \mathcal{E}_+\mathcal{E}_-}\xi_0^2\left[2\left(\frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar p_-k} + \frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar p_+k}\right)\right.$$
$$\left. - \left(\frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar p_-k} + \frac{m^2c^2}{\hbar p_+k}\right)^2 + \left[\frac{p_-k}{p_+k} + \frac{p_+k}{p_-k}\right]\right]. \tag{9.44}$$

For a strong EM wave, it is more convenient to choose the quantum recoil parameter as an integration variable:

$$\rho = \frac{\hbar^2\left(kk'\right)^2}{2\left(p_+k\right)\left(p_-k\right)} = \frac{\hbar^2\left(kk'\right)^2}{2\left(\Pi_+k\right)\left(\Pi_-k\right)}. \tag{9.45}$$

Taking into account the azimuthal symmetry with respect to the wave propagation direction one can make the following replacement:

$$\delta\left(\Pi_- + \Pi_+ - \hbar k' - s\hbar k\right)\frac{d\mathbf{\Pi}_- d\mathbf{\Pi}_+}{\Pi_{0+}\Pi_{0-}} => \frac{2\pi}{c^2}\frac{1}{\rho\sqrt{\rho^2 - 2\rho}}d\rho, \tag{9.46}$$

and we obtain

$$W = \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3}{\omega' \hbar^3} \sum_{s > s_m}^{\infty} \int_2^{2s/s_m} \left[J_s^2 (\alpha_s (\rho)) + \xi_0^2 (\rho - 1) \right.$$
$$\left. \times \left(\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha_s^2 (\rho)} - 1 \right) J_s^2 (\alpha_s (\rho)) + J_s'^2 (\alpha_s (\rho)) \right) \right] \frac{d\rho}{\rho \sqrt{\rho^2 - 2\rho}}, \qquad (9.47)$$

where the argument of the Bessel function is

$$\alpha_s (\rho) = \frac{\xi_0}{\sqrt{1 + \xi_0^2}} s_m \left[\frac{2s}{s_m} \rho - \rho^2 \right]^{1/2}. \qquad (9.48)$$

The latter reaches its maximal value

$$\alpha_{s\,\max} = \frac{\xi_0}{\sqrt{1 + \xi_0^2}} s \qquad (9.49)$$

at $\rho = s/s_m$. This value is in the integration range when $s > 2s_m$. If $s_m \gg 1$, which is possible for not so hard γ-quantum, and at $\xi_0 \gg 1$ one can approximate the Bessel function by the Airy one (see (1.69) for Compton effect) and for the probability of the pair production we obtain

$$W \simeq \frac{e^2 m^2 c^3}{\omega' \hbar^3} \sum_{s > s_m}^{\infty} \int_2^{2s/s_m} \left\{ \left[1 + \xi_0^2 (\rho - 1) \left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha^2 (\rho)} - 1 \right) \right] \left(\frac{2}{s} \right)^{2/3} Ai^2 (Z) \right.$$
$$\left. + \xi_0^2 (\rho - 1) Ai'^2 (Z) \left(\frac{2}{s} \right)^{4/3} \right\} \frac{d\rho}{\rho \sqrt{\rho^2 - 2\rho}}, \qquad (9.50)$$

where

$$Z = \frac{1}{1 + \xi_0^2} \left(\frac{s}{2} \right)^{2/3} \left(1 + \xi_0^2 \left(1 - \frac{s_m}{s} \rho \right)^2 \right). \qquad (9.51)$$

As far as the Airy function exponentially decreases with increasing of the argument, one can conclude that the optimal parameters for the pair production process are determined from the condition $Z_{\min} \sim 1$, where

$$Z_{\min} = \left(\frac{s}{2} \right)^{2/3} \left(1 - \frac{\alpha_{s\,\max}^2}{s^2} \right) \simeq \left(\frac{s}{2\xi_0^3} \right)^{2/3},$$

which gives

$$2\xi_0^3 \gtrsim s_m.$$

For $\xi_0 \gg 1$, $s_m \simeq 2m^2c^2\xi_0^2/(\hbar^2 k'k)$ we obtain

$$\zeta = \frac{\hbar^2 k'k}{m^2c^2}\xi_0 \gtrsim 1. \tag{9.52}$$

The latter means that in the rest frame of created electron the electric field strength of the EM wave exceeds the critical vacuum field (9.1). Hence, ζ is the quantum parameter of interaction in the scale of the critical vacuum field.

For $Z_{\min} \gg 1$ or $\zeta \ll 1$ (so-called tunneling regime of the pair production process), one can use the following asymptotic formula for the Airy function:

$$Ai(Z) \simeq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi}} Z^{-1/4} \exp\left(-\frac{2Z^{3/2}}{3}\right).$$

Hence, the probability of the electron–positron pair production

$$W \propto \exp\left(-\frac{4}{3\zeta}\right) \tag{9.53}$$

is exponentially suppressed.

For the moderate relativistic intensities $\xi_0 \sim 1$ to show the dependence of the probability on the wave intensity and quantum parameter of interaction ζ the normalized probability

$$\widetilde{W} = \frac{\omega'\hbar^3}{e^2m^2c^3} W \tag{9.54}$$

is displayed in Fig. 9.2 as a function of ξ_0 for various ζ.

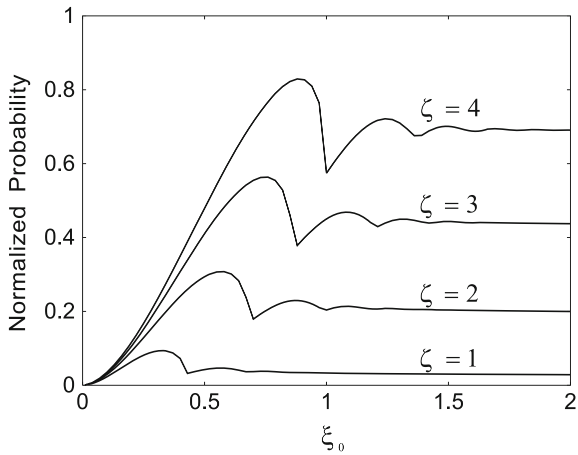


Fig. 9.2 The normalized probability $\widetilde{W} = \hbar^3\omega' W/(e^2m^2c^3)$ as a function of relativistic parameter of intensity ξ_0 for various ζ

9.3 Pair Production via Superstrong Laser Beam Scattering on a Nucleus

The electron–positron pair production via superstrong laser beam scattering on a nucleus can be described again by the first-order Feynman diagram (Fig. 9.3) where wave functions (1.94) correspond to electron/positron lines. The Feynman diagram is topologically equivalent to that of the stimulated bremsstrahlung (SB) effect. As in the previous section the S-matrix amplitude of this process can be obtained from the S-matrix amplitude of SB (10.58) by the substitutions $\Pi \to -\Pi_+$, $\Pi' \to \Pi_-$:

$$S_{fi} = \frac{-i\pi e}{Vc\sqrt{\Pi_{0+}\Pi_{0-}}}\overline{u}_{\sigma'}(p_-)\widehat{M}_{fi}^{(SB)}\left(\Pi \to -\Pi_+, \Pi' \to \Pi_-\right)u_\sigma(-p_+). \quad (9.55)$$

Making the summation over the electron and positron polarizations one can see that

$$\sum_{\sigma',\sigma}\left|S_{fi}\right|^2 = \sum_{\sigma',\sigma}\left|S_{fi}\right|^2_{SB}\left(\Pi \to -\Pi_+, \Pi' \to \Pi_-\right). \quad (9.56)$$

The differential probability of e^-, e^+ pair production per unit time is written as

$$dW = \frac{1}{\Delta t}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma}\left|S_{fi}\right|^2 V\frac{d\mathbf{\Pi}_-}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}V\frac{d\mathbf{\Pi}_+}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}. \quad (9.57)$$

Hence, using (10.59) for the SB process and taking into account (9.56) for the differential probability of pair production per unit time, we obtain

$$dW = \sum_{s>s_m}^{\infty} W^{(s)}\delta\left(\Pi_{0+} + \Pi_{0-} - s\hbar\omega\right)d\mathbf{\Pi}_- d\mathbf{\Pi}_+, \quad (9.58)$$

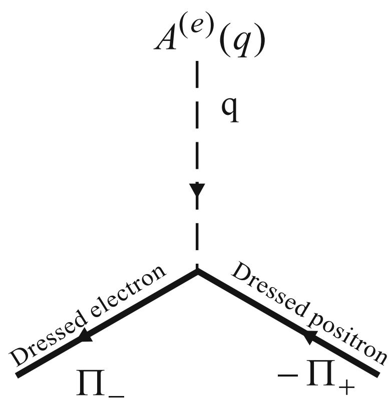


Fig. 9.3 Feynman diagram for electron–positron pair production via laser beam scattering on a nucleus

where

$$W^{(s)} = \frac{4\pi}{\Pi_{0+}\Pi_{0-}} \frac{e^2 |\varphi(\mathbf{q}_s)|^2}{(2\pi\hbar)^6 \hbar} \left\{ \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{q}_s^2 c^2}{4} |B_s|^2 + \frac{e^2\hbar^2 [\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}_s]^2}{4(kp_-)(kp_+)} \right.$$
$$\left. \times \left[|\mathbf{B}_{1s}|^2 - Re B_{2s} B_s^* \right] - \left| \mathcal{E}_+ B_s + \frac{e(\mathbf{p}_+ \mathbf{B}_{1s})\,\omega}{(kp_+)\,c} + \frac{e^2\omega}{2c^2(kp_+)} B_{2s} \right|^2 \right\}, \tag{9.59}$$

and

$$\hbar\mathbf{q}_s = \mathbf{\Pi}_- + \mathbf{\Pi}_+ - s\hbar\mathbf{k}.$$

The threshold value of the photon number for this process is defined as follows:

$$s_m = \frac{2m^* c^2}{\hbar\omega}. \tag{9.60}$$

The arguments α, β, φ of the functions B_s, $\mathbf{B}_{1s}$, B_{2s} are defined according to (9.38)–(9.40).

In the case of circular polarization of an incident strong wave ($g = 1$) we have

$$G_s(\alpha, 0, \varphi) = (-1)^s J_s(\alpha) e^{is\varphi}.$$

Taking into account the azimuthal symmetry with respect to the wave propagation direction one can make the following replacement:

$$\delta\left(\Pi_{0+} + \Pi_{0-} - s\hbar\omega\right) d\mathbf{\Pi}_- d\mathbf{\Pi}_+ \rightarrow 2\pi m^* \frac{\Pi_{0-} |\mathbf{\Pi}_-| \, \Pi_{0+} |\mathbf{\Pi}_+|}{c^2}$$
$$\times \sin\theta_+ \sin\theta_- d\theta_- d\theta_+ d\phi d\gamma_+, \tag{9.61}$$

where $\gamma_+ = \Pi_{0+}/(m^* c^2)$, θ_+, θ_- are the scattering angles of positron and electron with respect to the EM wave propagation direction and ϕ is the angle between the planes formed by $\mathbf{\Pi}_-$, $\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{\Pi}_+$, $\mathbf{k}$. Hence, for the differential probability of e^-, e^+ pair production per unit time we have

$$dW = \frac{2\pi^2 \alpha_0 m^*}{(2\pi\hbar)^6 c} \sum_{s>s_m}^{\infty} |\mathbf{\Pi}_-| \, |\mathbf{\Pi}_+| \, |\varphi(\mathbf{q}_s)|^2$$
$$\times \left\{ \left[\hbar^2 \mathbf{q}_s^2 c^2 - 4 \left(\Pi_{0+} - \frac{s\hbar\omega}{(kp_+)} \frac{\varkappa [\mathbf{k}\mathbf{p}_+]}{\varkappa^2} \right)^2 \right] J_s^2(\alpha_s) \right.$$

$$+\frac{\hbar^2 e^2 A_0^2}{(kp_-)(kp_+)}\left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}_s\right]^2\left[\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha_s^2}-1\right)J_s^2(\alpha_s)+J_s'^2(\alpha_s)\right]$$
$$-\frac{4e^2 A_0^2}{(kp_+)^2}\frac{\left[\varkappa\left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{p}_+\right]\right]^2}{\varkappa^2}J_s'^2(\alpha_s)\Bigg\}\sin\theta_+\sin\theta_- d\theta_- d\theta_+ d\phi d\gamma_+. \qquad (9.62)$$

In this equation the electron quasienergy and quasimomentum are defined via Π_{0+} according to conservation law and

$$\varkappa=\frac{\left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{p}_+\right]}{p_+k}-\frac{\left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{p}_-\right]}{p_-k}. \qquad (9.63)$$

The Bessel function argument in (9.62)

$$\alpha_s=\frac{eA_0}{\hbar\omega}\left|\varkappa\right|$$

can be represented in the form

$$\alpha_s=\frac{\xi_0 s_m}{2\sqrt{1+\xi_0^2}}\left[\frac{\beta_+^2\sin^2\theta_+}{(1-\beta_+\cos\theta_+)^2}+\frac{\beta_-^2\sin^2\theta_-}{(1-\beta_-\cos\theta_-)^2}\right.$$
$$\left.-2\frac{\beta_-\beta_+\sin\theta_+\sin\theta_-\cos\phi}{(1-\beta_+\cos\theta_+)(1-\beta_-\cos\theta_-)}\right]^{1/2}, \qquad (9.64)$$

where

$$\beta_\pm=\frac{c\left|\mathbf{\Pi}_\pm\right|}{\Pi_{0\pm}};\quad \Pi_{0-}=s\hbar\omega-\Pi_{0+}.$$

In this particular case we utilize (9.62) in order to obtain the electron–positron pair production probability on the Coulomb potential for which the Fourier transform is

$$\varphi\left(\mathbf{q}_s\right)=\frac{4\pi Z_a e}{\mathbf{q}_s^2}. \qquad (9.65)$$

Then taking into account (9.65) for the differential probability of e^-, e^+ pair production by a strong plane monochromatic wave per unit time at the scattering on the Coulomb field we will have

$$dW=\alpha_0^2\frac{Z_a^2 m^*}{2\pi^2\hbar}\sum_{s>s_m}^{\infty}\frac{\left|\mathbf{\Pi}_-\right|\left|\mathbf{\Pi}_+\right|}{\hbar^4\mathbf{q}_s^4}$$
$$\left\{\left[\hbar^2\mathbf{q}_s^2c^2-\frac{4}{\varkappa^4}\left(\varkappa\left(\frac{\Pi_{0-}\left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{\Pi}_+\right]}{\Pi_+k}+\frac{\Pi_{0+}\left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{\Pi}_-\right]}{\Pi_-k}\right)\right)^2\right]J_s^2(\alpha_s)\right.$$

$$
- \frac{4e^2 A_0^2}{\varkappa^2} \left(\frac{[[\mathbf{k\Pi}_-][\mathbf{k\Pi}_+]]}{(k\Pi_-)(k\Pi_+)} \right)^2 J_s'^2(\alpha_s) + \frac{e^2 A_0^2}{(k\Pi_-)(k\Pi_+)} \left[\mathbf{k}(\mathbf{\Pi}_- + \mathbf{\Pi}_+)\right]^2
$$

$$
\times \left[\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha_s^2} - 1 \right) J_s^2(\alpha_s) + J_s'^2(\alpha_s) \right] \Bigg\} \sin\theta_+ \sin\theta_- d\phi d\theta_- d\theta_+ d\gamma_+. \quad (9.66)
$$

For a weak EM wave the main contribution in this process is the one-photon process. Dividing the differential probability (9.66) by the initial flux density

$$
J = \frac{1}{\hbar\omega} \frac{c}{4\pi} E_0^2
$$

we obtain the H.A. Bethe, W. Heitler formula:

$$
d\sigma = \alpha_0^3 \frac{Z_a^2}{2\pi} \frac{|\mathbf{p}_-| \, |\mathbf{p}_+|}{\hbar^4 \mathbf{q}_1^4} \frac{1}{\hbar\omega^3}
$$

$$
\times \left\{ \hbar^2 \mathbf{q}_1^2 c^2 \left(\frac{[\mathbf{kp}_+]}{p_+ k} - \frac{[\mathbf{kp}_-]}{p_- k} \right)^2 - 4 \left(\frac{\mathcal{E}_- [\mathbf{kp}_+]}{p_+ k} + \frac{\mathcal{E}_+ [\mathbf{kp}_-]}{p_- k} \right)^2 \right.
$$

$$
\left. + \frac{2\hbar^2\omega^2}{(kp_-)(kp_+)} \left[\mathbf{k}(\mathbf{p}_- + \mathbf{p}_+)\right]^2 \right\} \sin\theta_+ \sin\theta_- d\phi d\theta_- d\theta_+ d\mathcal{E}_+. \quad (9.67)
$$

In general the expression for the differential probability of e^-, e^+ pair production by strong radiation field (9.66) is very complicated (one should perform four-dimensional integration and summation over photon numbers) but without integration one can make conclusions about optimal values of laser parameters for the measurable pair production probability using the properties of the Bessel function. The Bessel function argument in (9.66) $\alpha_s(\gamma_+, \theta_+, \theta_-, \phi)$ as a function of θ_+, θ_-, ϕ reaches its maximal value at

$$
\cos\theta_+ = \beta_+, \quad \cos\theta_- = \beta_-, \quad \cos\phi = -1,
$$

and is equal to

$$
\overline{\alpha}_s(\gamma_+) = \frac{\xi_0 s_m}{2\sqrt{1+\xi_0^2}} \left(\sqrt{\gamma_+^2 - 1} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{2s}{s_m} - \gamma_+ \right)^2 - 1} \right). \quad (9.68)
$$

The latter is always small compared with the Bessel function index. Indeed, as follows from the conservation law

$$
1 \le \gamma_+ \le \frac{2s}{s_m} - 1,
$$

and in this range $\overline{\alpha}_s\,(\gamma_+)$ reaches its maximal value

$$\overline{\alpha}_{s\,\max} = \frac{\xi_0}{\sqrt{1+\xi_0^2}}\sqrt{s^2 - s_m^2} < s \tag{9.69}$$

at the $\gamma_+ = s/s_m$. Hence, for $\xi_0 \gg 1$ and $s_m \gg 1$ the main contribution to the differential probability will give the number of photons $s \gg s_m$ and as in the previous section one can approximate the Bessel function by the Airy one (1.69). The Airy function argument for $\alpha \simeq \overline{\alpha}_{s\,\max}$ will be

$$Z(s) \simeq \frac{1}{2^{2/3}\xi_0^2} s^{2/3} \left(1 + \xi_0^2 \frac{s_m^2}{s^2}\right). \tag{9.70}$$

As the Airy function exponentially decreases with increasing of the argument, one can conclude that the optimal parameters for the pair production process are determined from the condition $Z_{\min} \sim 1$, $Z_{\min}$ being the minimum value of $Z(s)$. The latter corresponds to the number of photons $s = \sqrt{2}\xi_0 s_m$ at which

$$Z_{\min} = Z\left(\sqrt{2}\xi_0 s_m\right) = 3\left(\frac{E_c}{2E_0}\right)^{2/3}, \tag{9.71}$$

where E_c is the vacuum critical field strength (9.1). Hence, at $\xi \geq 1$ the probability reaches optimal values when $\zeta \equiv E_0/E_c \geq 1$ (at $\xi_0 \ll 1$ quantum effects are optimal when $\zeta \sim \xi_0$, which corresponds to linear theory, that is, the perturbation theory of QED). When $\zeta \ll 1$ according to (9.53) the probability is exponentially suppressed:

$$W \propto \exp(-2\sqrt{3}/\zeta), \tag{9.72}$$

as in the Schwinger mechanism for e^-, e^+ pair production in the uniform electrostatic field, where $W \propto \exp(-\pi/\zeta)$. For the available superstrong optical lasers $\zeta \sim 10^{-4}$, which practically does not allow for measurable pair creation probability. As was argued, one can achieve $\zeta \sim 10^{-1}$ at the focus of expected X-ray FEL facilities, which will allow for measurable pair creation probability by the Schwinger mechanism.

Note that in the considered process of pair production on a nucleus one can achieve the condition $\zeta \geq 1$ (even $\zeta \gg 1$) in the scheme of counterpropagating nucleus beam and X-ray FEL. Then, in the rest frame of the nucleus we will have $\zeta \simeq 2\zeta_L\gamma_L$, where γ_L is the Lorenz factor of nucleus and ζ_L is the field parameter in the laboratory frame. Since ξ_0 is the Lorenz invariant, then if $\xi_0 \geq 1$ and $\gamma_L > E_c/2E_0$ in the laboratory frame, the probability of multiphoton e^-, e^+ pair production reaches its optimal value.

9.4 Nonlinear e^-, e^+ Pair Production in Plasma by Strong EM Wave

As shown in Chap. 6 for electron–positron pair production by a γ-quantum or a plane monochromatic EM wave, a macroscopic medium with a refractive index $n_0(\omega_0) < 1$ may serve as a third body for the satisfaction of conservation laws. In such a plasma-like medium, the multiphoton production of e^-, e^+ pairs by a strong laser radiation field is possible at ordinary densities of plasma, in contrast to single-photon production $\gamma \to e^- + e^+$, which is only accessible in a superdense plasma with the electron density $\rho \gtrsim 3 \cdot 10^{34}\,\mathrm{cm}^{-3}$.

In laser fields with $\xi_0 \sim 1$ when the energy of the interaction of an electron (of the Dirac vacuum) with the field over a wavelength becomes comparable to the electron rest energy ($eE_0\lambda_0 \sim mc^2$) the multiphoton pair production process goes in through nonlinear channels. At such intensities, in general, the dispersion law of a plasma becomes nonlinear, too, i.e., the refractive index depends on the wave intensity: $n_0 = n_0(\omega_0, \xi_0^2)$. As is known, because of the intensity effect, the transparency range of a plasma widens and the dispersion law $n_0(\omega_0, \xi_0^2) < 1$, which is necessary for the production of e^-, e^+ pairs, holds all the more. However, the intensities required for the appearance of a real nonlinearity in dispersion become essential when $\xi_0 \gg 1$. Hence, in considering fields $\xi_0 \sim 1$ the dispersion law of a plasma can be regarded as linear ($n_0^2(\omega_0) = 1 - 4\pi\rho e^2/m\omega_0^2$).

Let a plane transverse linearly polarized EM wave with frequency ω_0 and vector potential

$$\mathbf{A}\,(\mathbf{r}, t) = \mathbf{A}_0 \cos\,(\omega_0 t - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}); \quad |\mathbf{k}_0| = n_0 \frac{\omega_0}{c} \tag{9.73}$$

propagate in a plasma. The multiphoton degree s for the e^-, e^+ pair production in the light fields is defined by thecondition (reaction threshold)

$$s\hbar\omega_0 \geqslant \frac{2mc^2}{\sqrt{1 - n_0^2}}. \tag{9.74}$$

To determine the multiphoton probabilities of this process, it is convenient to solve the problem in the center-of-mass frame of the produced pair (C frame), in which the wave vector of the photons is $\mathbf{k}' = 0$ (the refractive index of the plasma in this frame is $n' = 0$). The velocity of the C frame with respect to the laboratory frame (L frame) is $\mathrm{v} = cn_0$. The traveling EM wave is transformed in the C frame into a varying electric field (the magnetic field $H' = 0$) with a vector potential

$$\mathbf{A}'\left(t'\right) = \frac{\mathbf{A}_0}{2}[\exp(i\omega' t') + \exp(-i\omega' t')], \quad \omega' = \omega_0\sqrt{1 - n_0^2}. \tag{9.75}$$

It is easily noted that with (9.75) taken into account the reaction threshold condition (9.74) is obtained from the laws of the conservation of energy $\mathcal{E}'_- + \mathcal{E}'_+ = s\hbar\omega'$

and momentum $\mathbf{p}'_- + \mathbf{p}'_+ = s\hbar\mathbf{k}' = 0$ in the C frame ($\mathcal{E}'_-$, $\mathbf{p}'_-$ and $\mathcal{E}'_+$, $\mathbf{p}'_+$ are the energy and momentum of the electron and positron, respectively, in the C frame).

To solve the problem of s-photon production of an e^-, e^+ pair in the given radiation field (9.73), we shall make use of the Dirac model (all vacuum negative-energy states are filled with electrons and the interaction of the external field proceeds only with this vacuum: on the other hand, the interaction with the plasma electrons reduces to a refraction of the wave only).

The Dirac equation in the field (9.75) has the form

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial t} = \left[c\widehat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}\left(\mathbf{p}' - e\mathbf{A}'\left(t'\right)\right) + \widehat{\beta}mc^2\right]\Psi, \tag{9.76}$$

where the Dirac matrices $\widehat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}$, $\widehat{\beta}$ will be chosen in the standard representation, with σ the Pauli matrices. Since in the C frame the interaction Hamiltonian does not depend on the space coordinates, the solution of (9.76) can be represented in the form of a linear combination of free solutions of the Dirac equation with amplitudes $a_i(t')$ depending only on time:

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{p}'}\left(\mathbf{r}', t'\right) = \sum_{i=1}^{4} a_i(t')\Psi_i^{(0)}\left(\mathbf{r}', t'\right). \tag{9.77}$$

Here

$$\Psi_{1,2}^{(0)}\left(\mathbf{r}', t'\right) = \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}' + mc^2}{2\mathcal{E}'}}\begin{pmatrix} \varphi_{1,2} \\ \frac{c\sigma\mathbf{p}'}{\mathcal{E}'+mc^2}\varphi_{1,2}\end{pmatrix} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathbf{p}'\mathbf{r}' - \mathcal{E}'t'\right)},$$

$$\Psi_{3,4}^{(0)}\left(\mathbf{r}', t'\right) = \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}' + mc^2}{2\mathcal{E}'}}\begin{pmatrix} \frac{-c\sigma\mathbf{p}'}{\mathcal{E}'+mc^2}\chi_{3,4} \\ \chi_{3,4}\end{pmatrix} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\left(\mathbf{p}'\mathbf{r}' + \mathcal{E}'t'\right)}, \tag{9.78}$$

where

$$\mathcal{E}' = \sqrt{c^2\mathbf{p}'^2 + m^2c^4}, \qquad \varphi_1 = \chi_3 = \begin{pmatrix}1\\0\end{pmatrix}, \qquad \varphi_2 = \chi_4 = \begin{pmatrix}0\\1\end{pmatrix}. \tag{9.79}$$

The solution of (9.76) in the form (9.77) corresponds to an expansion of the wave function in a complete set of orthonormal functions of the electrons (positrons) with specified momentum (with energies $\mathcal{E}' = \pm\sqrt{c^2\mathbf{p}'^2 + m^2c^4}$ and spin projections $S_z = \pm 1/2$). The latter are normalized to one particle per unit volume. According to the assumed model, only the Dirac vacuum is present prior to the turning on of the field, i.e.,

$$|a_3(-\infty)|^2 = |a_4(-\infty)|^2 = 1, \qquad |a_1(-\infty)|^2 = |a_2(-\infty)|^2 \tag{9.80}$$

(the field is turned on adiabatically at $t = -\infty$). From the condition of conservation of the norm we have

$$\sum_{i=1}^{4} \left|a_i(t')\right|^2 = 2, \tag{9.81}$$

which expresses the equality of the number of created electrons and positrons, whose creation probabilities are, respectively, $\left|a_{1,2}(t')\right|^2$ and $1 - \left|a_{3,4}(t')\right|^2$.

Substituting (9.77) into (9.76), multiplying by the Hermitian conjugate functions $\Psi_i^{(0)^\dagger}\left(\mathbf{r}', t'\right)$, and taking into account orthogonality of the eigenfunctions (9.78) and (9.79), we obtain a set of differential equations for the unknown functions $a_i(t')$. Since in the C frame there is symmetry with respect to the direction $\mathbf{A}'_0$ (the OY axis), we can take, without loss of generality, the vector $\mathbf{p}'$ to lie in the $x'y'$ plane ($p'_z = 0$). Further, having introduced, to simplify the notation, the new symbols

$$a_1(t') \equiv b_1(t'),$$

$$a_4(t') \equiv b_4(t')\left[1 - \frac{c^2 p_y'^2}{\mathcal{E}'^2}\right]^{-1/2}\left[\frac{c^2 p'_x p'_y}{\mathcal{E}'(\mathcal{E}' + mc^2)} + i\left(1 - \frac{c^2 p_y'^2}{\mathcal{E}'(\mathcal{E}' + mc^2)}\right)\right], \tag{9.82}$$

we obtain for the amplitudes $b_1(t')$ and $b_4(t')$ ($\left|b_4(t')\right| = \left|a_4(t')\right|$) the following set of equations:

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{db_1(t')}{dt'} &= i\frac{ecp'_y A'_y(t')}{\hbar\mathcal{E}'} b_1(t') \\
&\quad + i\frac{eA'_y(t')}{\hbar}\sqrt{1 - \frac{c^2 p_y'^2}{\mathcal{E}'^2}}\, b_4(t') \exp\left(\frac{2i\mathcal{E}'t'}{\hbar}\right), \\
\frac{db_4(t')}{dt'} &= -i\frac{ecp'_y A'_y(t')}{\hbar\mathcal{E}'} b_4(t') \\
&\quad + i\frac{eA'_y(t')}{\hbar}\sqrt{1 - \frac{c^2 p_y'^2}{\mathcal{E}'^2}}\, b_1(t') \exp\left(-\frac{2i\mathcal{E}'t'}{\hbar}\right).
\end{aligned} \tag{9.83}$$

A similar set of equations is also obtained for the amplitudes $b_2(t')$ and $b_3(t')$. To solve the system (9.83), we make the transformations

$$b_1(t') = c_1(t') \exp\left[i\frac{ecp'_y}{\hbar\mathcal{E}'}\int_{-\infty}^{t'} A'_y(\eta)d\eta\right],$$

$$b_4(t') = c_4(t') \exp\left[-i\frac{ecp'_y}{\hbar\mathcal{E}'}\int_{-\infty}^{t'} A_y(\eta)d\eta\right], \tag{9.84}$$

where $c_1(t')$ and $c_4(t')$ satisfy the initial conditions, according to (9.80) and (9.82), $|c_1(-\infty)| = 0$ and $|c_4(-\infty)| = 0$.

For the new amplitudes $c_1(t')$ and $c_4(t')$ from (9.83), we obtain the set of equations

$$\frac{dc_1(t')}{dt'} = f(t')c_4(t'),$$
$$\frac{dc_4(t')}{dt'} = -f^*(t')c_1(t'), \tag{9.85}$$

where

$$f(t') = i\frac{e}{\hbar}A'_y(t')\sqrt{1-\frac{c^2p'^2_y}{\mathcal{E}^2}}\exp\left[\frac{2i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}'t' - \frac{2iecp'_y}{\hbar\mathcal{E}'}\int_{-\infty}^{t'} A'_y(\eta)d\eta\right]. \tag{9.86}$$

We can obtain the solution of (9.83), which satisfies the initial conditions of the problem (9.80), with the help of successive approximations, if

$$\left|\int_{-\infty}^{t'} f(\tau)d\tau\right| \ll 1. \tag{9.87}$$

Then, for the transition amplitude $c_1(t')$, we have

$$c_1(t') = \sum_{j=0}^{\infty} B_{2j+1}(t'), \tag{9.88}$$

where

$$B_{2j+1}(t') = (-1)^j \int_{-\infty}^{t'} f(\tau_1)d\tau_1 \int_{-\infty}^{\tau_1} f^*(\tau_2)d\tau_2 \int_{-\infty}^{\tau_2} f^*(\tau_3)d\tau_3 \cdots$$
$$\times \int_{-\infty}^{\tau_{2j-1}} f^*(\tau_{2j})d\tau_{2j} \int_{-\infty}^{\tau_{2j}} f^*(\tau_{2j+1})d\tau_{2j+1}. \tag{9.89}$$

We are interested in nonlinear pair production process in the strong wave field. For this let us calculate the first term of the sum (9.88):

$$B_1(t') = \int_{-\infty}^{t'} f(\tau_1) d\tau_1,$$

substituting the concrete form of the wave vector potential $A'_y(\eta)$ from (9.75) into (9.86) and carrying out the integration. Then for $B_1(t')$ we obtain

$$B_1(t') = \frac{\mathcal{E}'}{2cp'_y}\left(1 - \frac{c^2 p'^2_y}{\mathcal{E}'^2}\right)^{1/2} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{+\infty} \frac{l\hbar\omega'}{2\mathcal{E}' - l\hbar\omega'} J_l(\alpha) e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(2\mathcal{E}' - l\hbar\omega')t'}, \tag{9.90}$$

where $J_s(z)$ is the Bessel function,

$$\alpha \equiv 2\xi_0 \frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}'} \frac{cp'_y}{\hbar\omega'}, \qquad \xi_0 = \frac{eE'_0}{mc\omega'}, \qquad E'_0 = \frac{\omega'}{c} A_0.$$

As ξ_0 is a relativistic invariant parameter, in (9.90) $\xi_0 = eE_0/mc\omega_0$, where ω_0 and E_0 are the frequency and amplitude of the electric field of the wave in the L frame.

For the considered fields, when $\xi_0 \lesssim 1$, condition (9.87) always satisfies $\left|B_1(t')\right| \ll 1$, but the latter is not enough, yet, in order to be confined to that term in determination of the amplitude $c_1(t')$. As the resonant term $l = s = 2\mathcal{E}'/\left(\hbar\omega'\right)$ $(s \gg 1)$ gives a real contribution in the multiphoton pair production process and in (9.90), the maximal value of the Bessel function can be shifted from the resonant value. Since $s \gg 1$, that shift will be as small and negligible as possible when the argument of the Bessel function is $\alpha \sim s \gg 1$. Thus, the condition, when the pair production process will have an essential nonlinear character, is

$$\alpha = 2\xi_0 \frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}'} \frac{cp'_y}{\hbar\omega'} \gg 1. \tag{9.91}$$

If condition (9.91) is satisfied, we can be restricted to the first term of the sum (9.88) for the amplitude $c_1(t')$:

$$c_1(t') = B_1(t'). \tag{9.92}$$

The obtained approximate solution of the Dirac equation is thus applicable with such intensities of EM wave, when conditions (9.87) and (9.91) are satisfied simultaneously:

$$\frac{1}{s} \ll \xi_0 \lesssim 1. \tag{9.93}$$

According to (9.82) and (9.84), for the transition amplitude of the electron from the Dirac vacuum to the state with positive energy (in a definite spinor state) in the wave field, we have

$$\left|a_1(t')\right|^2 = \left|b_1(t')\right|^2 = \left|c_1(t')\right|^2.$$

To obtain the probability amplitude for the production of electrons and positrons after the wave has been turned off, we introduce a small detuning of the resonance in (9.90), corresponding to an s-photon transition: $2\mathcal{E}' = s\hbar\omega' + \hbar\Gamma$ ($\Gamma \ll \omega'$).

The production probability of the e^-, e^+ pair, summed over the spin states, is determined by the quantity

$$\left|a_1(t')\right|^2 + \left|a_2(t')\right|^2 = 2\left|a_1(t')\right|^2 \equiv 2\left|C_1(t')\right|^2 .$$

The differential probability of the s-photon process per unit time and phase-space volume $d\mathbf{p}'/(2\pi\hbar)^3$ (the normalization volume $V = 1$) in the center-of-mass frame of the produced particles is given by

$$dw_s^C = \frac{dW_s^C(t')}{t'} = 2\lim_{t'\to\infty}\frac{\left|c_1(t')\right|^2}{t'}\frac{d\mathbf{p}'}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}. \tag{9.94}$$

Substituting (9.90) into (9.94) and making use of the definition of the δ-function in the form

$$\lim_{t'\to\infty}\frac{\sin^2\Gamma t'}{\pi\Gamma^2 t'} = \delta(\Gamma) = \hbar\delta\left(2\mathcal{E}' - s\hbar\omega'\right),$$

we obtain

$$dw_s^C = \frac{s^2\omega'^2\left(\mathcal{E}'^2 - c^2p_y'^2\right)}{16\pi^2\hbar^2c^2p_y'^2}J_s^2\left(\frac{2eA_0cp_y'}{\hbar\omega'\mathcal{E}'}\right)\delta\left(\mathcal{E}' - \frac{s\hbar\omega'}{2}\right)d\mathbf{p}'. \tag{9.95}$$

Integrating (9.95) over $d\mathbf{p}'$, we obtain the total probability of the s-photon e^-, e^+ pair production in a plasma by the strong EM wave:

$$\begin{aligned} w_s^C = \frac{\hbar s^5\omega'^5}{32\pi c^4 p'}&\left\{\left[\frac{2\alpha_s^2}{4s^2-1} - 1\right]J_s^2(\alpha_s) + \frac{\alpha_s^2 J_{s-1}^2(\alpha_s)}{2s(2s-1)}\right. \\ &+ \frac{\alpha_s^2 J_{s+1}^2(\alpha_s)}{2s(2s+1)} - \frac{4c^2p'^2}{s^2\hbar^2\omega'^2}\frac{\alpha_s^{2s}}{2^{2s}(2s+1)(s!)^2} \\ &\left.\times {}_2F_3\left(s+\frac{1}{2}, s+\frac{1}{2}, s+1, 2s+1, s+\frac{3}{2}; -\alpha_s^2\right)\right\}, \end{aligned} \tag{9.96}$$

where ${}_2F_3\left(s+\frac{1}{2}, s+\frac{1}{2}, s+1, 2s+1, s+\frac{3}{2}; -\alpha_s^2\right)$ is the generalized hypergeometric function and

$$\alpha_s = \frac{2mc^2\xi_0}{\hbar\omega'}\left(1 - \frac{4m^2c^4}{s^2\hbar^2\omega'^2}\right)^{1/2}.$$

As is seen from (9.95), the pair production probability decreases highly in the directions perpendicular to the field ($p'_y = 0$), and the obtained approximate nonlinear solution describes the process behavior well at the angles not too close to $\pi/2$. Thus, (9.96), which is a result of integration over all angles, does not contain a large error.

The quantity W_s is a relativistic invariant, and so (9.96) defines the pair production probability in the L frame as well. As for the angular distribution of the probability of s-photon pair production in the L frame, it can be obtained from the expression $dW_s^C(t')$ for the differential probability in the C frame by a Lorentz transformation. Here the quantity multiplying $d\mathbf{p}'$ is the expression of $dW_s^C(t')$ (see (9.94)) transforms like the time component of the current density four-vector of the electrons in the Dirac vacuum ($\mathcal{E}' < 0$). One must here take into account that the momentum of real electrons coincides with the momentum of the vacuum electron $\mathbf{p}'$, while the momentum of a positron equals $-\mathbf{p}'$ and the vacuum phase-space volume element $d\mathbf{p}'/(2\pi\hbar)^3$ (in unit volume) goes over correspondingly into the volume element in momentum space of electrons and positrons. Further, transforming the quantities in (9.95) from the C frame to the L frame, we obtain the differential probability of s-photon pair production per unit time in the L frame:

$$dw_s^L = \frac{dW_s^L(t)}{t} = \frac{s^2\omega_0^2\left(1-n_0^2\right)(\mathcal{E}-n_0cp_x)}{16\pi^2\hbar^2c^2p_y^2\mathcal{E}}\left[\frac{(\mathcal{E}-n_0cp_x)^2}{1-n_0^2} - c^2p_y^2\right] \times J_s^2\left(\frac{2eA_0cp_y}{\hbar\omega_0(\mathcal{E}-n_0cp_x)}\right)\delta\left(\mathcal{E}-n_0cp_x - \frac{s\hbar\omega_0\left(1-n_0^2\right)}{2}\right)d\mathbf{p}', \quad (9.97)$$

where $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ are the energy and momentum of the produced electron or positron. Integrating (9.97) over the electron (positron) energy, we obtain the angular distribution of the probability of the s-photon production of electrons (positrons) per solid angle element, $do = \sin\vartheta d\vartheta d\varphi$ (the azimuthal asymmetry of the probability in the L frame is due to the linear polarization of the wave: in the case of circular polarization the probability distribution has azimuthal symmetry):

$$dw_s^L = \sum_{v=1}^{2}\frac{s^3\omega_0^3\left(1-n_0^2\right)^2}{32\pi^2\hbar c^3(cp_v - n_0\mathcal{E}_v\cos\vartheta)\sin\vartheta\cos^2\varphi} \times\left[\frac{s^2\hbar^2\omega_0^2\left(1-n_0^2\right)}{4} - c^2p_v^2\sin^2\vartheta\cos^2\varphi\right] \times J_s^2\left[\frac{4mc^3\xi_0p_v\sin\vartheta\cos\varphi}{s\hbar^2\omega_0^2\left(1-n_0^2\right)}\right]d\vartheta d\varphi, \quad (9.98)$$

where

$$p_{1,2} = \frac{1}{2c\left(1 - n_0^2 \cos^2\vartheta\right)} \left\{ s n_0 \hbar\omega_0 \left(1 - n_0^2\right)\cos\vartheta \right.$$
$$\left. \pm \left[s^2\hbar^2\omega_0^2 \left(1 - n_0^2\right)^2 - 4m^2c^4\left(1 - n_0^2\cos^2\vartheta\right)\right]^{1/2} \right\},$$

$$\mathcal{E}_{1,2} = \frac{1}{2\left(1 - n_0^2 \cos^2\vartheta\right)} \left\{ s\hbar\omega_0 \left(1 - n_0^2\right) \right.$$
$$\left. \pm n_0\cos\vartheta \left[s^2\hbar^2\omega_0^2 \left(1 - n_0^2\right)^2 - 4m^2c^4\left(1 - n_0^2\cos^2\vartheta\right)\right]^{1/2} \right\}. \tag{9.99}$$

The angle φ varies from 0 to 2π, while ϑ varies from 0 to $\vartheta_{\max}$, which is determined from the energy and momentum conservation laws (9.99). Further, depending on the value of the plasma refractive index n_0, the electron (positron) production at the given angle is possible for a particular momentum or for one of the two momenta with different magnitudes. For values

$$n_0 < \sqrt{1 - \frac{2mc^2}{s\hbar\omega_0}}$$

(in this case the threshold condition (9.74) for the process is certainly satisfied), we should take in (9.99) only the upper sign, corresponding to the fact that in the probability (9.98) only $\nu = 1$ (p_1) remains and $\vartheta_{\max} = \pi$, i.e., particles are produced in all directions for the given angle ϑ with definite momentum. In the opposite case, we must also take into account the reaction threshold condition in the region of values of the index of refraction,

$$\sqrt{1 - \frac{2mc^2}{s\hbar\omega_0}} < n_0 < \sqrt{1 - \frac{4m^2c^4}{s^2\hbar^2\omega_0^2}},$$

and an electron (positron) is produced in a given direction with one of the two different values of momentum p_1 and p_2 in a cone, opened forward, whose opening angle is

$$\vartheta_{\max} = \arcsin\left\{ \left[\left(1 - n_0^2\right)\left(s^2\hbar^2\omega_0^2\left(1 - n_0^2\right) - 4m^2c^4\right)\right]^{1/2} / 2mc^2 n_0 \right\}.$$

The problem of e^-, e^+ pair production by the photon field is solved in the C frame and the probability expressions (9.94)–(9.96) in that frame are adduced with express purpose. This is of independent physical interest, since (9.94)–(9.96) describe the process of pair production in vacuum by a uniform periodic electric field (electric undulator)

$$\mathbf{E}(t) = \mathbf{E}_0 \cos \omega_0 t, \tag{9.100}$$

with the reaction threshold (see (9.74) when $n' = 0$)

$$s\hbar\omega_0 \geqslant 2mc^2. \tag{9.101}$$

By integrating over the electron (positron) energy, we obtain the angular distribution of the nonlinear production of electrons (positrons) in the periodic electric field (in contrast to the pair production by the photon field (9.98), here there is azimuthal symmetry):

$$dw_s = \frac{s^3\omega_0^3}{32\pi\hbar c^3} \frac{4m^2c^4\cos^2\vartheta + \hbar^2 s^2\omega_0^2 \sin^2\vartheta}{\left(\hbar^2 s^2 \omega_0^2 - 4m^2c^4\right)^{1/2} \cos^2\vartheta} \times J_s^2 \left[\frac{2ceE_0\left(\hbar^2 s^2\omega_0^2 - 4m^2c^4\right)^{1/2}\cos\vartheta}{s\hbar^2\omega_0^3}\right] \sin\vartheta d\vartheta, \tag{9.102}$$

where ϑ is the angle between the directions of the momentum of produced electrons (positrons) and the electric field.

Finally, we consider the case of weak fields, $eA/(\hbar\omega_0) \ll 1$ ($\xi_0 \ll 1/s$), when perturbation theory is applicable. In this case, as was noted above, we cannot be confined to the first term of the sum (9.88), since every term $B_{2l+1}(t')$ of the sum at $\alpha \ll 1$ (see (9.90) for the expression of α) includes a resonant multiplier $\sim \xi_0^s$ (at $2l + 1 \leqslant s$) in the lowest order of perturbation theory. Then from (9.88) we obtain the formula of perturbation theory for the pair production probability in the C frame, which has a more compact analytical form (here we could get free of the sum of unwieldy products):

$$dw_s^C = 2\pi\hbar\Phi^2\delta\left(2\mathcal{E}' - s\hbar\omega'\right)\frac{d\mathbf{p}'}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}, \tag{9.103}$$

where

$$\Phi = \beta\left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^s \omega' \left[\frac{1}{(s-1)!} + \sum_{K=1}^{[(s-1)/2]} \sum_{S_1=1}^{s-2K} \right.$$

$$\ldots \sum_{S_j=1}^{s-1-\left(S_1+\ldots+S_{j-1}\right)-2K+j} \ldots \sum_{S_{2K}=1}^{s-1-\left(S_1+\ldots+S_{2K-1}\right)} \tag{9.104}$$

$$\left\{\frac{(-1)^{S_2+S_4+...+S_{2K}}}{(s-S_1)(S_1+S_2)\ldots\left[s-(S_1+S_2+...+S_{2K-1})\right](S_1+S_2+...+S_{2K})}\right.$$

$$\left.\left.\times\frac{\beta^{2K}}{(S_1-1)!\,(S_2-1)!\ldots(S_{2K}-1)!\,[s-1-(S_1+S_2+...+S_{2K})]!}\right\}\right].$$

Here $s \geqslant 3$, and parameters

$$\beta = \frac{\mathcal{E}'}{2cp'_y}\left(1-\frac{c^2p'^2_y}{\mathcal{E}'^2}\right)^{1/2}, \qquad \alpha = s\xi_0\frac{mc^3p'_y}{\mathcal{E}'^2}; \qquad \xi_0 \ll \frac{1}{s}.$$

9.5 Pair Production by Superstrong EM Waves in Vacuum

As we saw in the previous section, the conservation laws for the pair production in the field of a plane monochromatic wave can be satisfied in a plasma-like medium where EM waves propagate with a phase velocity larger than the speed of light in vacuum. In this case

$$\frac{\omega^2}{c^2} - \mathbf{k}^2 > 0, \tag{9.105}$$

which means that we have a "photon with nonzero rest mass" providing the creation of the particles with the rest masses. The satisfaction of conservation laws for the e^-, e^+ pair production process in the EM field is equivalent to the satisfaction of the condition

$$\mathbf{E}^2 - \mathbf{H}^2 > 0, \tag{9.106}$$

where $\mathbf{E}$ and $\mathbf{H}$ are the electric and magnetic strengths of the field. The latter is obvious in the frame of reference where there is only an electric field that provides the pair creation (in the opposite case we would have only a magnetic field that cannot produce a pair). The condition (9.106) can be satisfied in the stationary maxima of a standing wave being formed by two counterpropagating waves (opposite laser beams) of the same frequencies. It can also be satisfied in the field of a plane monochromatic wave in a wiggler. Thus, these processes of multiphoton pair production via nonlinear channels in vacuum by superstrong laser fields are of special interest.

Let plane transverse linearly polarized EM waves with frequency ω and amplitude of vector potential $\mathbf{A}_0$

$$\mathbf{A}_1 = \mathbf{A}_0\cos(\omega t - \mathbf{kr}), \quad \mathbf{A}_2 = \mathbf{A}_0\cos(\omega t + \mathbf{kr}), \tag{9.107}$$

propagate in opposite directions in vacuum. To solve the problem of s-photon production of an e^-, e^+ pair in the given radiation fields (9.107), we shall make use of the Dirac model for electron–positron vacuum. The Dirac equation in the field (9.107) has the form

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial t} = \left[c\widehat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}(\widehat{\mathbf{p}} - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_0\cos(\omega t - \mathbf{kr}) - \frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_0\cos(\omega t + \mathbf{kr})) + \widehat{\beta}mc^2\right]\Psi. \quad (9.108)$$

Then we have stationary maxima of a standing wave and (9.108) may be rewritten in the form

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial t} = \left[c\widehat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}(\widehat{\mathbf{p}} - 2\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_0\cos\mathbf{kr}\cos\omega t) + \widehat{\beta}mc^2\right]\Psi. \quad (9.109)$$

According to the Dirac model, the electron–positron pair production by the EM wave field occurs when the vacuum electrons with initial negative energies $\mathcal{E}_0 < 0$ due to s-photon absorption pass to the final states with positive energies $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{E}_0 + s\hbar\omega > 0$. Since we study the case of superstrong laser fields in which the pairs are essentially produced at the length $l \ll \lambda$ (λ is the wavelength of laser radiation) and on the other hand the Hamiltonian of the interaction $H_{int} \sim \mathbf{p}(\mathbf{A}_1 + \mathbf{A}_2)$, the significant contribution in the process of e^-, e^+ pair creation will be conditioned by the areas of stationary maxima in the direction along the electric field strength of the standing wave. Consequently, we can neglect the inhomogeneity of the field in the considered problem, i.e., (9.109) will reduce to the following equation:

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\Psi}{\partial t} = \left[c\widehat{\boldsymbol{\alpha}}(\widehat{\mathbf{p}} - 2\frac{e}{c}\mathbf{A}_0\cos\omega t) + \widehat{\beta}mc^2\right]\Psi. \quad (9.110)$$

In this approximation the magnetic fields of the counterpropagating waves cancel each other. In the case of e^-, e^+ pair production in a plasma we had a similar equation in the center-of-mass frame of created particles (9.76). Thus, we will follow the approach developed in the previous section. Since the interaction Hamiltonian does not depend on the space coordinates, the solution of (9.110) can be represented in the form of a linear combination of free solutions of the Dirac equation with amplitudes $a_i(t)$ depending only on time (9.77). The application of the unitarian transformations (9.82) and (9.84) yields the set of equations

$$\frac{dc_1(t)}{dt} = f(t)c_4(t), \quad (9.111)$$

$$\frac{dc_4(t)}{dt} = -f^*(t)c_1(t). \quad (9.112)$$

Here the function $f(t)$ (see (9.86)) is expanded into series

$$f(t) = i\sum_{s'=-\infty}^{\infty} f_{s'}\exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(2\mathcal{E} - s'\hbar\omega)t\right], \quad (9.113)$$

where

$$f_{s'} = \frac{\mathcal{E}}{2cp_y}\left(1 - \frac{c^2 p_y^2}{\mathcal{E}^2}\right)^{\frac{1}{2}} s'\omega J_{s'}\left(4\xi_0 \frac{mc^2}{\mathcal{E}} \frac{p_y c}{\hbar\omega}\right), \tag{9.114}$$

and J_s is the ordinary Bessel function. The new amplitudes $c_1(t)$ and $c_4(t)$ satisfy the initial conditions

$$|c_1(-\infty)| = 0, |c_4(-\infty)| = 1.$$

Because of space homogeneity, the generalized momentum of a particle is conserved so that the real transitions in the field occur from a $-\mathcal{E}$ negative-energy level to positive $+\mathcal{E}$ energy level (in the assumed approximation) and, consequently, the multiphoton probabilities of e^-, e^+ pair production will have maximal values for the resonant transitions $2\mathcal{E} \simeq s\hbar\omega$. The latter is just the conservation law of the pair production process at which both electrons and positrons will be created back-to-back according to zero total momentum: $\mathbf{p}_{e^-} + \mathbf{p}_{e^+} = 0$, since the considered field is only time dependent. Thus, we can utilize the resonant approximation, as in a two-level atomic system in the monochromatic wave field.

The probabilities of multiphoton e^-, e^+ pair production will have maximal values for the resonant transitions

$$2\mathcal{E} - s\hbar\omega \simeq 0. \tag{9.115}$$

In this case the function $f(t)$ can be represented in the following form:

$$f(t) = F_s + \Phi(t), \tag{9.116}$$

where

$$F_s = i f_s e^{i\delta_s t} \tag{9.117}$$

is the slowly varying function on the scale of the wave period and

$$\Phi(t) = i e^{i\delta_s t} \sum_{s' \neq s, s' = -\infty}^{\infty} f_{s'} e^{i(s-s')\omega t} \tag{9.118}$$

is the rapidly oscillating function. Here we have introduced resonance detuning

$$\hbar\delta_s = 2\mathcal{E} - s\hbar\omega. \tag{9.119}$$

As a consequence of this separation, the probability amplitudes can be represented in the form

$$c_1(t) = c_1^{(s)}(t) + \beta_1(t), \tag{9.120}$$

$$c_4(t) = c_4^{(s)}(t) + \beta_4(t), \tag{9.121}$$

where $c_1^{(s)}(t)$ and $c_4^{(s)}(t)$ are the slowly varying amplitudes corresponding to $c_1(t)$ and $c_4(t)$. The functions $\beta_1(t)$ and $\beta_4(t)$ are rapidly oscillating functions. Substituting (9.120), (9.121) into (9.111), (9.112) and separating slow and rapid oscillations, taking into account (9.116), we will obtain the following set of equations for the slowly varying amplitudes $c_{1,4}^{(s)}(t)$:

$$\frac{dc_1^{(s)}}{dt} = F_s c_4^{(s)} + \overline{\Phi(t)\,\beta_4(t)}, \tag{9.122}$$

$$\frac{dc_4^{(s)}}{dt} = -F_s c_1^{(s)} - \overline{\Phi^*(t)\,\beta_1(t)}, \tag{9.123}$$

and for the rapidly oscillating functions $\beta_{1,4}$:

$$\frac{d\beta_1}{dt} = \Phi(t)\, c_4^{(s)}, \tag{9.124}$$

$$\frac{d\beta_4}{dt} = -\Phi^*(t)\, c_1^{(s)}. \tag{9.125}$$

In (9.122) and (9.123) the bar denotes averaging over time much larger than wave period. In the set of (9.124) and (9.125) we have neglected the terms $\sim F_s\,\beta_{1,4}(t)$ due to the rapid oscillations

$$\left|F_s\beta_\eta(t)\right| \ll \left|\frac{d\beta_1}{dt}\right|. \tag{9.126}$$

Solving the set of (9.124) and (9.125), taking into account that $c_{1,4}^{(s)}$ are slowly varying functions, we obtain

$$\beta_1 = c_4^{(s)} \int_0^t \Phi\left(t'\right) dt',$$

$$\beta_4 = -c_1^{(s)} \int_0^t \Phi^*\left(t'\right) dt'.$$

Then substituting $\beta_{1,4}(t)$ into (9.122) and (9.123), we will have the following equations for the functions $c_{1,4}^{(s)}$:

$$\frac{dc_1^{(s)}}{dt} = F_s c_4^{(s)} - i\frac{\delta_f}{2} c_1^{(s)}, \tag{9.127}$$

$$\frac{dc_4^{(s)}}{dt} = -F_s c_1^{(s)} + i\frac{\delta_f}{2}c_4^{(s)}, \tag{9.128}$$

where

$$\delta_f = -2i\overline{\Phi(t)\int_0^t \Phi^*(t')\,dt'} = \frac{2}{\omega}\sum_{s'\neq s, s'=-\infty}^{\infty}\frac{|f_{s'}|^2}{s-s'}. \tag{9.129}$$

The set of (9.127) and (9.128) can be solved in the general case of arbitrary wave envelope $A_0(t)$ only numerically. However, it admits an exact solution for a monochromatic wave describing "Rabi oscillations" of the Dirac vacuum. In this case the set of (9.127) and (9.128) for the phase transformed amplitudes $c_1^{(s)}\exp(-i\delta_s t/2)$ and $c_4^{(s)}\exp(i\delta_s t/2)$ is a set of ordinary linear differential equations with fixed coefficients. The general solution of the latter is given by a superposition of two linearly independent solutions which with the initial condition is

$$c_1^{(s)}(t) = i\frac{|f_s|}{\Omega_s}e^{i\frac{\delta_s}{2}t}\sin(\Omega_s t), \tag{9.130}$$

$$c_4^{(s)} = e^{-i\frac{\delta_s}{2}t}\left[\cos(\Omega_s t) + \frac{i\Delta_s}{2\Omega_s}\sin(\Omega_s t)\right], \tag{9.131}$$

where

$$\Delta_s = \delta_f + \delta_s \tag{9.132}$$

is the resulting detuning and

$$\Omega_s = \sqrt{|f_s|^2 + \frac{\Delta_s^2}{4}} \tag{9.133}$$

is the "Rabi frequency" of the Dirac vacuum at the interaction with a periodic EM field. As is seen from (9.130) with this frequency, the probability amplitude of e^-, e^+ pair production oscillates in the standing wave field during the whole interaction time similar to Rabi oscillations in the two-level atomic systems. In this case, the "Rabi frequency" has a nonlinear dependence on the amplitudes of the opposite EM wave fields. Considerable number of electron–positron pairs can be produced by a proper choice of intensity and duration of laser pulses.

The set of (9.127) and (9.128) has been derived using the assumption that the amplitudes $c_{1,4}^{(s)}(t)$ are slowly varying functions on the scale of the EM wave period, i.e.,

$$\left|\frac{dc_{1,4}^{(s)}(t)}{dt}\right| \ll \left|c_{1,4}^{(s)}(t)\right|\omega. \tag{9.134}$$

These conditions with (9.126) define the condition of applicability of the applied resonant approximation which is equivalent to the condition

$$\Omega_s \ll \omega. \tag{9.135}$$

The probability of the s-photon e^-, e^+ pair production with the certain energy $\mathcal{E}$, summed over the spin states, is

$$W_s = 2\left|c_1^{(s)}(t)\right|^2 = \frac{2\,|f_s|^2}{\Omega_s^2}\sin^2(\Omega_s t). \tag{9.136}$$

Hence, from (9.114) we have

$$W_s = \frac{s^2\omega^2\left(p^2\sin^2\vartheta + m^2c^2\right)}{2p^2\cos^2\vartheta} J_s^2\left(4\xi_0\frac{mc^3 p\cos\vartheta}{\hbar\omega\mathcal{E}}\right)\frac{\sin^2(\Omega_s t)}{\Omega_s^2}, \tag{9.137}$$

where ϑ is the angle between the directions of the momentum of produced electrons (positrons) and the amplitude of the total field electric strength.

Let us consider the case of short interaction time when

$$\Omega_s t \ll 1. \tag{9.138}$$

In this case, we can determine a probability of multiphoton pair production per unit time according to the following definition of the Dirac δ-function:

$$\frac{\sin^2(\Omega_s t)}{\Omega_s^2} \to 2\pi\hbar t\,\delta(2\mathcal{E} - s\hbar\omega).$$

The differential probability of an s-photon e^-, e^+ pair production process per unit time and unit space volume, summed over the spin states, is given by the following formula:

$$dw_s = \frac{s^2\omega^2(p^2\sin^2\vartheta + m^2c^2)}{16\hbar^2\pi^2 p^2\cos^2\vartheta}$$
$$\times J_s^2\left(4\xi_0\frac{mc^3 p\cos\vartheta}{\hbar\omega\mathcal{E}}\right)\delta\left(\mathcal{E} - \frac{s\hbar\omega}{2}\right)d\mathbf{p}. \tag{9.139}$$

By integrating over the electron (positron) energy, we obtain the angular distribution of the s-photon differential probability density of created electrons (positrons):

$$\frac{dw_s}{do} = \frac{s^3\omega^3}{64\pi^2\hbar c^3}\frac{4m^2c^4 + \hbar^2 s^2\omega^2\tan^2\vartheta}{\left(\hbar^2 s^2\omega^2 - 4m^2c^4\right)^{1/2}}$$

$$\times J_s^2\left(\frac{4ceE_0\left(\hbar^2 s^2\omega^2 - 4m^2c^4\right)^{1/2}\cos\vartheta}{s\hbar^2\omega^3}\right), \tag{9.140}$$

where $do = \sin\vartheta d\vartheta d\varphi$ is the differential solid angle.

Analogously, one can describe the multiphoton pair production process in a wiggler by a superstrong laser pulse of relativistic intensities. Thus, as we saw in Sect. 5.4 at the induced interaction of a charged particle with a plane EM wave in an undulator, or with the counterpropagating waves of different frequencies (Sect. 5.3), the two interference waves are formed which propagate with the phase velocities $\mathrm{v}_{ph} > c$ and $\mathrm{v}_{ph} < c$. According to the conditions (9.105) and (9.106) the wave propagating with the phase velocity $\mathrm{v}_{ph} > c$ will be responsible for the pair production process. By the appropriate transformations, the processes of e^-, e^+ pair production in these EM field configurations can be reduced to the considered pair production process (as in the case of plasma) in this section, namely, one should solve the problem in the center-of-mass frame of the produced pair moving with respect to the laboratory frame with the velocity $\mathrm{v} = c^2/\mathrm{v}_{ph}$.

Bibliography

J. Schwinger, Phys. Rev. **82**, 664 (1951)
V.P. Yakovlev, Zh. Eksp, Teor. Fiz. **49**, 318 (1965)
T. Erber, Rev. Mod. Phys. **38**, 626 (1966)
F.V. Bunkin, I.I. Tugov, Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **187**, 541 (1969). (in Russian)
A.I. Nikishov, Zh. Eksp, Teor. Fiz. **57**, 1210 (1969)
N.B. Narojni, A.I. Nikishov, Yadernaya Fizika **11**, 1072 (1970). (in Russian)
A.I. Nikishov, Nucl. Phys. B **21**, 346 (1970)
V.S. Popov, Pis'ma. Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz. **11**, 254 (1970)
E. Brezin, C. Itzykson, Phys. Rev. D **2**, 1191 (1970)
A.I. Nikishov, V.I. Ritus, Usp. Fiz. Nauk **100**, 724 (1970). (in Russian)
F.V. Bunkin, A.E. Kazakov, Dokl. Akad. Nauk SSSR **193**, 1274 (1970). (in Russian)
Ya.B. Zeldovich, V.S. Popov, Usp. Fiz. Nauk **105**, 403 (1971) (in Russian)
V.S. Popov, Pis'ma. Zh. Eksp. Teor. Fiz. **13**, 261 (1971)
V.S. Popov, Zh. Eksp, Teor. Fiz. **61**, 1334 (1971)
A.I. Nikishov, *Problemi Teoreticheskoi* (Fiziki, Moscow, 1972). (in Russian)
V.S. Popov, Zh. Eksp, Teor. Fiz. **62**, 1248 (1972)
V.S. Popov, Zh. Eksp, Teor. Fiz. **63**, 1586 (1972)
V.I. Ritus, Nucl. Phys. B **44**, 236 (1972)
N.B. Narojni, A.I. Nikishov, Zh. Eksp, Teor. Fiz. **63**, 1135 (1972)
A.A. Grib, V.M. Mostepanenko, V.M. Frolov, Teor. Math. Fiz. **13**, 377 (1972). (in Russian)
A.A. Grib, S.G. Mamaev, V.M. Mostepanenko, *Quantum effects in intense external fields* (Atomizdat, Moscow, 1980). (in Russian)
A.M. Perelomov, Phys. Lett. A **39**, 353 (1972)
H.L. Berkowitz, R. Rosen, Phys. Rev. D **5**, 1308 (1972)
N.B. Narojni, A.I. Nikishov, Zh. Eksp, Teor. Fiz. **63**, 862 (1973)
V.S. Popov, Yadernaya Fizika **19**, 1140 (1974). (in Russian)
A.I. Nikishov, V.I. Ritus, Tr. Fiz. Inst. Akad. Nauk SSSR **111**, 5 (1979)
V.N. Radionov, Zh. Eksp, Teor. Fiz. **78**, 105 (1980)

H.K. Avetissian, A.K. Avetissian, KhV Sedrakian, Zh. Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **99**, 50 (1991)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. D **54**, 5509 (1996)
D. Burke et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **79**, 1626 (1997)
Y. Kluger, E. Mottola, Phys. Rev. D **58**, 125015 (1998)
J.C.R. Bloch et al., Phys. Rev. D **60**, 116011 (1999)
A. Ringwald, Phys. Lett. B **510**, 107 (2001)
V.S. Popov, JETP Lett. **74**, 133 (2001)
H.M. Fried et al., Phys. Rev. D **63**, 125001 (2001)
R. Alkofer et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **87**, 193902 (2001)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. E **66**, 016502 (2002)
C.D. Roberts et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **89**, 153901 (2002)
A. Di Piazza, G. Calucci, Phys. Rev. D **65**, 125019 (2002)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Nucl. Instrum. Methods. A **507**, 582 (2003)
A. Di Piazza, Phys. Rev. D **70**, 053013 (2004)
P. Krekora, Q. Su, R. Grobe, Phys. Rev. Lett. **92**, 040406 (2004)
P. Krekora, Q. Su, R. Grobe, Phys. Rev. Lett. **93**, 043004 (2004)

Chapter 10
Relativistic Quantum Theory of Scattering on Arbitrary Electrostatic Potential and Stimulated Bremsstrahlung

Abstract It is well known that in relativistic quantum theory there is not exact analytical formula for cross section of a charged particle elastic scattering on arbitrary electrostatic potential $\varphi(\mathbf{r})$. Even in case of Coulomb field for which the exact solution of Dirac equation is known, relativistic "Coulomb wave functions", nevertheless, because of its complex character it is impossible to obtain exact analytical expression for scattering cross section via these wave functions. The elastic scattering in relativistic domain is mainly described in approximations when the scattering potential can be considered as a perturbation (in opposite limits). These are the well-known Born and eikonal approximations corresponding to quantum perturbation theory by particle wave function (when the condition $|U| \ll \hbar \mathrm{v}/a$ is satisfied; U is *the potential energy, a* is the space size of the range of effective scattering, v is the particle initial velocity), and high-momentum approximation (if potential energy in the scattering field is much less than the particle initial energy: $|U| \ll p\mathrm{v}$), respectively. In case of Coulomb field there is also an approximation of large impact parameters (large momenta)—Farry-Sommerfeld-Maue (FSM) approximation, which describes well enough the scattering at the small angles. It is also known that the wave function in the eikonal approximation describes the particle state only in a limited space range of the scattering process ($z \ll pa^2/\hbar$; z is the coordinate along the direction of particle initial momentum), i.e., the eikonal solution is not valid at large distances. The wave function of the Born approximation, in contrast to the eikonal one, describes the particle state at arbitrary point in the scattering range, particularly at asymptotically large distances. Nevertheless, the common region where both approximations under consideration are valid is very restricted. On the other hand, within the (small) potential range where both approximations are applicable, these wave functions describe the scattering by different accuracies. Practically, these wave functions describe the scattering at the opposite conditions: the eikonal wave function describes the particle state when the opposite condition of the Born approximation holds (e.g., for Coulomb field with a charge $Z_a e$—*at the* condition: $Z_a e^2/\hbar \mathrm{v} \gtrsim 1$). In these circumstances a natural question arises—is it possible to find out such an approximate solution of Dirac equation beyond the scope both perturbation theory and eikonal approximation—corresponding to more general wave function being applicable in both quantum and quasiclassical limits for relativistic potential scattering (including in particular the Born and eikonal approximations in corresponding limits—under

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_10

its conditions of applicability)? Here we will try to derive such an approximate solution of the Dirac equation which satisfies the formulated requests. We will call it generalized eikonal approximation (GEA) for a spinor particle scattering on the arbitrary short-range or long-range electrostatic potential. Then we will clear up the relationship of this approximation to the known ones for electron elastic scattering on the short-range (Born and eikonal approximations) and long-range Coulomb potentials (Born, eikonal, and Farry-Sommerfeld-Maue approximations). This GEA approximation is developed for electron inelastic scattering process too—to describe the relativistic stimulated bremsstrahlung in the field of strong and superstrong laser radiation with electrostatic potential fields of arbitrary form and finite or infinite effective radiuses (atoms, ions, etc.). The significance of GEA type wave function for description of such laser-assisted electron–atom–ion scattering processes, apart from the known restrictions of mentioned above approximations, is also conditioned with the fact that the wave functions in known approximations describe the particle state factorized by elastic scattering and induced radiation-absorption processes. In the result, we lose the phase relations at the description of electron quantum dynamics interacting with the both fields simultaneously, which have important role for induced process, in particular, for coherent part of interaction. Therefore, for description of strong and superstrong laser–matter (plasma) interaction processes, we need the electron wave function that takes into account the simultaneous influence of both scattering and radiation fields including dynamic phase relations. This induced GEA wave function may be applied specifically for the description of the above-threshold ionization (ATI) process of atoms/ions by superstrong laser fields in relativistic theory taking into account the photoelectron rescattering effect on the atomic remainder because of the action of long-range Coulomb field of atomic ion on the photoelectron final state (this process is considered in the next chapter of this book).

10.1 Relativistic Wave Function of Spinor Particle Elastic Scattering on Arbitrary Electrostatic Potential in Generalized Eikonal Approximation

To answer the formulated above question, we will derive the more general approximate solution of the Dirac equation for a spinor-charged particle elastic scattering in the electrostatic field of arbitrary form (in general, with different longitudinal and transverse effective sizes of scattering) which is available to describe the scattering process with the more accuracy and wider conditions of applicability than the known approximate solutions (including those as different boundary cases).

Dirac equation for a charged particle with spin $s = 1/2$ in an external electrostatic field described by the scalar potential $\varphi(\mathbf{r})$ reads ($\hbar = c = 1$):

$$\{[\mathcal{E} - U(\mathbf{r})]\,\gamma_0 + i\gamma\nabla - m\}\,\Psi\,(\mathbf{r}) = 0, \tag{10.1}$$

where m is the mass, $\mathcal{E}$ the energy, $U(\mathbf{r}) = e\varphi(\mathbf{r})$ is the potential energy of the particle, and $\gamma_0, \boldsymbol{\gamma}$

$$\gamma_0 = \begin{pmatrix} I & 0 \\ 0 & -I \end{pmatrix}; \quad \gamma_k = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sigma_k \\ -\sigma_k & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \; k = 1, 2, 3.$$

are the Dirac matrices in the standard representation.

Let us note at first that the consideration in the scope of a single particle approach on the base of the Dirac equation (10.1) is justified if the condition

$$|U| \ll mc^2 \tag{10.2}$$

holds to except the excitation of the Dirac vacuum and production of electron–positron pairs.

Introducing a bispinor function $\Phi\,(\mathbf{r})$ connected with the wave function $\Psi\,(\mathbf{r})$ by the relation

$$\Psi\,(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{2m}\left\{[\mathcal{E} - U(\mathbf{r})]\,\gamma_0 + i\gamma\nabla + m\right\}\Phi\,(\mathbf{r}), \tag{10.3}$$

we will have the following equation (quadratic form of the Dirac equation) for the new bispinor function $\Phi\,(\mathbf{r})$:

$$\left\{[\mathcal{E} - U(\mathbf{r})]^2 + \Delta - m^2 + i\gamma_0\gamma\nabla U(\mathbf{r})\right\}\Phi\,(\mathbf{r}) = 0. \tag{10.4}$$

where Δ is the Laplace operator.

We seek the solution of (10.4) in the form

$$\Phi\,(\mathbf{r}) = f\,(\mathbf{r})\exp\left[iS\,(\mathbf{r})\right], \tag{10.5}$$

where $\exp\,[iS\,(\mathbf{r})]$ is the solution of Klein–Gordon equation for a charged scalar particle in a static field ($S_1\,(\mathbf{r})$—is the classical action of the electron in the electrostatic field):

$$\left\{[\mathcal{E} - U(\mathbf{r})]^2 + \Delta - m^2\right\}\exp\left[iS\,(\mathbf{r})\right] = 0, \tag{10.6}$$

and $f\,(\mathbf{r})$ is a bispinor function.

Substituting (10.5) into (10.4) we get for $f\,(\mathbf{r})$ and $S\,(\mathbf{r})$ the set of equations:

$$i\Delta S + [\mathcal{E} - U(\mathbf{r})]^2 - (\nabla S)^2 - m^2 = 0, \tag{10.7}$$

$$i\Delta f - 2\nabla S\nabla f - \gamma_0\left[\boldsymbol{\gamma}\boldsymbol{\nabla} U(\mathbf{r})\right] f = 0, \tag{10.8}$$

where (10.7) is the Klein–Gordon equation (cf. with (10.6) that describes the scattering of a charged particle without spin, whereas (10.8) describes the spinor part of the particle wave function in scattering process. We will solve the set of (10.7) and

(10.8) in assumption that the scattering field is not strong and we can seek a solution of the following form:

$$S(\mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{pr} + S_1(\mathbf{r}), \quad f(\mathbf{r}) = u + f_1(\mathbf{r}),$$

where u is the Dirac bispinor for the free particle. As a result (10.7) and (10.8) turn into a new set of equations for the scalar function $S_1(\mathbf{r})$ and bispinor function $f_1(\mathbf{r})$:

$$i\Delta S_1 - 2\mathbf{p}\nabla S_1 = 2\mathcal{E}U(\mathbf{r}) - U^2(\mathbf{r}) + (\nabla S_1)^2, \tag{10.9}$$

$$i\Delta f_1 - 2\mathbf{p}\nabla f_1 = \gamma_0\gamma\nabla U(\mathbf{r})u + 2\nabla S_1\nabla f_1 + \gamma_0\boldsymbol{\gamma}\boldsymbol{\nabla}U(\mathbf{r})f_1. \tag{10.10}$$

Within the assumption of potential weakness the last two terms on the right-hand sides of (10.9) and (10.10) are small compared to the first one and can be neglected. So instead of (10.9) and (10.10) we can now write the set of equations

$$i\Delta S_1 - 2\mathbf{p}\nabla S_1 = 2\mathcal{E}U(\mathbf{r}), \tag{10.11}$$

$$i\Delta f_1 - 2\mathbf{p}\nabla f_1 = \gamma_0\gamma\nabla U(\mathbf{r})u. \tag{10.12}$$

This set can be solved by carrying out a Fourier transformation in (10.11) and (10.12) and taking into account that for a finite-range potential the following boundary conditions are true:

$$S_1(\mathbf{r}) = 0, \quad \nabla S_1(\mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{0}; \quad f_1(\mathbf{r}) = 0, \quad \nabla f_1(\mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{0}, \tag{10.13}$$

when $\mathbf{pr} < \mathbf{0}$, $|\mathbf{r}| \to \infty$. As a result, the solutions of (10.11) and (10.12) may be written as

$$S_1(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{i\mathcal{E}}{4\pi^3}\int\frac{\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})\exp(i\mathbf{qr})}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} - i0}d\mathbf{q},$$

$$f_1(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{\gamma_0\gamma\nabla S_1(\mathbf{r})\,u}{2\mathcal{E}}, \tag{10.14}$$

where $\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) = \int U(\mathbf{r})\exp(-i\mathbf{qr})d\mathbf{r}$ is the Fourier transform of the potential energy, $i0$ is an imaginary infinitesimal, and the path around the pole in the integral is chosen according to boundary conditions (10.13).

As far as at the derivation of (10.14) we replaced the exact equations (10.9) and (10.10) by the approximate equations (10.11) and (10.12) within the assumption of potential weakness; consequently, this approximation is valid if the following conditions are satisfied:

$$|U(\mathbf{r})| \ll 2\mathcal{E}, \quad |\nabla S_1|^2 \ll 2\mathcal{E}\,|U(\mathbf{r})|, \tag{10.15}$$

and

$$2\left|\nabla S_1 \nabla f_1\right| \ll \left|\gamma_0 \gamma \nabla U(\mathbf{r}) u\right|, \quad \left|\gamma_0 \gamma \nabla U(\mathbf{r}) f_1\right| \ll \left|\gamma_0 \gamma \nabla U(\mathbf{r}) u\right|. \tag{10.16}$$

As is seen, the first of the conditions (10.15) is weaker than the general condition (10.2), and the other two in (10.16) follow from the conditions (10.15), which becomes evident by the evaluation of explicit expressions for $S_1(\mathbf{r})$ and $f_1(\mathbf{r})$ in (10.14). Hence, for considering GEA approximation we have a single condition—the second condition in (10.15). Using the explicit expression in (10.14) for $S_1(\mathbf{r})$, the condition of GEA approximation can be written as

$$2\mathcal{E}\left|\int \frac{\mathbf{q}\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})\exp(i\mathbf{qr})}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} - i0}\frac{d\mathbf{q}}{(2\pi)^3}\right|^2 \ll |U(\mathbf{r})|. \tag{10.17}$$

To the integral in the last expression (10.17), because of the oscillating factor $\exp(i\mathbf{qr})$ the main contribution gives the region where $\mathbf{qr} \cong 1$. Hence, the condition (10.17) can be written as

$$2\mathcal{E}\frac{\mathbf{q}_{ef}^2}{\left(\mathbf{q}_{ef}^2 + 2\mathbf{p}\mathbf{q}_{ef}\right)^2}|U| \ll 1. \tag{10.18}$$

Finally, defining $\left|\mathbf{q}_{ef}\right|_z = 1/\overline{z}$, $\left|\mathbf{q}_{ef}\right|_\perp = 1/\overline{\rho}$, from the last relation we can write the conditions (10.15) when the approximate equations (10.11) and (10.12) are applicable in the following form:

$$|U| \ll 2p\mathrm{v}\left(\frac{\overline{\rho}}{\sqrt{\overline{\rho}^2 + \overline{z}^2}} + \frac{1}{2p}\sqrt{\frac{1}{\overline{\rho}^2} + \frac{1}{\overline{z}^2}}\right)^2. \tag{10.19}$$

Here the initial momentum of the particle is directed along the z axis, and $\overline{z}$, $\overline{\rho}$ are the longitudinal and transverse dimensions of the domain, respectively, where the interaction of the particle with the potential is the most effective and, consequently, gives the main contribution to the integral defining $S_1(\mathbf{r})$ in (10.14).

So (10.19) is the condition of developed approximation GEA in general case of arbitrary non-spherically symmetric potential.

Using (10.14), the approximate solution of (10.4) may be written as

$$\Phi(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{pr}}\left[1 - \frac{i\gamma_0\gamma\nabla}{2\mathcal{E}}\right]e^{iS_1(\mathbf{r})}\frac{u_{\mathbf{p}}}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}. \tag{10.20}$$

Inserting the expression for $\Phi(\mathbf{r})$ into (10.3) and keeping terms to first order of the potential, after simple but long calculations we obtain the solution of the Dirac equation in the applied approximation

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{pr}} \left[1 - \frac{i\gamma_0\gamma\nabla}{2\mathcal{E}} \right] e^{iS_1(\mathbf{r})} \frac{u_\mathbf{p}}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}. \tag{10.21}$$

The wave function (10.21) is normalized for one particle in the unit volume and $\overline{u}_\mathbf{p} u_\mathbf{p} = 2m$, where $\overline{u}_\mathbf{p} = u_\mathbf{p}^\dagger \gamma_0$. Comparing (10.20) and (10.21), one can see that $\Phi(\mathbf{r}) = \Psi(\mathbf{r})$. Thus, within the approximation equation (10.15) the solution (10.20) of the (10.4) coincides with the solution (10.21) of the Dirac equation (10.1), i.e., the obtained solution of the second-order Dirac equation in the developed approximation GEA is the solution of the initial first-order Dirac equation too.

Now let us clarify the relation of the obtained wave function (10.21) with the Born and the eikonal approximation wave functions, respectively. If $|S_1(\mathbf{r})| \ll 1$, then expanding the exponent in (10.21) into the series and keeping only terms to first order in U, we obtain

$$\Psi_B(\mathbf{r}) = \left[1 - \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \int \frac{2\mathcal{E} + \gamma_0 \boldsymbol{\gamma} \boldsymbol{q}}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} - i0} \widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) e^{i\mathbf{qr}} d\mathbf{q} \right] \frac{u_\mathbf{p} e^{i\mathbf{pr}}}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}, \tag{10.22}$$

i.e., the wave function of the Born approximation.

The criterion for the condition $|S_1(\mathbf{r})| \ll 1$ can be found using (10.14) and evaluating the integral in a similar way, as done above. As a result we get

$$|U| \ll p\mathrm{v} \left(\frac{1}{p\overline{z}} + \frac{1}{2(p\overline{z})^2} + \frac{1}{2(p\overline{\rho})^2} \right). \tag{10.23}$$

This criterion generalizes the well-known Born criterion for elastic scattering. It includes both weak ($|U| \ll \mathrm{v}/\overline{z}$) and strong ($|U| \ll 1/\mathcal{E}a^2$, where $a = \max\{\overline{z}, \overline{\rho}\}$) conditions of the Born approximation for fast ($p\overline{z} \gg 1$ and $p\overline{\rho} \gg 1$) and slow ($pa \leqslant 1$) particles, respectively.

To obtain the wave function in common eikonal approximation from GEA wave function (10.21), it is necessary to neglect with the second derivatives of $S_1(\mathbf{r})$ in (10.11), which is equivalent to remove the term $\mathbf{q}^2$ in the denominator of the integral in the first equation of (10.14). Then passing in this expression from Fourier transform $\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})$ to potential energy $U(\mathbf{r}')$ and integrating over transverse scattering momenta $\mathbf{q}_\perp$ and coordinates $\mathbf{r}'_\perp$, the integral is reduced to Cauchy's integral over q_z, after calculation of which we obtain

$$S_1^E(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{1}{\mathrm{v}} \int_{-\infty}^{z} U(\rho, z') dz', \tag{10.24}$$

where $\rho \equiv \{x, y\}$ and ρ has a meaning of impact parameter in quantum scattering theory. Afterward, within the expression (10.24) from the GEA wave function (10.21) we obtain the wave function of the eikonal approximation:

$$\Psi^E(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{pr}}\left[1 - \frac{i\gamma_0\gamma\nabla}{2\mathcal{E}}\right]\exp\left(-\frac{i}{\mathrm{v}}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{z} U(\rho, z')dz'\right)\frac{u_{\mathbf{p}}}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}. \tag{10.25}$$

The dropping of the term $\mathbf{q}^2$ with respect to the $2\mathbf{pq}$ in (10.14) gives the condition $z \ll pa^2$ that is the aforementioned known restriction of longitudinal scattering distances in the eikonal approximation.

Thus, the obtained GEA wave function (10.21) in particular cases under corresponding conditions turns to the wave functions of the Born and eikonal approximations.

Concluding, this new approximate wave function in developed generalized eikonal approximation has an advantage with respect to known approximations in quantum theory for description of a charged spinor particle scattering in arbitrary short-range or long-range electrostatic fields. First, it allows to describe the scattering process in considerably stronger potential fields (larger $S_1(\mathbf{r})$) than the Born approximation permits. Second, it eliminates the known restriction of scattering distances in the eikonal approximation $z \ll pa^2$ and allows to determine the scattering cross section via asymptotic wave function in GEA.

10.2 Spinor Particle Scattering in the Coulomb Field by Generalized Eikonal Approximation

The wave function (10.21) obtained above describes the particle scattering in a finite-range potential where the boundary conditions (10.13) are hold. For infinite-range potential, as the Coulomb field is, in general, the conditions (10.13) break down and, as a result, the states of a particle at infinity cannot strictly be described by a plane wave. Specifically, in the case of the Coulomb potential the particle wave function at infinity contains the well-known logarithmic divergent phase, which cannot be defined by (10.21). Therefore, in this paragraph we separately consider the scattering problem in the Coulomb field.

At the existence of a certain selected direction (here—the direction of the particle initial momentum), particle scattering in the spherically symmetric field is possessed with axial symmetry, so the Dirac equation in a Coulomb field is convenient to solve in the parabolic coordinates ζ, η, and φ.

The (10.11) written in the parabolic coordinates $\zeta = r + z$, $\eta = r - z$, and $\varphi = \arctan(y/x)$ for a Coulomb field $U(r) = \alpha/r$ has the following form:

$$\left[i\frac{\partial}{\partial\zeta}\left(\zeta\frac{\partial}{\partial\zeta}\right) + i\frac{\partial}{\partial\eta}\left(\eta\frac{\partial}{\partial\eta}\right) + \frac{i}{4}\left(\frac{1}{\zeta} + \frac{1}{\eta}\right)\frac{\partial^2}{\partial\varphi^2}\right.$$
$$\left. -p\left(\zeta\frac{\partial}{\partial\zeta} - \eta\frac{\partial}{\partial\eta}\right)\right]S_1^C(\zeta, \eta, \varphi) - \alpha\mathcal{E} = 0. \tag{10.26}$$

However, because of the axial symmetry the solution $S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta, \eta, \varphi)$ for the stated issue does not depend on φ. Thus, the term with the $\partial^2/\partial\varphi^2$ in (10.26) passes to a term with l_z^2 (l_z is the projection of the orbital moment—magnetic quantum number) which we shall put zero in accordance with the statement that before the scattering we have particle plane state (then the condition $l_z = 0$ conserved in the field due to the axial symmetry). Hence, $S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta, \eta, \varphi) \rightarrow S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta, \eta)$ and seeking a solution of (10.26) in the form

$$S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta, \eta) = S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta) + S_{\text{II}}^{C}(\eta), \tag{10.27}$$

the variables in this equation are separated and for $S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta)$ and $S_{\text{II}}^{C}(\eta)$ we obtain the equations

$$\left[i\frac{d}{d\zeta}\left(\zeta\frac{d}{d\zeta}\right) - p\frac{d}{d\zeta}\left(\zeta\frac{d}{d\zeta}\right)\right]S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta) = a, \tag{10.28}$$

$$\left[i\frac{d}{d\eta}\left(\eta\frac{d}{d\eta}\right) + p\left(\eta\frac{d}{d\eta}\right)\right]S_{\text{II}}^{C}(\eta) = b, \quad a + b = \alpha\mathcal{E}, \tag{10.29}$$

where the constants a and b are the "separation parameters."

Recalling that the particle wave function in the Coulomb field before the scattering shall describe particle plane states, we shall look for such a solution $S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta, \eta)$ of (10.28) and (10.29) which at $z < 0$ and $r \rightarrow \infty$ provides a plane wave for free particle, that is,

$$S^{C}(\mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{pr} + S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\mathbf{r}) \rightarrow pz; \quad -\infty < z < 0, \quad r \rightarrow \infty, \tag{10.30}$$

corresponding to the incident particle along the direction of OZ axis. This requirement can be fulfilled only by the unique choice of parameters a and b. Thus, the asymptotic condition (10.30) in parabolic coordinates reads

$$\frac{p}{2}(\zeta - \eta) + S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta) + S_{\text{II}}^{C}(\eta) \rightarrow \frac{p}{2}(\zeta - \eta); \quad \eta \rightarrow \infty, \quad \forall\zeta > 0. \tag{10.31}$$

This condition can be fulfilled only if

$$S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta) = \text{const} = 0; \quad \left|S_{\text{II}}^{C}(\eta)/\eta\right|_{\eta\rightarrow\infty} \rightarrow 0. \tag{10.32}$$

Now taking into account that $S_{\text{I}}^{C}(\zeta) = \text{const}$, from (10.28) it follows that $a = 0$ and $b = \alpha\mathcal{E}$. At these conditions, we seek the solution of (10.29) in the following form:

$$S_{\text{II}}^{C}(\eta) = \frac{\alpha}{\text{v}}\ln p\eta - \frac{\alpha}{\text{v}}F(\eta). \tag{10.33}$$

Then for the function $F(\eta)$ we receive the equation

$$\frac{d^2F(\eta)}{-p^2 d\eta^2} + \left(\frac{1}{ip\eta} - 1\right)\frac{dF(\eta)}{ipd\eta} = 0, \tag{10.34}$$

the solution of which is the integral exponential function $Ei\,(x)$:

$$F(\eta) = -\frac{\alpha}{\mathrm{v}} Ei\,(ip\eta). \tag{10.35}$$

Taking into account (10.27), (10.33), and (10.35) and passing again to Cartesian coordinates, for $S_1^C\,(\mathbf{r})$ we will have the following expression:

$$S_1^C\,(\mathbf{r}) = -\frac{\alpha}{\mathrm{v}}\left\{Ei\,[ip(r-z)] - \ln p\,(r-z)\right\}. \tag{10.36}$$

Using (10.5) and (10.36) and recalling that the obtained solution of the quadratic Dirac equation $\Phi\,(\mathbf{r})$ in the applied approximation GEA is the solution of the basic Dirac equation too, $\Phi\,(\mathbf{r}) = \Psi\,(\mathbf{r})$, as well as taking into account the definitions $S^C\,(\mathbf{r}) = \mathbf{pr} + S_1^C\,(\mathbf{r})$ and $f^C\,(\mathbf{r}) = u + f_1^C\,(\mathbf{r})$, where $f_1^C\,(\mathbf{r})$ is again defined through $S_1^C\,(\mathbf{r})$ in accordance with (10.14), we obtain the spinor particle wave function in a Coulomb field in GEA:

$$\Psi^C\,(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{pr}}\left[1 - \frac{i\gamma_0\gamma\nabla}{2\mathcal{E}}\right]$$
$$\times\,\exp\left\{-i\frac{\alpha}{\mathrm{v}}\left[Ei\,[ip(r-z)] - \ln p\,(r-z)\right]\right\}\frac{u_{\mathbf{p}}}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}. \tag{10.37}$$

Formula (10.37), which satisfies asymptotes (10.30)–(10.32), is valid at the condition (10.15) that for a long-range Coulomb field takes place if

$$\frac{\alpha}{\mathrm{v}} \ll p(r-z). \tag{10.38}$$

Now let us clarify the relation of the obtained wave function with the wave functions of the Born, Farry-Sommerfeld-Maue (FSM) and eikonal approximations for a spinor particle in the Coulomb field.

As in above-considered case of short-range potentials, to obtain the particle wave function in the Born approximation from the GEA wave function (10.37) we shall pass to perturbation theory over a Coulomb potential $U(r)$, i.e., assume that $\left|S_1^C\,(\mathbf{r})\right| \ll 1$ and expand the expression in (10.37) by this small quantity $\left|S_1^C\,(\mathbf{r})\right|$. Then we obtain the wave function of a spinor particle in the first Born approximation:

$$\Psi_B^C\,(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{pr}}\left[1 - \frac{i\gamma_0\gamma\nabla}{2\mathcal{E}}\right]$$
$$\times\left\{1 - i\frac{\alpha}{\mathrm{v}}\left[Ei\,[ip(r-z)] - \ln p\,(r-z)\right]\right\}\frac{u_{\mathbf{p}}}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}. \tag{10.39}$$

Formula (10.39) with the condition when this solution is valid:

$$\frac{\alpha}{\text{v}} \left| Ei\left[ip(r-z)\right] - \ln p\,(r-z)\right| \ll 1, \tag{10.40}$$

defining the Born approximation for a spinor particle scattering in a long-range Coulomb field.

The wave function (10.37) in the quasiclassic limit—at the condition $p\,(r-z) \gg 1$ (at which the second derivatives of $S_1^C\,(\mathbf{r})$ can be neglected)—passes to the eikonal wave function for a Coulomb field:

$$\Psi_E^C\,(\mathbf{r}) = e^{i\mathbf{pr}}\left[1 - \frac{i\gamma_0\gamma\nabla}{2\mathcal{E}}\right]\exp\left[i\frac{\alpha}{\text{v}}\ln p\,(r-z)\right]\frac{u_{\mathbf{p}}}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}. \tag{10.41}$$

Let us compare the obtained in GEA wave function (10.37) with the known wave function of a relativistic particle scattering in a Coulomb field in the FSM approximation, which is valid when $\alpha^2/p\rho \ll 1$ (approximation of large momenta):

$$\Psi^{FSM}\,(\mathbf{r}) = e^{-\pi\alpha/2\text{v}}\Gamma\left(1 + i\frac{\alpha}{\text{v}}\right)e^{i\mathbf{pr}}\left[1 - \frac{i\gamma_0\gamma\nabla}{2\mathcal{E}}\right]$$
$$\times\; F\left(-i\frac{\alpha}{\text{v}}, 1; -ip(r-z)\right)\frac{u_{\mathbf{p}}}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}, \tag{10.42}$$

where $\Gamma(t)$ is the Gamma function and $F(-ia, 1; iy)$ is the confluent hypergeometric function.

In the quasiclassic limit, where $p\,(r-z) \gg 1$, using the asymptotic formula of the confluent hypergeometric function for $y \gg 1$:

$$F\,(-ia, 1; iy) \cong \frac{e^{\pi a/2}}{\Gamma\,(1+ia)}e^{ia\ln y}\left[1 + O\left(\frac{1}{y}\right)\right], \tag{10.43}$$

we obtain from (10.42) the Coulomb wave function in the eikonal approximation (10.41). Thus, where $p\,(r-z) \gg 1$, the GEA and FSM wave functions coincide, turning into the eikonal wave function of a particle in the Coulomb field.

Note that the wave functions GEA and FSM also coincide in the region where $p(r-z) \leqslant 1$, if $\alpha/\text{v} \ll 1$ too. In fact, in this limit, using the asymptotic formula for the confluent hypergeometric function

$$F\left(-i\frac{\alpha}{\text{v}}, 1; iy\right) \cong 1 - i\frac{\alpha}{\text{v}}\sum_{k=1}^{\infty}\frac{y^k}{kk!}$$
$$= 1 - i\frac{\alpha}{\text{v}}\left[Ei(y) - \ln y - C + i\pi\right] \tag{10.44}$$

($C = 0.577215\ldots$ is Euler constant), we obtain from (10.42) the Coulomb wave function in the Born approximation (10.39).

10.3 Elastic Scattering Cross Section in Generalized Eikonal Approximation

The knowledge of the particle wave function in the scattering field and his asymptote at $r \to \infty$ enables one to calculate the amplitude of the elastic scattering, and hence the differential scattering cross sections via the asymptotic wave function. Thus, if the wave function also describes the particle states at large distances and has an asymptote at $r \to \infty$ that is a superposition of a plane and spherical convergent waves:

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}) \approx u^{\mu}_{\mathbf{p}} e^{i\mathbf{pr}} + G^{\dagger}(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}) \frac{e^{ipr}}{r}, \tag{10.45}$$

the scattering amplitude can be defined as

$$f^{\mu}(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}) = \frac{1}{2m} \overline{u}^{\mu}_{\mathbf{p}} G^{\dagger}(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}), \tag{10.46}$$

where $u^{\mu}_{\mathbf{p}}$, $\overline{u}^{\mu}_{\mathbf{p}}$ are bispinors describing the state of a free particle with polarization μ and momenta $\mathbf{p}$ and $\mathbf{p}' = p\widehat{\mathbf{r}}$, respectively, and $G^{\dagger}(\widehat{\mathbf{r}})$ is a bispinor depending on $\widehat{\mathbf{r}} = \mathbf{r}/r$.

In other cases, when the wave function describes the particle states only in the region where the particle potential energy $U(\mathbf{r})$ is not zero (interaction region), it is impossible to determine the scattering amplitude by the asymptote of the wave function. Nevertheless, in these cases the $\Psi(\mathbf{r})$ related to the interaction range

$$f^{\mu}(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}) = -\frac{1}{4\pi} \int e^{-i\mathbf{p}'\mathbf{r}'} \overline{u}^{\mu}_{\mathbf{p}'} \gamma_0 \Psi(\mathbf{r}') U(\mathbf{r}') d^3 r'. \tag{10.47}$$

As far as obtained in the two previous paragraphs, the wave functions in GEA describe the particle states either within the range of a scattering field or at asymptotic large distances, and both these approaches can be applied to calculate the scattering amplitudes in the developed approximation by the two types of wave functions for finite (short-range) or infinite (long-range) potentials. At first, we will define the scattering amplitude by the GEA wave function (10.21) for a particle scattering in a short-range potential.

To calculate the asymptote of the function $S_1(\mathbf{r})$ in (10.21), temporarily we direct the OZ coordinate axis along $\mathbf{r}$ and change the integration variable in (10.14) to $\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{p} + \mathbf{q}$. Turning to spherical coordinates, we carry out the integration over the variable $\cos\theta = \mathbf{Q}\widehat{\mathbf{r}}$. As a result, at $r \to \infty$ we obtain

$$S_1(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{i\mathcal{E}}{2\pi} e^{-ipr} \widetilde{U}(\mathbf{p}' - \mathbf{p}) \frac{e^{i\mathbf{pr}}}{r}. \tag{10.48}$$

Using (10.48), we obtain from (10.21) an asymptote of the wave function of the form (10.45), where

$$G^{\dagger}\left(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}\right)=-\frac{1}{4\pi}\left[2\mathcal{E}+\gamma_0\gamma\left(\mathbf{p}'-\mathbf{p}\right)\right]u_{\mathbf{p}}\widetilde{U}\left(\mathbf{p}'-\mathbf{p}\right). \tag{10.49}$$

In addition, taking into account that

$$\overline{u}_{\mathbf{p}}\left(\mathcal{E}\gamma_0-\gamma\mathbf{p}'-m\right)=0, \quad \left(\mathcal{E}\gamma_0-\gamma\mathbf{p}-m\right)u_{\mathbf{p}}=0,$$

the scattering amplitude (10.46) takes the form:

$$f^{\mu}\left(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}\right)=-\frac{1}{4\pi}\overline{u}_{\mathbf{p}'}\gamma_0 u_{\mathbf{p}}\widetilde{U}\left(\mathbf{p}'-\mathbf{p}\right), \tag{10.50}$$

which coincides with the amplitude of the elastic scattering in the first Born approximation.

The GEA wave function in the Coulomb field (10.37) describes the particle states at large distances too. In fact, at large distances, taking into account the asymptote of the integral exponential function

$$Ei(ix)\approx\frac{e^{ix}}{ix}; \quad x\gg 1,$$

we obtain from (10.37) the asymptote of the wave function

$$\Psi^{C}\left(\mathbf{r}\right)\approx u_{\mathbf{p}}\exp\left(i\mathbf{pr}+i\frac{\alpha}{\mathrm{v}}\ln pr(1-\cos\theta)\right)+G^{\dagger}\left(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}\right)\frac{\exp(ipr+i\frac{\alpha}{\mathrm{v}}\ln pr)}{r}, \tag{10.51}$$

where

$$G^{\dagger}\left(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}\right)=-\frac{\alpha}{p\mathrm{v}}\left[1+\frac{\gamma_0}{2\mathcal{E}}\gamma\left(\mathbf{p}'-\mathbf{p}\right)\right]u_{\mathbf{p}}\frac{\exp(i\frac{\alpha}{\mathrm{v}}\ln(1-\cos\theta))}{1-\cos\theta}, \tag{10.52}$$

and θ is the scattering angle. The first term in (10.51) is the incident wave with the logarithmic distortion in the phase that occurs because of the slow decrease of the Coulomb field at the distance. There is such a kind of distortion in the scattered spherical wave described by the second term in (10.51) too. However, these deviations from the usual asymptotic form of the wave function (10.45) are not essential for the definition of the scattering amplitude, and using (10.46) and (10.52) we obtain

$$f^{\mu}\left(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}\right)=-\frac{\alpha}{2p^2}\frac{\overline{u}_{\mathbf{p}'}\gamma_0 u_{\mathbf{p}}}{1-\cos\theta}\exp\left(i\frac{\alpha}{\mathrm{v}}\ln(1-\cos\theta)\right). \tag{10.53}$$

The expression (10.53) differs from the well-known scattering amplitude of the Coulomb field in the first Born approximation only by a phase factor. So using the amplitude of the scattering in a short-range field in the first Born approximation (10.50) for a long-range Coulomb field gives the same scattering cross sections.

Now let us calculate the scattering amplitude by the formula (10.47). We carry out integration by parts by substituting the wave function (10.21) into (10.47) and using (10.11) and (10.12). Taking into account that for a short-range potential $U(\mathbf{r}) \to 0$, $\nabla U(\mathbf{r}) \to 0$, and $\Delta U(\mathbf{r}) \to 0$, at $r \to \infty$, we obtain the scattering amplitude in the GEA:

$$f^{\mu}(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}) = -\frac{i}{4\pi}\frac{\overline{u}_{\mathbf{p}'}\gamma_0}{2\mathcal{E}}\left|\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{p}'\right| \int \exp(-i\mathbf{Q}\rho)\left[e^{i\widetilde{S}_1(\rho)} - 1\right] u_{\mathbf{p}} d^2\rho, \tag{10.54}$$

where OZ axis is taken along $\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{p}'$, $\mathbf{Q} = \mathbf{p}' - \mathbf{p}$ is the transfer momentum, and we have denoted by $\widetilde{S}_1(\rho)$ the function $S_1(\mathbf{r})$ at $z \to +\infty$, which is defined in (10.14).

The expression (10.54) defines the amplitude of an elastic scattering in the generalized eikonal approximation. Within this expression one can easily derive the elastic scattering amplitudes of the Born and eikonal approximations.

For the scattering of nonpolarized particles, after summing over the final and averaging over initial polarization, we obtain from (10.54) the differential cross sections in generalized eikonal approximation:

$$d\sigma = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{\mu} |f^{\mu}(\widehat{\mathbf{r}})|^2 do = |f^{\mu}(\widehat{\mathbf{r}})|^2 do, \tag{10.55}$$

where

$$f(\widehat{\mathbf{r}}) = -\frac{i}{8\pi}\left|\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{p}'\right|\left(1+\frac{\mathbf{pQ}}{2\mathcal{E}^2}\right)^{1/2} \int \exp(-i\mathbf{Q}\rho)\left[e^{i\widetilde{S}_1(\rho)} - 1\right] u_{\mathbf{p}} d^2\rho$$

and do is the solid angle along the $\widehat{\mathbf{r}}$.

10.4 Bremsstrahlung in Superstrong Radiation Fields: Born Approximation

Now let us consider the electromagnetic aspect of considered in previous two paragraphs quantum-mechanical scattering process of a charged particle in the electrostatic field, that is, well-known bremsstrahlung (spontaneous)—major radiation process by a free electron in vacuum. In the presence of an external radiation field, the spontaneous bremsstrahlung acquires induced character and stimulated bremsstrahlung (SB) takes place. In the laser fields of relativistic intensities, SB becomes essentially multiphoton process, and the description of nonlinear SB requires relativistic quantum consideration. The latter may be made via Volkov wave function (1.94), at the electron scattering on a static potential (arbitrary electrostatic field) in the first Born approximation. This process can be described by the first-order Feynman diagram (Fig. 10.1) where the "dressed electron" initial and final states are described by

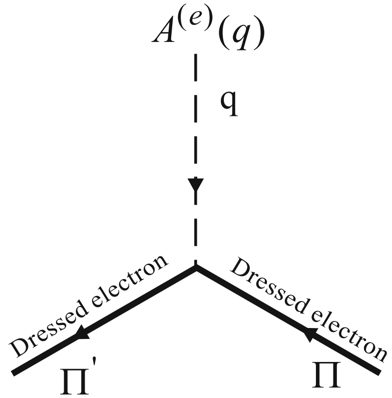


Fig. 10.1 Feynman diagram for bremsstrahlung in superstrong wave field

corresponding wave functions (1.94), and the dashed line corresponds to pseudophotons of scattering potential field.

For the probability amplitude of the transition $i \to f$ at SB process, we have

$$S_{if} = -\frac{ie}{\hbar c^2} \int \overline{\Psi}_{\mathbf{\Pi}'\sigma'} \widehat{A}^{(e)}(x)\, \Psi_{\mathbf{\Pi}\sigma} d^4x, \tag{10.56}$$

where $A^{(e)}(x)$ is the four-dimensional vector potential of the scattering field. Upon Fourier transformation

$$A^{(e)}(x) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^4} \int A^{(e)}\left(q'\right) e^{-iq'x} d^4q',$$

Equation (10.56) will have the form

$$S_{if} = -\frac{ie}{\hbar c^2 (2\pi)^4} \int \overline{\Psi}_{\mathbf{\Pi}'\sigma'} \widehat{A}^{(e)}\left(q'\right) e^{-iq'x} \Psi_{\mathbf{\Pi}\sigma} d^4q' d^4x. \tag{10.57}$$

The static potential field (for a nucleus/ion—as a scattering center—the recoil momentum is neglected) will be described by the scalar potential $\varphi(\mathbf{r})$

$$A^{(e)}(x) = (\varphi(\mathbf{r}), 0)$$

and for the Fourier transform of $A^{(e)}(x)$ we have

$$A^{(e)}\left(q'\right) = \left(2\pi\delta\left(q_0'\right)\varphi\left(\mathbf{q}'\right), 0\right).$$

Then one can conclude that the S-matrix amplitude of this process may be obtained from the S-matrix amplitude of the Compton effect (1.106) by substitutions of the amplitude of vector potential of quantized photon field, as well as four-dimensional polarization and wave vectors of the photon as follows:

$$\sqrt{\frac{2\pi\hbar c^2}{\omega'}} \to \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\delta\left(q_0'\right)\varphi\left(\mathbf{q}'\right)d^4q',$$

$$\epsilon^* \to \epsilon_0 = (1,0,0,0), \qquad k' \to -q'.$$

Hence, making these substitutions in (1.107) and using δ functions of (1.108)–(1.110) for the integration over q', the probability amplitude of SB may be represented in the following form:

$$S_{if} = -i\pi\frac{e}{Vc\sqrt{\Pi_0\Pi_0'}}\overline{u}_{\sigma'}(p')\widehat{M}_{if}u_\sigma(p) \tag{10.58}$$

with

$$\widehat{M}_{if} = \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}\varphi(\mathbf{q}_s)\left[\widehat{\epsilon}_0 B_s + \left(\frac{e\widehat{B}_{1s}\widehat{k}\widehat{\epsilon}_0}{2c(kp')} + \frac{e\widehat{\epsilon}_0\widehat{k}\widehat{B}_{1s}}{2c(kp)}\right)\right.$$
$$\left. + \frac{e^2(k\epsilon_0)B_{2s}}{2c^2(kp')(kp)}\widehat{k}\right]\delta\left(\Pi_0' - \Pi_0 - s\hbar\omega\right), \tag{10.59}$$

where the vector functions $B^\mu_{1s} = (0, \mathbf{B}_{1s})$ and scalar functions B_s, B_{2s} are expressed via generalized Bessel functions $G_s(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)$:

$$\mathbf{B}_{1s} = \frac{A_0}{2}\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}\{\mathbf{e}_1\left(G_{s-1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi) + G_{s+1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\right)$$
$$+ i\mathbf{e}_2 g\left(G_{s-1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi) - G_{s+1}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)\right)\}, \tag{10.60}$$

$$B_s = G_s(\alpha,\beta,\varphi), \tag{10.61}$$

$$B_{2s} = \frac{A_0^2}{2}(1+g^2)G_0 + \frac{A_0^2}{2}(1-g^2)$$
$$\times\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}(G_{s-2}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi) + G_{s+2}(\alpha,\beta,\varphi)), \tag{10.62}$$

and

$$\hbar\mathbf{q}_s = \mathbf{\Pi}' - \mathbf{\Pi} - s\hbar\mathbf{k} \tag{10.63}$$

is the recoil momentum. The definitions of arguments α, β, φ are the same as in (1.103)–(1.105).

The differential probability of SB process per unit time, summed over the electron final polarization states and averaged over the initial polarization states, is

$$dW = \frac{1}{2T} \sum_{\sigma',\sigma} \left| S_{if} \right|^2 \frac{d\mathbf{\Pi}'}{(2\pi\hbar)^3}. \tag{10.64}$$

The calculation of spur will be made in the same way as has been made for the Compton effect using (1.111) and the following relations:

$$\widehat{\epsilon}_0 = \gamma_0, \quad \widehat{\epsilon}_0 \widehat{b} \widehat{\epsilon}_0^* = \widehat{\overline{b}}, \quad \overline{b} = (b_0, -\mathbf{b}),$$

$$\delta\left(\Pi_0' - \Pi_0 - s\hbar\omega\right)\delta\left(\Pi_0' - \Pi_0 - s'\hbar\omega\right)$$

$$= \begin{bmatrix} 0, \text{ if } s \neq s', \\ \frac{T}{2\pi\hbar}\delta\left(\Pi_0' - \Pi_0 - s\hbar\omega\right), \text{ if } s = s'. \end{bmatrix}$$

Then we obtain

$$\frac{1}{2}\sum_{\sigma',\sigma}\left|S_{if}\right|^2 = \frac{2\pi e^2 T}{\hbar \Pi_0' \Pi_0}\sum_s \left|\varphi\left(\mathbf{q}_s\right)\right|^2 \left\{ \left| \mathcal{E} B_s - \frac{e\left(\mathbf{p}\mathbf{B}_{1s}\right)\omega}{(kp)\,c} + \frac{e^2 \omega B_{2s}}{2c^2(kp)} \right|^2 \right.$$
$$+ \frac{e^2\hbar^2\left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}_s\right]^2}{4(kp')(kp)}\left[\left|\mathbf{B}_{1s}\right|^2 - Re\left(B_{2s}B_s^*\right)\right]$$
$$\left. - \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{q}_s^2 c^2}{4}\left|B_s\right|^2 \right\}\delta\left(\Pi_0' - \Pi_0 - s\hbar\omega\right). \tag{10.65}$$

Dividing the differential probability of the process (10.64) by initial flux density $|\mathbf{\Pi}|\, c^2/\Pi_0$, and integrating over Π_0' we obtain the differential cross section of multiphoton SB process

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dO} = \sum_{s>-s_m}^{\infty} \frac{d\sigma^{(s)}}{dO}, \tag{10.66}$$

where

$$\frac{d\sigma^{(s)}}{dO} = \frac{e^2\left|\varphi\left(\mathbf{q}_s\right)\right|^2\left|\mathbf{\Pi}'\right|}{4\pi^2\hbar^4 c^4\left|\mathbf{\Pi}\right|}\left\{ \left| \mathcal{E} B_s - \frac{e\left(\mathbf{p}\mathbf{B}_{1s}\right)\omega}{(kp)\,c} + \frac{e^2\omega}{2c^2(kp)}B_{2s} \right|^2 \right.$$
$$\left. - \frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{q}_s^2c^2}{4}\left|B_s\right|^2 + \frac{e^2\hbar^2\left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}_s\right]^2}{4(kp')(kp)}\left[\left|\mathbf{B}_{1s}\right|^2 - Re\left(B_{2s}B_s^*\right)\right] \right\} \tag{10.67}$$

is the partial differential cross section, which describes the s-photon SB process. The final quasimomentum of the electron corresponding to s-photon absorption ($s > 0$) or emission ($s < 0$) processes in the strong wave field is

$$\Pi' = \sqrt{\mathbf{\Pi}^2 + \frac{s\hbar\omega}{c^2}\left(2\Pi_0 + s\hbar\omega\right)}, \tag{10.68}$$

and s_m is the maximum number of emitted photons:

$$s_m = \frac{\Pi_0 - m^* c^2}{\hbar\omega}. \tag{10.69}$$

For circular polarization of the incident EM wave

$$G_s(\alpha, 0, \varphi) = (-1)^s\, J_s(\alpha) e^{is\varphi},$$

and taking into account (10.60)–(10.62), for the partial differential cross section of SB, we have

$$\frac{d\sigma^{(s)}}{dO} = \frac{e^2 \left|\varphi\left(\mathbf{q}_s\right)\right|^2 \left|\mathbf{\Pi}'\right|}{4\pi^2\hbar^4 c^4 \left|\mathbf{\Pi}\right|} \left\{ \left[\left(\Pi_0 + \frac{s\hbar\omega}{(kp)} \frac{\varkappa\left[\mathbf{kp}\right]}{\varkappa^2} \right)^2 - \frac{\hbar^2 \mathbf{q}_s^2 c^2}{4} \right] J_s^2(\alpha) \right.$$
$$+ \frac{\hbar^2 e^2 A_0^2}{4(kp')(kp)} \left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}_s\right]^2 \left[\left(\frac{s^2}{\alpha^2} - 1 \right) J_s^2(\alpha) + J_s'^2(\alpha) \right]$$
$$\left. + \frac{e^2 A_0^2}{(kp)^2} \frac{\left[\varkappa\left[\mathbf{kp}\right]\right]^2}{\varkappa^2} J_s'^2(\alpha) \right\}, \tag{10.70}$$

where

$$\varkappa = \left[\mathbf{k} \left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{pk} - \frac{\mathbf{p}'}{p'k} \right) \right] \tag{10.71}$$

and the Bessel function argument is

$$\alpha = \frac{eA_0}{\hbar\omega} \left|\varkappa\right|. \tag{10.72}$$

At the absence of external EM wave ($A_0 = 0$) from (10.70), we obtain the Mott formula for elastic scattering of the electron in the Coulomb field, which corresponds to $s = 0$ harmonic. Thus, taking into account the Fourier transform of Coulomb potential

$$\varphi\left(\mathbf{q}\right) = \frac{4\pi Z_a e}{\mathbf{q}^2}, \tag{10.73}$$

where Z_a is the charge number of the nucleus, and (10.63) for $\mathbf{q}_0$, the (10.70) becomes

$$\frac{d\sigma_{Mott}}{dO} = \frac{4Z_a^2\alpha_0^2}{\hbar^2 c^2 \mathbf{q}_0^4}\mathcal{E}^2\left[1 - \frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{q}_0^2 c^2}{4\mathcal{E}^2}\right], \tag{10.74}$$

where $\alpha_0 \equiv e^2/(\hbar c) = 1/137$ is the fine structure constant.

Concerning the applied approximation for description of multiphoton SB, note that the condition of validity of obtained cross sections (10.67) in the first Born approximation by static potential field holds for electron renormalized velocities in the incident wave field. In particular, for Coulomb potential the known condition for the Born approximation turns into conditions

$$\frac{Z_a e^2}{\hbar \overline{\mathrm{v}}} \ll 1, \quad \frac{Z_a e^2}{\hbar \overline{\mathrm{v}}'} \ll 1, \tag{10.75}$$

where $\overline{\mathrm{v}} = c^2 \left|\mathbf{\Pi}\right| / \Pi_0$, $\overline{\mathrm{v}}' = c^2 \left|\mathbf{\Pi}'\right| / \Pi_0'$ are the electron initial and final mean velocities in the EM wave field.

For $\alpha \ll 1$ the main contribution to the SB cross section produces one-photon emission and absorption processes. In particular, for one-photon stimulated radiation from (10.70) we have

$$\frac{d\sigma^{(-1)}}{dO} = \frac{e^2\left|\varphi\left(\mathbf{q}_{-1}\right)\right|^2\left|\mathbf{p}'\right|}{16\pi^2\hbar^4 c^4\left|\mathbf{p}\right|}\frac{e^2 A_0^2}{\hbar^2\omega^2}\left\{\left[\mathbf{k}\left(\frac{\mathcal{E}'\mathbf{p}}{pk} - \frac{\mathcal{E}\mathbf{p}'}{p'k}\right)\right]^2\right.$$

$$\left. - \frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{q}_{-1}^2 c^2}{4}\left[\mathbf{k}\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}'}{p'k} - \frac{\mathbf{p}}{pk}\right)\right]^2 + \frac{\hbar^4\omega^2\left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}_{-1}\right]^2}{2(kp')(kp)}\right\}. \tag{10.76}$$

From this formula one can obtain the Bethe–Heitler formula for spontaneous bremsstrahlung (one-photon emission) in the Coulomb field. For the latter one needs to make the replacement (1.123) in (10.76) and multiply the cross section of bremsstrahlung by the density of photon states

$$2\frac{\omega^2}{c^3}d\omega\frac{do}{(2\pi)^3},$$

and then we will have the Bethe–Heitler formula

$$d\sigma_{BH} = \frac{\alpha_0^3 Z_a^2\left|\mathbf{p}'\right|}{\pi^2\hbar^2 c^2\omega\left|\mathbf{p}\right|\mathbf{q}_{-1}^4}\left\{\left[\mathbf{k}\left(\frac{\mathcal{E}\mathbf{p}'}{p'k} - \frac{\mathcal{E}'\mathbf{p}}{pk}\right)\right]^2\right.$$

$$\left. - \frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{q}_{-1}^2 c^2}{4}\left[\mathbf{k}\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}'}{p'k} - \frac{\mathbf{p}}{pk}\right)\right]^2 + \frac{\hbar^4\omega^2\left[\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q}_{-1}\right]^2}{2(kp')(kp)}\right\} d\omega do dO. \tag{10.77}$$

For multiphoton SB in the nonrelativistic limit ($\mathrm{v} \ll c$) one can make dipole approximation for EM wave and omit the terms proportional to $\mathbf{k}^2$ and $\mathbf{q}^2$ in (10.70). Then we obtain the nonrelativistic factorized cross section of multiphoton SB

$$\frac{d\sigma^{(s)}}{dO} = \frac{d\sigma_R}{dO} J_s^2 \left(\frac{eA_0}{\hbar\omega} \left| \left[\frac{\mathbf{k}}{\omega} \left(\mathbf{v} - \mathbf{v}' \right) \right] \right| \right),$$

where

$$\frac{d\sigma_R}{dO} = \frac{m^2 e^2 \left| \varphi \left(\mathbf{q}_s \right) \right|^2 \left| \mathbf{p}' \right|}{4\pi^2 \hbar^4 \left| \mathbf{p} \right|} \tag{10.78}$$

is the Rutherford cross section.

Comparing the nonrelativistic cross section (10.78) with the relativistic one (10.70), it is easy to see that besides the additional terms, which result from spin–orbital and spin–laser interaction ($\sim q_s^2$), as well as from the intensity effect of strong EM wave ($\sim \xi_0^2$), the relativistic contribution is conditioned by arguments of the Bessel functions. Because of sensitivity of the Bessel function to the relationship of its argument and index, the most probable number of emitted or absorbed photons is determined by the condition $|s| \sim |\alpha|$. For this reason the contribution of relativistic effects to the scattering process is already essential for intensities $\xi_0 \sim 0.1$. Hence, the dipole approximation is violated for nonrelativistic parameters of interaction. Besides, the state of an electron in the field of a strong EM wave and, consequently, the cross section of SB essentially depends on the polarization of the wave. In particular, the cross section for linear polarization of the wave is described by the generalized Bessel function. The cross sections in both cases are complicated and to show some features of multiphoton SB process we present the results of numerical investigation. For the numerical calculations we have chosen the initial electron momentum $\mathbf{p}$ to be colinear with the laser propagation direction. In this case for circular polarization of the wave there is an azimuthal symmetry with respect to propagation direction, which simplifies the calculation of integral quantities. Then we have taken moderate initial electron kinetic energy $\mathcal{E}_k = 2.7\,\mathrm{keV}$ (100 a.u.), neodymium laser ($\hbar\omega \simeq 1.17\,\mathrm{eV}$), and screening Coulomb potential

$$\varphi \left(\mathbf{q} \right) = \frac{4\pi Z_a e}{\mathbf{q}^2 + \chi^2},$$

with radius of screening $\chi^{-1} = 4$ a.u. and $Z_a = 1$.

In Fig. 1.8a the envelopes of partial differential cross sections as a function of the number of emitted or absorbed photons for circular polarization of EM wave are shown for the deflection angle $\vartheta \equiv \angle \Pi \Pi' = 10$ mrad. The relativistic parameter of intensity is taken to be $\xi_0 \simeq 0.1$. The dotted and dashed lines correspond to initial electron momentum parallel and antiparallel to the laser propagation direction $\mathbf{k}$, respectively, and the solid line gives the nonrelativistic result. The energy change of a particle is characterized by the absorption/emission (AE) cross section. Partial AE differential cross section will be

$$\frac{d\sigma_{ae}^{(s)}}{dO} = s\left(\frac{d\sigma^{(s)}}{dO} - \frac{d\sigma^{(-s)}}{dO}\right). \tag{10.79}$$

In Fig. 1.8b the envelopes of partial AE differential cross sections for circular polarization of EM wave are shown for the same parameters. It is seen from Fig. 10.2 that the differences between the cases of initial electron momentum parallel or antiparallel to the laser propagation direction **k** on the one hand and between nonrelativistic result on the other hand are notable already for $\xi_0 \simeq 0.1$. In particular, the absorption and emission edges and the magnitudes of the peaks are different.

To show the dependence of the SB process on laser intensity in Fig. 1.9a the summed differential cross section

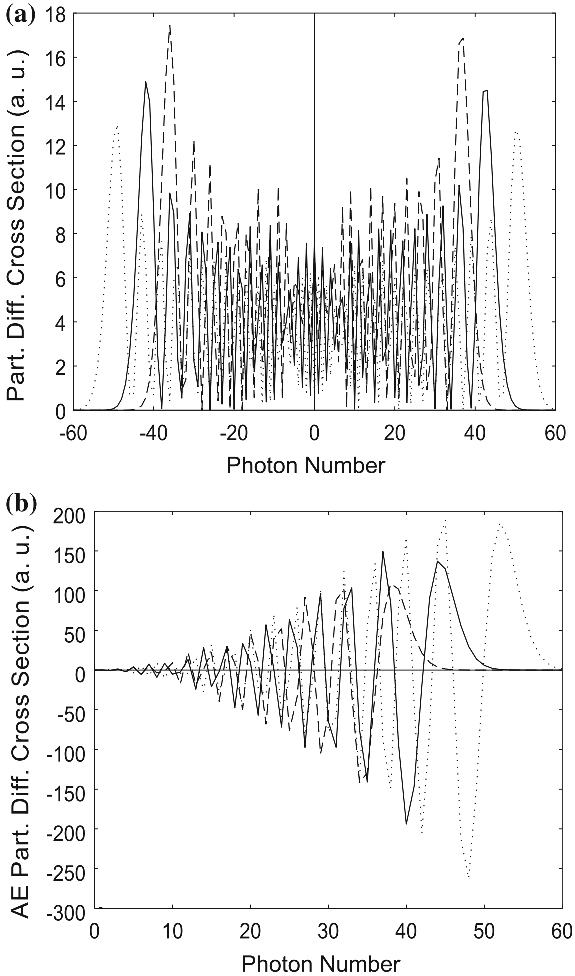


Fig. 10.2 **a** Envelopes of partial differential cross sections in atomic units as a function of the number of emitted or absorbed photons for circular polarization of EM wave for the deflection angle $\vartheta \equiv \angle \Pi \Pi' = 10$ mrad. The relativistic parameter of intensity is $\xi_0 \simeq 0.1$. **b** Envelopes of partial absorption/emission differential cross sections for the same parameters. The *dotted* and *dashed lines* correspond to initial electron momentum parallel and antiparallel to the laser propagation direction **k**, respectively, and the *solid line* gives the nonrelativistic result

$$\frac{d\sigma}{dO} = \sum_{s>-s_m}^{\infty} \frac{d\sigma^{(s)}}{dO} \tag{10.80}$$

is plotted for various deflection angles as a function of relativistic parameter of intensity ξ_0. The initial electron momentum is parallel to the laser propagation direction **k**. In Fig. 1.9b summed AE differential cross section is shown. We see from Fig. 10.3 that SB as well as AE cross sections decrease with increasing wave intensity. This is a consequence of the SB process being essentially nonlinear in contrast to perturbation theory where s-photon SB cross section $\sim\xi_0^{2s}$.

For the integral quantities such as the total scattering cross section σ and total emission/absorption cross section (σ_T) which characterizes net energy change, one should integrate partial differential cross section of SB process $d\sigma^{(s)}/dO$ over solid angle and perform summation over photon numbers:

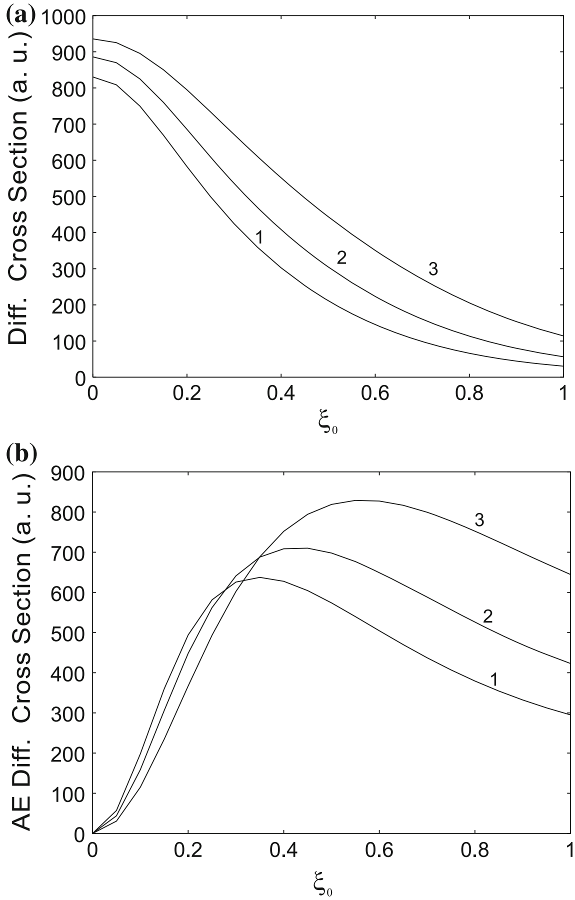


Fig. 10.3 The summed differential cross sections for circular polarization of EM wave are plotted as a function of relativistic parameter of intensity ξ_0 in the range $0 \leq \xi_0 \leq 1$. The initial electron momentum is parallel to the laser propagation direction **k**. **a** SB differential cross section $d\sigma/d\Omega$; **b** absorption/emission differential cross section $d\sigma_{ae}/d\Omega$. *Numbers* denote different values of deflection angle: *1* $\vartheta = 6$ mrad; *2* $\vartheta = 5$ mrad; *3* $\vartheta = 4$ mrad

$$\sigma = \sum_{s>-s_m}^{\infty} \sigma^{(s)}, \tag{10.81}$$

and total AE cross section (σ_T) will be

$$\sigma_T = \sum_{s>-s_m}^{\infty} s\sigma^{(s)}. \tag{10.82}$$

Note that for these quantities in the optical range of frequencies one can neglect the contribution from the spin interaction. The latter is essential for large angle scattering which produces a minor contribution to the total cross sections (for optical frequencies the quantum recoil is negligibly small). For the strong laser fields one should take into account a large number of terms in (10.81) and (10.82) since multiphoton absorption/emission processes already play a significant role for moderate laser intensities ($\xi_0 \ll 1$) in contrast, for example, to nonlinear Compton scattering where multiphoton processes become essential for $\xi_0 \sim 1$ and the cutoff number of absorbed photons $\sim\xi_0^3$. This essentially complicates the analysis of total cross sections (10.81) and (10.82). As a first step to exhibit the dependence of SB process on laser intensity, Fig. 10.4 plots the envelopes of integrated AE partial cross sections $\sigma_{ae}^{(s)}$ for various laser intensities as a function of the photon number in the range $0 \le s \le 500$. The initial electron momentum is parallel to the laser propagation direction **k**. Negative values correspond to net emission, while positive values correspond to net absorption. Figure 10.4 reveals that for this initial geometry the absorption process is dominant but with increasing wave intensity the AE cross section decreases.

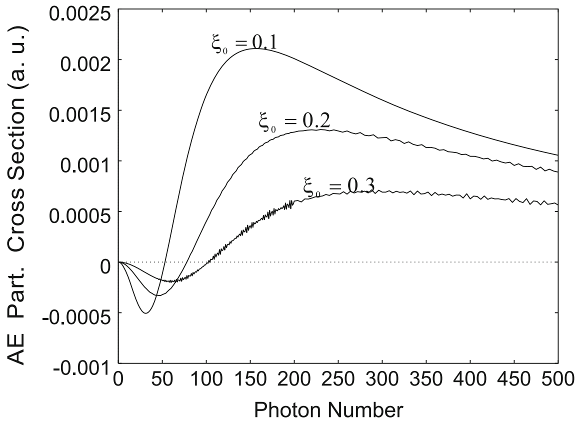


Fig. 10.4 The envelopes of integrated absorption/emission partial cross sections $\sigma_{ae}^{(s)}$ for circular polarization of EM wave as a function of photon number in the range $0 \le s \le 500$ for various laser intensities. The initial electron momentum is parallel to the laser propagation direction **k**. Negative values correspond to net emission, while positive values correspond to net absorption

10.5 Generalized Eikonal Approximation for Stimulated Bremsstrahlung

As was mentioned in the Introduction of this chapter, for the description of induced radiation processes with the free electrons potential scattering at the presence of external radiation fields, in particular SB process, we need the relativistic wave function beyond the known approximations (Born, eikonal, low-frequency), which obey the certain restrictions and correspond to factorization by potential and radiation fields. As a required type wave function beyond the known restrictions and taking into account the simultaneous influence of both scattering and radiation fields with dynamic phase relations can serve the GEA wave function at the presence of external radiation field. So we will develop the above-presented approximation for elastic scattering in the inelastic process of SB with the strong plane wave field in GEA.

Let us solve the evolution equation for the relativistic particle wave function in the arbitrary electrostatic and plane EM wave fields, which simultaneously takes into account the influence of both the scattering and radiation fields on the state of the particle and the release from the restrictions of the known approximations.

The Dirac equation for a spinor particle in a electrostatic field with the four-vector potential

$$\Lambda(x) = (\Lambda_0(\mathbf{r}), \mathbf{0})$$

and a given (strong) plane EM wave field with the four-vector potential

$$A(\varphi) = (0, \mathbf{A}(\omega t - \mathbf{kr}))$$

can be written in the form

$$\left[\gamma_\mu \left(i\partial^\mu - e\Lambda^\mu(x) - eA^\mu(\varphi)\right) - m\right]\Psi(x) = 0. \tag{10.83}$$

Here all notations are the same with the first chapter. To avoid the further bulk expressions hereafter we will use the following notation for four-product of a four-vector a^μ with γ_μ matrices: $\widehat{a} \equiv \gamma_\mu a^\mu$, and $\partial \equiv \partial^\mu \equiv \partial/\partial x_\mu$. Then (10.83) reads

$$\left[i\widehat{\partial} - e\widehat{\Lambda}(x) - e\widehat{A}(\varphi) - m\right]\Psi(x) = 0. \tag{10.84}$$

Introducing a bispinor function $\Phi(x)$ which is connected with the Dirac wave function $\Psi(x)$ by the relation

$$\Psi(x) = \frac{1}{2m}\left[i\widehat{\partial} - e\widehat{\Lambda}(x) - e\widehat{A}(\varphi) + m\right]\Phi(x), \tag{10.85}$$

we turn (10.84) into the quadratic Dirac equation

$$\left[(i\partial - e\Lambda(x) - eA(\varphi))^2 - m^2 - ie\widehat{\partial}\widehat{\Lambda}(x) - ie\widehat{k}\frac{d\widehat{A}(\varphi)}{d\varphi}\right]\Phi(x) = 0. \quad (10.86)$$

To solve (10.86) we seek a solution in the form

$$\Phi(x) = f(x)\exp\left[iS(x)\right], \quad (10.87)$$

where $f(x)$ is a bispinor function and

$$\Psi_K = \exp[iS(x)] \quad (10.88)$$

is the solution of the Klein–Gordon equation for a charged particle in the static potential and EM wave fields

$$\left[(i\partial - e\Lambda(x) - eA(\varphi))^2 - m^2\right]\Psi_K = 0. \quad (10.89)$$

Substituting the expression (10.87) into (10.86), we obtain the following equations for scalar $S(x)$ and bispinor $f(x)$ functions:

$$-i\partial^2 S(x) + [\partial S(x) + eA(\varphi) + e\Lambda(x)]^2 - m^2 = 0, \quad (10.90)$$

$$-i\partial^2 f(x) + 2\left[\partial S(x) + eA(\varphi) + e\Lambda(x)\right]\partial f(x)$$

$$+ e\widehat{\partial}\widehat{\Lambda}(x)f(x) + e\widehat{k}\frac{d\widehat{A}(\varphi)}{d\varphi}f(x) = 0. \quad (10.91)$$

Here the notation $\partial^2 \equiv \partial^\mu\partial_\mu$ has been used.

So we have initially represented the Dirac equation (10.84) in the quadratic form (10.86) and then by two equations (10.90) and (10.91), the first of which is the Klein–Gordon equation and the second describes the particle spin interaction with the given fields.

We look for the solutions of (10.90) and (10.91) in the form

$$S(x) = S_V(x) + S_1(x), \qquad f(x) = f_V(\varphi) + f_1(x), \quad (10.92)$$

where $S_V(x)$ and $f_V(\varphi)$ are the action and bispinor amplitude of a charged particle in the EM field (Gordon-Volkov state)

$$S_V(x) = -px - \frac{e}{kp}\int_{-\infty}^{\varphi}\left[pA(\varphi') - \frac{e}{2}A^2(\varphi')\right]d\varphi', \quad (10.93)$$

$$f_V(\varphi) = u + \frac{e\widehat{k}\widehat{A}(\varphi)}{2(kp)}u, \quad (10.94)$$

where $p = (\mathcal{E}, \mathbf{p})$ and u are the initial four-momentum and bispinor amplitude of a free Dirac particle, respectively ($\overline{u}u = 2m$, and $\overline{u} = u^{\dagger}\gamma_0$; $u^{\dagger}$ denotes the transposition and complex conjugation of u).

Let the Oz axis be directed along the initial momentum $\mathbf{p}$ of the free particle. Then, in accordance with the solution (10.87), we have the initial condition

$$S(z = -\infty, t = -\infty) = -px,$$

corresponding to the asymptotic behavior of the scattering potential at $z = -\infty$ $[\Lambda(z = -\infty) = 0]$ and $t = -\infty$ $[\mathbf{A}(t = -\infty) = \mathbf{0}]$. We assume that the EM wave is adiabatically switched on at $t = -\infty$ (if necessary, the field must be adiabatically switched off at $t = +\infty$ $[\mathbf{A}(t = +\infty) = \mathbf{0}]$).

Substituting the solutions (10.92)–(10.94) into (10.90) and (10.91), we have the following equations for $S_1(x)$ and $f_1(x)$, respectively:

$$-i\partial^2 S_1(x) + 2\left[\partial S_V(x) + eA(\varphi)\right]\partial S_1(x) = -2e\Lambda(x)\partial S_V(x)$$
$$- 2e\Lambda(x)\partial S_1(x) - e^2\Lambda^2(x) - \left[\partial S_1(x)\right]^2, \tag{10.95}$$

$$-i\partial^2 f_1(x) + 2\left[\partial S_V(x) + eA(\varphi)\right]\partial f_1(x) + 2e\widehat{k}d\widehat{A}(\varphi)/d\varphi f_1(x)$$
$$+2\partial S_1(x)\partial f_V(\varphi) + 2e\Lambda(x)\partial f_V(\varphi) = -e\widehat{\partial}\widehat{\Lambda}(x)f_V(\varphi)$$
$$- 2\partial S_1(x)\partial f_1(x) - 2e\Lambda(x)\partial f_1(x) - e\widehat{\partial}\widehat{\Lambda}(x)f_1(x). \tag{10.96}$$

The above-mentioned GEA corresponds to keeping in (10.95) and (10.96) only the terms proportional to $U(\mathbf{r}) = e\Lambda_0(\mathbf{r})$—potential energy of the particle in the electrostatic field, i.e., the terms $\sim\Lambda_0^2$ and $\sim(\partial S_1(x))^2$ are neglected. Consequently, we shall solve the equations

$$i\left(\partial_t^2 - \Delta\right)S_1(t,\mathbf{r}) - 2\left[\partial_t S_V(t,\mathbf{r})\partial_t - \nabla S_V(t,\mathbf{r})\nabla - e\mathbf{A}(\varphi)\nabla\right]S_1(t,\mathbf{r})$$
$$= 2U(\mathbf{r})\partial_t S_V(t,\mathbf{r}), \tag{10.97}$$

$$i\left(\partial_t^2 - \Delta\right)f_1(t,\mathbf{r}) - 2\left[\partial_t S_V(t,\mathbf{r})\partial_t - \nabla S_V(t,\mathbf{r})\nabla - e\mathbf{A}(\varphi)\nabla\right]f_1(t,\mathbf{r})$$
$$+ 2e\widehat{k}[\gamma d\mathbf{A}(\varphi)/d\varphi]f_1(t,\mathbf{r}) = [\gamma\nabla U(\mathbf{r})]\gamma_0 f_V(\varphi)$$
$$+ 2\left[\partial_t S_1(t,\mathbf{r})\partial_t - \nabla S_1(t,\mathbf{r})\nabla\right]f_V(\varphi) + 2U(\mathbf{r})\partial_t f_V(\varphi). \tag{10.98}$$

To solve (10.97) and (10.98) we turn from variables t, $\mathbf{r}$ to φ, η,

$$\varphi = \omega t - \mathbf{kr}, \quad \eta = \mathbf{r}, \tag{10.99}$$

and make a Fourier transformation over $\mathbf{q}$:

$$S_1(\varphi, \eta) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \int \widetilde{S}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q}) \exp(i\mathbf{q}\eta) d\mathbf{q}, \tag{10.100}$$

$$f_1(\varphi, \eta) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \int \widetilde{f}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q}) \exp(i\mathbf{q}\eta) d\mathbf{q}. \tag{10.101}$$

Then, using the Lorentz condition for radiation field

$$kA(\varphi) = 0, \tag{10.102}$$

we obtain the equations for the scalar $\widetilde{S}(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$ and bispinor $\widetilde{f}(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$ functions, respectively:

$$i\left(\frac{\mathbf{q}^2}{2} + \mathbf{q}[\nabla S_V(t, \mathbf{r}) - e\mathbf{A}(\varphi)]\right) \widetilde{S}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q}) + (kp - \mathbf{kq})\partial_\varphi \widetilde{S}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$$
$$= \widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})\partial_t S_V(t, \mathbf{r}), \tag{10.103}$$

$$i\left(\frac{\mathbf{q}^2}{2} + \mathbf{q}[\nabla S_V(t, \mathbf{r}) - e\mathbf{A}(\varphi)] - \frac{ie}{2}\widehat{k}[\gamma d\mathbf{A}(\varphi)/d\varphi]\right) \widetilde{f}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$$
$$+ (kp - \mathbf{kq})\partial_\varphi \widetilde{f}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$$
$$= \frac{i}{2}(\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0 \widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) f_V(\varphi) + \widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})\partial_t f_V(\varphi) + \frac{\mathbf{kq}}{\omega}\widetilde{S}_1(\mathbf{q}, \varphi)\partial_t f_V(\varphi), \tag{10.104}$$

where $\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) = \int U() \exp(-i\mathbf{q}) d\eta$ is the Fourier transform of the function $U(\mathbf{r})$. We seek the solution of (10.103) in the form

$$\widetilde{S}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q}) = s_I(\varphi, \mathbf{q}) + s_{II}(\mathbf{q}), \tag{10.105}$$

where

$$s_I(-\infty, \mathbf{q}) = 0 \tag{10.106}$$

and $s_{II}(\mathbf{q})$ is the action of the particle corresponding to the elastic scattering in the potential field in the absence of an EM wave (the solution of (10.103) at $\mathbf{A}(\varphi) = \mathbf{0}$)

$$s_{II}(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{2i\mathcal{E}\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq}}. \tag{10.107}$$

Then, for $\widetilde{S}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$ we have the expression

$$\widetilde{S}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q}) = \frac{2i\mathcal{E}\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq}}$$

$$\times \left[1 - ie^{-iB(\varphi,\mathbf{q})} \int_{-\infty}^{\varphi} e^{iB(\varphi',\mathbf{q})} \left(\nabla S_V(x) - \mathbf{p} - e\mathbf{A}(\varphi') \right) \mathbf{q} d\varphi' \right]$$

$$+ \frac{e\omega\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})}{(kp - \mathbf{kq})kp} e^{-iB(\varphi,\mathbf{q})} \int_{-\infty}^{\varphi} e^{iB(\varphi',\mathbf{q})} \left[\mathbf{pA}(\varphi') - e\mathbf{A}^2(\varphi')/2 \right] d\varphi', \qquad (10.108)$$

where the function $B(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$ is defined as

$$B(\varphi, \mathbf{q}) = \int \left(\frac{\mathbf{q}^2}{2} + \mathbf{q}[\nabla S_V(x) - e\mathbf{A}(\varphi')] \right) \frac{d\varphi'}{kp - \mathbf{kq}}. \qquad (10.109)$$

Making the inverse Fourier transformation of $\widetilde{S}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$ and then turning to the previous variables $(t, \mathbf{r})$, after simple calculations we obtain the following expression for the scalar part of a particle wave function:

$$S_1(t, \mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \int d\mathbf{q} \frac{\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) e^{i\mathbf{qr}} e^{-iB(\varphi,\mathbf{q})}}{kp - \mathbf{kq}} \int_{-\infty}^{\varphi} d\varphi' e^{iB(\varphi',\mathbf{q})}$$

$$\times \left(-\mathcal{E} + \frac{e\omega}{kp} \left[\mathbf{pA}(\varphi') - e\mathbf{A}^2(\varphi')/2 \right] \right). \qquad (10.110)$$

In a similar way, seeking the bispinor function $\widetilde{f}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$ in the form

$$\widetilde{f}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q}) = g_I(\varphi, \mathbf{q}) + g_{II}(\mathbf{q}), \qquad (10.111)$$

where

$$g_I(-\infty, \mathbf{q}) = 0, \qquad (10.112)$$

and

$$g_{II}(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{(\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})u}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq}} \qquad (10.113)$$

($g_{II}(\mathbf{q})$ is the spin part of the particle wave function at the elastic scattering in the potential field: the solution of (10.104) at $\mathbf{A}(\varphi) = \mathbf{0}$), we obtain the following expression for $\widetilde{f}_1(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$:

$$\widetilde{f}_1(\varphi,\mathbf{q}) = \frac{(\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})u}{\mathbf{q}^2+2\mathbf{pq}}\Bigg[1-\frac{ie^{-iB_1(\varphi,\mathbf{q})}}{kp-\mathbf{kq}}$$

$$\times\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\varphi} e^{iB_1(\varphi',\mathbf{q})}\left(\mathbf{q}\left[\nabla S_V(x)-\mathbf{p}-e\mathbf{A}(\varphi')\right]-\frac{ie}{2}\widehat{k}[\gamma d\mathbf{A}(\varphi')/d\varphi']\right)d\varphi'\Bigg]$$

$$+\frac{e^{-iB_1(\varphi,\mathbf{q})}}{kp-\mathbf{kq}}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\varphi} e^{iB_1(\varphi',\mathbf{q})}$$

$$\times\left[\left[\omega\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})+i(\mathbf{kq})\widetilde{S}_1(\varphi',\mathbf{q})\right]\partial_{\varphi'}f_V(\varphi')-\frac{ie(\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})}{2kp}\widehat{k}[\gamma A(\varphi')]u\right]d\varphi'. \tag{10.114}$$

The function $B_1(\varphi,\mathbf{q})$ in (10.114) is defined as

$$B_1(\varphi,\mathbf{q}) = B(\varphi,\mathbf{q})-\frac{ie\widehat{k}(\gamma A(\varphi))}{2(kp-\mathbf{kq})}. \tag{10.115}$$

As the terms over the first power of $\widehat{k}\widehat{A}$ are equal to zero (in accordance with the condition (10.102)), $\exp\left[iB_1(\mathbf{q},\varphi)\right]$ can be written as

$$e^{iB_1(\mathbf{q},\varphi)} = e^{iB(\mathbf{q},\varphi)}\left(1+\frac{e\widehat{k}\gamma A(\varphi)}{2(kp-\mathbf{kq})}\right). \tag{10.116}$$

So, after the inverse Fourier transformation and turning to the previous variables, we have such an expression for $f_1(t,\mathbf{r})$

$$f_1(t,\mathbf{r}) = \frac{i}{16\pi^3}\int\frac{e^{i\mathbf{q}\cdot\mathbf{r}}e^{-iB(\varphi,\mathbf{q})}}{kp-\mathbf{kq}}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\varphi} e^{iB(\varphi',\mathbf{q})}\left\{\left[1+\frac{e\widehat{k}\left(\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi')-\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi)\right)}{2(kp-\mathbf{kq})}\right]\right.$$

$$\times(\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})f_V(\varphi')-i2\omega\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})\partial_{\varphi'}f_V(\varphi')+\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})$$

$$\left.\times\left[-\mathcal{E}+\frac{e\omega}{kp}[\mathbf{pA}(\varphi')-e\mathbf{A}^2(\varphi')/2]\right]\frac{(\mathbf{kq})\,\widehat{k}\left(\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi')-\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi)\right)}{kp(kp-\mathbf{kq})}u\right\}d\varphi'd\mathbf{q}. \tag{10.117}$$

After the integration by parts and simple transformation of $f_1(t,\mathbf{r})$ in expression (10.117) we obtain the final form

$$f_1(t,\mathbf{r}) = \frac{i}{16\pi^3}\int\frac{\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})e^{i\mathbf{qr}-iB(\varphi,\mathbf{q})-\frac{e\widehat{k}\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi)}{2(kp-\mathbf{kq})}}}{kp-\mathbf{kq}}\int\limits_{-\infty}^{\varphi} e^{iB(\varphi',\mathbf{q})}$$

$$\times \left\{ (\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0 + \frac{e}{2}\left[\frac{\widehat{k}(\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi'))(\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0}{kp - \mathbf{kq}} - \frac{(\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0\widehat{k}(\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi'))}{kp} \right] \right.$$
$$+ \frac{e\omega\left[\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} - 2\frac{\mathcal{E}}{\omega}\mathbf{kq}\right]}{2(kp - \mathbf{kq})kp}\widehat{k}\left\{[\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi')] - [\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi)]\right\}$$
$$\left. + \frac{\omega e^2\widehat{k}[\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi)]}{(kp - \mathbf{kq})kp}[\mathbf{qA}(\varphi')] + \frac{(\mathbf{kq})(\gamma k)\gamma_0 - \omega(\gamma k)(\gamma\mathbf{q})}{2(kp - \mathbf{kq})kp}e^2\mathbf{A}^2(\varphi') \right\} u d\varphi' d\mathbf{q}. \tag{10.118}$$

Then we assume the EM wave to be quasimonochromatic and of an arbitrary polarization with the vector potential

$$\mathbf{A}(\varphi) = A_0(\varphi)\left(\mathbf{e}_1 \cos\zeta \cos\varphi + \mathbf{e}_2 \sin\zeta \sin\varphi\right), \tag{10.119}$$

where $A_0(\varphi)$ is the slow varying amplitude of the vector potential $\mathbf{A}(t, \mathbf{r})$, $\mathbf{e}_1$ and $\mathbf{e}_2$ are unit vectors perpendicular to each other and to the wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ ($\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{e}_2 = 0$, $\mathbf{e}_1\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{e}_2\mathbf{k} = 0$, and $|\mathbf{e}_1| = |\mathbf{e}_2| = 1$), and ζ is the polarization angle.

For further calculations it is convenient to introduce a new function $J_n(u, v, \triangle)$ defined as

$$J_n(u, v, \triangle) = (2\pi)^{-1}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} d\theta \exp\left[i\left(u\sin(\theta + \triangle) + v\sin 2\theta - n(\theta + \triangle)\right)\right] \tag{10.120}$$

or by an infinite series representation

$$J_n(u, v, \triangle) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-i2k\triangle} J_{n-2k}(u) J_k(v). \tag{10.121}$$

Then utilizing the formula

$$\exp\left[-i\alpha_1 \sin(\varphi - \theta_1) + i\alpha_2 \sin 2\varphi\right] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} J_n(\alpha_1, -\alpha_2, \theta_1)\exp\left[in(\theta_1 - \varphi)\right], \tag{10.122}$$

for the expansion of expressions (10.110) and (10.118) by the functions $J_n(u, v, \triangle)$, we carry out the integration over φ' in (10.110) and (10.118).

The principal properties of the function $J_n(u, v, \triangle)$ with the formula (10.122) and necessary recurrent formulas used in derivation of presented here material are given in the end of this paragraph.

Then after the integration over φ' in the expressions (10.110) and (10.118) we obtain

$$S_1(t, \mathbf{r}) = \frac{i}{4\pi^3}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-in\varphi}$$

$$\times \int \frac{\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) \left\{ (\mathcal{E} + \omega Z) D_n - \omega(\alpha(\mathbf{p}) D_{1,n}(\theta(\mathbf{p})) - Z \cos 2\zeta D_{2,n}) \right\}}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} + 2Z\mathbf{kq} - 2n(kp - \mathbf{kq}) - i0}$$

$$\times \exp \left(i \left\{ \mathbf{qr} + \alpha_1(\mathbf{q}) \sin \left[\varphi - \theta_1(\mathbf{q}) \right] - \alpha_2(\mathbf{q}) \sin 2\varphi + \theta_1(\mathbf{q}) n \right\} \right) d\mathbf{q}, \quad (10.123)$$

and

$$f_1(t, \mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-in\varphi}$$

$$\times \int \frac{\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) \exp \{ i \{ \mathbf{qr} + \alpha_1(\mathbf{q}) \sin[\varphi - \theta_1(\mathbf{q})] - \alpha_2(\mathbf{q}) \sin 2\varphi + \theta_1(\mathbf{q}) n \} \}}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} + 2Z\mathbf{kq} - 2n(kp - \mathbf{kq}) - i0}$$

$$\times \left\{ D_n \left[(\gamma \mathbf{q}) \gamma_0 - \frac{e\omega \left[\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} - 2\frac{\mathcal{E}}{\omega} \mathbf{kq} \right]}{2(kp - \mathbf{kq}) kp} \widehat{k} (\gamma \mathbf{A}(\varphi)) \right] \right.$$

$$+ \frac{e\overline{A}_0 \widehat{k} (\gamma \mathbf{D})_{3,n} (\gamma \mathbf{q}) \gamma_0}{2(kp - \mathbf{kq})} + \frac{e\overline{A}_0}{2kp} \left[\frac{\omega \left[\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} - 2\frac{\mathcal{E}}{\omega} \mathbf{kq} \right]}{kp - \mathbf{kq}} - (\gamma \mathbf{q}) \gamma_0 \right] \widehat{k} (\gamma \mathbf{D})_{3,n}$$

$$+ \frac{\omega e \alpha(\mathbf{q}) \widehat{k} (\gamma \mathbf{A}(\varphi))}{kp - \mathbf{kq}} D_{1,n}(\theta(\mathbf{q}))$$

$$\left. + \frac{(\mathbf{kq}) \widehat{k} \gamma_0 - \omega \widehat{k} (\gamma \boldsymbol{q})}{kp - \mathbf{kq}} Z \left(D_n + \cos 2\zeta D_{2,n} \right) \right\} u d\mathbf{q}. \quad (10.124)$$

Here $\alpha_1(\mathbf{q})$ is the parameter of the Dirac particle interaction with both scattering and EM wave fields simultaneously

$$\alpha_1(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{e\overline{A}_0 \eta(\mathbf{q})}{kp - \mathbf{kq}}, \quad (10.125)$$

where $\overline{A}_0$ is the average value of $A_0(\varphi)$ and Z is the relative parameter of the wave intensity defined as

$$Z = \frac{e^2 \overline{A}_0^2}{4kp}, \quad (10.126)$$

and $\alpha_2(\mathbf{q})$ has the form

$$\alpha_2(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{\mathbf{kq}}{2(kp - \mathbf{kq})} Z \cos 2\zeta. \quad (10.127)$$

Then the magnitudes of $\eta(\mathbf{q})$ and $\theta_1(\mathbf{q})$ are

$$\eta(\mathbf{q}) = \left\{\left[\left(\frac{(\mathbf{kq})\mathbf{p}}{kp} + \mathbf{q}\right)\mathbf{e}_1\right]^2 \cos^2\zeta + \left[\left(\frac{(\mathbf{kq})\mathbf{p}}{kp} + \mathbf{q}\right)\mathbf{e}_2\right]^2 \sin^2\zeta\right\}^{1/2}, \tag{10.128}$$

$$\theta_1(\mathbf{q}) = \arctan\left(\frac{\left(\frac{(\mathbf{kq})\mathbf{p}}{kp} + \mathbf{q}\right)\mathbf{e}_2}{\left(\frac{(\mathbf{kq})\mathbf{p}}{kp} + \mathbf{q}\right)\mathbf{e}_1}\tan\zeta\right), \tag{10.129}$$

and $\alpha(\mathbf{p})$ is the intensity-dependent amplitude

$$\alpha(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{e\overline{A}_0}{kp}\sqrt{\left(\mathbf{pe}_1\right)^2\cos^2\zeta + \left(\mathbf{pe}_2\right)^2\sin^2\zeta}, \tag{10.130}$$

with the phase angle

$$\theta(\mathbf{p}) = \arctan\left(\frac{\mathbf{pe}_2}{\mathbf{pe}_1}\tan\zeta\right). \tag{10.131}$$

The functions D_n, $D_{1,n}(\theta(\mathbf{p}))$, and $D_{2,n}$ are defined by the expressions

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \exp\left[-in(\varphi - \theta_1)\right] J_n(\alpha_1, -\alpha_2, \theta_1)\begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ \cos(\varphi - \theta(\mathbf{p})) \\ \cos 2\varphi \end{bmatrix}$$

$$= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \exp\left[-in(\varphi - \theta_1)\right]\begin{bmatrix} D_n \\ D_{1,n}(\theta(\mathbf{p})) \\ D_{2,n} \end{bmatrix}. \tag{10.132}$$

So that they satisfy the following relations:

$$D_n = J_n(\alpha_1, -\alpha_2, \theta_1),$$

$$D_{1,n}(\theta(\mathbf{p})) = \frac{1}{2}\left[J_{n-1}(\alpha_1, -\alpha_2, \theta_1)e^{-i(\theta_1 - \theta(\mathbf{p}))}\right.$$

$$\left. + J_{n+1}(\alpha_1, -\alpha_2, \theta_1)e^{i(\theta_1 - \theta(\mathbf{p}))}\right],$$

$$D_{2,n} = \frac{1}{2}\left[J_{n-2}(\alpha_1, -\alpha_2, \theta_1)e^{-i2\theta_1} + J_{n+2}(\alpha_1, -\alpha_2, \theta_1)e^{i2\theta_1}\right]. \tag{10.133}$$

In (10.124) we have also made notation:

$$(\gamma\mathbf{D})_{3,n} \equiv \frac{(\gamma\mathbf{e}_1)\cos\zeta + i\,(\gamma\mathbf{e}_2)\sin\zeta}{2} J_{n-1}(\alpha_1, -\alpha_2, \theta_1)e^{-i\theta_1(\mathbf{q})}$$

$$+\frac{(\gamma\mathbf{e}_1)\cos\zeta - i\left(\gamma\boldsymbol{e}_2\right)\sin\zeta}{2} J_{n+1}(\alpha_1, -\alpha_2, \theta_1)e^{i\theta_1(\mathbf{q})}.$$

In the denominator of the integral in expressions (10.123) and (10.124), $-i0$ is an imaginary infinitesimal, which shows how the path around the pole in the integrand should be chosen to obtain a certain asymptotic behavior of the wave function, i.e., the outgoing spherical wave (to determine that one must pass to the limit of the Born approximation at $\mathbf{A}(\varphi) = \mathbf{0}$).

Using (10.87), the approximate solution of (10.83) can be written as

$$\Phi(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}\left[f_V(\varphi) + f_1(x)\right]\exp\left[iS_V(x) + iS_1(x)\right], \tag{10.134}$$

where the spin parts $f_1(x)$ and $S_1(t, \mathbf{r})$ are presented by (10.123) and (10.124). Note that the wave function is normalized for the one particle in the unit volume.

Inserting the expression (10.134) for $\Phi(x)$ into (10.85) and keeping terms to first order of the potential $\Lambda_0(\mathbf{r})$, we obtain the solution $\Psi(x)$ of the Dirac equation (10.83) in the applied approximation, which coincides with (10.134). So the bispinor function $\Phi(x)$ is the solution of the Dirac equation in the GEA.

Let us now represent the principal properties of the function $J_n(u, v, \triangle)$ with recurrent formulas. The function $J_n(u, v, \triangle)$ introduced above may be defined in the integral form

$$J_n(u, v, \triangle) = (2\pi)^{-1}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi} d\theta \exp\left[i\left(u\sin(\theta+\triangle) + v\sin 2\theta - n(\theta+\triangle)\right)\right] \tag{10.135}$$

or by an infinite series representation

$$J_n(u, v, \triangle) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-i2k\triangle} J_{n-2k}(u)J_k(v). \tag{10.136}$$

Both defining relations are equivalent. From either (10.135) or (10.136) follows that

$$J_n(u, 0, \triangle) = J_n(u), \tag{10.137}$$

and

$$J_n(0, v, \triangle) = \begin{cases} e^{-i\triangle n} J_{\frac{n}{2}}(v), & \text{if } n \text{ even} \\ 0, & \text{if } n \text{ odd} \end{cases}. \tag{10.138}$$

Then we have directly relative formulas

$$J_n(-u, v, \triangle) = (-1)^n J_n(u, v, \triangle),$$

$$J_n(u, -v, \triangle) = (-1)^n J_{-n}(u, v, -\triangle),$$

$$J_n(u, -v, -\triangle) = (-1)^n J_{-n}(u, -v, \triangle). \tag{10.139}$$

From the well-known recurrence relations for the Bessel functions we have

$$J_{n-1}(u, v, \triangle) - J_{n+1}(u, v, \triangle) = 2\partial_u J_n(u, v, \triangle), \tag{10.140}$$

and

$$e^{-i2\triangle} J_{n-2}(u, v, \triangle) - e^{i2\triangle} J_{n+2}(u, v, \triangle) = 2\partial_v J_n(u, v, \triangle), \tag{10.141}$$

which follow directly from (10.135) or expansion (10.136).

An integration by parts in (10.135) yields to the relation

$$2n J_n(u, v, \triangle) = u\left[J_{n-1}(u, v, \triangle) + J_{n+1}(u, v, \triangle)\right]$$
$$+ 2v\left[e^{-i2\triangle} J_{n-2}(u, v, \triangle) + e^{i2\triangle} J_{n+2}(u, v, \triangle)\right]. \tag{10.142}$$

Other results can be obtained by combination of (10.136)–(10.142). We perform two important theorems, which can be proved from (10.135). The first is

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{in(\varphi+\triangle)} J_n(u, v, \triangle) = \exp\left\{i\left[u\sin(\varphi+\triangle) + v\sin 2\varphi\right]\right\} \tag{10.143}$$

and the other is

$$\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} J_{n\mp k}(u, v, \triangle) J_k(u', v', \pm\triangle) = J_n(u \pm u', v \pm v', \triangle). \tag{10.144}$$

Then the function $J_n(u, v, \triangle)$ at $\triangle = 0$ becomes to the generalized Bessel function $J_n(u, v)$.

10.6 Discussion of the GEA Wave Function in Various Limits

Formula (10.123) has been obtained in the GEA at the condition that

$$|\nabla S_1(\mathbf{r})|^2 \ll |(\mathcal{E} + \omega Z)U(\mathbf{r})|\,. \tag{10.145}$$

To estimate the latter let us evaluate the expression ∇S_1 using the formulas (10.125) and (10.128). Then we fix n in the denominator of the expression (10.123) at the most probable value $\overline{n}$ for the action $S_1(\mathbf{r}, t)$. At the circular polarization of the wave the function $J_n(\alpha_1, -\alpha_2, \theta_1)$ turns into the Bessel function $J_n(\alpha_1)$ in accordance with the determination by infinite series representation (10.121). Then, to determine the value of $\overline{n}$ we use the following argumentation: the Bessel function $J_n(z)$ gets on its largest value when its index n is roughly equal to its argument

$$\overline{n}\left(\mathbf{q}\right) = \left\langle \alpha_1\left(\mathbf{q}\right)\right\rangle, \tag{10.146}$$

where $\left\langle \alpha_1\left(\mathbf{q}\right)\right\rangle$ denotes the integer value of $\alpha_1\left(\mathbf{q}\right)$. Then carrying out the summation of n in the formula (10.123), we obtain

$$S_1 \approx 2i(\mathcal{E}+\omega Z)\int \frac{\widetilde{U}\left(\mathbf{q}\right)e^{i\mathbf{qr}}}{\mathbf{q}^2+2\mathbf{pq}+2Z\mathbf{kq}-2\overline{n}(kp-\mathbf{kq})-i0}\frac{d\mathbf{q}}{(2\pi)^3}. \tag{10.147}$$

From the expressions (10.147) and (10.145) the condition of the GEA can be presented in general form

$$2(\mathcal{E}+\omega Z)\left|\int \frac{\mathbf{q}\widetilde{U}\left(\mathbf{q}\right)e^{i\mathbf{qr}}}{\mathbf{q}^2+2\mathbf{pq}+2Z\mathbf{kq}-2\overline{n}(kp-\mathbf{kq})-i0}\frac{d\mathbf{q}}{(2\pi)^3}\right|^2 \ll \left|U\left(a\right)\right|. \tag{10.148}$$

Due to the oscillations of the factor $e^{i\mathbf{qr}}$ in the integral in (10.148) the main contribution is in the region where $\mathbf{q}r \cong 1$, i.e., $|\mathbf{q}| \simeq \left|\mathbf{q}_{ef}\right| \simeq a^{-1}$, where a is the dimension of the effective range of the scattering potential $\Lambda_0\left(\mathbf{r}\right)$. Therefore, the condition (10.148) can be written as

$$\frac{2(\mathcal{E}+\omega Z)\mathbf{q}_{ef}^2}{\left[\mathbf{q}_{ef}^2+2\mathbf{pq}_{ef}+2Z\mathbf{kq}_{ef}-2\overline{n}(kp-\mathbf{kq}_{ef})\right]^2}\left|U\left(a\right)\right| \ll 1. \tag{10.149}$$

The $\overline{n}$ included in the formula (10.149) is the most probable number of photons that is defined by expressions (10.146), (10.125), and (10.128):

$$\overline{n} = \left\langle \frac{e\overline{A}_0\overline{\eta}}{kp-\mathbf{kq}_{ef}}\left|\frac{(\mathbf{kq}_{ef})\mathbf{p}}{kp}+\mathbf{q}_{ef}\right|\right\rangle, \tag{10.150}$$

$$\overline{\eta} = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}'}{|\mathbf{p}'|}\mathbf{e}_1\right)^2\cos^2\zeta+\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}'}{|\mathbf{p}'|}\mathbf{e}_2\right)^2\sin^2\zeta}, \quad \mathbf{p}' = \frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}+\frac{\mathbf{q}_{ef}}{\mathbf{kq}_{ef}}, \tag{10.151}$$

Finally, the condition of applicability of the GEA (10.145) may be written in the form

$$\left|U\left(a\right)\right| \ll \frac{1}{\Pi_0}\left[\frac{1}{a}+|\mathbf{\Pi}|-\frac{e\overline{A}_0}{1-\mathrm{v}\cos\theta_{\mathbf{kp}}}\right]^2, \tag{10.152}$$

where $\theta_{\mathbf{kp}}$ denotes the angle between $\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{p}$ vectors, $\mathrm{v} = |\mathbf{p}|/\mathcal{E}$ is the particle velocity, and

$$\Pi_0 = \mathcal{E} + \omega Z; \qquad \mathbf{\Pi} = \mathbf{p} + \mathbf{k}Z \tag{10.153}$$

are the average values of the particle energy and momentum in the EM field which correspond to the average four-kinetic momentum or "quasimomentum" Π of the particle in the wave ($\Pi^2 = m_*^2 \equiv m^2 + e^2\overline{A}^2$, where m_* is the "effective mass" of the particle).

The wave function (10.134) in the GEA turns into the wave function in the Born approximation by scattering potential if

$$|S_1(\mathbf{r}, t)| \ll 1. \tag{10.154}$$

By expanding the second term in the first exponent in the formula (10.134) into the series and keeping only the terms to the first order in $\Lambda_0(\mathbf{r})$, we obtain

$$\Psi_B(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}} \exp\left[iS_V(x)\right] \left\{ f_V(\varphi) + f_1(x) - \frac{1}{4\pi^3} f_V(\varphi) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-in\varphi} \right.$$

$$\times \int \frac{\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) \left\{(\mathcal{E} + \omega Z)D_n - \omega(\alpha(\mathbf{p})D_{1,n}(\theta(\mathbf{p})) - Z\cos 2\zeta D_{2,n})\right\}}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} + 2Z\mathbf{kq} - 2n(kp - \mathbf{kq}) - i0}$$

$$\times \left. \exp\left(i\left\{\mathbf{qr} + \alpha_1(\mathbf{q})\sin(\varphi - \theta_1(\mathbf{q})) - i\alpha_2(\mathbf{q})\sin 2\varphi + \theta_1(\mathbf{q})n\right\}\right) d\mathbf{q} \right\}. \tag{10.155}$$

The condition when the wave function (10.155) is valid can be written using (10.154) and taking into account (10.147) and (10.153):

$$|U(a)| \ll \frac{1}{\Pi_0 a} \left| \frac{1}{a} + |\mathbf{\Pi}| - \frac{e\overline{A}_0}{1 - \mathrm{v}\cos\theta_{\mathbf{kp}}} \right|. \tag{10.156}$$

This criterion of validity of the particle wave function at SB in the Born approximation by potential field includes both "fast" and "slow" particles (in the EM field) cases. Thus, for the fast particles, when

$$\left| |\mathbf{\Pi}| - e\overline{A}_0/(1 - \mathrm{v}\cos\theta_{\mathbf{kp}}) \right| a \gg 1,$$

we have

$$|U(a)| \ll \frac{1}{\Pi_0 a} \left| |\mathbf{\Pi}| - \frac{e\overline{A}_0}{1 - \mathrm{v}\cos\theta_{\mathbf{kp}}} \right|. \tag{10.157}$$

From the condition (10.156) for the slow particles, when

$$\left| |\mathbf{\Pi}| - e\overline{A}_0/\left(1 - \mathrm{v}\cos\theta_{\mathbf{kp}}\right) \right| a \leqslant 1,$$

we obtain the strong criterion of the Born approximation for SB process:

$$|U(a)| \ll \frac{1}{\Pi_0 a^2}. \tag{10.158}$$

Comparing the condition of applicability of the GEA (10.152) and the conditions of the Born approximation (10.157) and (10.158), we see that for the fast particles (in strong laser fields) the obtained wave function in the GEA (10.134) describes the SB process in regions $\left||\mathbf{\Pi}| - e\overline{A}_0/\left(1 - \mathrm{v}\cos\theta_{\mathbf{kp}}\right)\right| a \gg 1$ times larger than the wave function in the Born approximation.

Now let us find the asymptote of electron wave function corresponding to the Born approximation at $r \to +\infty$ and justify the chosen sign at the infinitesimal $i0$ to path around the pole in the integrals (10.123) and (10.124). From the expression (10.155) we have

$$\Psi_B(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{\exp[iS_V(x)]}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}$$

$$\times\left\{f_V(\varphi) + \frac{1}{(2\pi)^3}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}\int\frac{\exp\left[i\mathbf{qr}\right]F_n(\varphi,\mathbf{q})d\mathbf{q}}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} + 2Z\mathbf{kq} - 2n(kp - \mathbf{kq}) - i0}\right\}, \tag{10.159}$$

where the function $F_n(\varphi, \mathbf{q})$ has the form

$$F_n(\varphi,\mathbf{q}) = \widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})\exp\left(i\left\{\alpha_1(\mathbf{q})\sin[\varphi - \theta_1(\mathbf{q})] - \alpha_2(\mathbf{q})\sin 2\varphi + \theta_1(\mathbf{q})n - n\varphi\right\}\right)$$

$$\times\left\{\left[D_n\left((\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0 - \frac{e\omega\left[\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} - 2\frac{\mathcal{E}}{\omega}\mathbf{kq}\right]}{2(kp - \mathbf{kq})kp}\widehat{k}(\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi))\right)\right.\right.$$

$$+\frac{e\overline{A}_0\widehat{k}(\gamma\mathbf{D})_{3,n}(\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0}{2(kp - \mathbf{kq})} + \frac{e\overline{A}_0}{2kp}\left[\frac{\omega\left[\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} - 2\frac{\mathcal{E}}{\omega}\mathbf{kq}\right]}{kp - \mathbf{kq}} - (\gamma\mathbf{q})\gamma_0\right]\widehat{k}(\gamma\mathbf{D})_{3,n}$$

$$\left.+\frac{\omega e\alpha(\mathbf{q})\widehat{k}(\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi))}{kp - \mathbf{kq}}D_{1,n}(\theta(\mathbf{q})) + \frac{(\mathbf{kq})\widehat{k}\gamma_0 - \omega\widehat{k}(\gamma\mathbf{q})}{kp - \mathbf{kq}}Z(D_n + \cos 2\zeta D_{2,n})\right]u$$

$$\left.-2f_V(\varphi)\left\{(\mathcal{E} + \omega Z)D_n - \omega[\alpha(\mathbf{p})D_{1,n}(\theta(\mathbf{p})) - Z\cos 2\zeta D_{2,n}]\right\}\right\}. \tag{10.160}$$

To calculate the asymptote of the function (10.159) we temporarily direct the Oq_z coordinate axis along $\mathbf{r}$ and replace the integration variable $\mathbf{q}$ by $\mathbf{q}' = \mathbf{\Pi} + n\mathbf{k} + \mathbf{q}$. Turning to spherical coordinates, we carry out the integration over the solid angle by the formula

$$\exp\left(i\mathbf{q}'\mathbf{r}\right)\big|_{r\to\infty} \Longrightarrow \frac{2\pi}{i\,|\mathbf{q}'|\,r}$$

$$\times \left[\delta \left(\frac{\mathbf{q}'}{|\mathbf{q}'|} - \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \right) \exp \left(i \left| \mathbf{q}' \right| r \right) - \delta \left(\frac{\mathbf{q}'}{|\mathbf{q}'|} + \frac{\mathbf{r}}{r} \right) \exp \left(-i \left| \mathbf{q}' \right| r \right) \right], \qquad (10.161)$$

Then we carry out the integration over $\left|\mathbf{q}'\right|$ in the complex plane, passing above the pole $\left|\mathbf{q}'\right| = -p_n$ and below the pole $\left|\mathbf{q}'\right| = p_n$, where

$$p_n = \sqrt{\mathbf{\Pi}^2 + n\omega(2\Pi_0 + n\omega)} \qquad (10.162)$$

(this path corresponds to chosen sign of the infinitesimal $-i0$ in the denominator of the integrand). As a result, at $r \to \infty$ we obtain

$$\Psi_B\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) = \frac{\exp\left(i S_V(x)\right)}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{E}}}$$

$$\times \left\{ f_V(\varphi) + \frac{\exp\left[-i\mathbf{\Pi}\boldsymbol{r}\right]}{4\pi r} \sum_{n\,=\,n_0}^{\infty} e^{i(p_n\widehat{\mathbf{r}} - n\mathbf{k})\mathbf{r}} F_n\left(\varphi,\ p_n\widehat{\mathbf{r}} - \mathbf{\Pi} - n\mathbf{k}\right) \right\}, \qquad (10.163)$$

where $F_n\left(\varphi,\ p_n\mathbf{r}/r - \mathbf{\Pi} - n\mathbf{k}\right)$ is defined by (10.160). Summation of n is carried out with $n_0 = \langle(-\Pi_0 + m_*)\,/\omega\rangle$.

As it is seen from the expression (10.163) the asymptotic wave function at $n = 0$ [if $A(\varphi) \equiv 0$], corresponding to elastic scattering of the electron in the Born approximation, describes the outgoing spherical wave at large distances, according to which the sign of the infinitesimal $i0$ in the poles of the integrals (10.123), (10.124) was chosen.

To obtain the wave function of eikonal approximation for SB process from the GEA wave function, it is necessary to neglect the terms $\mathbf{q}^2$ and $\mathbf{kq}$ in the expressions (10.123) and (10.124), which is equivalent to ignoring the second derivatives of the wave function with respect to the first ones in the wave equation (10.86). Then by integrating over $\mathbf{q}$ in the formulae (10.123) and (10.124) and taking into account the expressions (10.92)–(10.94) we obtain the electron wave function in SB process in the eikonal approximation:

$$\Psi_E\left(\mathbf{r}, t\right) = \left\{ f_v(\varphi) + \frac{i}{2}\int_{-\infty}^{\varphi} \left\{ \left[1 + \frac{e\widehat{k}(\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi') - \gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi))}{2(kp - \mathbf{kq})} \right] (\gamma\partial_{\Sigma(\varphi')})\gamma_0 f_V(\varphi') \right.\right.$$

$$- i2\omega\partial_{\varphi'} f_V(\varphi') + \left[-\mathcal{E} + \frac{e\omega}{kp}[\mathbf{pA}(\varphi') - e\mathbf{A}^2(\varphi')/2] \right]$$

$$\left.\left. \times \frac{(\mathbf{k}\partial_{\Sigma(\varphi')})\widehat{k}}{(kp)^2} \left[\gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi') - \gamma\mathbf{A}(\varphi)\right] u \right\} U(\Sigma(\varphi'))d\varphi' \right\}$$

$$\times\ e^{iS_V(\mathbf{r},t)} \exp\left[i \int_{-\infty}^{\varphi} \left(-\mathcal{E} + \frac{e\omega}{kp} \left(\mathbf{pA}(\varphi') - e\mathbf{A}^2(\varphi')/2 \right) \right) U(\Sigma(\varphi'))d\varphi' \right], \tag{10.164}$$

where

$$\Sigma(\varphi) = \mathbf{r} + \frac{1}{kp} \int_{\varphi'}^{\varphi} \left[\mathbf{p} + e\left(\mathbf{A}(\tau) + \frac{\mathbf{k}}{kp} \left(\mathbf{pA}(\tau) - e\mathbf{A}^2(\tau)/2 \right) \right) \right] d\tau. \tag{10.165}$$

The conditions of common eikonal approximation for scattering process in the field of EM wave are

$$|U| \ll \frac{1}{\Pi_0} \left(|\mathbf{\Pi}| - \frac{e\overline{A}_0}{1 - \mathrm{v}\cos\theta_{\mathbf{kp}}} \right)^2;$$

$$z \ll \left| |\mathbf{\Pi}| - \frac{e\overline{A}_0}{1 - \mathrm{v}\cos\theta_{\mathbf{kp}}} \right| a^2. \tag{10.166}$$

Finally, let us represent the obtained GEA wave function (10.134) for SB process in the nonrelativistic limit:

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r},t) = \exp\left\{ iS_0(\mathbf{r},t) - 2m \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-in\omega t} \int \frac{\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) J_n(\alpha(\mathbf{q}))}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{pq} - 2mn\omega - i0} \right.$$

$$\left. \times\ \exp i \left[\mathbf{qr} + \alpha(\mathbf{q}) \sin(\omega t - \theta(\mathbf{q})) + \theta(\mathbf{q})n \right] \frac{d\mathbf{q}}{(2\pi)^3} \right\}. \tag{10.167}$$

where $S_0(\mathbf{r},t)$ is the classical action of the particle in the plane EM wave field with the vector potential $\mathbf{A}(t)$ in dipole approximation $\mathbf{kr} \ll 1$, $\mathrm{v}/c \ll 1$ (at the wave intensities $\xi_0 \ll 1$):

$$S_0(\mathbf{r},t) = \mathbf{pr} - \frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m} t + \frac{e}{mc} \int_{-\infty}^{t} \mathbf{pA}(t')\, dt' - \int_{-\infty}^{t} \frac{e^2 \mathbf{A}^2(t')}{2m} dt'.$$

The wave function (10.167) is normalized for the one particle in the unit volume $V = 1$, and interaction parameters $\alpha(\mathbf{q})$ and $\theta(\mathbf{q})$ are determined by expressions

$$\alpha(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{e\overline{A}_0}{m\omega} \sqrt{(\mathbf{qe}_1)^2 \cos^2\zeta + (\mathbf{qe}_2)^2 \sin^2\zeta},$$

$$\theta(\mathbf{q}) = \arctan\left(\frac{\mathbf{qe}_2}{\mathbf{qe}_1} \tan\zeta \right).$$

Bibliography

H.K. Avetissian, S.V. Movsissian, Phys. Rev. A **54**, 3036 (1996)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. A **56**, 4905 (1997)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. A **59**, 549 (1999)
M. Gavrila, *Atoms in Intense Laser Fields* (Academic, New York, 1992)
M.H.M. Mittleman, *Introduction to the Theory of Laser-Atom Interactions* (Plenum, New York, 1993)
F.V. Bunkin, M.V. Fedorov, Sov. Phys. JETP **22**, 844 (1966)
N.M. Kroll, K.M. Watson, Phys. Rev. A **8**, 804 (1973)
J.L. Gersten, M.H.M. Mittleman, Phys. Rev. A **12**, 1840 (1975)
J. Kaminski, J. Phys. A **18**, 3365 (1985)
H.R. Reiss, J. Opt. Soc. Am. B **7**, 574 (1990)
D.P. Crawford, H.R. Reiss, Phys. Rev. A **50**, 1844 (1994)
D.P. Crawford, H.R. Reiss, Opt. Express **2**, 289 (1998)
N.J. Kylstra, A.M. Ermolaev, C.J. Joachain, J. Phys. B **30**, L449 (1997)
F.H.M. Faisal, T. Radozycki, Phys. Rev. A **48**, 554 (1993)
U.V. Rathe et al., J. Phys. B **30**, L531 (1997)
P.S. Kristic, M.H.M. Mittleman, Phys. Rev. A **45**, 6514 (1992)
M. Protopapas, C.H. Keitel, P.L. Knight, J. Phys. B **29**, L591 (1996)
H.R. Reiss, Phys. Rev. A **22**, 1786 (1980)
T.R. Hovhannisyan, A.G. Markossian, G.F. Mkrchian, Eur. Phys. D **20**, 17 (2002)
B.J. Choudhury, Phys. Rev. A **11**, 2194 (1975)

Chapter 11
Interaction of Strong Laser Radiation with Highly Charged Atoms-Ions

Abstract The interaction of powerful laser radiation with atomic-ionic systems of large nuclear charges has in principle multiphoton character and must be described in the scope of relativistic theory. The one-photon resonant excitation of atoms by a moderately strong laser radiation and associated cooperative processes have been comprehensively described in the scope of nonrelativistic theory within the nonlinear optics with the appearance of lasers. The situation with multiphoton resonant bound–bound transition processes is different and can be explained by the following factors. For efficient multiphoton excitation of atoms, the laser field should be strong enough to induce multiphoton transitions. However, in this case the nonresonant levels and continuum spectrum may play a role in the interaction process. The second major factor is that because of the strong dependence of the resonance on the pump intensity, and because of levels narrowness, atoms are excited only during a small interval of the laser pulse. As a result, the rate of concurrent process of multiphoton ionization exceeds the excitation rate by the several orders making the efficient excitation of the atom in this case problematic. Nevertheless, the numerical investigations for dynamics and radiation of highly charged hydrogen-like ions in the intense high-frequency laser fields show that if a laser field is not so strong for the ionization process to be dominant, in the near-resonant multiphoton interaction regime only few resonant levels are involved, rather than considering the whole wave packet like in strong field physics one can reduce the interaction dynamics to a few levels only. On the other hand, the multiphoton resonant excitation of atoms-ions is effective when the quantum system has a mean dipole moment in the excited states. Otherwise, it is necessary a three-level atomic system, the energies of the excited states of which should be close enough to each other and the transition dipole moment between these states must not be zero. As a best example of such systems is a hydrogen-like atom-ion where because of the random degeneration on an orbital moment, atom has a mean dipole moment in the excited stationary states (like to dipolar molecules). As far as ions may be produced with arbitrary charge state via various methods, the interaction of superstrong laser fields with ions is the subject of prime interest at present. By multiphoton resonant excitation of ions with large nuclear charges, we can reach far X-ray region for coherent radiation effects, specifically for creation of powerful radiation sources of coherent XUV in the bound–bound transitions. In this case, the relativistic effects should be taken into account, particularly the fine-structure of hydrogen-like

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_11

atoms-ions. Along with the multiphoton resonant excitation of atoms-ions, we will consider the concurrent process of above-threshold ionization (ATI) of such quantum systems by superstrong laser fields in relativistic theory. At last, the acceleration of the atoms in the strong laser fields will be considered in this book, as a one of the important problems since the period of the appearance of laser sources. In the last decades, the inverse problem of the atoms deceleration became more important connected with the intensive experimental researches regarding the laser manipulation of atoms. The latter involves a large class of nonlinear atomic and laser spectroscopic issues, especially at very low temperatures—unique experiments with the trapping of an separate atom or Bose condensation of a supercooling atomic gas in the optical-dipole-magnetic traps. Especially from the point of view of the inverse problem of the atom deceleration, in this chapter, we will consider a nonlinear mechanism of the threshold character for the atom-laser beams "impact interaction", analogous to the one described in the Chap. 2, "Reflection" phenomenon for the charged particles. It is also important that the threshold character (the existence of the critical intensity for the nonlinear resonance in the wave field) of such acceleration/deceleration may be used for the separation of atoms by the velocities.

11.1 Highly Charged Hydrogen-Like Atoms-Ions in the Strong High-Frequency Laser Field

Let us consider the relativistic quantum dynamics of a hydrogen-like atom-ion with the charge number of the nucleus Z_a in the strong EM radiation field. We will start from Dirac equation taking into account the fine-structure of atomic levels. We denote the atomic states by $|\eta\rangle$, where η indicate the set of quantum numbers that characterize the state $\eta = \{n, j, l, M\}$, where n is the principal quantum number, j is the whole moment, l is the orbital moment (which defines the state parity $P = (-1)^l$), and M is the magnetic quantum number. We will assume that $\lambda \gg a$, where a is the characteristic size of the atomic system and λ is the wavelength of EM wave (for the multiphoton resonance this condition is always satisfied). Besides, we will take into account within the EL transitions only the electric-dipole transitions $E1$ as the main coupling transitions between the states with the principal quantum numbers $n = 1, 2$.

In accordance with the mentioned dipol approximation, the linearly polarized EM wave may be presented in the form

$$\mathbf{E}(t) = \mathbf{e}E_0(t)\cos\omega t, \tag{11.1}$$

with a slowly varying amplitude $E_0(t)$ ($|\mathbf{e}| = 1$) and carrier frequency ω. Without loss of generality, one can take the polarization vector $\mathbf{e}$ aligned with the Z axis of spherical coordinates. Then taking into account the selection rules for $E10$ transitions: $M = M'$, $PP' = -1$, $\left|j - j'\right| \leq 1 \leq j + j'$, one can produce a simple picture of atomic configuration with the coupling transitions. Transitions from the ground state $\{1, 1/2, 0, -1/2\}$ (state $|1\rangle$) to the states $\{2, 3/2, 1, -1/2\}$ (state $|2\rangle$) and $\{2, 1/2, 1, -1/2\}$ (state $|3\rangle$) are possible. Then these states $|2\rangle$, $|3\rangle$ are coupled with the state $\{2, 1/2, 0, -1/2\}$ (state $|4\rangle$). The considered levels are degenerated upon the magnetic quantum number M, consequently there is a similar picture for the other four states with $M = 1/2$ (the states with $M = \pm 3/2$ do not satisfy the selection rules). So, the Dirac equation which is a set of eight equations in this case reduces to the two independent sets of four equations for each magnetic quantum number $M = \pm 1/2$.

The Dirac equation (10.83) in the energetic representation, i.e., the set of equations for the probability amplitudes $a_\eta(t)$, is the following (in atomic units: $e = m = \hbar = 1$, $c = 137$):

$$i\frac{da_\eta}{dt} = \varepsilon_\eta a_\eta + \sum_{\nu=1}^{4} V_{\eta\nu} a_\upsilon, \tag{11.2}$$

where

$$\varepsilon_1 = c^2\gamma,\ \varepsilon_2 = c^2\frac{\gamma_1}{2},\ \varepsilon_{3,4} = c^2\frac{N}{2} \tag{11.3}$$

are the energies of electronic levels. Here

$$\gamma = \sqrt{1 - (\alpha_0 Z_a)^2},\ \gamma_1 = \sqrt{4 - (\alpha_0 Z_a)^2},\ N = \sqrt{2\,(1+\gamma)}, \tag{11.4}$$

and α_0 is the fine-structure constant. The interaction Hamiltonian can be written as

$$V_{\eta\nu} = z_{\eta\nu} E, \tag{11.5}$$

where the matrix elements $z_{\eta\nu} = \langle \eta \mid z \mid \nu \rangle$ of the electric-dipole moment calculated by the known bispinor solutions of stationary Dirac equation in Coulomb field are

$$z_{12} = i\frac{1}{Z_a}\frac{2^{2\gamma+\gamma_1+2}\Gamma\,(\gamma+\gamma_1+2)}{3^{\gamma+\gamma_1+3}}\sqrt{\frac{(1+\gamma)\,(2+\gamma_1)}{2\Gamma\,(2\gamma+1)\,\Gamma\,(2\gamma_1+1)}}$$

$$\times\left\{1 - \frac{(\alpha_0 Z_a)^2}{(1+\gamma)\,(2+\gamma_1)}\right\}, \tag{11.6}$$

$$z_{13} = \frac{2i}{3}\frac{1}{Z_a}2^{2\gamma-1/2}\frac{N^{\gamma+3}}{(N+1)^{2\gamma+3}}\sqrt{(2\gamma+1)\,(N-1)\,(N+2)}, \tag{11.7}$$

$$z_{34} = \frac{i}{4}\frac{1}{Z_a}\sqrt{N^2-1}N^2, \tag{11.8}$$

$$z_{24} = \frac{i}{3}\frac{1}{Z_a}2^{2\gamma+\gamma_1+3/2}\frac{N^{\gamma_1+1}\Gamma\left(\gamma+\gamma_1+2\right)}{2\left(N+2\right)^{\gamma+\gamma_1+3/2}}\sqrt{\left(2+\gamma_1\right)}$$

$$\times\sqrt{\frac{2\gamma+1}{\left(N+1\right)\Gamma\left(2\gamma+1\right)\Gamma\left(2\gamma_1+1\right)}}\left\{\frac{2N^2+4+4\gamma_1}{\left(N-1\right)\left(N+2\right)}-N\right.$$

$$\left.-\sqrt{\frac{\left(2-\gamma_1\right)\left(2-N\right)}{\left(2+\gamma_1\right)\left(2+N\right)}}\left[N+2-\frac{2N^2+4+4\gamma_1}{\left(N-1\right)\left(N+2\right)}\right]\right\}. \tag{11.9}$$

In order to have physically more appropriate forms of equations for multiphoton resonant transitions, by analogy with the hydrogen atom problem in the parabolic coordinates, we apply unitary transformation that is represented by the following matrix

$$\widehat{S} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} & \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 0 & -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} & \frac{2}{\sqrt{6}} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} & \frac{1}{\sqrt{6}} & -\frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \end{pmatrix}. \tag{11.10}$$

Application of unitarian transformation (11.10) yields to the following set of equations

$$i\frac{d}{dt}\widehat{a}' = \widehat{U}\widehat{a}', \tag{11.11}$$

where operator $\widehat{U}$ has the following matrix form

$$\widehat{U} = \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_1 & id_{12}E & id_{13}E & id_{12}E \\ -id_{12}E & \varepsilon+\overline{d}E & \varpi-d_{23}E & -\varpi \\ -id_{13}E & \varpi-d_{23}E & \varepsilon & \varpi+d_{23}E \\ -id_{12}E & -\varpi & \varpi+d_{23}E & \varepsilon-\overline{d}E \end{pmatrix} \tag{11.12}$$

and for the transformed probability amplitudes, the relation $\widehat{a}' = \widehat{S}\widehat{a}$ takes place. Here, the transitions dipole moments are

$$d_{12} = \frac{z_{13}+\sqrt{2}z_{12}}{i\sqrt{6}}, \quad d_{23} = \frac{z_{24}-\sqrt{2}z_{34}}{i\sqrt{6}},$$

$$d_{13} = \frac{\sqrt{2}z_{13}-z_{12}}{i\sqrt{3}}, \quad \overline{d} = \frac{z_{34}+\sqrt{2}z_{24}}{i\sqrt{3}},$$

and $|3\varpi|$ represents the splitting of fine-structure:

$$\varpi = \frac{\varepsilon_3-\varepsilon_2}{3}. \tag{11.13}$$

In the transformed system, the excited states have the same ε energy

$$\varepsilon = \frac{\varepsilon_2 + \varepsilon_3 + \varepsilon_4}{3}, \tag{11.14}$$

and two of them have nonzero mean dipole moments $\overline{d}$ and $-\overline{d}$. The terms $\pm\overline{d}E(t)$ in (11.12) describe the self-energy oscillating levels and are responsible for the multiphoton resonance. The state and the transitions indicated by the dashed lines are the result of relativistic effects. The matrix elements of these transitions (d_{23}, d_{13}, and ϖ) are proportional to fine-structure splitting.

Although the obtained system of (11.11) is very complicated it can be solved in the resonant approximation, through separating slowly varying and rapidly oscillating functions on the scale of the EM wave period. This can be made in the "interaction picture" in which we assign to the probability amplitudes the time dependence due only to the transitions. Hence, if resonant condition

$$\varepsilon_1 + n\omega - \varepsilon \simeq 0, \qquad (n = 1, 2 \ldots) \tag{11.15}$$

holds, then the amplitudes (b_η) in the interaction picture are defined as

$$\begin{aligned} a_1' &= b_1 \exp\{-i\varepsilon_1 t\}, \quad a_3' = b_3 \exp\{-i(\varepsilon_1 + n\omega)t\}, \\ a_2' &= b_2 \exp\left\{-i(\varepsilon_1 + n\omega)t - i\frac{E_0\overline{d}}{\omega}\sin\omega t\right\}, \\ a_4' &= b_4 \exp\left\{-i(\varepsilon_1 + n\omega)t + i\frac{E_0\overline{d}}{\omega}\sin\omega t\right\}. \end{aligned} \tag{11.16}$$

We can then derive the set of equations for the new amplitudes b_η from (11.11), (11.12), and (11.16). The resulting equations are

$$i\frac{db_\eta}{dt} = \sum_{\nu=1}^{4} L_{\eta\nu} b_\upsilon, \tag{11.17}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} L_{11} &= 0, \qquad L_{22} = L_{33} = L_{44} = -\delta, \\ L_{12} &= i\omega\frac{d_{12}}{\overline{d}} \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty} s(-1)^{s+1} J_s\left(\frac{E_0\overline{d}}{\omega}\right) e^{i(s-n)\omega t}, \\ L_{13} &= -id_{13}E_0\cos\omega t e^{-in\omega t}, \\ L_{14} &= i\omega\frac{d_{12}}{\overline{d}} \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty} sJ_s\left(\frac{E_0\overline{d}}{\omega}\right) e^{i(s-n)\omega t}, \end{aligned}$$

$$L_{23}=\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}\left(\varpi-s\omega\frac{d_{23}}{\overline{d}}\right)J_s\left(\frac{E_0\overline{d}}{\omega}\right)e^{is\omega t},$$
$$L_{24}=-\varpi\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}J_s\left(\frac{2E_0\overline{d}}{\omega}\right)e^{is\omega t},$$
$$L_{34}=\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}\left(\varpi+s\omega\frac{d_{23}}{\overline{d}}\right)J_s\left(\frac{E_0\overline{d}}{\omega}\right)e^{is\omega t}. \tag{11.18}$$

In deriving (11.18), we have applied the following expansion by Bessel functions:

$$\exp\left(i\alpha\sin\omega t\right)=\sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty}J_s\left(\alpha\right)\exp\left(is\omega t\right), \tag{11.19}$$

and introduced resonance detuning

$$\delta=\varepsilon_1+n\omega-\varepsilon. \tag{11.20}$$

In this representation, the quasi-energetic levels $\varepsilon-n\omega$ $(n=1,2,\ldots)$ close to the ground state arise. The probabilities of multiphoton transitions between these levels will have maximal values for the resonant transitions ($|\delta|\ll\omega$). The functions $L_{\eta\nu}\left(t\right)$ can then be represented in the following form:

$$L_{\eta\nu}=L_{\eta\nu}^{(n)}+l_{\eta\nu}\left(t\right), \tag{11.21}$$

where $L_{\eta\nu}^{(n)}$ are slowly varying functions on the scale of the EM wave period (for a monochromatic wave they are constants), and $l_{\eta\nu}\left(t\right)$ are rapidly oscillating functions. As a consequence of this separation, the probability amplitudes can be represented in the form

$$b_\eta(t)=\overline{b}_\eta(t)+\beta_\eta(t),\quad(\eta=1,3,2,4), \tag{11.22}$$

where $\overline{b}_\eta(t)$ is the time average of $b_\eta(t)$ and $\beta_\eta(t)$ denotes the rapidly oscillating functions. Substituting (11.22) into (11.17) and separating slow and rapid oscillations, taking into account (11.21), we obtain the following set of equations for the time average amplitudes $\overline{b}_\eta(t)$:

$$i\frac{d\overline{b}_\eta}{dt}=\sum_{\nu=1}^{4}L_{\eta\nu}^{(n)}\overline{b}_\upsilon+\sum_{\nu=1}^{4}\overline{l_{\eta\nu}\beta_\upsilon}, \tag{11.23}$$

and consequently

$$i\frac{d\beta_\eta}{dt}=\sum_{\nu=1}^{4}l_{\eta\nu}\overline{b}_\upsilon. \tag{11.24}$$

In (11.23) the overbar denotes averaging over a time much larger than the EM wave period. In the set, because of rapid oscillations (11.24), we have neglected the terms $\sim L_{\eta\nu}^{(n)}\beta_{\upsilon}$

$$\left|L_{\eta\nu}^{(n)}\beta_{\upsilon})\right| \ll \left|\frac{d\beta_{\eta}}{dt}\right|. \tag{11.25}$$

Solving the set of (11.24) and taking into account that $\overline{b}_{\eta}(t)$ are slowly varying functions, we obtain

$$\beta_{\eta} = -i\sum_{\alpha=1}^{4}\overline{b}_{\alpha}\int_{0}^{t} l_{\eta\alpha}\left(t'\right)dt', \tag{11.26}$$

and substituting $\beta_{\eta}(t)$ into (11.23) we obtain the equations for the slowly varying amplitudes

$$i\frac{d\overline{b}_{\eta}}{dt} = \sum_{\nu=1}^{4}\overline{L}_{\eta\nu}\overline{b}_{\upsilon}, \tag{11.27}$$

where

$$\overline{L}_{\eta\nu} = L_{\eta\nu}^{(n)} - i\sum_{\alpha=1}^{4}\overline{l_{\eta\alpha}\left(t\right)\int_{0}^{t} l_{\alpha\nu}\left(t'\right)dt'}. \tag{11.28}$$

The second term in (11.28) describes the dynamic Stark shift. In the general case of arbitrary envelope, the reduced set of (11.27) can be solved only numerically. But it allows for an exact solution for a monochromatic wave describing Rabi oscillations in four-level atomic system. In this case, we have a set of linear ordinary differential equations with fixed coefficients, so its general solution is given by a superposition of four linearly independent solutions

$$\overline{b}_{\eta} = \sum_{\nu=1}^{4}C_{\eta\upsilon}\exp\left(i\lambda_{\upsilon}t\right), \tag{11.29}$$

where $C_{\eta\upsilon}$ are constants of integration which are determined from the initial conditions and the factors λ_{υ} are the solutions of the fourth-order characteristic equation

$$\det\left(\widehat{\overline{L}} - \lambda\widehat{I}\right) = 0. \tag{11.30}$$

Now it is relevant to comment on the region of applicability of the theory presented hear. The set of equations (11.27) has been derived using the assumption that the amplitudes $\overline{b}_{\eta}$ are slowly varying functions on the scale of the EM wave period that puts the following restriction

$$\left|\overline{L}_{\eta\nu}\right| \ll \omega \tag{11.31}$$

on the characteristic parameters of the system considered.

The solution (11.29) is very complicated and in order to reveal the physics of multiphoton resonant excitation process, let us consider the solution at the exact resonance when the dynamic Stark shift and fine-structure splitting are small compared with the Rabi frequency. Then the solution (11.29) is

$$\overline{b}_1(t) = b_1(0)\cos\lambda_n t - \frac{(-1)^n b_2(0) - b_4(0)}{\sqrt{2}}\sin\lambda_n t,$$

$$\overline{b}_2(t) = \frac{b_2(0) - (-1)^n b_4(0)}{2}\cos\lambda_n t,$$

$$+\frac{(-1)^n b_1(0)}{\sqrt{2}}\sin\lambda_n t + \frac{b_2(0) + (-1)^n b_4(0)}{2}, \tag{11.32}$$

$$\overline{b}_3(t) = b_3(0),$$

$$\overline{b}_4(t) = (-1)^{n+1}\left(\overline{b}_2(t) - \left(b_2(0) + (-1)^n b_4(0)\right)\right),$$

where

$$\lambda_n = \sqrt{2}n\omega\frac{d_{12}}{\overline{d}}J_n\left(\frac{E_0\overline{d}}{\omega}\right). \tag{11.33}$$

The solution (11.32) expresses oscillations of the probability amplitudes at the multiphoton resonant excitation analogously to ordinary Rabi oscillations at the one-photon resonance. However, in this case, the generalized Rabi frequency has a nonlinear dependence on the amplitude of the EM wave field. For n-photon resonance, the atomic inversion oscillates at the frequency

$$\Omega_R^{(n)} \equiv 2|\lambda_n| = 2\sqrt{2}\left|n\omega\frac{d_{12}}{\overline{d}}J_n\left(\frac{E_0\overline{d}}{\omega}\right)\right|. \tag{11.34}$$

For one-photon resonance in the weak EM field $E_0\overline{d} \ll \omega$, $J_1(x) \simeq x/2$ and from (11.34) we have $\Omega_R^{(1)} = \sqrt{2}d_{12}E_0$, which coincides with the Rabi frequency of V-type atomic system.

It is also interesting to note that there is a principal difference between the odd and even photon resonances which is more evident for the system initially in the ground state. If we assume that the system is initially in the ground state, then

$$\overline{b}_1(t) = \cos\lambda_n t, \quad \overline{b}_3 = 0,$$

$$\overline{b}_2(t) = \frac{(-1)^n}{\sqrt{2}}\sin\lambda_n t, \quad \overline{b}_4(t) = (-1)^{n+1}\overline{b}_2(t). \tag{11.35}$$

With this solutions it is not difficult to verify that after the inverse transformation $\widehat{a} = \widehat{S}^{-1}\widehat{a}'$ for the even-photon resonance ($\overline{b}_4\,(t) = -\overline{b}_2\,(t)$), the $2P_{1/2}$ and $2P_{3/2}$ states' populations after the interaction are negligibly small and mainly the states $1S_{1/2}$ and $2S_{1/2}$ are populated. For the odd-photon resonances ($\overline{b}_4\,(t) = \overline{b}_2\,(t)$), the opposite situation takes place where the $2S_{1/2}$ state remains unpopulated and the states $2P_{1/2}$ and $2P_{3/2}$ are populated.

Let us represent some numerical simulations—solution of (11.2) numerically, for an ion with the charge number of the nucleus $Z_a = 10$ ($\varepsilon_1 - \varepsilon \simeq 37.5\,\text{a.u.} \simeq 1\,\text{keV}$, $z_{12} \simeq 0.0606\,\text{a.u.}$, $z_{13} \simeq 0.043\,\text{a.u.}$, $z_{24} \simeq 0.2447\,\text{a.u.}$, and $z_{34} \simeq 0.1728\,\text{a.u.}$). We choose the state $|1\rangle$ as the initial state for the atom in the EM wave field. The calculations have been made for a monochromatic wave as well as for the finite wave pulse describing the envelope by the hyperbolic secant function

$$E_0(t) = \frac{E_0}{\cosh\left(\frac{t-\tau}{\tau}\right)}, \tag{11.36}$$

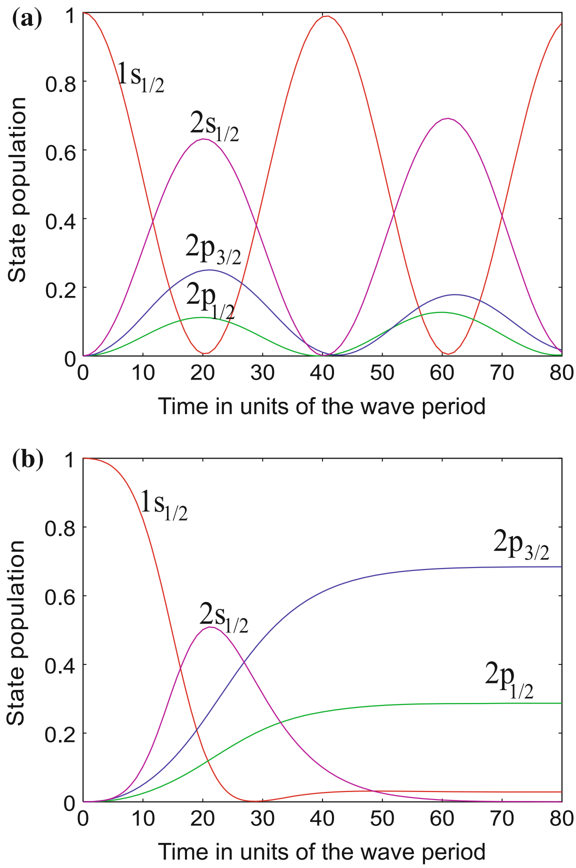


Fig. 11.1 (Color online) Three-photon resonance ($n = 3$) for $Z_a = 10$. The electric field strength is $E_0 = 40\,\text{a.u.}$; to compensate the Stark shift, the detuning is taken to be $\delta/\omega \simeq 0.02$. **a** Temporal evolution of the state populations for a continuous wave. **b** Temporal evolution of the state populations for the laser pulse of finite duration with $\omega\tau/2\pi = 15$

where τ characterizes the pulse duration. For visual convenience, we have eliminated the rapid oscillations from the graphics taking the plot step equal to wave period (in our approximate solutions these rapid oscillations are described by β_η functions).

For the large photon numbers, the dynamic Stark shift of levels takes the states off resonance and to compensate this one should take an appropriate detuning. The latter can be calculated from (11.28):

$$\Delta_{\mathrm{St}} = \omega \frac{d_{12}^2}{\overline{d}^2} \sum_{s \neq n} \frac{3 + (-1)^{s+n}}{s - n} s^2 J_s^2 \left(\frac{E_0 \overline{d}}{\omega} \right). \tag{11.37}$$

Figure 11.1a displays the temporal evolution of the states populations for three-photon resonance, when $E_0 = 40$ a.u and the detuning has been chosen to be $\delta/\omega \simeq 0.02$. The oscillation frequency with the high accuracy coincides with the generalized Rabi frequency (11.34). The state populations for a finite wave pulse are shown in Fig. 11.1b for $\omega\tau/2\pi = 15$. The final state is a superposition of two P states

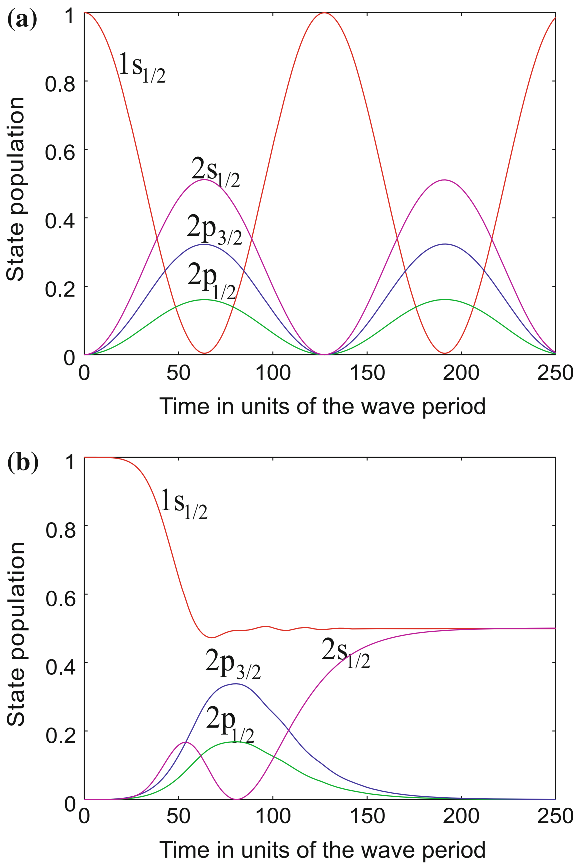


Fig. 11.2 (Color online) Six-photon resonance ($n = 6$) for $Z_a = 10$. The electric field strength is $E_0 = 50$ a.u.; the detuning is taken to be $\delta/\omega \simeq 0.055$. **a** Temporal evolution of the state populations for a continuous wave. **b** Temporal evolution of the state populations for the laser pulse of finite duration with $\omega\tau/2\pi = 41$

(we have overpopulation in P states). Figure 11.2 displays six-photon resonance. In this case $E_0 = 50\,\mathrm{a.u.}$, $\omega\tau/2\pi = 41$, and $\delta/\omega \simeq 0.055$. For the chosen pulse length, the final state is a superposition of two states—ground and excited S states (P states remain unpopulated). As we can see, by the appropriate laser pulses with moderately strong intensities ($E_0 \ll Z_a^3$), one can achieve various superposition states by the multiphoton resonant excitation of ions.

For large photon numbers $n > 10$, the Bessel function reaches its maximal value when $E_0\overline{d} \simeq n\omega$ (see (11.34)). The latter means that for the efficient multiphoton excitation of atoms, the laser field should be strong ($E_0 \simeq 0.1 Z_a^3$). On the other hand, in this case, the dynamic Stark shift (11.37) becomes the order of a laser frequency, then the resonant approximation is violated, and consequently, Rabi oscillations vanish. In addition, for the charge number of the nucleus well above 10, the fine-structure splitting becomes larger than the generalized Rabi frequency, taking $2P_{3/2}$ state off the resonance.

11.2 Above-Threshold Ionization of Atoms-Ions By Superstrong Laser Fields

The problem of ATI of a hydrogen-like atom-ion in the superstrong laser fields can be reduced to the investigation of the relativistic exploration of the transition S-matrix formalism utilizing the relativistic GEA wave function as a wave function of the final state of a photodetached electron. Because of bulk mathematical expressions for relativistic GEA wave function, we will rather simplify it by neglecting with the spin interaction and instead of Dirac wave function to use the Klein–Gordon one. Following the relativistic S-matrix formalism, the bound–free transition amplitude can be written in this integral form (in natural units $\hbar = c = 1$)

$$T_{i\to f} = -i \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Psi^{(-)\dagger}(x)\widehat{V}\Phi(x)d^4x, \tag{11.38}$$

where $x = (t, \mathbf{r})$ is the four-component radius vector x^μ, $\Phi(x)$ is the initial unperturbed bound state of the atomic system, and $\Psi^{(-)}(x)$ is the final out-state of an electron in the potential of atomic remainder and in the field of a plane EM wave ($K^\dagger$ is denotes the complex conjugation of K). We assume the EM wave to be quasimonochromatic and of an arbitrary polarization with the vector potential

$$\mathbf{A}(\varphi) = A_0(\varphi)\,(\mathbf{e}_1\cos\varphi + \mathbf{e}_2\zeta\sin\varphi); \qquad \varphi = kx = \omega t - \mathbf{kr}, \tag{11.39}$$

where $k = (\omega, \mathbf{k})$ is the four-wave vector, $A_0(\varphi)$ is the slow varying amplitude of the vector potential of a plane wave, $\mathbf{e}_1$ and $\mathbf{e}_2$ are unit vectors: $\mathbf{e}_1 \perp \mathbf{e}_2 \perp \mathbf{k}$, and $\arctan \zeta$ is the polarization angle.

According to the Klein–Gordon equation, the interaction operator is

$$\widehat{V} = -2e\mathbf{A}(\varphi)(-i\nabla) + e^2\mathbf{A}^2(\varphi), \tag{11.40}$$

where e is the electron charge.

The wave function of the final state of the photodetached electron in the relativistic GEA approximation has the following form:

$$\Psi^{(-)\dagger}(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\Pi_0}} F^{\dagger}(x) \exp[-iS_V(x)], \tag{11.41}$$

The $S_V(x)$ is the action of photoelectron in the field (11.39)

$$S_V(x) = \mathbf{\Pi r} - \Pi_0 t + \alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right)\sin[\varphi - \theta(\mathbf{p})] - \frac{Z}{2}(1-\zeta^2)\sin 2\varphi. \tag{11.42}$$

Here $\Pi = (\Pi_0, \mathbf{\Pi})$ is the average four-kinetic momentum or "quasimomentum" of the electron in the plane EM wave field, which is defined via free electron four-momentum $p = (\varepsilon_0, \mathbf{p})$ and relative parameter of the wave intensity Z by the following equation

$$\Pi = p + kZ(1+\zeta^2); \qquad Z = \frac{e^2\mathbf{A}_0^2}{4kp}, \tag{11.43}$$

where $|\mathbf{A}_0|$ is the averaged value of the amplitude $A_0(\varphi)$. The wave function (11.41) is normalized for the one particle in the unit volume $V = 1$.

Including in (11.42), the quantity $\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right)$ is the intensity-dependent amplitude of the electron-wave interaction and as a function of any three-vector $\mathbf{b}$ it has the following definition:

$$\alpha(\mathbf{b}) = e\,|\mathbf{A}_0|\sqrt{(\mathbf{be}_1)^2 + \zeta^2(\mathbf{be}_2)^2}, \tag{11.44}$$

with the phase angle

$$\theta(\mathbf{p}) = \arctan\left(\frac{\mathbf{pe}_2}{\mathbf{pe}_1}\zeta\right). \tag{11.45}$$

The function $F^{\dagger}(x)$ in (11.41), describing the impact of both the scattering and EM radiation fields on the photoelectron state simultaneously, has the following form:

$$F^{\dagger}(x) = \exp\left[\frac{1}{4\pi^3}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{in\varphi}\int d\mathbf{q}\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})\right.$$

$$\times\frac{\left\{\omega\left[\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right)D^{\dagger}_{1,n}\left(\theta_1(\mathbf{q})-\theta(\mathbf{p})\right)-Z(1-\zeta^2)D^{\dagger}_{2,n}\right]-\Pi_0 D^{\dagger}_{n}\right\}}{\mathbf{q}^2+2\mathbf{\Pi q}-2n(kp-\mathbf{kq})+i0}$$

$$\left.\times\ \exp\left[-i\left\{\mathbf{qr}+\alpha_1(\mathbf{q})\sin\left[\varphi-\theta_1(\mathbf{q})\right]-\alpha_2(\mathbf{q})\sin 2\varphi+\theta_1(\mathbf{q})n\right\}\right]\right], \quad (11.46)$$

where

$$\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q}) = \int U(\mathbf{r})\exp(-i\mathbf{qr})d\mathbf{r} \quad (11.47)$$

is the Fourier transform of the potential of the atomic remainder, $\alpha_1(\mathbf{q})$, $\alpha_2(\mathbf{q})$ are dynamic parameters of the interaction defined by the expressions

$$\alpha_1(\mathbf{q}) = \alpha\left((\mathbf{kq})\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}+\mathbf{q}\right),\ \alpha_2(\mathbf{q}) = \frac{\mathbf{kq}}{2(kp-\mathbf{kq}})Z(1-\zeta^2), \quad (11.48)$$

and $\theta_1(\mathbf{q})$ is the phase angle

$$\theta_1(\mathbf{q}) = \theta\left((\mathbf{kq})\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}+\mathbf{q}\right). \quad (11.49)$$

The functions $J_n(u, v, \triangle)$, D_n, $D_{1,n}\left(\theta_1(\mathbf{q})-\theta(\mathbf{p})\right)$, and $D_{2,n}$ are defined by the expressions

$$D_n = J_n(\alpha_1(\mathbf{q}), -\alpha_2(\mathbf{q}), \theta_1(\mathbf{q})), \quad (11.50)$$

$$D_{1,n}\left(\theta_1(\mathbf{q})-\theta(\mathbf{p})\right) = \frac{1}{2}\left[J_{n-1}(\alpha_1(\mathbf{q}), -\alpha_2(\mathbf{q}), \theta_1(\mathbf{q}))e^{-i(\theta_1(\mathbf{q})-\theta(\mathbf{p}))}\right.$$

$$\left.+\ J_{n+1}(\alpha_1(\mathbf{q}), -\alpha_2(\mathbf{q}), \theta_1(\mathbf{q}))e^{i(\theta_1(\mathbf{q})-\theta(\mathbf{p}))}\right], \quad (11.51)$$

and

$$D_{2,n} = \frac{1}{2}\left[J_{n-2}(\alpha_1(\mathbf{q}), -\alpha_2(\mathbf{q}), \theta_1(\mathbf{q}))e^{-i2\theta_1(\mathbf{q})}\right.$$

$$+\ J_{n+2}(\alpha_1(\mathbf{q}), -\alpha_2(\mathbf{q}), \theta_1(\mathbf{q}))e^{i2\theta_1(\mathbf{q})}. \quad (11.52)$$

In the denominator of the integral in expression (11.46) $+i0$ is an imaginary infinitesimal, which shows how the path around the pole in the integrand should be chosen to obtain a certain asymptotic behavior of the wave function, i.e., the ingoing spherical wave (to determine that one must be passed to the limit of the Born approximation at $\mathbf{A}(\varphi) = \mathbf{0}$).

Since we consider the ATI problem for hydrogen-like atoms ($Z_a \ll 137$), the initial velocities of atomic electrons are nonrelativistic, and as a initial-state wave function Φ in the transition amplitude (11.38) will be taken a stationary wave function of the hydrogen-like atom bound state in the nonrelativistic limit,

$$\Phi\left(\mathbf{r},t\right)=\frac{1}{\sqrt{2m}}\Phi_0\left(\mathbf{r}\right)\exp\left(-i\varepsilon_0 t\right),\qquad \varepsilon_0=m-E_B, \tag{11.53}$$

where $E_B > 0$ is the binding energy of the valence electron in the atom

$$2mE_B=a^{-2}. \tag{11.54}$$

Concerning the relativism of the photoelectron final state in a strong EM field, it should be mentioned that at the wave intensities already $\xi \sim 10^{-1}$ relativistic effects become observable, and the final state of the photoelectron should be described in the scope of relativistic theory. Moreover, at the currently available laser intensities $\xi > 1$ (even $\xi \gg 1$) a free electron becomes essentially relativistic already at distances smaller than one wavelength. On the other hand, in such fields, we see the production of electron–positron pairs from an intense photon field on the electrostatic potential of atomic remainder through multiphoton channels. However, we can calculate separately the ATI probability in superstrong laser fields without restricting intensities by the threshold value of multiphoton pairs production ($\xi \simeq 2$) since those are independent processes.

Since $\widehat{V}$ is a Hermitian operator, the transition amplitude (11.38) can be written in the form

$$T_{i\to f}=-i\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\Phi(x)\widehat{V}^{\dagger}(x)\Psi^{(-)\,\dagger}(x)d^4x. \tag{11.55}$$

To integrate this expression, it is convenient to turn from variables t, $\mathbf{r}$ to $\boldsymbol{\eta}\equiv\mathbf{r}$, φ (see (11.39))

$$T_{i\to f}=-\frac{i}{\omega}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty}\Phi(\varphi,\boldsymbol{\eta})\widehat{V}^{\dagger}(\varphi,\boldsymbol{\eta})\Psi^{(-)\,\dagger}(\varphi,\boldsymbol{\eta})d\varphi d\boldsymbol{\eta}. \tag{11.56}$$

and make a Fourier transformation of the function $F^{\dagger}(x)$ over the variable φ

$$F^{\dagger}(\varphi,\boldsymbol{\eta})=\sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty}\widetilde{F}_l(\boldsymbol{\eta})\exp(-il\varphi), \tag{11.57}$$

$$\widetilde{F}_l(\boldsymbol{\eta})=\frac{1}{2\pi}\int_{-\pi}^{\pi}F(\varphi,\boldsymbol{\eta})\exp(il\varphi)d\varphi. \tag{11.58}$$

Then with the help of (11.39)–(11.52), (11.53) (using (10.143) as well) and taking into account the Lorentz condition for the plane wave field $\mathbf{kA}(\varphi) = 0$, we can accomplish the integration over the variable φ in (11.56). After a simple transformation with the help of the formula (10.144), we obtain the following expression for the transition amplitude:

$$T_{i\to f} = \frac{i2\pi(kp)}{\omega\sqrt{m\Pi_0}} \sum_{L,l=-\infty}^{\infty} \Bigg\{ \left(L - Z(1+\zeta^2)\right) \widetilde{\Phi}_l\,(\mathbf{g})$$

$$\times\, J_L\left(\alpha\left[\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right], -\frac{Z}{2}(1-\zeta^2), \theta(\mathbf{p})\right) e^{iL\theta(\mathbf{p})}\delta\left(\frac{\Pi_0-\varepsilon_0}{\omega} - L - l\right)$$

$$+2\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}\int \frac{d\mathbf{q}}{(2\pi)^3}\widetilde{\Phi}_l\,(\mathbf{g}+\mathbf{q})\,\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})$$

$$\times\,\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{q}}{kp}\right) C^{\dagger}_{1,L}\,(\theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q}) - \theta(\mathbf{q}))\,e^{-in\theta_1(\mathbf{q})+iL\theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q})}$$

$$\times\,\frac{\left\{\omega\left[\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right) D^{\dagger}_{1,n}\,(\theta_1(\mathbf{q}) - \theta(\mathbf{p})) - Z(1-\zeta^2)D^{\dagger}_{2,n}\right] - \Pi_0 D^{\dagger}_n\right\}}{\mathbf{q}^2 + 2\mathbf{\Pi q} - 2n(kp - \mathbf{kq}) + i0}$$

$$\times\,\delta\left(\frac{\Pi_0-\varepsilon_0}{\omega} - L - l + n\right)\Bigg\}, \qquad (11.59)$$

where $\mathbf{g}$ is the three-vector,

$$\mathbf{g} = \mathbf{p} - \frac{(\varepsilon-\varepsilon_0)\mathbf{k}}{\omega}. \qquad (11.60)$$

and the function $\widetilde{\Phi}_l\,(\mathbf{b})$ is the Fourier transform of $\Phi_l(\boldsymbol{\eta}) \equiv \Phi(\boldsymbol{\eta})\widetilde{F}_l(\boldsymbol{\eta})$, and as a function of any three-vector $\mathbf{b}$ is defined by analogous formula (11.47), and

$$C_{1,n}\,(\theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q}) - \theta(\mathbf{q}))$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\Bigg[J_{n-1}(\alpha_1(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q}), -\frac{Z_1}{2}(1-\zeta^2), \theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q}))e^{-i(\theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q})-\theta(\mathbf{q}))}$$

$$+\,J_{n+1}(\alpha_1(\mathbf{q}), -\frac{Z_1}{2}(1-\zeta^2), \theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q}))e^{i(\theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q})-\theta(\mathbf{q}))}\Bigg], \qquad (11.61)$$

where the parameters $\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q}}{kp-\mathbf{kq}}\right)$ and $\theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q})$ are determined by the expressions (11.44) and (11.45), and

$$Z_1 = \frac{e^2\mathbf{A}_0^2}{4(kp-\mathbf{kq})}. \qquad (11.62)$$

Using the general conservation law of considering process, the probability amplitude of the above-threshold ionization in the concluding form can be presented in this ultimate form

$$T_{i\to f} = \frac{i2\pi(kp)}{\sqrt{m\Pi_0}} \sum_{N,l=-\infty}^{\infty} \Bigg\{ (N+l-Z(1+\zeta^2))\widetilde{\Phi}_l\,(\mathbf{g})$$

$$\times J_{N-l}\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right), -\frac{Z}{2}(1-\zeta^2),\, \theta(\mathbf{p})\right) e^{i(N-l)\theta(\mathbf{p})}$$

$$+2\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \int \frac{d\mathbf{q}}{(2\pi)^3} \widetilde{\Phi}_l\,(\mathbf{g}+\mathbf{q})\,\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})$$

$$\times \alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{q}}{kp}\right) C^{\dagger}_{1,N-l+n}\,(\theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q})-\theta(\mathbf{q}))\, e^{-in\theta_1(\mathbf{q})+i(N-l+n)\theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q})}$$

$$\times \frac{\left\{\omega\left[\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right) D^{\dagger}_{1,n}\,(\theta_1(\mathbf{q})-\theta(\mathbf{p})) - Z(1-\zeta^2)D^{\dagger}_{2,n}\right] - \Pi_0 D^{\dagger}_n\right\}}{\mathbf{q}^2+2\mathbf{\Pi}\mathbf{q}-2n(kp-\mathbf{k}\mathbf{q})+i0}\Bigg\}$$

$$\times\ \delta\,(\Pi_0-\varepsilon_0-\omega N). \tag{11.63}$$

The differential probability of ATI process per unit time in the phase space $d\mathbf{\Pi}/\,(2\pi)^3$ (space volume $V=1$ in accordance with normalization of electron-wave function) taking into account all the final states of a photoelectron with quasimomenta in the interval $\mathbf{\Pi},\ \mathbf{\Pi}+d\mathbf{\Pi}$ is

$$dW_{i\to f} = \frac{\left|T_{i\to f}\right|^2}{\tau}\frac{d\mathbf{\Pi}}{(2\pi)^3}$$

$$= \frac{\left|T_{i\to f}\right|^2}{\tau}\sqrt{\Pi_0^2-m_*^2}\,\Pi_0 d\Pi_0 \frac{d\Omega}{(2\pi)^3}, \tag{11.64}$$

where τ is the interaction time, $d\Omega$ is the differential solid angle, and

$$m_* = \sqrt{\Pi_0^2-\mathbf{\Pi}^2} = \sqrt{m^2+e^2\mathbf{A}_0^2\frac{(1+\zeta^2)}{2}} \tag{11.65}$$

is the “effective mass” of the relativistic electron in the EM wave field.

As follows from (11.63) and formulas

$$2\pi\delta\left(\Pi_0-\varepsilon_0-\omega N\right)\delta\left(\Pi_0-\varepsilon_0-\omega N'\right)=\left[\begin{array}{l}0,\text{ if } N\neq N'\\ \tau\delta\left(\Pi_0-\varepsilon_0-\omega N\right),\text{ if } N=N'\end{array}\right., \tag{11.66}$$

the differential probability of ATI process $dW_{i\to f}$ (11.64) per unit time does not depend on interaction time.

11.3 The Relativistic Born Approximation by the Potential of Atomic Remainder in ATI

The impact of the rescattering effect on the ATI process is more transparent in the limit of the Born approximation by the scattering potential. The latter takes place if the corresponding part of the action in the GEA wave function, describing the impact of both the scattering and EM radiation fields on the photoelectron state simultaneously, is enough small.

Expanding (11.63) into the series and keeping only the terms to the first order over $U(\mathbf{r})$, after a simple transformation, utilizing (10.136), (10.143), and (10.144), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}T_{i\to f}=\frac{i2\pi}{\sqrt{m\Pi_0}}\sum_{N=-\infty}^{\infty}&\Bigg\{\left[N-Z(1+\zeta^2)\right](kp)\widetilde{\Phi}\left(\mathbf{g}\right)e^{iN\theta(\mathbf{p})}\\ &\times J_N\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right),-\frac{Z}{2}(1-\zeta^2),\theta(\mathbf{p})\right)\\ +2\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}\int\frac{d\mathbf{q}}{(2\pi)^3}&\left[N+n-Z_1(1+\zeta^2)\right](kp-\mathbf{kq})\,\widetilde{\Phi}\left(\mathbf{g}+\mathbf{q}\right)\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{q})\\ \times&\left[\omega\left\{\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right)D^{\dagger}_{1,n}(\theta_1(\mathbf{q})-\theta(\mathbf{p}))-Z(1-\zeta^2)D^{\dagger}_{2,n}\right\}-\Pi_0D^{\dagger}_n\right]\\ &\times e^{-in\theta_1(\mathbf{q})+i(N+n)\theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q})}\\ &\times\frac{J_{(N+n)}\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q}}{kp-\mathbf{kq}}\right),-\frac{Z_1}{2}(1-\zeta^2),\theta(\mathbf{p}+\mathbf{q})\right)}{\mathbf{q}^2+2\mathbf{\Pi q}-2n(kp-\mathbf{kq})+i0}\Bigg\}\\ &\times\delta\left(\Pi_0-\varepsilon_0-\omega N\right).\end{aligned} \tag{11.67}$$

For hydrogen-like atoms with the charge number Z_a, the condition of the Born approximation for the photoelectron scattering (in the Coulomb field),

$$\frac{Z_a e^2}{\hbar \mathrm{v}} \ll 1 \tag{11.68}$$

requires electron velocities $\mathrm{v} \gg Z_a \alpha$ (it is assumed that $Z_a \ll 137$). The photoelectron acquires such velocities in the EM wave field at the intensities

$$\xi \gg \frac{Z_a}{137}. \tag{11.69}$$

As will be shown below, (11.69) is the condition of the Born approximation in the ATI process of hydrogen-like atoms taking into account the photoelectron rescattering.

The initial bound state enters into (11.63) through its momentum space wave function $\widetilde{\Phi}\,(\mathbf{b})$. For hydrogen-like atoms, the bound state wave function is

$$\Phi(\boldsymbol{\eta}) = \frac{\exp(-\eta/a)}{\sqrt{\pi a^3}}, \tag{11.70}$$

where $a = a_0/Z_a$ ($a_0 = 1/me^2$ is the Bohr radius) and the corresponding momentum space wave function has the following form:

$$\widetilde{\Phi}\,(\mathbf{b}) = \frac{2^3(\pi a^3)^{1/2}}{\mathbf{b}^4 a^4}. \tag{11.71}$$

Note, that in (11.71), $|\mathbf{b}|\,a \gg 1$ has been taken into account in accordance with the Born approximation. Then the function $\widetilde{\Phi}\,(\mathbf{g}+\mathbf{q})$ in the second term in curly brackets of (11.67) can be replaced by the quantity $\delta(\mathbf{g}+\mathbf{q})/\sqrt{\pi a^3}$ because of the small contributions of the other terms in an expansion of $T_{i\to f}$ over the parameter $\mathbf{g}^2 a^2$, which will be shown bellow. Such a δ function can be used to accomplish the integration over $\mathbf{q}$ in the large curly brackets of (11.67).

For the scattering of a charged particle in the Coulomb field for which the Fourier transform is

$$\widetilde{U}(\mathbf{g}) = \frac{4\pi}{am\mathbf{g}^2}, \tag{11.72}$$

we have the following expression for the transition amplitude in the field of arbitrary polarization of an EM wave:

$$T_{i\to f} = \frac{i2^4(\pi a)^{3/2}}{\sqrt{m\Pi_0}} \frac{(kp)}{\mathbf{g}^4 a^4} \sum_{N=-\infty}^{\infty} \Big\{ \big(N - Z(1+\zeta^2)\big)\, e^{iN\theta(\mathbf{p})}$$

$$\times J_N\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right), -\frac{Z}{2}(1-\zeta^2), \theta(\mathbf{p})\right)$$

$$
- \frac{\omega \varepsilon_0 \mathbf{g}^2}{m(kp)} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(2n - \alpha'(1+\zeta^2)\right) e^{-i(2n-N)\theta(\mathbf{p})}
$$

$$
\times \left. \frac{\left\{(\omega(2n-N) + \Pi_0)C^{\dagger}_{N-2n} + \omega\alpha'(1-\zeta^2)C^{\dagger}_{2,N-2n}\right\} J_n\left(\frac{-\alpha'(1-\zeta^2)}{2}\right)}{m_*^2 + \varepsilon_0^2 - 2\varepsilon_0(\Pi_0 + \omega(2n-N))} \right\}
$$

$$
\times \; \delta\left(\Pi_{0-}\varepsilon_0 - \omega N\right), \tag{11.73}
$$

where α' is defined by (11.62) at $\mathbf{q} = -\mathbf{g}$ and $\alpha' = e^2\mathbf{A}_0^2/4\omega\varepsilon_0$, then $J_n\left(\frac{-\alpha'(1-\zeta^2)}{2}\right)$ is the ordinary Bessel function ($J_{2n}\,(0, x, 0) = J_n(x)$ (10.137)), C_s and $C_{2,s}$ are defined by the expressions

$$
C_s = J_s\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right), \frac{(Z-\alpha')(1-\zeta^2)}{2}, \theta(\mathbf{p})\right), \tag{11.74}
$$

and

$$
C_{2,s} = \frac{1}{2}\left[J_{s-2}\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right), \frac{(Z-\alpha')(1-\zeta^2)}{2}, \theta(\mathbf{p})\right) e^{-i2\theta(\mathbf{p})}\right.
$$

$$
\left. + J_{s+2}\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}}{kp}\right), \frac{(Z-\alpha')(1-\zeta^2)}{2}, \theta(\mathbf{p})\right) e^{i2\theta(\mathbf{p})}\right]. \tag{11.75}
$$

Integrating the expression (11.64) over Π_0, taking into account (11.73) and (11.66), for differential probability of ATI we obtain the formula

$$
\frac{dW_{i\to f}}{d\Omega} = \frac{2^4}{\pi m a^5} \sum_{N=N_0}^{\infty} \frac{\left(N - Z(1+\zeta^2)\right)^2 (k\Pi)^2 \,|\mathbf{\Pi}|}{\mathbf{g}^8}
$$

$$
\times \left|\left\{ e^{iN\theta(\mathbf{\Pi})} J_N\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{\Pi}}{k\Pi}\right), -\frac{Z}{2}(1-\zeta^2), \theta(\mathbf{\Pi})\right)\right.\right.
$$

$$
+ \frac{\mathbf{g}^2}{2m\left(N - Z(1+\zeta^2)\right)(k\Pi)} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-i(2n-N)\theta(\mathbf{\Pi})} J_n\left(\frac{-\alpha'(1-\zeta^2)}{2}\right)
$$

$$
\left.\left. \times \left((\varepsilon_0 + 2n\omega)C^{\dagger}_{N-2n} + \omega\alpha'(1-\zeta^2)C^{\dagger}_{2,N-2n}\right)\right\}\right|^2. \tag{11.76}
$$

Here the three-vector $\mathbf{g}$ (11.60) is

$$
\mathbf{g} = \mathbf{\Pi} - N\mathbf{k}, \;\; |\mathbf{\Pi}| = \sqrt{(\varepsilon_0 + \omega N)^2 - m_*^2}. \tag{11.77}
$$

The number N_0 from which we carry out the summation in (11.76) is defined from the energy conservation law of ATI process: $N_0 = \langle (m_* - \varepsilon_0)/\omega \rangle$.

The first term in the curly brackets of (11.76) corresponds to the result of the so-called Keldysh–Faisal–Reiss (KFR) approximation, and the second term shows the dependance of the total ATI probability on the ejected photoelectron stimulated bremsstrahlung (SB) probability on the residual atom, i.e., it takes into account the rescattering in the ATI process.

11.4 Probability of ATI Process for Circular and Linear Polarizations of an EM Wave

The state of a photoelectron in the field of a strong EM wave and consequently the ionization probability essentially depends on the polarization of the wave (the nonlinear effect of intensity conditioned by the impact of strong magnetic field). Thus, for circular polarization the relativistic parameter of the wave intensity $\xi^2 = const = \xi_0^2$ and the longitudinal velocity of the electron in the wave $v_{II} = const$ (eliminating this inertial motion—in the framework of the electron—we have the uniform rotation in the polarization plane with the wave frequency ω), meanwhile for the linear one $\xi^2 = \xi_0^2 \cos^2 \varphi$ and v_{II} oscillates with the frequencies of all wave harmonics $n\omega$ corresponding to strongly unharmonic oscillatory motion of a photoelectron. The later leads principally to different behavior of the ionization process and corresponding formulas depending on the polarization of a strong wave. Therefore, we shall consider the cases of circular and linear polarizations of EM wave field separately.

From (11.76), for the circularly polarized wave ($\zeta = 1$) in the first Born approximation by the ionized atom potential, we obtain the following formula for the differential probability of the ATI process:

$$\frac{dW_{i\to f}}{d\Omega} = \frac{2^4}{\pi m a^5} \sum_{N=N_0}^{\infty} \frac{(N-2Z)^2 (k\Pi)^2 |\mathbf{\Pi}|}{\mathbf{g}^8} \times J_N^2\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{\Pi}}{k\Pi}\right)\right)\left\{1 + \frac{\mathbf{g}^2}{2(N-2Z)(k\Pi)}\right\}^2 . \qquad (11.78)$$

As is seen from this formula, in contrast to the case of another polarizations, the differential probability of the ATI process is defined by the ordinary Bessel function instead of the function $J_n(u, v, \triangle)$ and the sum over n vanishes. The latter corresponds to the above-mentioned fact that for the circular polarization, the parameter of the intensity of the wave $\xi^2 = const$, and the effect of the intensity of a strong wave appears in the form of constant renormalization of the characteristic parameters of the interacting system.

Let us estimate the contribution of photoelectron rescattering in the probability of the ATI process that is the second term in the curly brackets in (11.78). The latter for the most probable number of absorbed photons, at which the Bessel function in (11.78) has the maximum value,

$$\frac{\mathbf{g}^2}{2\,(N-2Z)\,(k\Pi)} \simeq 1, \tag{11.79}$$

i.e., is of the order of the direct transition probability (the first term in the curly brackets of (11.78)) in the strong field approximation (SFA) for the ATI process. So, even in the Born approximation when the impact of the scattering potential is the smallest, the rescattering effect of the photoelectron on the atomic remainder in the relativistic regime of the ATI process has a significant contribution to the total probability of the multiphoton ionization of an atom for high intensities of a pump laser radiation. Indeed, beyond the scope of the Born approximation, the contribution of the rescattering effect in the relativistic domain of the ATI process will be more considerable, for instant, by the photoelectron GEA wave function for a long-range Coulomb scattering potential of the residual atom.

In the context of the current approximation $\xi \gg Z_a/137$, the explicit analytic formulas for the total ionization rate can be obtained utilizing the properties of the Bessel function. With the condition (11.69), the argument of the Bessel function $X(N) \gg 1$ and always $X < N$. Therefore, the terms with $N \gg 1$ and $N \sim X$ give the main contribution in the sum (11.78). Besides, in this limit one can replace the summation over N with integration and approximate the Bessel function by the Airy one,

$$J_N(x) \simeq \left(\frac{2}{N}\right)^{1/3} Ai\left[\left(\frac{N}{2}\right)^{2/3}\left(1-\frac{x^2}{N^2}\right)\right]. \tag{11.80}$$

Turning to spherical coordinates, we carry out the integration over the φ since there is azimuthal symmetry with respect to the direction $\mathbf{k}$ (the OZ axis), and for the ionization rate we have

$$W_{i\to f} = \frac{2^5}{ma^5}\int_0^{\pi}\sin\theta d\theta \int_{N=N_0}^{\infty} dN\left(\frac{2}{N}\right)^{2/3}\frac{(N-2Z)^2(k\Pi)^2\,|\mathbf{\Pi}|}{\mathbf{g}^8}$$

$$\times\; Ai^2\left[y(N,\theta)\right]\left\{1+\frac{\mathbf{g}^2}{2\,(N-2Z)\,(k\Pi)}\right\}^2, \tag{11.81}$$

where

$$y(N,\theta) = \left(\frac{N}{2}\right)^{2/3}\left[1-\frac{\alpha^2\left(\frac{\mathbf{\Pi}}{k\Pi}\right)}{N^2}\right]. \tag{11.82}$$

The $y(N, \theta)$ has a minimum as a function of N and θ, and since the Airy function decreases exponentially with increasing argument, one can use the Laplace method (the method of the steepest descent) in order to carry out the integration over N as well as over θ. The extremum points of the function $y(N, \theta)$, i.e., the most probable values of N and θ, are

$$N_m = \frac{m_*^2 - \varepsilon_0^2}{\varepsilon_0 \omega} \simeq \frac{m}{\omega}\xi^2; \qquad \cos\theta_m = \frac{|\mathbf{\Pi}(N_m)|}{\Pi_0(N_m)} \tag{11.83}$$

and

$$y_m = y(N_m, \theta_m) = \frac{2^{1/3} E_B}{N_m^{1/3}\omega} = \left(\frac{F_{at}}{2F_0}\right)^{2/3}, \tag{11.84}$$

where F_0 and $F_{at} = Z_a^3 m^2 e^5$ are wave and atomic electric field strengths. At $N = N_m$ and $\theta = \theta_m$, we have a peak for angular and energetic distribution. Let us note that the contribution of the rescattering effect to the angular distribution of the photoelectrons is nonessential.

For $y_m \ll 1$, when the wave electric field strength greatly exceeds the atomic one ($F_0 \gg F_{at}$), the main contribution in the integral gives

$$\delta\theta \simeq (N_m/2)^{-1/3}/\sqrt{1+\xi^2} \text{ and } \delta N \simeq 2(N_m/2)^{2/3} \tag{11.85}$$

(angular and energetic widths of the peak) and for ionization rate we have an explicit formula that expresses directly the dependence upon the wave intensity,

$$W_{i\to f} = \frac{2^{7/3}}{3^{4/3}\Gamma^2(2/3)}\pi\omega\left(\frac{\omega}{E_B}\right)^3\left(\frac{F_{at}}{F_0}\right)^{11/3}. \tag{11.86}$$

The formula (11.86) expresses the suppression of ATI ionization rate with the increase of the strength of the pump laser field—atom stabilization phenomenon. Note that this result regarding the stabilization effect is inherent in the dynamics of ATI process for an atom-ion or a quantum system under the action of the long-range scattering potential.

For $y_m \gg 1$ or $F_0 \ll F_{at}$ (the so-called tunneling regime of ionization), we shall use the following asymptotic formula for Airy function:

$$Ai(x) \simeq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{\pi}} x^{-1/4} \exp\left(-\frac{2x^{3/2}}{3}\right), \tag{11.87}$$

and applying the Laplace method we have

$$W_{i\to f} = 2\omega\left(\frac{\omega}{E_B}\right)^3\left(\frac{F_{at}}{F_0}\right)^3 \exp\left\{-\frac{2}{3}\frac{F_{at}}{F_0}\right\}. \tag{11.88}$$

Let us revert to the Born condition (11.68) to substantiate the condition (11.69). As is shown above, we have a peak for angular and energetic distribution (11.78) at θ_m and N_m (11.83), and the electron mean velocity will be defined by these values,

$$\mathrm{v} = \frac{|\mathbf{\Pi}(N_m)|}{\Pi_0(N_m)} \simeq \frac{\xi}{\sqrt{1+\xi^2}}. \tag{11.89}$$

Now we can justify the (11.69) for hydrogen-like atoms ionization process taking into account (11.89) and the condition of the Born approximation (11.68).

Using the explicit analytic formulas for the total ionization rate, we can conclude that at $N = N_m$ and $\theta = \theta_m$ we have peaks for angular and energetic distributions that are given by (11.83) with the angular and energetic widths of the peak $\delta\theta$ and δN, respectively (11.85).

In the case of linear polarization of the wave from (11.76), we have

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dW_{i\to f}}{d\Omega} &= \frac{2^4}{\pi m a^5}\sum_{N=N_0}^{\infty}\frac{(N-Z)^2(k\Pi)^2\,|\mathbf{\Pi}|}{\mathbf{g}^8} \\ &\times\left\{J_N\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{\Pi}}{k\Pi}\right), -\frac{Z}{2}\right) + \frac{\mathbf{g}^2}{2m(N-Z)(k\Pi)}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} J_n\left(-\alpha'/2\right)\right. \\ &\times\left[(\varepsilon_0 + 2n\omega)\, J_{N-2n}\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{\Pi}}{k\Pi}\right), \left(Z-\alpha'\right)/2\right)\right. \\ &+ \frac{\omega\alpha'}{2}\left(J_{N-2n-2}\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{\Pi}}{k\Pi}\right), \left(Z-\alpha'\right)/2\right)\right. \\ &\left.\left.\left.+ J_{N-2n+2}\left(\alpha\left(\frac{\mathbf{\Pi}}{k\Pi}\right), \left(Z-\alpha'\right)/2\right)\right)\right]\right\}^2, \end{aligned} \tag{11.90}$$

where $J_n(u, v)$ is the real *generalized* Bessel function. As is seen from the formula (11.90), in this case, the total probability of ATI process includes all intermediate transitions of photoelectron through the virtual vacuum states as well, corresponding the emission and absorption of wave photons of number $-\infty < n < \infty$ (the sum over n) in accordance with the above-mentioned behavior of the wave intensity effect on linear polarization (strongly unharmonic oscillatory motion of photoelectron).

Using the recurrent formula

$$\begin{aligned}2nJ_n(u, v) &= u\left(J_{n-1}(u, v) + J_{n+1}(u, v)\right) \\ &\quad + 2v\left(J_{n-2}(u, v) + J_{n+2}(u, v)\right),\end{aligned} \tag{11.91}$$

via simple transformations one can make the summation in (11.90) by the intermediate transitions of a photoelectron through the virtual states of the atomic continuum (sum over n) corresponding to induced free-free transitions of the photoelectron in the continuous spectrum (multiphoton absorption and/or emission of the wave photons at the SB). In the result, we obtain the simplified ultimate formula for numerical investigation of ATI in the field of a strong EMW of linear polarization

$$\frac{dW_{if}}{d\Omega} = \frac{2^4}{\pi m a^5} \sum_{N=N_0}^{\infty} \frac{(N-Z)^2 (k\Pi)^2 |\mathbf{\Pi}|}{\mathbf{g}^8}$$

$$\times \left\{ J_N\left(\alpha, -\frac{Z}{2}\right) + \frac{\mathbf{g}^2 \varepsilon_0}{2m(N-Z)(k\Pi)} J_N\left(\alpha, \frac{Z}{2} - \alpha'\right) \right\}^2 . \tag{11.92}$$

Let us now consider the ATI process with the rescattering effect in the nonrelativistic limit since the theoretical treatments of this problem—the main of those are KFR ansatz—in general have been carried out for a nonrelativistic photoelectron when the rescattering effect is neglected. In the pioneer result of Keldysh, the rescattering of a photoelectron from the potential of atomic remainder has been approximately estimated and put in the form of a coefficient in the ultimate formula for the ionization probability (for the wave fields much smaller than atomic ones). Further, the same approach has been made by other authors for relatively large wave fields up to the atomic ones. Besides, in the existing nonrelativistic theory of ATI, the gauge problem for the description of interaction with the wave field and different views concerning the role of wave intensity in the dipole approximation have arisen. Moreover, in the scope of the same KFR ansatz, the existence of stabilization effect depends on the gauge of the wave field. Therefore, we shall consider the presented results in the nonrelativistic limit taking into account the photoelectron rescattering.

From the formula (11.78), for the differential probability of the ATI transition rate in the case of circular polarization of an EM wave in the nonrelativistic limit, we have

$$\frac{dW_{i\to f}^{nrel}}{d\Omega} = \frac{8\omega}{\pi}\left(\frac{E_B}{\omega}\right)^{5/2} \sum_{N=N_0}^{\infty} \frac{(N-2z-E_B/\omega)^{1/2}}{(N-2z)^2} J_N^2(\vartheta)$$

$$\times \left[1 + \frac{N-2z-E_B/\omega}{N-2z}\right]^2 , \tag{11.93}$$

where

$$\vartheta = \frac{e|\mathbf{A}_0|}{\omega m}\sqrt{(\mathbf{pe}_1)^2 + (\mathbf{pe}_2)^2}, \tag{11.94}$$

$$z = Z = Z_1 = e^2 \mathbf{A}_0^2 / 4m\omega,$$

and

$$N_0 = \left\langle \left(\mathbf{p}^2/2m - E_B\right)/\omega + z \right\rangle .$$

The corresponding condition of the Born approximation (11.69) in the nonrelativistic limit is

$$1 \gg \xi \gg \frac{Z_a}{137}. \tag{11.95}$$

The first term in the quadratic brackets of (11.93) coincides with the above-threshold ionization differential probability obtained in the SFA for the nonrelativistic photoelectron without the rescattering effect. According to the SFA, is expected to become valid when the ponderomotive potential $U_p = e^2\mathbf{A}_0^2/2m$ due to an EM radiation field larger than the ionization potential of the atom, $U_p \gg E_B$ and consequently $\mathbf{p}^2/2m \gg E_B$, which is the condition of the Born approximation. Then taking into account the scattering potential by perturbation theory, we obtain (11.93) that the contribution of the photoelectron rescattering in the ATI probability (in the first order of the Born approximation over the Coulomb potential) is of the order of the main results of the KFR ansatz. Therefore, neglecting the SB process for the photoelectron in the long-range Coulomb field of a residual atom is incorrect.

In the case of a linear polarized EM wave from the formula (11.90), we have the differential probability of the ATI process in the nonrelativistic domain,

$$\frac{dW_{i\to f}^{nrel}}{d\Omega} = \frac{8\omega}{\pi}\left(\frac{E_B}{\omega}\right)^{5/2}\sum_{N=N_0}^{\infty}\frac{(N-z-E_B/\omega)^{1/2}}{(N-z)^2}J_N^2\left(u,-\frac{z}{2}\right)$$
$$\times\left\{1+\frac{(N-z-E_B/\omega)}{(N-z)}\right\}, \tag{11.96}$$

where

$$u = z^{1/2}\chi, \qquad \chi = 8^{1/2}\left(N - z - \frac{E_B}{\omega}\right)^{1/2}\cos\theta, \tag{11.97}$$

and θ is the angle between the velocity vector of the emitted photoelectron and the wave polarization vector.

Owing to the complicated analytic formulas for relativistic ATI in the case of linear polarization of EM wave, the physical analysis of the multiphoton ionization rates, energetic spectra, and angular distributions of photoelectrons requires the numerical investigation of relativistic ATI. So for ultimate quantitative results, we will accomplish numerical simulations for the case of linear polarization of a pump laser radiation.

For numerical simulations, the hydrogen-like atom with $Z_a = 5$ in the ground state with the energy $I_p = m\left(1-\sqrt{1-(Z_a/137)^2}\right)$ is considered. Then one should require that the total transition probability W per unit time be limited to values which do not cause depletion in the target material during a full pulse duration τ of the applied laser field: $W \ll \tau^{-1}$ or $W \ll \omega$. Thus, at the radiation of Ti:Sapphire laser ($\omega = 0.058$ a.u.), the ionization probability of atoms should be much less than 2.8×10^{15} s^{-1}.

In Fig. 11.3a (solid line), the envelope of the partial ionization rates W_N per unit time is presented taking into account the electron secondary SB in both the residual ion and the linearly polarized laser field. The function W_N was defined by (11.92) after the integration over the polar and azimuthal angles θ, φ (with the axis directed along the vector of the wave propagation). The laser intensity is taken to be 0.8×10^{18} W/cm^2 that corresponds to the relativistic parameter of the intensity $\xi = 0.6$. In contrast to the case of the circularly polarized EM wave (11.78), when the maximum of the distribution function W_N corresponds to the number of photons $N_{\max} \simeq m\xi^2/\omega$ (at the same parameters of the process), in the case of the wave linear polarization the function W_N reaches its maximum value already in the vicinity of the ATI threshold, at

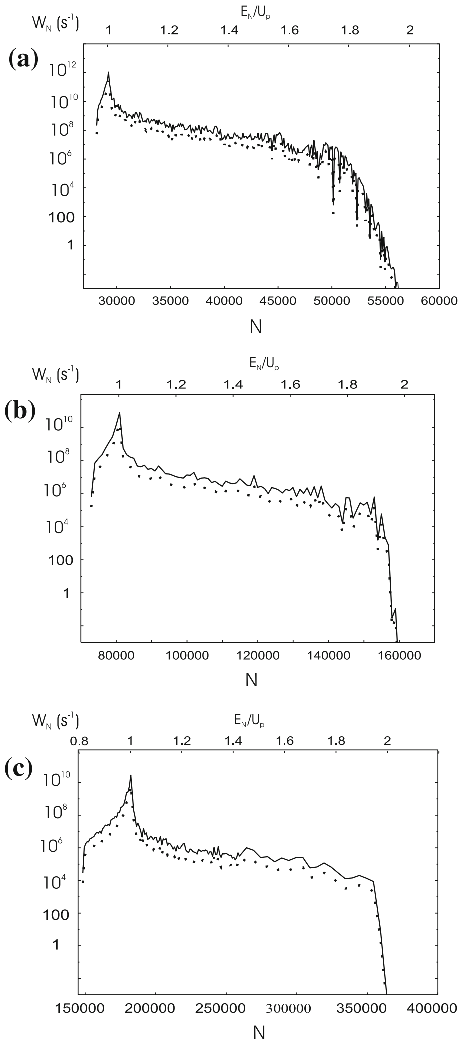


Fig. 11.3 The energetic spectra of photoelectrons. The envelopes of partial ATI probability rates W_N of a hydrogenlike atom with $Z_a = 5$ as functions of the photons number N, scaled to the ponderomotive potential U_p, at the frequency $\omega = 0.058$ a.u. of the linearly polarized Ti:Sapphire laser, in the logarithmic scale. The *solid* and *dotted lines* are the ATI partial rates with the photoelectron secondary SB process and without it, respectively, at the parameter of the laser intensity: **a** $\xi = 0.6$, **b** $\xi = 1$, and **c** $\xi = 1.5$

the photons number $N_{max} = N_0$. In Fig. 11.3b, c (solid lines) the laser field intensities are taken to be 2.2×10^{18} W/cm^2 ($\xi = 1$) and 4.9×10^{18} W/cm^2 ($\xi = 1.5$). To reveal the effect of the secondary SB process, in Fig. 11.3 the partial ionization rates are presented without the SB process (dotted lines).

As it is seen from these graphics, the relativistic multiphoton ATI rates with the secondary SB process are four times larger than the ATI rates of the direct process for the photoelectrons energies up to $2U_p$ (the cutoff position is approximately the same). Note that in relativistic case, the mean kinetic energy acquired by a free electron (initially at rest) in the arbitrary strong wave field of linear polarization is: $m\xi^2/4$. This coincides with the analogous nonrelativistic quantity $e^2E^2/4m\omega^2 \equiv U_p$ at the arbitrary initial velocity of an electron, i.e., the relativistic ponderomotive potential for an electron initially at rest coincides with the nonrelativistic one. Therefore, the

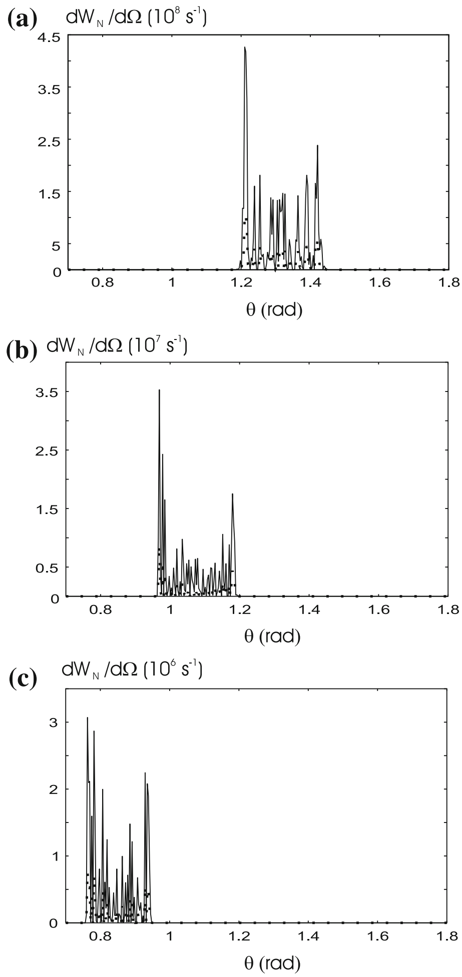


Fig. 11.4 The angular distributions of the partial ATI rates $dW_N/d\Omega$ as a function of the polar angle θ (with respect to the wave propagation direction) for the fixed values of the azimuthal angle ($\varphi = 0$) and photons number N with the photoelectron secondary SB process (*solid line*), and-without it (*dotted line*) for a hydrogenlike atom with $Z_a = 5$, at the intensity parameters of the linearly polarized Ti:Sapphire laser with $\omega = 0.058$ a.u.: **a** $\xi = 0.6$ and $N = 50{,}000$ ($N = 1.72U_p/\omega$), **b** $\xi = 1$ and $N = 150{,}000$ ($N = 1.85U_p/\omega$), and **c** $\xi = 1.5$ and $N = 350{,}000$ ($N = 1.92U_p/\omega$)

use of the same notation U_p and the scaling to the nonrelativistic ponderomotive potential in the relativistic theory is justified.

The comparison of the ATI rates for the linear and circular polarizations shows that in case of the linear polarization of laser field, the ATI rates increase at least by two orders of magnitude at the same parameters of the process.

Consideration of the ATI rates at the laser relativistic intensities shows the suppression of the ATI rate with the increase of the strength of the pump field, which evidences the atom stabilization effect in the strong electromagnetic field.

To illustrate the angular distribution of relativistic multiphoton ATI rates in the linearly polarized strong laser field with the photoelectron secondary SB process, we plot the dependence of the partial ATI rates on the polar and azimuthal angles. Figure 11.4 represents the angular distribution of the ATI differential rate $dW/d\Omega$ (11.92) summed over the number of absorbed photons N as a function of the polar and azimuthal angles θ, φ taking into account the photoelectron secondary SB process. The angle θ is taken between the photoelectron momentum $\mathbf{p}$ and the wave vector $\mathbf{k}$ of EM wave, and the azimuthal angle φ is taken between the two planes formed by the vectors $\mathbf{A}$, $\mathbf{k}$ and $\mathbf{A}$, $\mathbf{p}$. With the increase of the wave intensity, and consequently the relativism of photoelectrons, the angular distribution of multiphoton ATI becomes anisotropic to the direction of an EM wave polarization vector. The main peaks in the angular distributions of photoelectrons in the relativistic case are shifted toward the direction of the wave propagation, in contrast to the nonrelativistic case when the angular distribution of electrons in the ATI spectrum are typically aligned along the electric field of an EM wave. As is seen from the Fig. 11.4, the higher the energy of the photoelectron, the narrower and closer to the wave propagation direction is the region where the electrons are mainly ejected.

11.5 Acceleration or Deceleration of the Atoms by Counterpropagating Laser Beams

Because of the neutrality of an atom for the direct electromagnetic interaction, the spectrum of the probable mechanisms of the laser acceleration of the atoms is very restricted in comparison with the charged particles. It is clear, that in this case an acceleration of the atoms by laser fields is possible due to the interaction of induced dipole moment of an atom with a laser radiation. In this context, there are two mechanisms of the acceleration, i.e., two types of the radiative forces—dissipative and dispersive, acting on the atom at the interaction with the laser fields. At that, atom is represented as a classical object—a complex particle with the internal degrees of freedom. The first type force, also called radiation pressure force, results from the transfer of the momentum from the light beam to the atom at the resonant scattering, and it is proportional to the scattering rate Γ. The corresponding acceleration/deceleration of an atom with the mass m is $\sim \hbar k \Gamma / m$, where $\hbar k$ is the momentum of the absorbed photon. With such a force, one can accelerate an atom in rest up to the thermal velocities, or stop a thermal atomic beam in a distance of the order of one meter, during a few milliseconds. The second type of force, the dispersive force, also called dipole force or gradient force, arises from the dispersive interaction of the induced atomic dipole moment with the intensity gradient of the laser beam: $F \sim \nabla I(\mathbf{r})$, where $I(\mathbf{r})$ is the intensity envelope of the incident laser beam. Because of its conservative character, such force can serve as an optical trap for neutral atoms.

Regarding the considering problem, the effective interference wave field formed by the two counterpropagating light beams is of interest. As a significant application of radiation pressure forces, the Doppler cooling of the neutral atoms and trapped ions have been realized. The latter results from a Doppler-induced imbalance between the two opposite radiation pressure forces caused by the laser beams of the same frequencies. At the different frequencies, the acceleration of atoms occurs in a moving periodic potentials traps. The latter relies on the "conveyor belt" provided by a frequency-chirped optical lattice formed by the two counterpropagating laser beams. However, in such fields there is a more important nonlinear phenomenon of threshold character in the field of the two counterpropagating waves of the different frequencies resulting to the atom acceleration/deceleration, like to the "Reflection" phenomenon of a charged particle, considered in the Chap. 2 of this book. The existence of a critical intensity of the combined radiation field principally changes the classical dynamics of an atom center-of-mass motion, the description of which is presented below.

Now we will study the dynamics of the interaction of a two-level atom with the two quasimonochromatic counterpropagating plane waves of the different frequencies in the given field representation taking into account the atom quantum structure. The magnitudes of the waves fields are assumed so strong that the radiation-absorption processes by the atom cannot change the given values of the fields. For the actual cases of the strong laser pulses, this assumption is satisfied with the great accuracy.

The Hamiltonian of the two-level atom in the field of the two quasi-monochromatic counterpropagating plane waves will be presented in the form:

$$\widehat{H} = \frac{\widehat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2m} + \varepsilon_1 |1\rangle\langle 1| + \varepsilon_2 |2\rangle\langle 2| + \widehat{V}, \tag{11.98}$$

where

$$\widehat{V} = -d_{12}\left(E_1 \cos\varphi_1(t,\mathbf{r}) + E_2 \cos\varphi_2(t,\mathbf{r})\right)|1\rangle\langle 2| + \text{h.c.} \tag{11.99}$$

is the interaction Hamiltonian.

The operator $|s\rangle\langle s|$ $(s = 1, 2)$ gives the projection on to the state $|s\rangle$ with the energy ε_s. The operators $|1\rangle\langle 2|$ and $|2\rangle\langle 1|$ describe the transitions in the atomic system, being driven by the counterpropagating waves with the same parameters as in the previous paragraph: carrier frequencies ω_1, ω_2 (let $\omega_1 > \omega_2$), wave vectors $\mathbf{k}_1$, $\mathbf{k}_2$, and slowly varying amplitudes E_1, E_2. The corresponding phases are $\varphi_{1,2}(t,\mathbf{r}) = \omega_{1,2}t - \mathbf{k}_{1,2}\mathbf{r}$. The fields of both pulses are assumed to be linearly polarized along the same direction and d_{12} is the projection of the atomic transition dipole moment along the waves polarization direction (we assume d_{12} to be real). Here $\mathbf{r}$ and $\widehat{\mathbf{p}}$ are the operators of the position and momentum of an atom center-of-mass (m).

In the process of emitting and absorbing photons, atoms not only change their internal states but their external translational states change as well due to the absorbed and/or emitted photons recoil. If the atomic momentum change is large as compared to the photons momenta $\hbar k_{1,2}$, one can describe the atom center-of-mass motion classically. In this case, the position and momentum of an atom center-of-mass obey the Hamilton canonical equations of motion

$$\frac{d\mathbf{r}}{dt} = \frac{\mathbf{p}}{m}, \qquad \frac{d\mathbf{p}}{dt} = -\nabla V_{eff}(\mathbf{r}, t), \tag{11.100}$$

with the effective potential

$$V_{eff}(\mathbf{r}, t) = Sp\left(\widehat{\rho}\widehat{V}\right). \tag{11.101}$$

Hear $\widehat{\rho}$ is the density matrix corresponding to the internal degree of freedom of the atomic system. The density matrix $\widehat{\rho}$ can be written in the following form:

$$\widehat{\rho} = \rho_{11}|1\rangle\langle 1| + \rho_{22}|2\rangle\langle 2| + \left(\rho_{12}e^{i\omega_0 t}|1\rangle\langle 2| + \text{h.c.}\right), \tag{11.102}$$

where $\omega_0 = (\varepsilon_2 - \varepsilon_1)/\hbar$ is the frequency of the atomic transition. The dynamics of the density matrix $\widehat{\rho}$ in the interaction picture is determined by the Liouville–von Neumann equation

$$i\hbar\frac{\partial\widehat{\rho}}{\partial t} = \left[\widehat{V}, \widehat{\rho}\right]. \tag{11.103}$$

The resulting equations for the density matrix elements are

$$\frac{d\rho_{11}}{dt} = -i\rho_{21}e^{-i\omega_0 t}\left(\frac{\Omega_1}{2}e^{i\varphi_1(t,\mathbf{r})} + \frac{\Omega_2}{2}e^{i\varphi_2(t,\mathbf{r})}\right) + \text{c.c.}, \tag{11.104}$$

$$\frac{d\rho_{22}}{dt} = i\rho_{21}e^{-i\omega_0 t}\left(\frac{\Omega_1}{2}e^{i\varphi_1(t,\mathbf{r})} + \frac{\Omega_2}{2}e^{i\varphi_2(t,\mathbf{r})}\right) + \text{c.c.}, \tag{11.105}$$

$$\frac{d\rho_{12}}{dt} = ie^{-i\omega_0 t}\left(\frac{\Omega_1}{2}e^{i\varphi_1(t,\mathbf{r})} + \frac{\Omega_2}{2}e^{i\varphi_2(t,\mathbf{r})}\right)(\rho_{11} - \rho_{22}), \tag{11.106}$$

$$\frac{d\rho_{21}}{dt} = -ie^{i\omega_0 t}\left(\frac{\Omega_1}{2}e^{-i\varphi_1(t,\mathbf{r})} + \frac{\Omega_2}{2}e^{-i\varphi_2(t,\mathbf{r})}\right)(\rho_{11} - \rho_{22}). \tag{11.107}$$

With the help of (11.99), (11.101), and (11.102), one can obtain the following expression for the effective potential of interaction;

$$V_{eff}(\mathbf{r},t)=\left(\frac{\Omega_1}{2}e^{-i\varphi_1(t,\mathbf{r})}+\frac{\Omega_2}{2}e^{-i\varphi_2(t,\mathbf{r})}\right)e^{i\omega_0 t}\rho_{12}+\text{c.c.}. \tag{11.108}$$

Here $\Omega_{1,2}$ are the Rabi frequencies of the energy levels 1 and 2, respectively: $\Omega_{1,2}=E_{1,2}d_{12}/\hbar$.

To be more precise in the set of (11.104)–(11.107) one should add the terms describing spontaneous transitions and other relaxation processes. Since we have not taken into account the relaxation processes, this consideration is correct only for the interaction times $T<\tau_{\min}$, where $\tau_{\min}$ is the minimal of all the relaxation times. Thus, the full dynamics in the absence of any losses is now governed by (11.101) and (11.104)–(11.108). These equations represent nonlinear set of equations where the atomic internal ($\widehat{\rho}$) and translational ($\mathbf{r}$, $\mathbf{p}$) variables are defined self-consistently. However in some cases it is possible to decouple the translational variables and to disclose the nonlinear dynamics of an atom center-of-mass motion.

For the large resonance detunings (or not so strong laser fields) when $|\Delta_{1,2}|\gg|\Omega_{1,2}|$ ($\Delta_{1,2}=\omega_{1,2}-\omega_0$ are the resonance detunings for atomic internal transitions), and if the atom initially is in the ground state, the excited state population remains small and can be neglected. Then, setting $\rho_{11}\simeq 1$, $\rho_{22}\simeq 0$ in (11.106) one can obtain,

$$\rho_{12}\simeq e^{-i\omega_0 t}\left(\frac{\Omega_1}{2\Delta_1}e^{i\varphi_1(t,\mathbf{r})}+\frac{\Omega_2}{2\Delta_2}e^{i\varphi_2(t,\mathbf{r})}\right), \tag{11.109}$$

and correspondingly the effective potential (11.108) is reduced to

$$V_{eff}(\mathbf{r},t)=\frac{\Omega_1\Omega_2}{2}\left[\frac{1}{\Delta_1}+\frac{1}{\Delta_2}\right]\cos\left[\delta\omega\left(t-\frac{z}{\mathrm{v}_{ph}}\right)\right]. \tag{11.110}$$

In (11.110), only the time-dependent terms are dropped, $\delta\omega=\omega_1-\omega_2>0$, and it is assumed that the waves propagate along the Z axis. As we see, the atomic translational motion is governed by the slowed interference wave. The latter propagates with the phase velocity $\mathrm{v}_{ph}=c/n<c$ (c is the light speed in vacuum), where

$$n=\frac{\omega_1+\omega_2}{\omega_1-\omega_2}>1 \tag{11.111}$$

is the "effective refractive index" of the resulting slowed interference wave. So, the resonant interaction of an atom with the two traveling vacuum-waves subjects the atom center-of-mass translational motion in the slowed wave field, which has a nonlinear-threshold nature over the interference wave intensity, as it will be shown below.

Next, we consider the nonlinear dynamics—translational motion of the atom center-of-mass in the field of the slowed traveling wave (11.110), at the near-resonant transitions within the atomic internal quantum states: $|\Delta_{1,2}|\ll|\Omega_{1,2}|$. In this case, the internal and translational variables are also separated allowing one to integrate the reduced equations of motion. The latter is clear if the following resonance condition for two waves

$$\omega_0 = \frac{\omega_2 + \omega_1}{2} \tag{11.112}$$

holds, which demands the inverse symmetric detunings $\Delta_1 = -\Delta_2$. For the simplicity, we also assume $\Omega_1 = \Omega_2 \equiv \Omega$. Then, the set of (11.104)–(11.107) can be rewritten as:

$$\frac{d\rho_{12}}{dt} = i\Omega \cos\left[\frac{\delta\omega}{2}\left(t - \frac{z}{\mathrm{v}_{ph}}\right)\right] e^{-i\frac{\delta\omega z}{2c}} (\rho_{11} - \rho_{22}), \tag{11.113}$$

$$\frac{d\rho_{11}}{dt} = i\Omega \cos\left[\frac{\delta\omega}{2}\left(t - \frac{z}{\mathrm{v}_{ph}}\right)\right]\left[e^{i\frac{\delta\omega z}{2c}} \rho_{12} - \text{c.c.}\right], \tag{11.114}$$

$$\rho_{22} = 1 - \rho_{11}; \;\; \rho_{21} = \rho_{12}^{*}, \tag{11.115}$$

and the effective potential (11.108) is reduced to

$$V_{eff}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \Omega \cos\left[\frac{\delta\omega}{2}\left(t - \frac{z}{\mathrm{v}_{ph}}\right)\right]\left[e^{-i\frac{\delta\omega z}{2c}} \rho_{21} + \text{c.c.}\right]. \tag{11.116}$$

If $\mathrm{v}_{ph} \ll c$, which is satisfied with the great accuracy for considered setup, in (11.113)–(11.115) and (11.116), one can ignore the slow oscillations in the terms containing $\exp\left[\pm i\delta\omega z/\left(2c\right)\right]$. This is justified if the condition

$$|z| \ll \frac{2c}{\delta\omega} = n\frac{c}{\omega_0} \tag{11.117}$$

is satisfied, which practically will not limit the interaction length for the actual pulses because of the very large values of the quantity n-effective refractive index $n \gg 1$ (this is equivalent to the condition $\mathrm{v}_{ph} \ll c$).

Then, these equations can be solved exactly subject to the certain initial conditions. A general solution for the density matrix elements is

$$\rho_{11} = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\mathrm{Im}\left[\rho_{12}\left(0\right)\right]}{\sin\vartheta_0} \cos\vartheta\left(t\right), \tag{11.118}$$

$$\mathrm{Im}\left[\rho_{12}\left(t\right)\right] = \frac{\mathrm{Im}\left[\rho_{12}\left(0\right)\right]}{\sin\vartheta_0} \sin\vartheta\left(t\right), \tag{11.119}$$

$$\mathrm{Re}\left[\rho_{12}\left(t\right)\right] = \text{const}, \tag{11.120}$$

where

$$\vartheta\left(t\right) = 2\int_0^t \Omega\left(t'\right) \cos\left[\frac{\delta\omega}{2}\left(t' - \frac{z\left(t'\right)}{\mathrm{v}_{ph}}\right)\right] dt' + \vartheta_0, \tag{11.121}$$

and

$$\tan \vartheta_0 = \frac{\mathrm{Im}\,[\rho_{12}\,(0)]}{\rho_{11}\,(0) - 1/2}. \tag{11.122}$$

This solution represents Rabi oscillations with modulated Rabi frequency. For the effective potential we obtain

$$V_{eff}(\mathbf{r}, t) = 2\Omega \mathrm{Re}\,[\rho_{12}\,(0)] \cos\left[\frac{\delta\omega}{2}\left(t - \frac{z}{\mathrm{v}_{ph}}\right)\right]. \tag{11.123}$$

As is seen from (11.110) to (11.123), in these two distinct cases, the translational motion of an atom is governed by the slowed interference wave and at the resonant interaction the amplitude of the effective potential depends on the initial atomic state. For the nonvanishing interaction, one should prepare the atom in the superposition state and to maximize interaction potential one should achieve the equal superposition of the states $|1\rangle$ and $|2\rangle$. At that, for the same laser intensities, the amplitude of the effective interaction potential (11.123) is at least on one order of magnitude larger than what one expects to achieve at the nonresonant interaction regime.

Now we turn to the solution of the equation of motion for the center of mass motion of an atom. From (11.100) follows the conservation of the transverse momentum of the atom: $p_{x,y} = const$. Then, taking into account the dependence of the effective potential on the time and coordinate in both resonant and nonresonant cases, for the monochromatic waves from (11.100) one can find the integral of motion

$$\mathcal{E} - \mathrm{v}_{ph} p_z = const = \mathcal{E}_0 - \mathrm{v}_{ph} p_{0z}, \tag{11.124}$$

where $\mathcal{E}_0$ and p_{0z} are the initial energy and longitudinal momentum of the atom. For the quasi-monochromatic waves with the slowly varying envelopes (11.124) represents adiabatic integral, when the waves are turned on and turned off adiabatically.

With the help of (11.124) one can obtain the velocity of the atom in the field,

$$\mathrm{v}_z = \mathrm{v}_{ph}\left[1 \mp \sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0z}}{\mathrm{v}_{ph}}\right)^2 - \frac{V_{eff}(z, t)}{\mathcal{E}_{ph}}}\right], \tag{11.125}$$

$$\mathrm{v}_x = \mathrm{v}_{0x}, \quad \mathrm{v}_y = \mathrm{v}_{0y}, \tag{11.126}$$

where $\mathbf{v}_0 = (\mathrm{v}_{0x}, \mathrm{v}_{0y}, \mathrm{v}_{0z})$ is the initial velocity of the atom and $\mathcal{E}_{ph} = m\mathrm{v}_{ph}^2/2$ is the kinetic energy of a particle corresponding to the velocity $\mathrm{v}_{ph} = c/n$.

As it is seen from (11.125), when the maximal value of the interaction potential $V_{eff}(z, t)_{\max} = |V_0|$ is larger than a value, which will be called critical,

$$V_{cr} = \mathcal{E}_{ph}\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0z}}{\mathrm{v}_{ph}}\right)^2, \tag{11.127}$$

the expression (11.125) for the atom velocity may become a complex. This complexity is bypassed in the complex plane by continuously passing from the one Riemann sheet to another, at which the root changes its sign. Hence, the atom velocity remains real everywhere and the multivalence of the expression (11.125) vanishes too. Indeed, if $|V_0| < V_{cr}$, one should take the root in the (11.125) with the sign $(-)$, if $\mathrm{v}_{0z} \leq \mathrm{v}_{ph}$ and with the sign $(+)$, if $\mathrm{v}_{0z} \geq \mathrm{v}_{ph}$, to satisfy the initial condition $\mathrm{v}_z = \mathrm{v}_{0z}$ at the $V_{eff}(z, t = -\infty) = 0$. Then, after the interaction $(V_{eff}(z, t = +\infty) = 0)$ the energy of the atom remains unchanged. However, when $|V_0| > V_{cr}$ the value $V_{eff}(z(t_0), t_0) = V_{cr}$ (where $z(t_0)$ is the atom coordinate at the moment $t = t_0$) steps out as a turn point, and for $t > t_0$ one should change the sign of the root, in respect to the moments $t \leq t_0$.

Consider now the behavior of the atom in the field at this situation. As we see, atom can not penetrate the region of the field $V_{eff}(z, t) > V_{cr}$ where the expression (11.125) becomes a complex. At that, the slowed interference wave becomes a potential barrier for the atom and the reflection of the atom from such moving barrier occurs. To explain the physics of this phenomenon it is necessary to clear up the meaning of the critical field. This is an essentially nonlinear phenomenon of threshold nature and the critical intensity of the interference wave is the threshold value for this process. Namely, the (11.125) shows that the critical value V_{cr} is the value of the potential, at which the longitudinal velocity of the atom in the field $\mathrm{v}_z(t)$ becomes equal to the phase velocity of slowed interference wave: $\mathrm{v}_z(t) = \mathrm{v}_{ph}$, irrespective of the atom initial velocity v_{0z}. The latter is the condition of resonance with the Doppler-shifted waves frequencies, at which the coherent scattering—that is the induced scattering of counterpropagating waves on an atom occurs:

$$\omega_1 \left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_z(t)}{c}\right) = \omega_2 \left(1 + \frac{\mathrm{v}_z(t)}{c}\right). \tag{11.128}$$

Under this condition, the nonlinear resonance takes place, since the resonant velocity of the atom $\mathrm{v}_z(t) = \mathrm{v}_{ph}$ is acquired in the field at the value $V_{eff} = V_{cr}$ (due to the waves intensity effect). Note in this aspect that the existence of the critical intensity in the coherent wave fields is the feature of induced coherent processes, such as Cherenkov, Compton (as well as in undulator), where the nonlinear resonant phenomena have been revealed (see Chap. 2). Then, in the critical point the resonant absorption of photons from the one wave and re-emission into the other wave occurs, resulting the break of the synchronism $\mathrm{v}_z(t) = \mathrm{v}_{ph}$ between the atom and slowed interference wave (either $\mathrm{v}_z(t) > \mathrm{v}_{ph}$ or $\mathrm{v}_z(t) < \mathrm{v}_{ph}$) and atom abandons it—the reflection of the atom from the moving barrier occurs. Note, that actually this is a reflection in the frame of reference moving with the velocity $V = \mathrm{v}_{ph}$, which is the rest frame of the slowed interference wave. In this frame, atom with the velocity v'_{0z} swoops on the motionless barrier and, as is seen from (11.125), an elastic reflection of the atom occurs: $\mathrm{v}'_z = -\mathrm{v}'_{0z}$.

Thus, if the maximal value of the interaction potential $|V_0| > V_{cr}$, then after the interaction for the atom velocity we have

$$\mathrm{v}_{zf} = 2\mathrm{v}_{ph} - \mathrm{v}_{0z}. \tag{11.129}$$

As we see from (11.129), if the slowed interference wave pulse initially overtakes the atom ($\mathrm{v}_{0z} < \mathrm{v}_{ph}$), then $\mathrm{v}_{zf} > \mathrm{v}_{0z}$ and the atom is accelerated. But if the atom initially overtakes the wave ($\mathrm{v}_{0z} > \mathrm{v}_{ph}$), then $\mathrm{v}_{zf} < \mathrm{v}_{0z}$ and the deceleration of the atom takes place. For the resonant atoms ($\mathrm{v}_{0z} = \mathrm{v}_{ph}$), $V_{cr} = 0$ and consequently the atom velocity does not change ($\mathrm{v}_{zf} = \mathrm{v}_{0z}$).

For the kinetic energy change of the atom center-of-mass, we have

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = 4\mathcal{E}_{ph}\left(1 - \frac{\mathrm{v}_{0z}}{\mathrm{v}_{ph}}\right). \tag{11.130}$$

As is seen from this formula, the acceleration of the atom depends neither on the field magnitude (only should be an above-threshold field) nor the interaction length. The formulas (11.129) and (11.130) show that acceleration or deceleration of the atom is defined by the key parameters of this process—the atom's initial velocity and the phase velocity of the slowed interference wave v_{ph}.

Let us present some numerical simulations that illustrate the nonlinear picture of interaction of the atom with the two counterpropagating waves. The time evolution of the set of (11.100), (11.104–11.107) is found with a Runge–Kutta method. The calculations were made for a quasi-monochromatic wave fields providing the adiabatic turn on/off of the interaction. The latter is achieved by describing the envelopes with Gaussian functions $\Omega_{1,2}(t) = \Omega_0 \exp\left[-(t - 3\tau)^2/2\tau^2\right]$, where τ and Ω_0 characterize the pulse duration and amplitudes, respectively. We will consider resonant interaction regime assuming the atom initially to be in an equal superposition of the states $|1\rangle$ and $|2\rangle$ ($\rho_{12}(0) = 1/2$). For all calculations $\Omega_0/\delta\omega = 10^3$, and the pulse duration has been chosen to be $\delta\omega\tau = 20$ (pulse duration should be much larger than the period of the interference wave). At $t = 0$ waves' intensities fall down to $1/e^9$ of its' maximal values, providing the adiabatic switch on of the interaction. Then, to accentuate this acceleration mechanism caused by the nonlinear resonance in the fields, we will present especially the atom dynamics when the initial velocity of the atom is very far from the induced resonance (11.128).

In the Fig. 11.5 the atom dynamics is displayed, when the intensity is above the critical point: $V_0 = 1.3V_{cr}$. Figure 11.5a illustrates the acceleration of an atom in rest ($\mathrm{v}_0 = 0$). By the solid curve, the temporal evolution of the atom velocity is shown. By the dashed curve, the variation of the scaled potential V_{eff}/V_{cr} along the atom trajectory is shown. Figure 11.5b illustrates the deceleration, when $\mathrm{v}_0 = 2\mathrm{v}_{ph}$. From these figures it is clearly seen that at the critical point $V_{eff} \simeq V_{cr}$ the longitudinal velocity of the atom becomes equal to phase velocity of the interference wave: $\mathrm{v}_z(t) = \mathrm{v}_{ph} = c/n$ and it is a turning point for the solid curves. The latter corresponds to the formulae (11.125) where the root changes its sign and the further evolution of the velocity proceeds along the second brunch of the root with the inverse sign. In the resonance range, the velocity of the atom strictly increases, if $\mathrm{v}_0 < \mathrm{v}_{ph}$ (Fig. 11.5a), or decreases, if $\mathrm{v}_0 > \mathrm{v}_{ph}$ (Fig. 11.5b) due to the genuine nonlinear character of the resonance in the field. Then, after leaving the resonance range, the final velocity of the

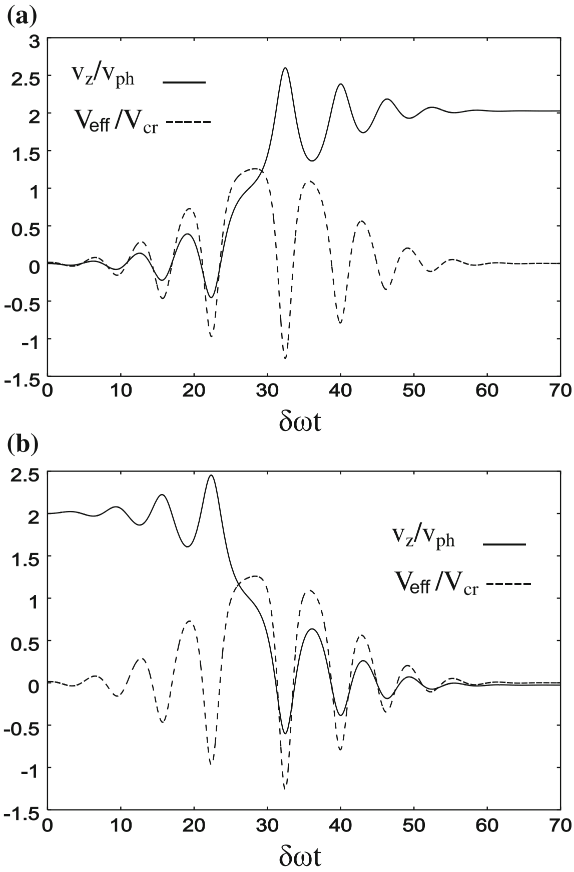


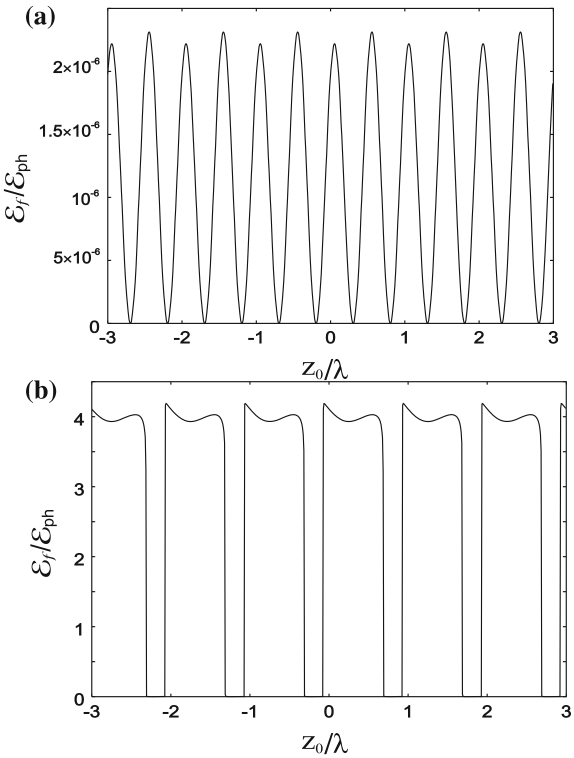
Fig. 11.5 Atom acceleration/deceleration. The intensity is above the critical point: $V_0 = 1.3V_{cr}$. **a** *Solid curve* displays the temporal evolution of the atom scaled velocity v_z/v_{ph} at $v_0 = 0$, $z_0 = 0$. The *dashed curve* is the scaled interaction potential V_{eff}/V_{cr}, sensed by the atom along the trajectory. **b** Atom deceleration, when $v_0 = 2v_{ph}$, $z_0 = 0$

atom becomes $v_{zf} = 2v_{ph}$—acceleration, and $v_{zf} = 0$—deceleration, respectively, in accordance with the analytical results (see (11.125) and (11.129)).

Figure 11.6, displaying the role of initial conditions: the final energy versus the initial position z_0 of the atom. As is seen, the acceleration is negligibly small under the threshold of the nonlinear resonance (Fig. 11.6a). The net gain is defined by the initial phase which is in accordance with the perturbation theory. When the amplitude of the slowed interference wave is above the critical point (Fig. 11.6b), then the final energy for reflected particles is almost constant ($\mathcal{E}_f = 4\mathcal{E}_{ph}$).

Let us make some estimations. Best suited for the resonant interaction regime are the Rydberg atoms, i.e., the high excited states of hydrogen or alkali metals' atoms. Here we are interested mainly in circular Rydberg states. These are the states with highest allowed angular momentum $l = n_0 - 1$, for a given principal quantum number n_0 (with $|m_0| = l$, where m_0 is the magnetic quantum number). For these states, only one resonant dipole transition is allowed: $n_0 \leftrightarrow n_0 + 1$, so that such states closely approximate a two-level system with the extremely long lifetime and

Fig. 11.6 The final scaled energy versus the initial position of the atom z_0 (in the units of reduced wavelength $\lambda = 2\lambda_1\lambda_2/(\lambda_1 + \lambda_2)$), when $v_0 = 0$. **a** The intensity is below the critical point: $V_0 = 0.9V_{cr}$. **b** The intensity is above the critical point: $V_0 = 1.3V_{cr}$



are widely used in the microwave cavity QED experiments. Hence, with our notation, we assume $|1\rangle \equiv |n_0, l = n_0 - 1, m_0 = n_0 - 1\rangle$ and $|2\rangle \equiv |n_0 + 1, l = n_0, m_0 = n_0 - 1\rangle$. For a Rydberg atom's state with a large n_0 and $\Delta n_0 = 1$, the transition frequency is

$$\omega_0 \approx \frac{\varepsilon_0}{\hbar n_0^3} = \frac{1}{n_0^3} \text{ a.u.},$$

where ε_0 is the atomic unit of energy (27.2 eV). Here we have taken into account a fact that for the high orbital moments l the quantum defect which corrects for the deviation of the binding potential from a purely hydrogenic situation is small. The transition dipole moment between neighboring Rydberg states is estimated as

$$d_{12} = \sqrt{2} e a_0 \frac{2^{2n_0+2} n_0^{n_0+3} (n_0 + 1)^{n_0+2}}{(2n_0 + 1)^{2n_0+3}} \approx \frac{n_0^2}{\sqrt{2}} \text{ a.u.},$$

where a_0 is the Bohr radius. The rate of spontaneous emission is given by the formula $\Gamma = \Gamma_0/n_0^5$, where $\Gamma_0 = 2\alpha^4 c/(3a_0) \approx 10^{10}\ \text{s}^{-1}$ is the characteristic rate, and α is the fine-structure constant. Then, the pulse duration of the waves is assumed to be $\tau \approx 1/(10\Gamma)$, which gives $\delta\omega \approx 2 \times 10^2 \Gamma$ in accordance with the condition

$\delta\omega\tau = 20$. For the effective refractive index we obtain:

$$n \simeq \frac{2\omega_0}{\delta\omega} = 10^{-2}\frac{\varepsilon_0}{\hbar\Gamma_0}n_0^2 \approx 4 \times 10^4 n_0^2.$$

For an atom initially in rest (with an atomic weight A), the critical field, and consequently, Rabi frequency will be

$$V_{cr} = \hbar\Omega_{\min} = m\frac{c^2}{2n^2} \approx 1.2 \times 10^{-2}\frac{A}{n_0^4} \text{ a.u.}$$

The latter should be much more smaller than the frequency difference between the main resonant and nonresonant transitions ($n_0 \leftrightarrow n_0 - 1, n_0 + 1 \leftrightarrow n_0 + 2$), which is of the order of $3/n_0^4$ a.u. This condition is satisfied as for the hydrogen atom, as well as for the light alkali atoms (lithium, sodium) and a model of supposed two level atom is well enough justified. Note that the required fields for this effect should be

$$E \gtrsim 2 \times 10^{-2}\frac{A}{n_0^6} \text{ a.u.},$$

which are much more smaller than the atomic ones for the Rydberg atoms in the state with a large n_0 that is $E_0 = 1/(16n_0^4)$ a.u.

In particular, at the principal quantum number $n_0 = 40$, and $\omega_0/(2\pi) \approx 103$ GHz (corresponding effective refractive index is $n \simeq 6.4 \times 10^7$) an atom initially in rest can be accelerated up to the velocities 10^3 cm/s. The required fields for this effect are: $E \gtrsim 2.5 \times 10^{-2} A$ V/cm that corresponds to the wave intensities $I \sim 4 \times 10^{-5}$ W/cm^2, for lithium atoms with $A = 7$. In the inverse regime of the deceleration with the same fields one can stop such an atomic beam.

Bibliography

M. Gavrila, *Atoms in Intense Laser Fields* (Academic Press, New York, 1992)
M.D. Perry et al., Opt. Lett. **24**, 160 (1999)
R.M. Potvliege, R. Shakeshaft, *Atoms in Intense Laser Fields* (Academic Press, New York, 1992)
M.H. Mittleman, *Introduction to the Theory of Laser-Atom Interactions* (Plenum, New York, 1993)
N.B. Delone, V.P. Krainov, *Multiphoton Processes in Atoms* (Springer, Heidelberg, 1994)
M. Protopapas, C.H. Keitel, P.L. Knight, Rep. Progr. Phys. **60**, 389 (1997)
T. Brabec, F. Krausz, Rev. Mod. Phys. **72**, 545 (2000)
Y.I. Salamin et al., Phys. Rep. **427**, 41 (2006)
R.E. Duvall, E.J. Valeo, C.R. Oberman, Phys. Rev. A **37**, 4685 (1988)
G. Alzetta et al., Nuovo Cimento Soc. Ital. Fis. B **36**, 5 (1976)
S.E. Harris, Phys. Tod. **50**, 36 (1997)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. A **66**, 033403 (2002)
G.N. Gibson, Phys. Rev. Lett. **89**, 263001 (2002)
P.H. Kokler, Th Stoehlker, Adv. At. Mol. Opt. Phys. **37**, 297 (1996)
T. Ditmire et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **78**, 2732 (1997)

M. Casu et al., J. Phys. B **33**, L411 (2000)
N.J. Kylstra, R.M. Potvliege, C.J. Joachain, J. Phys. B **34**, L55 (2001)
N. Milosevic, V.P. Krainov, T. Brabec, Phys. Rev. Lett. **89**, 193001 (2002)
C.H. Keitel, S.X. Hu, Appl. Phys. Lett. **80**, 541 (2002)
L. Rosenberg, Adv. At. Mol. Phys. **18**, 1 (1982)
G. Manfray, C. Manus, Rep. Prog. Phys. **54**, 1333 (1991)
M. Protopapas, C.H. Keitel, P.L. Knight, Rep. Prog. Phys. **60**, 389 (1997)
L.V. Keldysh, Sov. Phys. JETP **20**, 1307 (1965)
F. Faisal, J. Phys. B **6**, L89 (1973)
H.R. Reiss, Phys. Rev. A **22**, 1789 (1980)
R.M. Potvliege, R. Shakeshaft, Phys. Rev. A **38**, 4597 (1988)
S. Baisaile, F. Trombetta, G. Ferrante, Phys. Rev. Lett. **61**, 2435 (1988)
C. Leone et al., Phys. Rev. A **40**, 1828 (1989)
L. Rosenberg, F. Zhou, Phys. Rev. A **46**, 7093 (1992)
H.R. Reiss, V.P. Krainov, Phys. Rev. A **50**, R910 (1994)
H.K. Avettissian et al., Phys. Rev. A **56**, 4905 (1997)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. A **59**, 549 (1999)
L. Davidovich, *Multiphoton Processes* (CEA, Paris, 1991)
V.P. Krainov, B. Shokry, Zh Éksp, Teor. Fiz. **107**, 1180 (1995)
H.K. Avetissian, A.G. Markossian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. A **64**, 053404 (2001)
G.G. Paulus et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **72**, 2851 (1994)
B. Yang et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **71**, 3770 (1993)
B. Walker et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **77**, 5031 (1996)
D.B. Milosevic, F. Ehlotzky, Phys. Rev. A **58**, 3124 (1998)
H.R. Reiss, Phys. Rev. A **65**, 055405 (2002)
V.P. Krainov, J. Phys. B **36**, L169 (2003)
G.A. Askaryan, Sov. Phys. JETP **15**, 1088 (1962)
A.P. Kazantsev, Sov. Phys. JETP **39**, 784 (1974)
R.J. Cook, Phys. Rev. A **20**, 224 (1979)
J.P. Gordon, A. Ashkin, Phys. Rev. A **21**, 1606 (1980)
V.S. Letokhov, V.G. Minogin, Phys. Rep. **73**, 1 (1981)
S. Chu, Rev. Mod. Phys. **70**, 686 (1998)
C. Cohen-Tannoudji, Rev. Mod. Phys. **70**, 707 (1998)
W.D. Phillips, Rev. Mod. Phys. **70**, 721 (1998)
R. Grimm, M. Weidemüller, Y.B. Ovchinnikov, Adv. At. Mol. Opt. Phys. **42**, 95 (2000)
J.E. Bjorkholm et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **41**, 1361 (1978)
C.S. Adams, M. Sigel, J. Mlaynek, Phys. Rep. **240**, 143 (1994)
T.W. Hänsch, A.L. Schawlow, Opt. Commun. **13**, 68 (1975)
D. Wineland, H. Dehmelt, Bull. Am. Phys. Soc. **20**, 637 (1975)
E. Peik et al., Phys. Rev. A **55**, 2989 (1997)
S. Potting et al., Phys. Rev. A **64**, 023604 (2001)

Chapter 12
Interaction of Superstrong Laser Radiation with Plasma

Abstract Interaction of superstrong laser radiation with the matter under extreme conditions in ultrashort space-time scales is of prime importance specifically connected with the problems of generation and probing of high energy-density plasma, ions acceleration and inertial confinement fusion, compact laser-plasma accelerators, production of antimatter, etc. Generally, the interaction of such fields with the electrons in the presence of a third body makes available the revelation of many nonlinear relativistic electrodynamic phenomena. As a third body can serve an ion and in the super intense laser fields one can observe relativistic above-threshold ionization and high-order harmonic generation and shortwave coherent radiation implementation, electron–positron pairs production on nuclei, and multiphoton stimulated bremsstrahlung of electrons on the ions/nuclei. The latter is one of the fundamental processes at the interaction of superstrong laser pulses with plasma and under some circumstances inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption may become dominant mechanism for absorption of strong EM radiation in plasma. Theoretical investigations regarding the plasma absorption problem on the base of inverse bremsstrahlung were carried out mainly in the Born approximation over the scattering potential, meanwhile at the ions large charge and for the clusters, when electron interaction with the entire dense cluster ion core that composed of a large number of ions is dominant, the Born approximation is not applicable. Taking into account this fact and the significance of this problem with the application of the existing already X-ray free-electron lasers, the description of this chapter, we will start from the presentation of the quantum theory of the inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption with the exact consideration of the scattering Coulomb potential, which at first allows to develop analytical theory for absorption process in the plasma at the exact description of electrons interaction with the static scattering field, and second—will describe the quantum contribution into the plasma absorption rate at the high X-ray frequencies. Regarding the multiphoton absorption of superstrong laser radiation in the plasma, for the infrared and optical lasers one can apply classical theory, and the main approximation in the classical theory is the low-frequency or impact approximation. Then, we will present the nonlinear theory of the absorption of super intense radiation of relativistic and asymptotically large intensities in the isotropic and anisotropic classical as well as quantum plasmas due to the inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption, taking into account the initial relativism of the plasma electrons in such superstrong fields.

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_12

12.1 Electron Wavefunction in SB Process with Exact Consideration of Scattering Coulomb Field

The wavefunction of a charged particle (electron) in the fields of a Coulomb potential and an EM wave satisfies the following Schrodinger equation (we adopted a vector potential in the gauge form $\mathbf{A} = 0$, $\varphi_A = -\mathbf{E}(t)\mathbf{r}$):

$$\left[-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m}\Delta + e\varphi(\mathbf{r}) - e\mathbf{E}(t)\mathbf{r}\right]\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = i\hbar\frac{\partial}{\partial t}\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t), \qquad (12.1)$$

where $\mathbf{E}(t) = \varepsilon E \sin \omega t$ is the electric field strength of a linearly polarized electromagnetic (EM) wave of frequency ω in the dipole approximation (ε is a unit vector), $\varphi(r) = Q/r$ is the Coulomb attractive potential.

We shall solve (12.1) treating the EM wave using perturbation theory, but taking the Coulomb potential into account exactly. In the case of a weak wave one can confine oneself to one-photon emission-absorption processes and write the wavefunction in the form

$$\Psi(\mathbf{r}, t) = \Psi^{(0)}_{\mathbf{k}_0}(\mathbf{r}, t) + \Psi^{(1)}_{\mathbf{k}_0}(\mathbf{r}, t). \qquad (12.2)$$

As the SB process is under consideration, we choose as an unperturbed wavefunction the following Coulomb eigenfunction $\Psi^{(+)}_{\mathbf{k}_0}(\mathbf{r}, t)$, which describes the electron state with a definite momentum $\hbar\mathbf{k}_0$:

$$\Psi^{(+)}_{\mathbf{k}_0}(\mathbf{r}, t) = N_0 \exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_0 t + i\mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}\right) F(i\frac{\kappa}{k_0}; 1; i\,(k_0 r - \mathbf{k}_0\mathbf{r}),$$

$$N_0 = \exp\left(\frac{\pi\kappa}{2k_0}\right)\Gamma\left(1 - i\frac{\kappa}{k_0}\right). \qquad (12.3)$$

Here $F(\alpha; \beta; z)$ is the confluent hypergeometric function, $\Gamma(z)$ is the gamma function and $\mathcal{E}_0 = \hbar^2\mathbf{k}_0^2/2m$, $\kappa = |Qe|\,m/\hbar^2$.

The perturbed wavefunction $\Psi^{(1)}_{\mathbf{k}_0}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ describes stimulated one-photon transitions in a Coulomb field and can be found from (12.1) if one expands the full wavefunction of the electron in terms of Coulomb eigenfunctions. Such decomposition may be done in two different ways. The first is the expansion in terms of Coulomb eigenfunctions $\Psi^C_{\lambda l \mathfrak{m}}(\mathbf{r}, t)$, which describe the electron states with definite eigenvalues of energy $\mathcal{E}_\lambda$, orbital moment l, and its projection $\mathfrak{m}$, and the second is the expansion in terms of Coulomb eigenfunctions $\Psi^{(\pm)}_{\mathbf{k}}(\mathbf{r}, t)$, which describe the electron states with definite momentum $\hbar\mathbf{k}$ at infinity. In the first case, after standard calculations of perturbation theory, the perturbed wavefunction can be written in the following form

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{k}_0}^{(1)}(\mathbf{r},t) = \frac{eE_0}{4k_0}\exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_0 t\right)\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} i^l \left\{\varepsilon_z\left[l\mathcal{D}_{l,l-1} - (l+1)\mathcal{D}_{l,l+1}\right]P_l(\cos\theta)\right.$$
$$\left. + \varepsilon_y\left(\mathcal{D}_{l,l-1} + \mathcal{D}_{l,l+1}\right)\sin\varphi P_l^{(1)}(\cos\theta)\right\}, \tag{12.4}$$

where $P_l^{(\mathrm{m})}(\cos\theta)$ are the associated Legendre polynomials, θ and φ are the spherical angles (the OZ axis is directed along the electron initial momentum $\hbar\mathbf{k}_0$, and the unit vector ε is in the plane YOZ). The quantities $\mathcal{D}_{l,l+1}$ are functions of $\mathbf{r}$, t and are defined by the following expression

$$\mathcal{D}_{l',l}(r,t) = \sum\!\!\!\!\!\!\int_{\lambda} R_{\lambda l'}(r)\left\langle\lambda, l'\,|r|\,k_0, l\right\rangle$$
$$\times\, e^{i\delta_l(k_0)}\left[\frac{e^{-i\omega t}}{\mathcal{E}_\lambda - \mathcal{E}_0 - \hbar\omega} - \frac{e^{i\omega t}}{\mathcal{E}_\lambda - \mathcal{E}_0 + \hbar\omega}\right]. \tag{12.5}$$

Here, the symbol $\sum\!\!\!\!\!\int$ denotes summation over all energy eigenstates (bound and continuum), $\delta_l\,(k_0) = \arg\Gamma(l+1-i\kappa/k_0)$ is the Coulomb phase shift, $R_{\lambda l}(r)$ are Coulomb radial eigenfunctions, and the radial matrix elements $\langle\lambda, l\,|r|\,k_0, l\pm 1\rangle$ for the transitions in the continuum spectrum ($\lambda = k$), are equal to

$$(k, l\,|r|\,k_0, l+1) = i\frac{(-1)^{-i\kappa/k}}{(2l+1)!}\frac{C_{kl}^{*}C_{k_0,l+1}}{(4k_0k)^2}(-z)^{l+2}(1-z)^{i(\kappa/2)(1/k+1/k_0)-1}$$
$$\times\left[(1-z)\,F\left(l+1+i\frac{\kappa}{k}, l+2+i\frac{\kappa}{k_0}, 2l+2, z\right)\right.$$
$$\left. - F\left(l+1+i\frac{\kappa}{k}, l+i\frac{\kappa}{k_0}, 2l+2, z\right)\right], \tag{12.6}$$

$$(k, l\,|r|\,k_0, l-1) = i\frac{(-1)^{i\kappa/k_0}}{(2l-1)!}\frac{C_{kl}^{*}C_{k_0,l-1}}{(4k_0k)^2}(-z)^{l+1}(1-z)^{-i(\kappa/2)(1/k+1/k_0)-1}$$
$$\times\left[F\left(l-i\frac{\kappa}{k_0}, l-1-i\frac{\kappa}{k}, 2l, z\right)\right.$$
$$\left. - (1-z)\,F\left(l-i\frac{\kappa}{k_0}, l+1-i\frac{\kappa}{k}, 2l, z\right)\right], \tag{12.7}$$

where $z = -4kk_0/(k-k_0)^2$, $C_{kl} = 2k\exp(\pi\kappa/2k)\,|\Gamma(l+1-i\kappa/k)|$. For the transitions from the continuum to the discrete spectrum, one has to change C_{kl} for $C_{nl} = (2\kappa^{3/2}/n^2)[(n+l)!(n-l-1)!]^{1/2}$ in the expressions (12.6), (12.7) and then to put $k = -i\kappa/n$. Expressions (12.4)–(12.7), by means of (12.2), define the electron wavefunction which describes stimulated one-photon transitions of an initially free electron in the Coulomb field at an arbitrary moment of time. The final state of the electrons in the SB process is a free-electron state, so we exclude the possibility of bound-state creation in the SB process by putting $\hbar\omega < \mathcal{E}_0$. Then, the contribution of the discrete spectrum $\left(\sum_n\right)$ in the expression (12.5) ($\sum\!\!\!\!\!\!\int_\lambda = \sum_n + \int ...dk$) is negligibly small with respect to resonant denominators expressing the energy change in SB. It is noteworthy, that the assumption $\hbar\omega < \mathcal{E}_0$, is a stronger restriction than one needs to exclude the bound states. Generally, for electron binding one needs the condition $\mathcal{E}_0 - \hbar\omega \simeq \mathcal{E}_n$, so that, if $\hbar\omega > \mathcal{E}_0 - (\mathcal{E}_n)_{\min}$ the final state of the electron will again be a free one. Thus, the possibility of stimulated emission is excluded, and in (12.5) only the term, which describes stimulated absorption of the quantum $\hbar\omega$ remains, so that in this case the wavefunction (12.4)–(12.7) will describe inverse bremsstrahlung.

To obtain the electron wavefunction after scattering at large distances from the Coulomb center, let us find the asymptotes $r \to \infty$ of the expressions (12.4), (12.5). With this aim, we insert the asymptotic expansion of radial Coulomb functions for large r into expression (12.5)

$$R_{kl}(r) \approx \frac{(-i)^{l+1}}{r}\left\{\exp\left[i\left(kr + \frac{\kappa}{k}\ln 2kr + \delta_l(k)\right)\right]\right.$$
$$\left. +(-1)^{l+1}\exp\left[-i\left(kr + \frac{\kappa}{k}\ln 2kr + \delta_l(k)\right)\right]\right\} \tag{12.8}$$

and perform integration over k (as was mentioned above for free-free transitions $\sum\!\!\!\!\!\!\int_\lambda = \sum_n + \int ...dk$). During the integration one must take into account that the integrand expression in addition to the singularities at points $\mathcal{E}_k = \mathcal{E}_0 \pm \hbar\omega$, also has a singularity at $k = k_0$. This is conditioned by the matrix elements (12.6), (12.7) and is a consequence of the long-range nature of the Coulomb potential. Therefore, we choose the integration path in the complex plane in such a way that the perturbed wavefunction (12.4) would describe an outgoing spherical wave with changed energy and momentum at asymptotically large distances. To obtain the full wavefunction of the electron after the scattering, one has to also take the asymptote $r \to \infty$ of the unperturbed wavefunction (12.3). Doing so, we obtain

$$\Psi(r,t) \simeq \left(1 + \frac{\kappa^2}{ik_0^3 r(1-\cos\theta)}\right)\exp\left(ik_0 r\cos\theta - i\frac{\kappa}{k_0}\ln k_0 r(1-\cos\theta) - \frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_0 t\right)$$
$$+ \frac{f_0(\theta)}{r}\exp\left(ik_0 r + i\frac{\kappa}{k_0}\ln 2k_0 r - \frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_0 t\right)$$
$$+ \frac{f_+(\theta,\varphi)}{r}\exp\left(ik_+ r + i\frac{\kappa}{k_+}\ln 2k_+ r - \frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_+ t\right)$$
$$+ \frac{f_-(\theta,\varphi)}{r}\exp\left(ik_- r + i\frac{\kappa}{k_-}\ln 2k_- r - \frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_- t\right). \tag{12.9}$$

Here, $f_0(\theta)$ is the amplitude of elastic scattering in the Coulomb potential, $f_+(\theta,\varphi)$, $f_-(\theta,\varphi)$ are the amplitudes of stimulated scattering when photon absorption or emission occurs, respectively (with electron energies $\mathcal{E}_{0\pm} = \hbar^2 k_\pm^2/2m = \mathcal{E}_0 \pm \hbar\omega$ after the scattering)

$$f_0(\theta) = \frac{\kappa}{k_0^2(1-\cos\theta)} \frac{\Gamma(1-i\kappa/k_0)}{\Gamma(1+i\kappa/k_0)} \exp\left(2i\frac{\kappa}{k_0}\ln\sin\frac{\theta}{2}\right),$$

$$f_\pm(\theta,\varphi) = \mp\frac{iemE_0}{4\hbar^2 k_0 k_\pm}\sum_{l=0}^{\infty}\left\{\langle k_\pm, l\,|r|\,k_0, l-1\rangle\, e^{i\delta_{l-1}(k_0)}\right.$$
$$\times\left[\varepsilon_z l P_l(\cos\theta) + \varepsilon_y \sin\varphi P_l^{(1)}(\cos\theta)\right] - \langle k_\pm, l\,|r|\,k_0, l+1\rangle\, e^{i\delta_{l+1}(k_0)}$$
$$\left.\times\left[\varepsilon_z(l+1)P_l(\cos\theta) - \varepsilon_y\sin\varphi P_l^{(1)}(\cos\theta)\right]\right\} e^{i\delta_l(k_\pm)}. \quad (12.10)$$

Expressions (12.9) and (12.10) describe one-photon direct and inverse SB and hold if the condition $eE_0k_0/m\omega^2 \ll 1$ is fulfilled, i.e., when the energy change of the electron for a period of the wave is much less than the photon energy.

As is seen from (12.10), the amplitudes of inelastic scattering are sums of the partial scattering amplitudes with definite values of orbital moment. We were unable to bring these infinite sums to the known ones, and it appears very unlikely to be able to carry out the summing directly. However, it is possible to overcome the difficulty of direct calculation and obtain a formula for summation of such series, acting as follows. As was mentioned above, one can solve the Schrodinger equation also by expanding the full wavefunction $\Psi(\mathbf{r},t)$ in terms of Coulomb eigenfunctions $\Psi_k^{(-)}(\mathbf{r},t)$, which describe the state of the particle with definite momentum $\hbar k$ at infinity. Then, after standard perturbative calculations, for the perturbed wavefunction $\Psi_{k_0}^{(1)}(\mathbf{r},t)$ we obtain

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{k}_0}^{(1)}(\mathbf{r},t) = \frac{i}{2}eE_0\int \Psi_k^{(-)}(\mathbf{r},t)\varepsilon\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_0)$$
$$\times\left[\frac{\exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathcal{E}_k-\mathcal{E}_0-\hbar\omega)t\right]}{\mathcal{E}_k-\mathcal{E}_0-\hbar\omega} - \frac{\exp\left[\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathcal{E}_k-\mathcal{E}_0+\hbar\omega)t\right]}{\mathcal{E}_k-\mathcal{E}_0+\hbar\omega}\right]\frac{d^3\mathbf{k}}{(2\pi)^3}, \quad (12.11)$$

where

$$\Psi_k^{(-)}(\mathbf{r},t) = N\exp\left[-\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_k t + i\mathbf{kr}\right]F\left(-i\frac{\kappa}{k_0}, 1; -i(kr+\mathbf{kr})\right), \quad (12.12)$$

$$N = e^{\pi\kappa/2k}\Gamma\left(1+\frac{i\kappa}{k}\right),$$

$$\mathbf{D}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k}_0) = -\frac{16\pi NN_0 e^{-\pi\kappa/k_0}}{(k-k_0)^4(k+k_0)^2}\left(\frac{k_0-k}{k_0+k}\right)^{i\kappa/k_0+i\kappa/k}(1-u)^{i\kappa/k_0+i\kappa/k-1}$$
$$\times\left[i\kappa F(u)(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}_0) + (1-u)F'(u)(k\mathbf{k}_0 - k_0\mathbf{k})\right]. \quad (12.13)$$

Here, $F(u) = F(i\kappa/k_0, i\kappa/k, 1, u)$ is the hypergeometric function of argument u, $u = -2\,(kk_0 - \mathbf{k}\mathbf{k}_0)\,/\,(k - k_0)^2$.

To obtain the wavefunction of the electron after the scattering, let us take the asymptote $r \to \infty$ of (12.11). Unfortunately, the functions $\Psi_k^{(-)}(\mathbf{r}, t)$, written in the form of (12.12), do not suit this purpose (when $r \to \infty$ the angle $\mathbf{kr} = \pi$ becomes singular). Therefore, we use the expansion of $\Psi_k^{(-)}(\mathbf{r}, t)$ over the momenta

$$\Psi_k^{(-)}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \frac{\exp\left(-\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_k t\right)}{2k} \sum_{l=0}^{\infty} i^l (2l + 1) e^{-i\delta_l(k)} R_{kl}(r) P_l \left(\frac{\mathbf{kr}}{kr}\right), \tag{12.14}$$

and take the asymptote $r \to \infty$ through radial Coulomb functions $R_{kl}(r)$ according to the formula (12.8). Carrying out the integration over $\mathbf{k}$ in (12.11) and summing over l by the mean of the known formula

$$\sum_{l=0}^{\infty} (2l + 1) P_l\,(\cos\theta) = 4\delta(1 - \cos\theta) \tag{12.15}$$

($\delta(1 - \cos\theta)$ is the Dirac δ-function) we integrate over the direction of the electron final momentum and for the full wavefunction of the electron obtain a result of the form (12.9), where

$$f_\pm(\theta, \varphi) = \pm\frac{ieE_0 m}{4\pi\hbar^2}\varepsilon\mathbf{D}\,(\mathbf{k}_\pm, \mathbf{k}_0)\,, \tag{12.16}$$

where $\mathbf{k}_\pm = k_\pm \mathbf{n}_f$, $\mathbf{n}_f$ is a unit vector along the scattering direction.

Expression (12.16) defines the amplitudes of direct and inverse SB of the electrons scattered in the given direction and, in fact, is a sum of partial amplitudes of photon absorption or emission, when the electron scatters with various definite values of momenta l. The comparison of expressions (12.13) and (12.16) with (12.10) allows us to obtain formulae for summation of infinite series, which are given in the appendix.

12.2 Radiation Absorption in Plasma via Inverse SB at the Exact Consideration of Scattering Field

The absorption of EM radiation in an isotropic plasma due to stimulated bremsstrahlung of electrons on ions, is sufficiently well investigated with the aim of plasma heating by lasers. As to the absorption capabilities of anisotropic plasma, in this case the investigations have been mainly directed to obtain by negative absorption, whereas, in experiments on EM wave amplification strong absorption of the wave is also observed, which brings about increase of the electron current in plasma. The absorption coefficient of the wave in anisotropic plasma, particularly in the electron beam, is usually obtained using the Born approximation and in the case of soft photons, when $\hbar\omega \ll \mathcal{E}_p$, where $\mathcal{E}_p$ is the most probable electron energy in plasma. However, the application of the Born approximation during absorption coefficient calculations brings about an appreciable error in the definite domain of velocities (plasma temperatures) even in the case of a weak wave, i.e., the one-photon absorption coefficient becomes sensitive to accuracy with which SB is considered. Besides an essential absorption can occur in the case of a high-frequency wave ($\hbar\omega > \mathcal{E}_p$,), when the concurrent process of stimulated emission is strongly suppressed. Therefore, it is of interest to calculate the absorption coefficient in a plasma for arbitrary wave frequencies with the exact consideration of the Coulomb field. The method usually applied for absorption coefficient calculations in an isotropic plasma with the help of bremsstrahlung cross sections is not admittable in the case of anisotropic plasma, because these cross sections are averaged over the polarization states of the final photon. Therefore, we shall calculate the absorption coefficient of the weak wave in a plasma with the help of the exact wavefunction of the SB process (12.9). For this purpose, we write the total probability of stimulated absorption (emission) of one quantum due to the electron scattering by the Coulomb centers with number density n_i

$$w_{a,e} = n_i \frac{\hbar k_\pm}{m} \int |f_\pm(\mathbf{k}_\pm, k_i)|^2 \, d\theta_{\mathbf{k}_\pm}. \tag{12.17}$$

Here, $f_\pm(\mathbf{k}_\pm, k_i)$ are the amplitudes of inelastic scattering defined by the expressions (12.13) and (12.16), the $+$ sign and index a corresponds to the absorption case, and the $-$ sign and index e to the emission. In (12.17) integration goes over the final directions of the scattered electron. Inserting expressions (12.13), (12.16) into (12.17), we first carry out integration over the azimuthal angle φ. Also changing the variable from θ to u, $u = z(1-\cos\theta)/2$ (for z see paragraph 2) and using the well-known features of hypergeometric functions, the total probability of the one-photon SB can be written in the following form

$$w_{a,e} = 2\pi^3 n_i \frac{e^2 E_0^2 \hbar \kappa^2}{m^3 \omega^4 k_i} \frac{(\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_i)^2 \, I_1(k_\pm, k_i) + \left(3(\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_i)^2 - 1\right) I_2(k_\pm, k_i)}{\left[\exp(2\pi\kappa/k_i) - 1\right]\left[1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_\pm)\right]}, \tag{12.18}$$

where by I_1 and I_2, we have denoted the following integrals ($z_\pm = -4k_i k_\pm / (k_i - k_\pm)^2$):

$$I_1(k_\pm, k_i) = \frac{2\kappa^2}{k_i k_\pm} \int_0^{z_\pm} \left\{ \frac{k_i k_\pm}{\kappa^2} \left|F'(u)\right|^2 - \frac{i(k_i + k_\pm)}{2\kappa(1-u)} \right.$$
$$\left. \times \left[F(u)F'^*(u) - F^*(u)F'(u)\right] - \frac{|F(u)|^2}{u(1-u)} \right\} u\,du,$$

$$I_2(k_\pm, k_i) = \frac{\kappa^2}{k_i^2} \left(1 + \frac{\kappa^2}{k_\pm^2}\right) \int_0^{z_\pm} u \left(\frac{u}{z_\pm} - 1\right) \left| F\left(2 + i\frac{\kappa}{k_\pm}, 1 + i\frac{\kappa}{k_i}; 2, u\right)\right|^2 du.$$

The integral I_1, is encountered during the bremsstrahlung cross-section calculations and is equal to

$$I_1\left(k_\pm, k_i\right) = z_\pm \frac{d}{dz_\pm} \left| F\left(i\frac{\kappa}{k_\pm}, i\frac{\kappa}{k_i}; 1, z_\pm \right) \right|^2 . \tag{12.19}$$

To evaluate I_2, we change the variable from u to t, $t = u/(u-1)$ and use the following integral

$$\int_0^1 x(1-x) F\left(\alpha, \beta; 2, vx\right) F\left(\alpha', \beta'; 2, vx\right) dx = \frac{1}{6} F^{1;2;2}_{1;1;1} \left[\begin{matrix} 2; & \alpha, \beta; & \alpha', \beta' : & \\ 4; & 2; & 2 : & \end{matrix} v, v \right],$$

where $F^{1;2;2}_{1;1;1} \left[\begin{matrix} 2; & (a); & (a') : & \\ 4; & 2; & 2 : & \end{matrix} x, y \right]$ is the function of Campe-de-Feriet. As a result we obtain

$$I_2\left(k_\pm, k_i\right) = -\frac{\kappa^2}{k_i^2}\left(1 + \frac{\kappa^2}{k_\pm^2}\right)\frac{v_\pm^2}{6} \times F^{1;2;2}_{1;1;1} \left[\begin{matrix} 2; & 2 - i\kappa/k_\pm, 1 + i\kappa/k_i; & 2 + i\kappa/k_\pm, 1 - i\kappa/k_i : & \\ 4; & 2; & 2 : & \end{matrix} v_\pm, v_\pm \right], \tag{12.20}$$

where $v_\pm = z_\pm / \left(z_\pm - 1\right) = 4k_i k_\pm / \left(k_i + k_\pm\right)^2$.

The absorption coefficient of the weak wave in the single-photon approximation is determined through the total probabilities of one-photon absorption w_a, and emission w_e of the SB process in the following way:

$$\alpha = \frac{\hbar\omega}{J} \int \left[w_a\left(\mathbf{k}_i\right) - w_e\left(\mathbf{k}_i\right) \right] f\left(\mathbf{k}_i\right) \frac{d^3\mathbf{k}_i}{(2\pi)^3},$$

where $J = cE_0^2/8\pi$ is the intensity of the EM wave, $f\left(\mathbf{k}_i\right)$ is the distribution function of the electrons over the wavevectors $\mathbf{k}_i = \mathbf{p}_i/\hbar$ and is normalized on the electron number density n_e as follows

$$\int f(\mathbf{k}_i) d^3\mathbf{k}_i = (2\pi)^3 n_e.$$

By means of expressions (12.18)–(12.20), obtained for total probabilities $w_{a,e}$, the absorption coefficient of the wave due to the mechanism of SB, for arbitrary electron distribution over the momentum in plasma in the one-photon approximation has the form

$$\alpha = 2\pi n_i \frac{Q^2 e^4}{mc\hbar^2\omega^3} \int \Biggl\{ (\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_i)^2 \left[\frac{I_1(k_+, k_i)}{1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_+)} - \frac{I_1(k_-, k_i)}{1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_-)} \right] + \left(3(\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_i)^2 - 1\right) \left[\frac{I_2(k_+, k_i)}{1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_+)} - \frac{I_2(k_-, k_i)}{1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_-)} \right] \Biggr\} \times \frac{f(\mathbf{k}_i) d^3\mathbf{k}_i}{k_i \left[\exp(2\pi\kappa/k_i) - 1\right]}. \tag{12.21}$$

Below, we shall consider separately the cases when the electron distribution function is anisotropic or isotropic.

12.3 Absorption at Anisotropic Electron Distribution

First, let us consider an essentially anisotropic plasma, when the electron distribution over momentum is monochromatic: $f(\mathbf{k}_i) = (2\pi)^3 n_e \delta(\mathbf{k}_i - \mathbf{k}_0)$ where $\hbar\mathbf{k}_0$ is the momentum of electrons. Then performing integration in (12.21) we obtain

$$\alpha = \frac{(2\pi)^4 n_e n_i Q^2 e^4}{mc\hbar^2\omega^3 k_0 \left[\exp(2\pi\kappa/k_0) - 1\right]} \times \Biggl\{ (\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_0)^2 \left[\frac{I_1(k_+, k_0)}{1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_+)} - \frac{I_1(k_-, k_0)}{1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_-)} \right] + \left(3(\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_0)^2 - 1\right) \left[\frac{I_2(k_+, k_0)}{1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_+)} - \frac{I_2(k_-, k_0)}{1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_-)} \right] \Biggr\}, \tag{12.22}$$

where $I_1(k_\pm, k_0)$, $I_2(k_\pm, k_0)$ are the values of corresponding functions (12.19) and (12.20) at $k_i = k_0$, and $\mathbf{n}_0 = \mathbf{k}_0/k_0$. This expression is written for the case when the electron energy is larger than the quantum energy: $\mathcal{E}_0 = \hbar^2 k_0^2/2m > \hbar\omega$. It takes a simple form in the case when $\kappa/k_0 \ll 1$, $\kappa/k_\pm \ll 1$ and the Born approximation can be applied. Then for the functions I_1 and I_2 in the lowest order we obtain from (12.19), (12.20)

$$I_1(k_\pm, k_0) \approx -\frac{2\kappa^2}{k_0 k_\pm} \ln \left(\frac{k_0 - k_\pm}{k_0 + k_\pm} \right)^2,$$

$$I_2(k_\pm, k_0) \approx \frac{\kappa^2}{k_0^2} \left[2 + \frac{k_0^2 + k_\pm^2}{2k_0 k_\pm} \ln \left(\frac{k_0 - k_\pm}{k_0 + k_\pm} \right)^2 \right]. \tag{12.23}$$

In (12.22) expanding the exponents in power series and leaving the first nonvanishing terms, by means of (12.23) we obtain, the absorption coefficient in the first Born approximation

$$\alpha_B = 8\pi^2 \frac{n_e n_i Q^2 e^4}{mc\hbar^2\omega^3 k_0} \left[2\left((\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_0)^2 - 1 \right) \ln\left(\frac{k_0 + k_-}{k_0 + k_+} \right) + \left(3\,(\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_0)^2 - 1 \right) \left(\frac{k_+ - k_-}{k_0} + \frac{k_\omega^2}{k_0^2} \ln \frac{k_\omega^2}{(k_+ + k_0)\,(k_- + k_0)} \right) \right], \tag{12.24}$$

where $k_\omega = (2m\omega/\hbar)^{1/2}$.

In the soft-photon limit, when $k_\omega \ll k_0$, formula (12.24) takes the following form:

$$\alpha_B = 16\pi^2 \frac{n_e n_i Q^2 e^4}{mc\hbar^2\omega^3 k_0} \frac{k_\omega^2}{k_0^2} \left((\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_0)^2 + \left(3\,(\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_0)^2 - 1 \right) \ln \frac{k_\omega}{2k_0} \right). \tag{12.25}$$

In this case, the negative absorption is possible when the direction of the electron beam is in a certain cone, the axis of which coincides with the EM wave polarization vector. As follows from (12.24), for large photon energies this cone becomes narrow and when $\hbar\omega \simeq \mathcal{E}_0$, the negative absorption becomes impossible.

If the quantum energy is larger than the electron energy: $\hbar\omega > \mathcal{E}_0$, the absorption coefficient is defined by the expression

$$\alpha = (2\pi)^4 \frac{n_e n_i Q^2 e^4}{mc\hbar^2\omega^3 k_0} \frac{(\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_0)^2 I_1(k_+, k_0) + \left(3\,(\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_0)^2 - 1 \right) I_2(k_+, k_0)}{\left[\exp(2\pi\kappa/k_0) - 1 \right] \left[1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_+) \right]}. \tag{12.26}$$

In the case of hard quanta, when for electrons which have absorbed quantum the condition of the Born approximation is valid: $\kappa/k_+ \ll 1$ (it is noteworthy that for the initial states of electrons the Born approximation can fail) one can insert into (12.26) the approximate value of $I_2(k_+, k_0)$ from (12.23) and the following expression for I_1, also

$$I_1(k_+, k_0) \approx -\frac{2\kappa}{k_+} \sin\left(2\frac{\kappa}{k_0} \ln\left(\frac{k_+ - k_0}{k_+ + k_0} \right) \right). \tag{12.27}$$

The last expression is obtained from (12.19) when $\kappa/k_+ \ll 1$. As a result, for the absorption coefficient of the wave in a monochromatic beam we obtain from (12.26)

$$\alpha = 16\pi^3 \frac{n_e n_i Q^2 e^4}{mc\hbar^2\omega^3 k_0 \left[\exp(2\pi\kappa/k_0) - 1 \right]} \left\{ -(\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_0)^2 \sin\left(2\frac{\kappa}{k_0} \ln \frac{k_+ - k_0}{k_+ + k_0} \right) + \left(3\,(\varepsilon \mathbf{n}_0)^2 - 1 \right) \frac{\kappa}{k_0} \left[\frac{k_+}{k_0} + \frac{1}{2}\left(1 + \frac{k_+^2}{k_0^2} \right) \ln \frac{k_+ - k_0}{k_+ + k_0} \right] \right\}. \tag{12.28}$$

If the condition $k_0 \ll k_+$, is also valid, then from (12.28) we obtain (in the lowest order of k_0/k_+)

$$\alpha = \frac{64}{3}\pi^3 \frac{n_e n_i Q^2 e^4}{mc\hbar^2\omega^3 k_0} \frac{\kappa}{k\omega} \left[\exp(2\pi\kappa/k_0) - 1\right]^{-1}. \tag{12.29}$$

The last equation does not depend on the angle between the electron velocity and wave polarization direction. In the Born approximation limit for electron initial states, when $\kappa/k_0 \ll 1$, it takes the form

$$\alpha_B = \frac{32}{3}\pi^3 \frac{n_e n_i Q^2 e^4}{mc\hbar^2\omega^3 k_\omega}. \tag{12.30}$$

Note that formula (12.30) is obtained for a monochromatic beam, but it coincides with the expression of the absorption coefficient in the isotropic plasma with arbitrary momentum distribution of electrons in the corresponding hard quantum case. Thus, the absorption coefficient of hard radiation ($\hbar\omega \gg \mathcal{E}_0$) in the Born approximation does not depend on characteristic quantities of the electron momentum distribution in plasma or on whether it is isotropic or anisotropic. Whereas, as follows from (12.28), when the Coulomb potential is taken into account exactly the absorption coefficient depends on the initial velocity of the beam and for slow electrons when $\kappa/k_0 \gg 1$ it decreases exponentially ($\alpha \sim \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_0)$). The magnitude of the momentum change during the scattering process of slow electrons in the Coulomb potential is much less than is necessary for real absorption of a quantum with energy many times greater than the energy of electrons.

Now, let us investigate the influence of the beam energetic and angular spreads on the absorption coefficient. In general, for arbitrary momentum distribution of the electrons the one-photon absorption coefficient is defined by the expression (12.21), which in the case of a beam with Gaussian distribution

$$f(\mathbf{k}) = \frac{4\pi n_e}{k_0^2 \sin\theta_0 \Delta\delta} \exp\left[-\frac{(k-k_0)^2}{\Delta^2} - \frac{(\theta-\theta_0)^2}{\delta^2}\right] \tag{12.31}$$

can be written in the Born approximation in the following form (inserting I_1, I_2 from (12.23), expanding the exponents in power series and integrating over the angles)

$$\alpha = \frac{8\pi^{3/2} n_e n_i Q^2 e^4}{mc\hbar^2\omega^3 \Delta} \frac{k_\omega^2}{k_0^2}$$
$$\times \left\{ \int_0^\infty \left\{ \exp\left[-\left(k_\omega x - k_0\right)^2/\Delta^2\right] + \exp\left[-\left(k_\omega\sqrt{1+x^2} - k_0\right)^2/\Delta^2\right]\right\}\right.$$
$$\times 4\left(\varepsilon\mathbf{n}_0\right)^2 \ln\left[x + \sqrt{1+x^2}\right] x\,dx + \left[3\left(\varepsilon\mathbf{n}_0\right)^2 - 1\right]$$

$$\times \int_0^\infty \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1+x^2}} \left\{1 - \frac{2x^2+1}{x\sqrt{1+x^2}} \ln\left[x + \sqrt{1+x^2}\right]\right\}$$
$$\times \left\{\left(1+x^2\right) \exp\left[-\left(k_\omega x - k_0\right)^2/\Delta^2\right] - x^2 \exp\left[-\left(k_\omega\sqrt{1+x^2} - k_0\right)^2/\Delta^2\right]\right\}\Bigg\}, \tag{12.32}$$

where $\hbar\Delta$ is the momentum spread of the electrons around the mean momentum $\hbar\mathbf{k}_0$, δ is the angular spread of the beam with respect to the angle θ_0 between the beam axis and the direction of the electric field of the wave. For simplicity in (12.32) the small corrections of order δ^2 depending on the angle spread are omitted. In the case of hard quanta, when $k_\omega \gg k_0$, after performing integration over x, for α we obtain expression (12.30) multiplied by the factor $(1-\delta^2/4)(1+\Delta^2/2k_0^2)$. Thus, we conclude that the contribution of the beam spread to the absorption coefficient is not essential. Physically, it is evident that the contribution of the beam spreads into the absorption coefficient will be maximal when $k_\omega \ll \Delta$. In this case we obtain from (12.32)

$$\alpha = 8\pi^2 \frac{n_e n_i Q^2 e^4 k_\omega^2}{mc\hbar^2\omega^3 k_0^3} \left\{2\left(\varepsilon\mathbf{n}_0\right)^2 + 2\left[3\left(\varepsilon\mathbf{n}_0\right)^2 - 1\right] \ln\frac{k_\omega}{2k_0}\right.$$
$$\left. + \frac{k_\omega \Delta^2}{k_0^3}\left(\left(\varepsilon\mathbf{n}_0\right)^2 - 1 + \left[3\left(\varepsilon\mathbf{n}_0\right)^2 - 1\right]\ln\frac{k_\omega}{2k_0}\right)\right\}. \tag{12.33}$$

However, as it is seen from the formula (12.33) in this case the spreads lead to small corrections also, so that the consideration of a monochromatic beam of electrons instead of a real beam for calculation of the one-photon absorption coefficient due to SB is justified (in contradistinction to coherent processes; e.g., of the stimulated Compton scattering type).

12.4 Absorption at Isotropic Electron Distribution

For the isotropic plasma with Maxwellian distribution function

$$f(k) = n_e \left(\frac{2\pi\hbar^2}{mk_B T}\right)^{3/2} \exp\left(-\hbar^2 k^2/2mk_B T\right)$$

(k_B is Boltzmann's constant, T is the temperature of the electrons in plasma) after integrating over the angles in (12.21) the absorption coefficient can be written in the form

$$\alpha = \frac{8}{3}\pi^2 n_e n_i k_\omega^2 \frac{Q^2 e^4 \hbar}{mc\omega^3}\left(\frac{2\pi}{mk_BT}\right)^{3/2}$$
$$\times \int_0^\infty \exp(-x^2\hbar\omega/k_BT) I_1\left(k_\omega\sqrt{1+x^2}, k_\omega x\right)$$
$$\times \left[\frac{1}{\left[\exp\left((2\pi/x)\,\kappa/k_\omega\right)-1\right]\left[1-\exp\left(-\left(2\pi/\sqrt{1+x^2}\right)\kappa/k_\omega\right)\right]}\right.$$
$$\left.-\frac{1}{\left[\exp\left(\left(2\pi/\sqrt{1+x^2}\right)\kappa/k_\omega\right)-1\right]\left[1-\exp(-(2\pi/x)\,\kappa/k_\omega)\right]}\right] x dx. \tag{12.34}$$

In the case of hard radiation, when $\kappa/k_\omega \ll 1$, using the approximate value of I_2 from (12.23) and taking into account that in the integration region $\ln\left(x+\sqrt{1+x^2}\right) \ll x$, we expand the integrand expression in a power series over the small parameter κ/k_ω. As a result in the lowest order we obtain

$$\alpha = \frac{32}{3}\pi n_e n_i \frac{Q^2 e^4 \hbar}{mc\omega^3}\left(\frac{2\pi}{mk_BT}\right)^{3/2} \kappa k_\omega \int_0^\infty \exp\left(-x^2\frac{\hbar\omega}{k_BT}\right)$$
$$\times \frac{\ln\left(x+\sqrt{1+x^2}\right)}{\exp\left[(2\pi/x)\,\kappa/k_\omega\right]-1}\left[1-\exp\left(-\frac{\hbar\omega}{k_BT}\right)\exp\left(\frac{2\pi\kappa}{k_\omega x}\right)\right] dx. \tag{12.35}$$

In the case of high-temperature plasma, when $k_BT \gg \hbar\omega$, expanding in power series the exponent $\exp(-\hbar\omega/k_BT)$ and performing integration in (12.35) we obtain

$$\alpha = \frac{64}{3}\pi^{5/2}\Gamma\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) n_e n_i \frac{Q^2 e^4}{m^2 c\omega^3}\frac{\kappa}{k_BT}. \tag{12.36}$$

If in (12.35) the exponents $\exp(2\pi\kappa/k_\omega x)$ are expanded then after integration we obtain

$$\alpha = \frac{64}{3}\pi n_e n_i \frac{Q^2 e^4}{mc\hbar\omega^3}\left(\frac{2\pi}{mk_BT}\right)^{1/2} \sinh\left(\frac{\hbar\omega}{2k_BT}\right) K_0\left(\frac{\hbar\omega}{2k_BT}\right), \tag{12.37}$$

where $K_0(x)$ is McDonald's function, i.e., the absorption coefficient of the weak wave in isotropic plasma in the Born approximation. Comparison of the expression (12.37) in the soft-photon limit ($\hbar\omega/k_BT \ll 1$) with (12.36) reveals that when the electron–ion interaction is taken into account exactly the absorption coefficient of high-temperature plasma ($k_BT \gg \hbar\omega \gg \hbar^2\kappa^2/2m$) decreases more slowly as plasma temperature increases ($\alpha \sim 1/T$) than in the case when the electron–ion interaction is considered in the Born approximation (in this case $\alpha \sim (\ln T)/T^{3/2}$).

In the case of $\hbar\omega \gg k_B T$, when the energy of the quantum is much larger than the most probable energy of the electrons in plasma the second term in quadratic brackets in (12.34) is exponentially small and we neglect it. Besides, in (12.34) the main contribution comes from the region of small x. Then using the asymptotic definition of the confluent hypergeometric function: $\lim_{x\to\infty} F(1/x, y; 1; x_0 x) = F(y, 1, x_0)$, for the function $I_1(k_\omega\sqrt{1+x^2}, k_\omega x)$ we obtain from (12.19)

$$I_1 \simeq x_0 \frac{d}{dx_0}\left|F\left(1 - i\frac{\kappa}{k_\omega}; 1; x_0\right)\right|^2, \quad x_0 = 4i\kappa/k_\omega.$$

Inserting this expression into (12.34) and performing integration for the absorption coefficient in Maxwellian plasma we obtain

$$\alpha = \frac{32}{3}\pi^3 \frac{n_e n_i Q^2 e^4}{m^2 c\hbar^2\omega^3}\left(\frac{2\pi}{mk_B T}\right)^{1/2} x_0 \frac{d}{dx_0}\left|F\left(1 - i\frac{\kappa}{k_\omega}; 1; x_0\right)\right|^2 \times \frac{B(2\pi\kappa/k_T)}{1 - \exp(-2\pi\kappa/k_\omega)}, \tag{12.38}$$

where $k_T = \sqrt{2mk_B T}/\hbar$, and the function

$$B(z) = \int_0^\infty \frac{x\exp(-x^2)}{\exp(z/x) - 1} dx. \tag{12.39}$$

As in the integral B the main contribution comes from $x \sim 1$ we put $x = 1$ in the denominator and after integration obtain

$$B(2\pi\kappa/k_T) = \frac{1}{2}\left[\exp(2\pi\kappa/k_T) - 1\right]^{-1}. \tag{12.40}$$

In the case when $\kappa/k_\omega \ll 1$ and $\kappa/k_T \ll 1$ (12.38) (if one takes into account that $x_0(d/dx_0)\left|F(1 - i\kappa/k_\omega; 1; x_0)\right|^2 \simeq 8\kappa^2/k_\omega^2$) coincides with the known result in the Born approximation and with the absorption coefficient (12.30) in the case of a monochromatic beam.

Thus, if the electron–ion interaction in Maxwellian plasma is considered exactly the absorption coefficient of hard radiation ($\hbar\omega \gg k_B T$) depends on electron temperature in contradistinction to the Born approximation case and in the limit of low temperatures, when $\kappa/k_T \gg 1$, it exponentially decreases. It happens because of the classical nature of the electron interaction with the Coulomb potential, whereas its interaction with the EM wave has purely quantum nature (one-photon inverse SB).

As an important mathematical result let us represent new formulae for summing of series containing hypergeometric functions and Legendre polynomials, obtained by us at the consideration of the quantum theory of SB. Thus, from the expressions (12.10), (12.13), and (12.16) (by means of (12.6, (12.7)) the following formulae for summing of infinite series we obtain (here $v > \nu_0$):

$$\sum_{i=0}^{\infty}\left(\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\right)^{l-1} P_l(\cos\theta)\Gamma(l+1-i\nu)$$
$$\times\left\{l\frac{\Gamma(l-i\nu_0)}{(2l-1)!}Im\left[\left(\frac{v+\nu_0}{v-\nu_0}\right)^{iv+i\nu_0} F\left(l+1+i\nu, l+i\nu_0, 2l, -\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\right)\right]\right.$$
$$-(l+1)\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\frac{\Gamma(l+2-i\nu_0)}{(2l+1)!}$$
$$\left.\times Im\left[\left(\frac{v+\nu_0}{v-\nu_0}\right)^{iv+i\nu_0} F\left(l+2+i\nu_0, l+1+i\nu, 2l+2, -\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\right)\right]\right\}$$
$$=\Gamma(1+i\nu)\Gamma(1-i\nu_0)\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v+\nu_0)^2}\left(\frac{v+\nu_0}{v-\nu_0}\right)^{-iv-i\nu_0}$$
$$\times\left[i\left(\nu_0\cos\theta-\nu\right) F\left(1-i\nu, 1-i\nu_0, 1, -\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}\right)\right.$$
$$\left.-\nu\nu_0\left(1-\cos\theta\right) F\left(1-i\nu, 1-i\nu_0, 2, -\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}\right)\right], \tag{12.41}$$

$$\sum_{i=0}^{\infty}\left(\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\right)^{l-1} P_l^{(1)}(\cos\theta)\Gamma(l+1-i\nu)$$
$$\times\left\{\frac{\Gamma(l-i\nu_0)}{(2l-1)!}Im\left[\left(\frac{v+\nu_0}{v-\nu_0}\right)^{iv+i\nu_0} F\left(l+1+i\nu, l+i\nu_0, 2l, -\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\right)\right]\right.$$
$$+\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\frac{\Gamma(l+2-i\nu_0)}{(2l+1)!}$$
$$\left.\times Im\left[\left(\frac{v+\nu_0}{v-\nu_0}\right)^{iv+i\nu_0} F\left(l+2+i\nu_0, l+1+i\nu, 2l+2, -\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\right)\right]\right\}$$
$$=\Gamma(1+i\nu)\Gamma(1-i\nu_0)\frac{4v\nu_0^2}{(v+\nu_0)^2}\left(\frac{v+\nu_0}{v-\nu_0}\right)^{-iv-i\nu_0}\sin\theta$$
$$\times\left[iF\left(1-i\nu, 1-i\nu_0, 1, -\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}\right)\right.$$
$$\left.+\nu F\left(1-i\nu, 1-i\nu_0, 2, -\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\sin^2\frac{\theta}{2}\right)\right]. \tag{12.42}$$

When $v_0 > v$, in (12.41), (12.42) $v - v_0$ must be changed to $v_0 - v$. The formulae (12.41), (12.42) can be interpreted as expansions of some linear combination of hypergeometric functions by Legendre (12.41), and first-order associated Legendre (12.42) polynomials.

For definite values of the angle θ, from (12.41) and (12.42) one can obtain formulae for the sum of some series which contain hypergeometric functions. In particular, putting $\theta = 0$ in the formula (12.41) we obtain

$$\sum_{i=0}^{\infty}\left(\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\right)^{l-1}\Gamma(l+1-i\nu)$$
$$\times\left\{l\frac{\Gamma(l-i\nu_0)}{(2l-1)!}Im\left[\left(\frac{v+\nu_0}{v-\nu_0}\right)^{iv+i\nu_0}F\left(l+1+i\nu, l+i\nu_0, 2l, -\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\right)\right]\right.$$
$$-(l+1)\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\frac{\Gamma(l+2+i\nu)}{(2l+1)!}$$
$$\left.\times Im\left[\left(\frac{v+\nu_0}{v-\nu_0}\right)^{iv+i\nu_0}F\left(l+2+i\nu_0, l+1+i\nu, 2l+2, -\frac{4v\nu_0}{(v-\nu_0)^2}\right)\right]\right\}$$
$$= i\Gamma(1+i\nu)\Gamma(1-i\nu_0)\frac{4v\nu_0}{v+\nu_0}\left(\frac{v+\nu_0}{v-\nu_0}\right)^{-iv-i\nu_0-1}. \tag{12.43}$$

12.5 Nonlinear Inverse-Bremsstrahlung Absorption Coefficient

Let us now consider, the nonlinear absorption process of super intense laser radiation in plasma, at first, on the base of the classical theory. The absorption coefficient α of an EM radiation with arbitrary intensity and polarization, in general case for homogeneous ensemble of electrons with concentration n_e and arbitrary distribution function $f(\mathbf{p})$ over the momenta $\mathbf{p}$, at the inverse bremsstrahlung on the scattering centers with concentration n_i, can be represented in the form:

$$\alpha = \frac{n_e}{I}\int Wf(\mathbf{p}_0)d\mathbf{p}_0, \tag{12.44}$$

where W is the classical energy absorbed by a single electron per unit time from the EM wave of intensity I due to the SB process on the scattering centers. For the homogeneous scattering centers $W \sim n_i$. For the generality, we assume Maxwellian plasma with the relativistic distribution function:

$$f(\mathbf{p}_0) = \frac{\exp\left(-\frac{\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}_0)}{k_B T}\right)}{4\pi m^2 c k_B T K_2(mc^2/k_B T)}, \tag{12.45}$$

where k_B is Boltzmann's constant, T is the temperature of electrons in plasma, $\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}_0)$ is the relativistic energy–momentum dispersion law of electrons, and $K_2(x)$ is McDonald's function; $f(\mathbf{p}_0)$ is normalized as

$$\int f(\mathbf{p}_0)d^3\mathbf{p}_0 = 1. \tag{12.46}$$

To obtain W for the SB process, the electron interaction with the scattering potential and EM wave in the low-frequency approximation can be considered as independently proceeding processes, separated into the following three stages. Field free electron with energy $\mathcal{E}_0$ and momentum $\mathbf{p}_0$ interacts with the EM wave. The exact solution of the relativistic equation of motion of an electron in a plane EM wave is well known (see, Chap. 1). The electron momentum and energy in the field we will represent in the following form:

$$\mathbf{p}_\perp(\psi) = \mathbf{p}_\perp(\psi_0) - e\frac{\mathbf{A}(\psi_0) - \mathbf{A}(\psi)}{c}, \tag{12.47}$$

$$\nu\mathbf{p}(\psi) = \nu\mathbf{p}(\psi_0) + \frac{1}{2c(\mathcal{E}(\psi_0) - c\nu\mathbf{p}(\psi_0))} \times \left[e^2\left(\mathbf{A}(\psi_0) - \mathbf{A}(\psi)\right)^2 - 2ec\mathbf{p}(\psi_0)\left(\mathbf{A}(\psi_0) - \mathbf{A}(\psi)\right)\right], \tag{12.48}$$

$$\mathcal{E}(\psi) = \mathcal{E}(\psi_0) + c\nu\left(\mathbf{p}(\psi) - \mathbf{p}(\psi_0)\right), \tag{12.49}$$

where

$$\mathbf{A}(\psi) = A_0(\psi)(\widehat{\mathbf{e}}_1 \cos\psi + \widehat{\mathbf{e}}_2\zeta \sin\psi) \tag{12.50}$$

is the vector potential of the EM wave of currier frequency ω and slowly varying amplitude $A_0(\psi)$. Here $\psi = \omega\tau$ is the phase, $\tau = t - \nu\mathbf{r}/c$, ν is an unit vector in the wave propagation direction, $\widehat{\mathbf{e}}_{1,2}$ are the unit polarization vectors, and $\arctan\zeta$ is the polarization angle. At the second stage the elastic scattering of the electron in the potential field takes place at the arbitrary, but certain phase ψ_s of the EM wave. Thus, taking into account adiabatic turn on of the wave ($\mathbf{A}(\psi_0) = 0$) from (12.47)–(12.49) before the scattering one can write

$$\mathbf{p}_\perp(\psi_s) = \mathbf{p}_{0\perp} + \frac{e\mathbf{A}(\psi_s)}{c}, \tag{12.51}$$

$$\nu\mathbf{p}(\psi_s) = \nu\mathbf{p}_0 + \frac{1}{2c\Lambda}\left[e^2\mathbf{A}^2(\psi_s) + 2ce\mathbf{p}_0\mathbf{A}(\psi_s)\right], \tag{12.52}$$

$$\mathcal{E}(\psi_s) = \mathcal{E}_0 + c\nu\left(\mathbf{p}(\psi_s) - \mathbf{p}_0\right), \tag{12.53}$$

where

$$\Lambda = \mathcal{E}(\psi_s) - c\nu\mathbf{p}(\psi_s) = \mathcal{E}_0 - c\nu\mathbf{p}_0 \tag{12.54}$$

is the integral of motion for a charged particle in the field of a plane EM wave. The mean energy of an electron in the wave field before the scattering will be

$$\langle \mathcal{E}(\psi) \rangle_i = \mathcal{E}_0 + \frac{e^2 \langle \mathbf{A}^2 \rangle}{2\Lambda}. \tag{12.55}$$

Then elastic scattering on the potential field $U(r)$ takes place. Due to the instantaneous interaction of the electron with the scattering potential the wave phase does not change its value during the scattering. This is the low-frequency approximation, which is applicable when

$$\lambda \gg R_U, \tag{12.56}$$

where λ is the laser radiation wavelength and R_U is the range of effective scattering. The electron with the initial momentum $\mathbf{p}(\psi_s)$ attains the momentum $\mathbf{p}'(\psi_s)$ ($\mathcal{E}'(\psi_s) = \mathcal{E}(\psi_s)$) after scattering directly at the same phase ψ_s of the wave, which can be defined from the generalized consideration of the elastic scattering. Thus, measuring the scattering angle ϑ from a direction $\mathbf{p}(\psi_s)$, with corresponding azimuthal angle φ for the scattered momentum one can write

$$\begin{bmatrix} p'_x(\psi_s) \\ p'_y(\psi_s) \\ p'_z(\psi_s) \end{bmatrix} = p(\psi_s)\widehat{R} \begin{bmatrix} \sin\vartheta\cos\varphi \\ \sin\vartheta\sin\varphi \\ \cos\vartheta \end{bmatrix}, \tag{12.57}$$

where $\widehat{R} = \widehat{R}_z(\varphi_0)\,\widehat{R}_y(\vartheta_0)$, $\widehat{R}_y(\vartheta_0)$ and $\widehat{R}_z(\varphi_0)$ are the basic rotation matrices about the y and z axes, respectively:

$$\widehat{R} = \begin{bmatrix} \cos\vartheta_0\cos\varphi_0 & -\sin\varphi_0 & \sin\vartheta_0\cos\varphi_0 \\ \cos\vartheta_0\sin\varphi_0 & \cos\varphi_0 & \sin\vartheta_0\sin\varphi_0 \\ -\sin\vartheta_0 & 0 & \cos\vartheta_0 \end{bmatrix}. \tag{12.58}$$

As an Oz axis, we take the wave propagation direction ν, θ_0 is the polar angle and φ_0 is the azimuthal angle in the wave polarization plane.

At the third stage, the electron again interacts only with the wave, moving in the wave field with the momentum and energy defined from (12.47)–(12.49):

$$\mathbf{p}_{\perp f}(\psi) = \mathbf{p}'(\psi_s) - e\frac{\mathbf{A}(\psi_s) - \mathbf{A}(\psi)}{c}, \tag{12.59}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \nu\mathbf{p}_f(\psi) = \nu\mathbf{p}'(\psi_s) + \frac{1}{2c\Lambda'}\Big[& e^2\left(\mathbf{A}(\psi_s) - \mathbf{A}(\psi)\right)^2 \\ & -2ce\mathbf{p}'(\psi_s)\left(\mathbf{A}(\psi_s) - \mathbf{A}(\psi)\right)\Big], \end{aligned} \tag{12.60}$$

$$\mathcal{E}_f(\psi) = \mathcal{E}(\psi_s) + c\nu\left(\mathbf{p}(\psi) - \mathbf{p}'(\psi_s)\right), \tag{12.61}$$

where

$$\Lambda' = \mathcal{E}_f(\psi) - c\nu\mathbf{p}_f(\psi) = \mathcal{E}(\psi_s) - c\nu\mathbf{p}'(\psi_s). \tag{12.62}$$

The mean energy of an electron in the wave field after the scattering will be

$$\left\langle \mathcal{E}_f(\psi) \right\rangle = \mathcal{E}(\psi_s) + \frac{1}{2\Lambda'} \times \left[e^2 \left(\mathbf{A}^2(\psi_s) + \left\langle \mathbf{A}^2 \right\rangle \right) - 2ce\mathbf{p}'(\psi_s)\mathbf{A}(\psi_s) \right]. \tag{12.63}$$

The energy change due to SB can be calculated as a difference of mean energy in the field before and after the scattering:

$$\Delta\mathcal{E}\left(\vartheta, \varphi, \psi_s, \mathbf{p}_0\right) = \left\langle \mathcal{E}_f(\psi) \right\rangle - \left\langle \mathcal{E}(\psi) \right\rangle_i .$$

Taking into account (12.55) and (12.63), we obtain:

$$\Delta\mathcal{E} = e^2 \frac{\mathbf{A}^2(\psi_s) + \left\langle \mathbf{A}^2 \right\rangle}{2} \left(\frac{1}{\Lambda'} - \frac{1}{\Lambda} \right) - \frac{ec\mathbf{p}'(\psi_s)\mathbf{A}(\psi_s)}{\Lambda'} + \frac{ec\mathbf{p}(\psi_s)\mathbf{A}(\psi_s)}{\Lambda}. \tag{12.64}$$

For the energy absorbed by a single electron per unit time from the EM wave due to SB process on the scattering centers, one can write

$$W = \frac{n_i}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} d\psi_s \int \mathrm{v}\left(\psi_s\right) \Delta\mathcal{E} d\sigma(\vartheta, p(\psi_s)), \tag{12.65}$$

where $\mathrm{v}\left(\psi_s\right) = c^2 p(\psi_s)/\mathcal{E}(\psi_s)$ is the velocity of an electron in the wave field, $p(\psi_s) = \sqrt{\mathcal{E}^2(\psi_s) - m^2c^4}/c$ is the momentum, and $d\sigma(\vartheta, p(\psi_s))$ is the differential cross section of the elastic scattering in the potential field $U\left(r\right)$. Taking into account the fact that the main contribution in the integral (12.65) comes from the small-angle scatterings, one can write

$$W = \frac{n_i}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} d\psi_s \int \mathrm{v}\left(\psi_s\right) \frac{\partial^2 \Delta\mathcal{E}}{\partial^2\vartheta} d\sigma_{\mathrm{tr}}(\vartheta, p(\psi_s)), \tag{12.66}$$

where

$$d\sigma_{\mathrm{tr}}(\vartheta, p(\psi_s)) = (1 - \cos\vartheta)\, d\sigma(\vartheta, p(\psi_s)) \tag{12.67}$$

is the transport differential cross section. For the Coulomb scattering centers with potential energy

$$U\left(r\right) = \frac{Ze^2}{r}$$

of electron interaction with the ion of charge Ze, one can use the relativistic cross section for elastic scattering at small angles

$$d\sigma(\vartheta, p) = \frac{4\left(Ze^2\right)^2}{p^2 \mathrm{v}^2 \vartheta^4}, \tag{12.68}$$

and make integration over ϑ and φ to obtain

$$W = n_i Z^2 e^4 \int_0^{2\pi} d\psi_s \frac{m^2 c^2}{\Lambda^3} \left[e^2 \frac{\mathbf{A}^2(\psi_s) + \left\langle \mathbf{A}^2 \right\rangle}{2m^2 c^4} \right.$$
$$\left. \times \left(\mathcal{E}(\psi_s)\Lambda - m^2 c^4 \right) + ce\mathbf{p}(\psi_s)\mathbf{A}(\psi_s) \right] \frac{\mathcal{E}(\psi_s)}{p^3(\psi_s)} L_{\mathrm{cb}}, \tag{12.69}$$

where

$$L_{\mathrm{cb}} = \ln \left(\frac{2\rho_{\max}}{\rho_{\min}} \right)^2 \tag{12.70}$$

is the Coulomb logarithm. The latter can be calculated taking $\rho_{\min} = \max\left\{2Ze^2/\mathrm{v}p, \hbar/p\right\}$ as a lower limit of the impact parameter, while for the upper limit we assume $\rho_{\max} = \min\left\{\mathrm{v}/\omega, \mathrm{v}/\omega_p\right\}$. Here, $\hbar$ is the Plank's constant and $\omega_p = \sqrt{4\pi n_e e^2/m}$ is the plasma frequency. Taking into account (12.44), (12.50), and (12.69) for the absorption coefficient, we obtain:

$$\alpha = \frac{n_i n_e Z^2 e^4}{I} \int d\mathbf{p}_0 f\left(\mathbf{p}_0\right) \int_0^{2\pi} d\psi_s \left[e^2 \frac{\mathbf{A}^2(\psi_s) + \left\langle \mathbf{A}^2 \right\rangle}{2m^2 c^4} \right.$$
$$\left. \times \left(\mathcal{E}(\psi_s)\Lambda - m^2 c^4 \right) + ce\mathbf{p}(\psi_s)\mathbf{A}(\psi_s) \right] \frac{m^2 c^2 \mathcal{E}(\psi_s)}{\Lambda^3 p^3(\psi_s)} L_{\mathrm{cb}}, \tag{12.71}$$

where

$$I = (1 + \zeta^2)\omega^2 A_0^2 / 8\pi c.$$

is the intensity of the laser beam. Thus, (12.71) represents the nonlinear inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption coefficient α for an EM radiation field of arbitrary intensity and polarization, for a homogeneous ensemble of electrons of concentration n_e, with the arbitrary distribution function $f(\mathbf{p}_0)$ over momenta $\mathbf{p}_0$. From (12.71) one can obtain the absorption coefficient in the well known nonrelativistic limit. Indeed, in (12.71) one can pass to the nonrelativistic limit as follows:

$$\frac{e^2 \mathbf{A}^2(\psi_s)}{m^2 c^4} \to 0, \quad \mathcal{E}(\psi_s) \to mc^2, \quad \Lambda \to mc^2, \quad p\left(\psi_s\right) \to m\mathrm{v}\left(\psi_s\right),$$

which yields

$$\alpha = \frac{n_i n_e Z^2 e^4}{I} \int d\mathbf{p}_0 f(\mathbf{p}_0) \int_0^{2\pi} d\psi_s \frac{e}{c} \mathbf{p}(\psi_s) \mathbf{A}(\psi_s) \frac{1}{p^3(\psi_s)} L_{\mathrm{cb}}. \qquad (12.72)$$

For certainty, we will consider the laser field of linear polarization. Introducing the interaction parameter $\zeta_E = eE_0/(p_0\omega)$ and angle ϑ_E between $\mathbf{E}_0$ and $\mathbf{p}_0$ for the absorption rate, we will obtain:

$$\alpha = \frac{n_i n_e Z^2 e^4}{I} \int d\mathbf{p}_0 \int_0^{2\pi} d\psi_s f(\mathbf{p}_0)$$
$$\times \frac{\zeta_E \sin\psi_s \cos\vartheta_E + \zeta_E^2 \sin^2\psi_s}{p_0 \left(1 + \zeta_E^2 \sin^2\psi_s + 2\zeta_E \sin\psi_s \cos\vartheta_E\right)^{3/2}} L_{\mathrm{cb}}. \qquad (12.73)$$

Formula (12.73) coincides with the known nonrelativistic result.

12.6 Asymptotic Formulas for Plasma Nonlinear Absorption at Arbitrary Large Intensities

In general, analytical integration over momentum $\mathbf{p}_0$ and scattering phase ψ_s in (12.71) is impossible, and one needs the numerical integration to obtain the nonlinear inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption coefficient of plasma α for EM radiation of arbitrary large intensities. For the latter, it is convenient to represent the absorption coefficient (12.71) in the form of dimensionless quantities:

$$\frac{\alpha}{\alpha_0} = \frac{1}{2\pi(1+\zeta^2)\xi_0^2} \int d\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0 \overline{f}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0\right) \int_0^{2\pi} d\psi_s \frac{\gamma(\psi_s)}{\overline{p}^3(\psi_s)\overline{\Lambda}^3}$$
$$\times \left(\frac{\xi^2(\psi_s) + \left\langle \xi^2(\psi_s) \right\rangle}{2} \left(\gamma(\psi_s)\overline{\Lambda} - 1\right) + \overline{\mathbf{p}}_0 \xi(\psi_s) + \xi^2(\psi_s) \right) L_{\mathrm{cb}}. \qquad (12.74)$$

Here

$$\alpha_0 = 4Z^2 r_e^3 \lambda^2 n_i n_e, \qquad (12.75)$$

and r_e is the classical electron radius. In (12.74), the dimensionless momentum, energy, and temperature were introduced as follows:

$$\overline{\mathbf{p}} = \frac{\mathbf{p}}{mc}, \ \gamma(\psi_s) = \frac{\mathcal{E}(\psi_s)}{mc^2}, \ T_{\mathrm{n}} = \frac{k_B T}{mc^2},$$

and the dimensionless relativistic intensity parameters of the EM wave

$$\xi(\psi_s) = \xi_0(\widehat{\mathbf{e}}_1 \cos\psi_s + \widehat{\mathbf{e}}_2\zeta \sin\psi_s).$$

The scaled relativistic distribution function is

$$\overline{f}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0\right) = \frac{1}{4\pi T_{\mathrm{n}} K_2(T_{\mathrm{n}}^{-1})} \exp\left(-\frac{\gamma_0}{T_{\mathrm{n}}}\right).$$

For the lower limit of the impact parameter in the Coulomb logarithm, one can write

$$\rho_{\min} = \max\left\{\frac{2Zr_e}{\overline{p}^2(\psi_s)}\gamma(\psi_s), \frac{\lambda_c}{\overline{p}(\psi_s)}\right\}, \tag{12.76}$$

where λ_c is the electron Compton wavelength.

It is well known that the kinematics of an electron in the field of a strong EM wave essentially depends on the polarization of the wave (see, Chap. 1). In particular, for the particle initially at rest, in the circularly polarized wave, energy $\gamma(\psi_s)$, and momentum $\overline{p}\,(\psi_s)$ are constants, since $\xi^2(\psi_s) = \mathrm{const}$. Meanwhile in the linearly polarized wave, $p\,(\psi_s)$ oscillates and as a consequence small values of $\overline{p}\,(\psi_s)$ give the main contribution in (12.74). The latter leads to more complicated behavior of the dynamics of SB at the linear polarization of a stimulating strong wave. Besides in the case of circularly polarized wave, thanks to azimuthal symmetry, one can make a step forward in analytical calculation and obtain an explicit formula for the absorption coefficient at superstrong laser fields. Thus, taking into account azimuthal symmetry in the case of circularly polarized wave, one can make integration over phase ψ_s, which results in

$$\frac{\alpha}{\alpha_0} = \frac{1}{2}\int d\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0 \overline{f}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0\right)\left(\gamma\left(\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0\right)\overline{\Lambda} + \frac{\overline{p}_0}{\xi_0}\sin\vartheta_0\cos\varphi_0\right) \times \frac{\gamma\left(\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0\right)}{\overline{\Lambda}^3\overline{p}^3\left(\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0\right)} L_{\mathrm{cb}}, \tag{12.77}$$

where

$$\gamma\left(\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0\right) = \gamma_0 + \frac{1}{2\overline{\Lambda}}\left[\xi_0^2 + 2\overline{p}_0\xi_0\sin\vartheta_0\cos\varphi_0\right], \tag{12.78}$$

$$\overline{p}(\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0) = \sqrt{\gamma^2(\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0) - 1}. \tag{12.79}$$

At the large $\xi_0^2 \gg 1$, taking into account (12.78) and (12.79), from (12.77) one can obtain

$$\alpha = \frac{\alpha_0}{\xi_0^2}\int d\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0 \overline{f}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p}}_0\right)\frac{1}{\overline{\Lambda}} L_{\mathrm{cb}}, \tag{12.80}$$

where $L_{\mathrm{cb}} \sim \ln \xi_0$.

Formula (12.80) shows the suppression of the SB rate with an increase of the wave intensity. Ignoring weak logarithmic dependence, we see that the absorption coefficient is inversely proportional to the laser intensity: $\alpha \sim 1/\xi_0^2$. For the large ξ_0^2, the dependence of the absorption coefficient on temperature comes from $\overline{\Lambda}$ in (12.80). In particular, for initially nonrelativistic plasma $T_n \ll 1$ in (12.80) one can put $\overline{\Lambda} \simeq 1$, which gives

$$\alpha \equiv \alpha_C = \frac{\alpha_0}{\xi_0^2} L_{cb}. \tag{12.81}$$

The relation for the absorption coefficient in the case of linearly polarized wave is complicated and even for large ξ_0 one can not integrate it analytically. Therefore, for the analysis we have performed numerical investigations, making also analytic interpolation. For the numerical simulations in the Coulomb logarithm we have taken $Z = 10$, $\hbar\omega = 1$ eV. Taking into account the weak logarithmic dependence of the normalized absorption coefficient (12.74) on Z and ω through L_{cb}, the obtained results are universal, since for the wide range of parameters $L_{cb} \approx 25 - 30$.

Numerical calculation of the inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption coefficient (12.74) has been made at large values of laser fields and high temperatures of electrons. In Fig. 12.1 total scaled rate α/α_0 of inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption (in arbitrary units) of linearly polarized laser radiation in Maxwellian plasma versus the dimensionless relativistic invariant parameter of the wave intensity for various plasma temperatures. As is seen from this figure, the SB rate is suppressed with an increase of the wave intensity, and for large values of ξ_0 it exhibits a tenuous dependence on the plasma temperature.

Numerical calculations show that in the case of circularly polarized wave the absorption coefficient α decreases as $1/\xi_0^2$ in accordance with the analytical result (12.80). To clarify the range of applicability of the asymptotic formula (12.81) in Fig. 12.2, the density plot of the total rate of inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption scaled to asymptotic rate α_C as a function of the plasma temperature and the intensity parameter ξ_0 is shown for circular polarization of the wave. As is seen in the wide

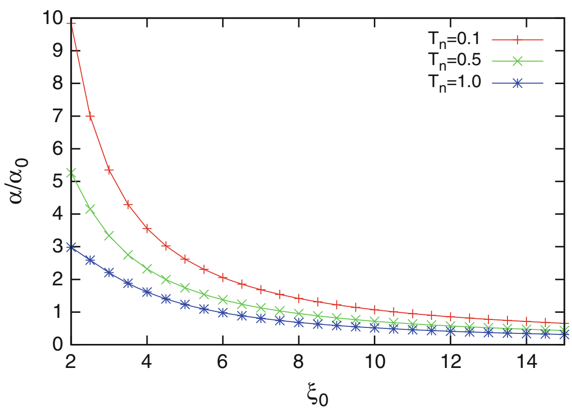


Fig. 12.1 (Color online) Total scaled rate of inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption (in arbitrary units) of linearly polarized laser radiation in Maxwellian plasma versus the dimensionless relativistic invariant parameter of the wave intensity for various plasma temperatures

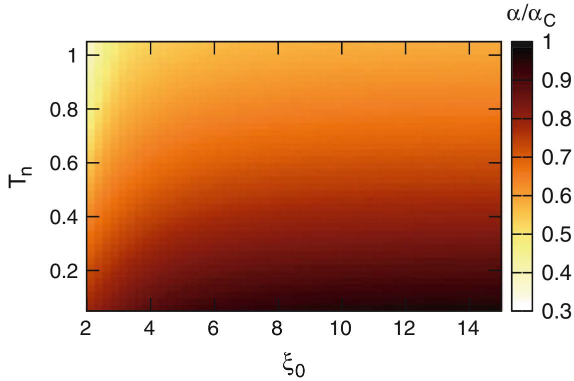


Fig. 12.2 (Color online) Density plot of the total rate of inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption scaled to asymptotic rate α_C (in arbitrary units), as a function of the plasma temperature (in units of an electron rest energy mc^2) and the dimensionless relativistic invariant parameter of the circularly polarized laser beam

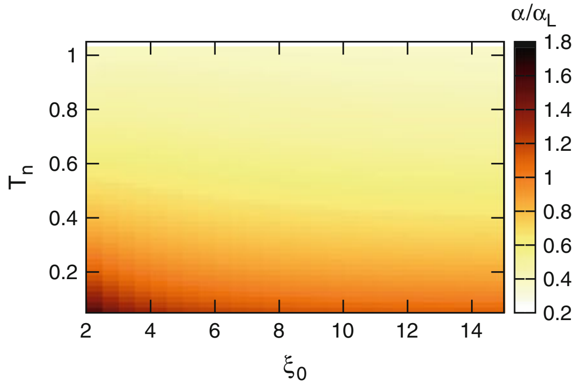


Fig. 12.3 (Color online) Density plot of the total rate of inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption scaled to asymptotic rate α_L (in arbitrary units), as a function of the plasma temperature (in units of an electron rest energy mc^2) and the dimensionless relativistic invariant parameter of the linearly polarized laser beam

range of T_n and ξ_0 one can apply asymptotic formula (12.81). In the case of the wave linear polarization from Fig. 12.1 with the interpolation, we have seen that α decreases as $1/\xi_0^{5/4}$ and exhibits a tenuous dependence on the plasma temperature. Making analog with the case of circular polarization, for the large $\xi_{0,}$ we interpolate α by the following formula:

$$\alpha \simeq \alpha_L = \frac{\alpha_0}{2\xi_0^{5/4}} L_\mathrm{cb}. \tag{12.82}$$

As is seen from Fig. 12.3, in the case of linear polarization and for the moderate temperatures, with the well-enough accuracy one can apply the asymptotic rate (12.82).

Laser assisted electron–ion collisions have two important effects on the plasma. First of all, they are responsible for the absorption of energy via inverse bremsstrahlung. Second, thermalization of particles' energy proceeds via collisions. For the description of thermalization processes one should solve self-consistent kinetic equations. The obtained results can be applied to the underdense plasma $\omega > \omega_p$, as well as to the overdense $\omega < \omega_p$ plasma if one considers interaction of the laser beam with ultrathin (comparable to skin depth) plasma targets of solid densities. In both cases, one should take into account the applicability condition of the low-frequency approximation (12.56), which for a plasma reads:

$$\lambda \gg \lambda_D, \tag{12.83}$$

where $\lambda_D = \sqrt{k_b T/4\pi n_e e^2 Z}$ is the Debye screening length:

$$\lambda_D[\mathrm{cm}] = 7.43 \times 10^2 \times \sqrt{\frac{T[\mathrm{eV}]}{Zn_e[\mathrm{cm}^{-3}]}}. \tag{12.84}$$

In the presence of the laser field, electron–ion binary collisions take place with the effective frequency ν_{eff}:

$$\nu_{eff} = \frac{p_0^2 \mathrm{v}_0}{\langle p\rangle^2 \langle \mathrm{v}\rangle}\nu_{ei}, \tag{12.85}$$

where $\langle p\rangle^2$ and $\langle \mathrm{v}\rangle$ are the mean values of $p^2(\psi)$ and v (ψ) in the laser field, respectively, defined by (12.47)–(12.49), and

$$\nu_{ei} = \frac{2\pi Z^2 e^4 n_i}{p_0^2 \mathrm{v}_0} L_{\mathrm{cb}}. \tag{12.86}$$

is the field free collision frequency. During the time of the order of ν_{eff}^{-1}, the thermalization of the electrons' energy in plasma occurs, hence, our consideration is valid when the pulse duration τ of an EM wave is restricted by the relation $\tau < \nu_{eff}^{-1}$. Note that, the last condition can be satisfied even at the solid densities ($n_e \sim 10^{24}\ \mathrm{cm}^{-3}$) for superstrong laser fields $\xi_0 > 1$ ($\langle \mathrm{v}\rangle \to c$) when $\tau < 200$ fs.

We have neglected quantum effects, which for elementary free-free transitions in the strong laser fields can be essential. The quantum effects which are relevant for the considering processes are due to the photon quantum recoil and electron spin. The quantum recoil can be essential at $\hbar\omega > k_B T$, and when at the energy exchange with a radiation field, a few photons take part. This situation will be considered in the next paragraph. For low-frequency and strong laser fields the mean number of absorbed/emitted photons N_m is proportional to the work of the wave field on one wavelength. Since we consider relativistic intensities $\xi_0 \gtrsim 0.1$, we have $N_m > 10^4$, and classical consideration is justified.

Regarding electron spin effects. As is well known, the spin effects in the scattering cross-section yield significantly different values compared to the classical result for the backward scatterings where, however, the cross section values are considerably small. Thus, for the total cross section, the contribution of backward scattering is small and the main contribution comes from the small-angle scatterings and for angles $\vartheta \ll 1/\left(1 - \mathrm{v}^2/c^2\right)^{1/2}$ one can use the classical relativistic Rutherford differential cross section at small angles (12.68).

Under the same circumstances, large-angle scatterings may be important for inverse-bremsstrahlung giving rise to anomalous absorption. The latter takes place for nonrelativistic electron trajectories repeatedly oscillating close to an ion, where large energy exchange with the laser field takes place. The same mechanism of large energy exchange takes place at a high-order harmonic generation process, where the photoelectron recollides with the parent ion. At the laser intensities $\xi > 0.1$, relativistic effects become essential and relativistic trajectories prevent the particle from repeatedly oscillating close to the ion. This is connected with the conventional effect of the relativistic drift of an electron due to the magnetic field of a strong EM wave (see (12.47)–(12.49)). In the relativistic laser fields, irrespective to its initial state, the particle acquires large momentum along the wave propagation direction and the small-angle scattering approximation is more justified than that in the nonrelativistic case.

Regarding underdense plasma, there are several instabilities which can be developed on a time scale shorter than the pulse duration. Hence, the pulse duration τ of an EM wave should also satisfy the condition

$$\tau < \mu_m^{-1}, \tag{12.87}$$

where μ_m is the maximal increment of the instability of the plasma in the strong laser field. At relativistic laser intensities, the most fast growing instabilities are Raman side-scatter ones. The increments of these instabilities can be estimated as

$$\mu_m \sim \omega \left(\frac{\omega_p}{\omega}\right)^{2/3}. \tag{12.88}$$

12.7 Microscopic Quantum Theory of Absorption of Powerful X-Ray in Plasma

Let us now consider, the microscopic relativistic quantum theory of plasma (as classical as well as and quantum) nonlinear interaction with superstrong laser fields and nonlinear absorption process of powerful shortwave radiation in plasma on the base of the particle density matrix for description of electrons-ions collisions in plasma, in the strong EM wave field. The latter is described by (1.51) and the ions are assumed to be at rest and being either randomly or nonrandomly distributed in plasma, the static potential field of which (for nucleus/ion -as a scattering center- the recoil momentum is neglected) is described by the scalar potential $(A^{(e)}(x) = (\varphi(\mathbf{r}), 0))$

$$\varphi(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{i}^{N_i} \varphi_i(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_i), \tag{12.89}$$

where φ_i is the potential of a single ion situated at the position $\mathbf{R}_i$, and N_i is the number of ions in the interaction region.

To investigate the quantum dynamics of SB we need the quantum kinetic equations for a single particle density matrix, which can be derived arising from the second quantized formalism and using the exact solution of the Dirac equation (1.94)–(1.97).

Cast in the second quantization formalism, the Hamiltonian is given by (8.5) with the interaction Hamiltonian

$$\mathcal{H}_{sb} = \frac{1}{c\,(2\pi)^3} \int \widehat{\Psi}^{+} V\,(\mathbf{q})\, e^{-i\mathbf{q}\mathbf{r}} \widehat{\Psi}\, d\mathbf{q} d\mathbf{r}, \tag{12.90}$$

where

$$V\,(\mathbf{q}) = \int \sum_{i}^{N_i} e\varphi_i\,(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_i)\, e^{-i\mathbf{q}\mathbf{r}} d\mathbf{r}. \tag{12.91}$$

We pass to the Furry representation and write the Heisenberg field operator of the electron in the form of an expansion in the quasistationary Volkov states (1.97)

$$\widehat{\Psi}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sum_{\sigma} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{\Pi}} \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar} E_{\Pi} t} \Psi_{\mathbf{\Pi}\sigma}(\mathbf{r}, t), \tag{12.92}$$

where $d\Phi_{\mathbf{\Pi}} = \mathcal{V} d^3\mathbf{\Pi} / \,(2\pi\hbar)^3$ ($\mathcal{V}$ is the quantization volume).

Taking into account (8.8), (8.7), (8.6) and (1.97), the second quantized Hamiltonian can be expressed in the form

$$\mathcal{H} = \mathcal{H}_0 + \mathcal{H}_{sb}\,(t)\,. \tag{12.93}$$

The first term in (12.93) is the Hamiltonian of Volkov dressed electron field

$$\mathcal{H}_0 = \sum_{\sigma} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{\Pi}} E_{\mathbf{\Pi}} \widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma} \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}, \tag{12.94}$$

and the second term

$$\mathcal{H}_{sb}\,(t) = \sum_{\sigma\sigma'} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{\Pi}} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{\Pi}'} M_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma';\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}\,(t)\, \widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma'} \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma} \tag{12.95}$$

is the interaction Hamiltonian describing the SB process with amplitudes

$$M_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma';\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}\,(t) = \frac{1}{\mathcal{V}} \sum_{s=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-is\omega t} \mathcal{M}^{(s)}_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma';\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}, \tag{12.96}$$

$$\mathcal{M}^{(s)}_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma';\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma} = \frac{V\left(\mathbf{q}_s\right)}{2c\sqrt{E_{\mathbf{\Pi}}E_{\mathbf{\Pi}'}}}\overline{u}_{\sigma'}(p')$$
$$\times\left[\widehat{\epsilon}_0 B_s + \left(\frac{e\widehat{B}_{1s}\widehat{k}\widehat{\epsilon}_0}{2c(kp')} + \frac{e\widehat{\epsilon}_0\widehat{k}\widehat{B}_{1s}}{2c(kp)}\right)\right.$$
$$\left.+\frac{e^2(k\epsilon_0)B_{2s}}{2c^2(kp')(kp)}\widehat{k}\right]u_{\sigma}(p). \tag{12.97}$$

In (12.97) the vector functions $B^{\mu}_{1s} = (0, \mathbf{B}_{1s})$ and scalar functions B_s, B_{2s} are expressed via the generalized Bessel functions $G_s(\alpha, \beta, \varphi)$ (1.56) by the formulas (10.60)–(10.63). The definition of the arguments α, β, φ are given by (1.103)–(1.105).

Thus, in order to develop microscopic relativistic quantum theory of the multiphoton inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption of ultrastrong shortwave laser radiation in plasma we need to solve the Liouville-von Neumann equation for the density matrix $\widehat{\rho}$:

$$\frac{\partial\widehat{\rho}}{\partial t} = \frac{i}{\hbar}\left[\widehat{\rho}, \mathcal{H}_0 + \mathcal{H}_{sb}\left(t\right)\right], \tag{12.98}$$

with the initial condition

$$\widehat{\rho}(-\infty) = \widehat{\rho}_G. \tag{12.99}$$

Here $\widehat{\rho}_G$ is the density matrix of the grand canonical ensemble:

$$\widehat{\rho}_G = \exp\left[\frac{1}{T_e}\left(\Omega + \sum_{\sigma}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{\Pi}}\left(\mu - E_{\mathbf{\Pi}}\right)\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}\right)\right]. \tag{12.100}$$

In (12.100) T_e is the electrons temperature in energy units, μ is the chemical potential, and Ω is the grand potential. Note that the initial one-particle density matrix in momentum space is

$$\rho_{\sigma_1\sigma_2}(\mathbf{\Pi}_1, \mathbf{\Pi}_2, -\infty) = \mathrm{Tr}\left(\widehat{\rho}_G\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi}_2,\sigma_2}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi}_1,\sigma_1}\right)$$
$$= n\left(E_{\mathbf{\Pi}_1}\right)\frac{(2\pi\hbar)^3}{\mathcal{V}}\delta\left(\mathbf{\Pi}_1 - \Pi_2\right)\delta_{\sigma_1,\sigma_2}, \tag{12.101}$$

where

$$n\left(E_{\mathbf{\Pi}_1}\right) = \frac{1}{\exp\left[\frac{E_{\Pi_1}-\mu}{T_e}\right] + 1}. \tag{12.102}$$

We consider, Volkov dressed SB Hamiltonian $\mathcal{H}_{sb}\left(t\right)$ as a perturbation. Accordingly, we expand the density matrix as

$$\widehat{\rho} = \widehat{\rho}_G + \widehat{\rho}^{(1)}.$$

Then taking into account the relations

$$\left[\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma'}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}, \widehat{\rho}_G\right] = \left(1 - e^{\frac{1}{T_e}(E_{\mathbf{\Pi}'} - E_{\mathbf{\Pi}})}\right)\widehat{\rho}_G\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma'}\widehat{a}'_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}$$

and

$$[\widehat{\rho}_G, \mathcal{H}_0] = 0,$$

for $\widehat{\rho}^{(1)}$ we obtain

$$\widehat{\rho}^{(1)} = \frac{1}{i\hbar}\int_{-\infty}^{t} dt' \sum_{\sigma\sigma'} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{\Pi}} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{\Pi}'} M_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma';\Pi,\sigma}\left(t'\right)$$
$$\times\, e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(t'-t)(E_{\mathbf{\Pi}'} - E_{\mathbf{\Pi}})}\left(1 - e^{\frac{1}{T_e}(E_{\mathbf{\Pi}'} - E_{\mathbf{\Pi}})}\right)\widehat{\rho}_G\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{\Pi}',\sigma'}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{\Pi},\sigma}. \quad (12.103)$$

Now with the help of this solution one can calculate the desired physical characteristics of the SB process. In particular, for the energy absorption rate by the electrons due to the inverse stimulated bremsstrahlung one can write

$$\frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dt} = \mathrm{Tr}\left(\widehat{\rho}^{(1)}\frac{\partial\mathcal{H}_{sb}(t)}{\partial t}\right). \quad (12.104)$$

It is more convenient to represent the rate of the inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption via the mean number of absorbed photons by per electron, per unit time:

$$\frac{dN_{\gamma e}}{dt} = \frac{1}{\hbar\omega N_e}\frac{d\mathcal{E}}{dt}, \quad (12.105)$$

where N_e is the number of electrons in the interaction region. Taking into account decomposition

$$\left(1 - e^{\frac{1}{T_e}(E_1 - E_2)}\right)\mathrm{Tr}\left(\widehat{\rho}_G\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{1}}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{2}}\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{3}}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{4}}\right) = \left(1 - e^{\frac{1}{T_e}(E_1 - E_2)}\right) n_1\left(1 - n_2\right)\delta_{23}\delta_{14},$$

with the help of (12.103), (12.104), (12.105), and (12.97) for large t we obtain

$$\frac{dN_{\gamma e}}{dt} = \sum_{s=1}^{\infty}\frac{dN_{\gamma e}(s)}{dt}, \quad (12.106)$$

where the partial s-photon absorption rates are given by the formula

$$\frac{dN_{\gamma e}(s)}{dt} = \frac{8\pi s}{\hbar N_e \mathcal{V}^2} \int\int \frac{d\Phi_{\mathbf{\Pi}} d\Phi_{\mathbf{\Pi}'}}{E_{\mathbf{\Pi}} E_{\mathbf{\Pi}'}} |V(\mathbf{q}_s)|^2 \left|\mathcal{B}^{(s)}_{\mathbf{\Pi}';\mathbf{\Pi}}\right|^2$$
$$\times \delta(E_{\mathbf{\Pi}'} - E_{\mathbf{\Pi}} + s\hbar\omega)\left(1 - e^{\frac{1}{T_e}(E_{\mathbf{\Pi}'} - E_{\mathbf{\Pi}})}\right)$$
$$\times n(E_{\mathbf{\Pi}'})(1 - n(E_{\mathbf{\Pi}})), \qquad (12.107)$$

where

$$\left|\mathcal{B}^{(s)}_{\mathbf{\Pi}';\mathbf{\Pi}}\right|^2 = \left\{\left|\mathcal{E}B_s - \frac{e(\mathbf{pB}_{1s})\omega}{(kp)c} + \frac{e^2\omega B_{2s}}{2c^2(kp)}\right|^2\right.$$
$$\left. - \frac{\hbar^2\mathbf{q}_s^2c^2}{4}|B_s|^2 + \frac{e^2\hbar^2[\mathbf{kq}_s]^2}{4(kp')(kp)}\left[|\mathbf{B}_{1s}|^2 - \mathrm{Re}\left(B_{2s}B_s^*\right)\right]\right\}, \qquad (12.108)$$

and $\delta(x)$ is the Dirac delta function that expresses the energy conservation law in SB process. The obtained expression for the absorption rate is general and applicable to arbitrary polarization, frequency and intensity of the wave field. This formula is applicable for a grand canonical ensemble and is always positive. With the help of (12.107) and (12.106) one can calculate the nonlinear inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption rate for Maxwellian, as well as for degenerate quantum plasmas.

For the obtained absorption rate (12.107) one need to concretize the ionic potential $V(\mathbf{q}_s)$. For s single ion of charge number Z_a we will assume screening Coulomb potential with radius of screening $\varkappa_e^{-1}$ as a function of the plasma temperature and density of electrons n_e:

$$\varkappa_e = \left(4\pi e^2 \frac{\partial n_e}{\partial \mu}\right)^{1/2}.$$

Thus, taking into account the plasma quasi-neutrality ($Z_a N_i = N_e$), we have

$$|V(\mathbf{q}_s)|^2 = N_e \frac{16\pi^2 Z_a e^4}{\left(\mathbf{q}_s^2 + \varkappa_e^2\right)^2}. \qquad (12.109)$$

Integrating in (12.107) over $E_{\mathbf{\Pi}'}$ we will obtain the following expression for partial absorption rates:

$$\frac{dN_{\gamma e}(s)}{dt} = \frac{2Z_a e^4 s}{\pi^3\hbar^3c^4} \int_{m^*c^2+s\hbar\omega} dE_{\mathbf{\Pi}} d\Omega d\Omega' \frac{|\mathbf{\Pi}|\,|\mathbf{\Pi}'|\left|\mathcal{B}^{(s)}_{\mathbf{\Pi}';\mathbf{\Pi}}\right|^2}{\left(\hbar^2\mathbf{q}_s^2 + \hbar^2\varkappa_e^2\right)^2}$$
$$\times \left(1 - e^{-\frac{s\hbar\omega}{T_e}}\right) n(E_{\Pi} - s\hbar\omega)(1 - n(E_{\mathbf{\Pi}})), \qquad (12.110)$$

where

$$\left|\mathbf{\Pi}'\right| = \sqrt{|\mathbf{\Pi}|^2 + \hbar^2 s^2 \mathbf{k}^2 - 2\frac{E_{\mathbf{\Pi}} s \hbar\omega}{c^2}}.$$

In general, the analytical integration over solid angles Ω, Ω' and energy is impossible, and one should make numerical integration. The latter for initially nonrelativistic plasma and at the photon energies $\hbar\omega > T_e$, is convenient to made introducing a dimensionless parameter

$$\chi_0 = \frac{eE_0}{\omega\sqrt{m\hbar\omega}}, \tag{12.111}$$

which is the ratio of the amplitude of the momentum transferred by the wave field to the momentum at the one-photon absorption. In (12.111) the dimensionless parameter $E_0 = \omega A_0\sqrt{1+g^2}/c$ is the amplitude of the electric field strength. Hence, the average intensity of the wave expressed via the parameter χ_0, can be estimated as

$$I_{\chi_0} = \chi_0^2 \times 1.74 \times 10^{12}\,\mathrm{W\,cm^{-2}}\left[\frac{\hbar\omega}{\mathrm{eV}}\right]^3.$$

The intensity I_{χ_0} strongly depends on the photon energy $\hbar\omega$. At $\chi_0 \sim 1$, the multiphoton effects become essential. Particularly, for X-ray photons with energies $\varepsilon_\gamma \equiv \hbar\omega = 0.1 - 1$ keV, multiphoton interaction regime can be achieved at the intensities $I_{\chi_0} \sim 10^{18} - 10^{21}\,\mathrm{W/cm^2}$. In the opposite limit $\chi_0 \ll 1$, the multiphoton effects are suppressed.

For all calculations as a reference sample we take ions with $Z_a = 13$ (fully ionized Aluminum) and consider plasma of solid densities. To show the dependence of the inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption rate on the laser radiation intensity, in Fig. 12.4 the total rate (12.106) with (12.110) for circularly polarized wave in Maxwellian plasma versus the parameter χ_0 for various photon energies are shown. Here, we take $n_e = 10^{23}\,\mathrm{cm^{-3}}$ and $T_e = 100$ eV ($n_e \propto e^{\mu/T_e}$ and $\varkappa_e = \left(4\pi e^2 n_e/T_e\right)^{1/2}$). As is

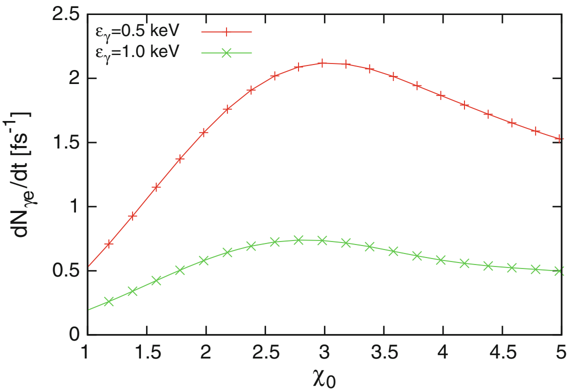


Fig. 12.4 (Color online) Total rate of inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption for circularly polarized wave in Maxwellian plasma versus the dimensionless parameter χ_0 for various photon energies at $n_e = 10^{23}\,\mathrm{cm^{-3}}$, and $T_e = 100$ eV

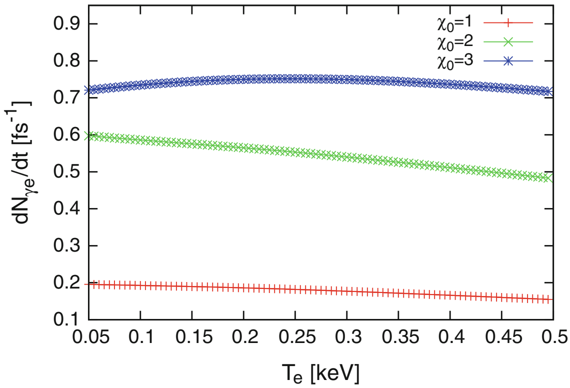


Fig. 12.5 (Color online) Total rate of inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption of circularly polarized wave in Maxwellian plasma, as a function of the plasma temperature is shown for various wave intensities at $\varepsilon_\gamma = 1$ keV, $Z_a = 13$, $n_e = 10^{23}$ cm^{-3}

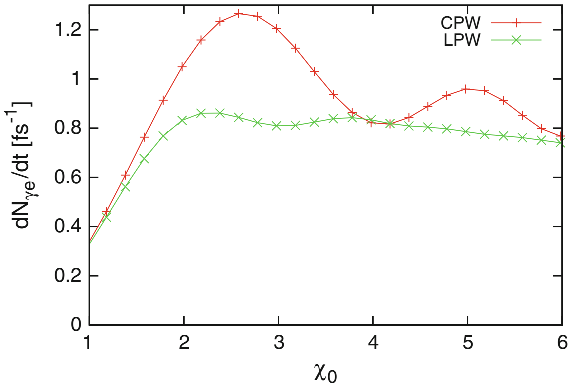


Fig. 12.6 (Color online) Total rate of inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption for circularly and linearly polarized waves in degenerate plasma versus the parameter χ_0 at $\varepsilon_F = 11.7$ eV , $Z_a = 13$, and $T_e = 0.1\varepsilon_F$

seen from this figure for the large values of χ_0 the rate exhibits a tenuous dependence on the wave intensity.

To show the dependence of the considered process on the plasma temperature, in Fig. 12.5 we plot total rate of the inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption of circularly polarized laser radiation in Maxwellian plasma, as a function of the plasma temperature for various wave intensities at $\varepsilon_\gamma = 1$ keV, and $n_e = 10^{23}$ cm^{-3} . The similar picture holds for LPW. Here for the large values of χ_0 we have a weak dependence on the temperature, which is a result of the laser modified scattering of electrons irrespective of its' initial state.

We have also made calculations for a degenerate quantum plasma with Fermi energy $\mu \simeq \varepsilon_F = 11.7$ eV (Aluminum). The total rate of inverse-bremsstrahlung absorption for circularly and linearly polarized waves in degenerate plasma versus the parameter χ_0 at $T_e = 0.1\varepsilon_F$ ($\varkappa_e = \left(6\pi e^2 n_e/\varepsilon_F\right)^{1/2}$) is shown in Fig. 12.6. As is seen from these figure, the rate strictly depends on the wave polarization, and for the large values of χ_0 it is saturated. Note that, our consideration is valid when the pulse duration τ of an EM wave is restricted by the condition $\tau < \nu_{eff}^{-1}$, where ν_{eff}^{-1} is the time scale during which the thermalization of the electrons energy in plasma occurs. In the presence of a laser field, the electron–ion binary collisions take place with the effective frequency

$$\nu_{eff} \simeq \frac{2\pi Z_a e^4 n_e}{m^2 \langle \mathrm{v} \rangle^3} L_{\mathrm{cb}},$$

where L_{cb} is the Coulomb logarithm, and $\langle \mathrm{v} \rangle$ is the mean values of electrons velocity in the laser field. For moderate intensities one can write $\langle \mathrm{v} \rangle \simeq \chi_0 \sqrt{\varepsilon_\gamma / m}$. For the considered parameters we have $\nu_{eff} \simeq 10^{14} - 10^{15}\,\mathrm{s}^{-1}$. Thus, the pulse duration should be $\tau < 1$ fs. The latter is satisfied for X-ray sources. As is seen from Figs. 12.4 and 12.6, for the pulse durations $\tau \lesssim 1$ fs one can achieve an one absorbed X-ray photon by per electron, which means that in plasma of solid densities one can reach the plasma heating of high temperatures by X-ray laser already with the intensity parameter $\xi_0 \sim 0.1$.

Bibliography

J.J. Gerstein, M.N. Mittleman, Phys. Rev. A **12**, 1840 (1975)
M. Gavrila, A. Maquet, V. Veniard, Phys. Rev. A 32, 2537 (RC) (1985)
L. Schlessinger, J. Wright, Phys. Rev. A **20**, 1934 (1979)
A. Rosenberg et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **45**, 1787 (1980)
W.J. Karzas, R. Latter, Astrophys. J. Suppl. Ser. **6**, 167 (1967)
R.K. Osborn, Phys. Rev. A **5**, 1660 (1972)
G.A. Mourou, T. Tajima, Science **331**, 41 (2011)
H. Schwoerer et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **86**, 2317 (2001)
M. Roth et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **86**, 436 (2001)
N. Naumova et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **102**, 025002 (2009)
R. Battesti, C. Rizzo. Rep. Prog. Phys. **76**, 016401 (2013)
A. Pukhov, Nature Phys. **2**, 439 (2006)
G.A. Mourou, T. Tajima, S.V. Bulanov, Rev. Mod. Phys. **78**, 309 (2006)
H. Chen et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **102**, 105001 (2009)
D. Marcuse, Bell System Tech. J. **41**, 1557 (1962)
V.P. Silin, Sov. Phys. JETP **20**, 1510 (1965)
F.V. Bunkin, M.V. Fedorov, Sov. Phys. JETP **22**, 844 (1966)
L.S. Brown, R.L. Goble, Phys. Rev. **173**, 1505 (1968)
G.J. Pert, J. Phys. A **5**, 506 (1972)
H.K. Avetissian et al., J. Phys. B **25**, 3217 (1992)
G.M. Fraiman, V.A. Mironov, A.A. Balakin, Phys. Rev. Lett. **82**, 319 (1999)
A.V. Brantov et al., Phys. Plasmas **10**, 3385 (2003)
H.J. Kull, V.T. Tikhonchuk, Phys. Plasmas **12**, 063301 (2005)
M. Moll et al., Phys. Plasmas **19**, 033303 (2012)
IYu. Kostyukov, J.-M. Rax, Phys. Rev. Lett. **83**, 2206 (1999)
T. Ditmire et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **78**, 3121 (1997)
O. Smirnova, M. Spanner, M. Ivanov, Phys. Rev. A **77**, 033407 (2008)
M. Lewenstein et al., Phys. Rev. A **49**, 2117 (2009)
T.M. Jr Antonsen, P. Mora, Phys. Fluids B **5**, 1440 (1993)
T.M. Jr Antonsen, P. Mora, Phys. Fluids B 5, 1440 (1993)
A.P. Mora, T.M. Jr, Antonsen. Phys. Plasmas **4**, 217 (1997)

P. Emma et al., Nature Photon. **4**, 641 (2010)
T. Ishikawa et al., Nature Photon. **6**, 540 (2012)
H. Mimura et al., Nat. Commun. **5**, 3539 (2014)
H.K. Avetissian, B.R. Avchyan, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. A **90**, 053812 (2014)
J.I. Gersten, M.H.M. Mittleman, Phys. Rev. A **12**, 1840 (1975)
N.M. Kroll, K.M. Watson, Phys. Rev. A **8**, 804 (1973)
H.K. Avetissian et al., J. Phys. B **23**, 4207 (1990)
M.V. Fedorov, Sov. Phys. JETP **24**, 529 (1967)
J.Z. Kaminski, J. Phys. A **18**, 3365 (1985)
H.K. Avetissian et al., J. Phys. B **25**, 3201 (1992)
H.K. Avetissian et al, 25, 3217 (1992)
H.K. Avettissian, A.G. Ghazaryan, G.F. Mkrtchian, J. Phys. B **46**, 205701 (2013)
T.R. Hovhannisyan, A.G. Markossian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Eur. Phys. J. D **20**, 17 (2002)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. A **56**, 4905 (1997)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. A **59**, 549 (1999)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. E **65**, 046505 (2002)

Chapter 13
High Harmonic Generation and Coherent X-Ray–γ-Ray Radiation in Relativistic Atomic-Ionic Systems

Abstract The increasing interest in the processes of intense laser–atom/ion interaction is largely attributed to the problem of high harmonic generation (HHG) and coherent shortwave radiation implementation. One of the most promising mechanisms for the creation of coherent XUV sources and intense attosecond pulses—in particular for the control of electrodynamic processes on attosecond time scales—is just the nonlinear process of HHG in the field of strong laser radiation. To reach a far X-ray region in this process, one needs the atoms or ions with a large nuclear charge and laser fields of ultrahigh intensities at which the nondipole interaction and relativistic effects become essential. Depending on the interaction parameters, harmonic generation may occur via bound-bound and bound-free-bound transitions through the continuum spectrum. For a light scattering process via bound-bound transitions, the resonant interaction is of interest. Apart from its pure theoretical interest as a simple model, the resonant interaction regime enables to significantly increase the efficiency of frequency conversion. For high harmonics generation via bound-bound states, one needs multiphoton resonant transition. The latter is effective when the atomic system has a mean dipole moment in the stationary states, or the energies of the two states of a three-level atomic system are close enough to each other and there is a nonvanishing transition dipole moment between these states. A typical example of such configuration is the hydrogen-like atomic system which because of the random degeneracy of an orbital moment the atom has a mean dipole moment in the excited stationary states. To reach the far X-ray region, atoms or ions with the large nuclear charges are necessary. In this case, the relativistic effects should be taken into account, specifically, the fine structure of the hydrogen-like atoms or ions. Thus, it is of interest to study the harmonic generation from hydrogen-like ions at multiphoton resonant excitation, when only a few resonant states are involved in the radiation generation processes. Here one can expect further upconversion of existing X-ray FEL frequencies. At ultrahigh intensities, the state of an ionized electron becomes relativistic already at the distances less than a laser wavelength irrespective of its initial state, hence the investigation of the laser-atom/ion induced processes require relativistic consideration. On the other hand, the relativistic drift of a photoelectron due to the magnetic field of a strong electromagnetic wave becomes the major inhibiting factor in the relativistic regime of HHG. Due to this drift, the significant HHG suppression takes place, so that to overcome this negative effect we need to find such

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_13

mechanisms of the laser-atom/ion interaction in the relativistic domain of HHG at which the relativistic drift of the magnetic field is compensated. A good example for the latter is a standing wave configuration formed by the two counterpropagating laser beams of the same frequencies. At the linear polarization of the waves, the effect of resulting magnetic field of the standing wave is vanished near the stationary maxima (at the waves' circular polarization, one can achieve the fully vanishing of the resulting longitudinal magnetic force; however, the latter takes place at the adiabatic turn-on of the waves which is not valid for the supershort laser pulses of relativistic intensities). In contrast to a standing wave configuration with approximate uniform periodic electric field, there is a scheme of HHG in underdense plasma with a single laser pulse of relativistic intensities, which in the own frame of reference (moving with the pulse group velocity in plasma) is transformed into the uniform periodic electric field exactly, i.e., the wave magnetic field in this case vanishes completely. At that the dispersion law of the plasma allows a principal possibility to eliminate the negative effect of the magnetic drift for relativistic HHG in two boundary cases—nonrelativistic and ultrarelativistic if one use copropagating ultraintense laser and ion beams of the same velocities. The HHG processes with relativistic effects and generation of coherent X-ray radiation in relativistic atomic-ionic systems with the large charge number of the nucleus by multiphoton excitation, are considered in this chapter. In this chapter, we will also consider a possibility for generation of coherent γ-ray at the collective annihilation decay of positronium (Ps) atoms in the Bose–Einstein condensate state. Being a pure leptonic atom, Ps is of interest for revealing of QED effects with the great precision. Besides, Ps is a compound of the matter-antimatter and may play a central role for achieving a fundamental understanding of diverse phenomena in many branches of contemporary physics ranging from the elementary particle physics to astrophysics, and condensed-matter physics. At last, Ps atoms are connected with the cosmic electron–positron annihilation radiation first detected from the Galactic center direction during the 1970s. Since these times, the International Gamma-Ray Astrophysics Laboratory has greatly refined these measurements and has showed that the line center is at $\sim$511 keV with the annihilation rate $\sim 3 \times 10^{42}$ electron-positron pairs per second. The data analysis suggests that annihilations through Ps formation dominate (in average 90 %), resulting in a narrow 511 keV line. Nevertheless, it follows to mention that the origin of these positrons and formation of Ps atoms in astrophysical conditions remains unknown.

13.1 Relativistic HHG in the Counterpropagating Waves Field

As was mentioned above, a standing wave configuration formed by the two counterpropagating laser beams of linear polarizations is of interest due to the simplicity to realize a field structure providing incomparable large HHG rates in the relativistic regime. At the lengths, much smaller than a wavelength of a pump wave, the effective field of the standing wave may be approximated by the uniform periodic electric field.

Let two linearly polarized plane electromagnetic waves with the carrier frequency ω and amplitude of the electric field $\mathbf{E}_a$

$$\mathbf{E}_1 = \mathbf{E}_a \cos(\omega t - \mathbf{kr}), \quad \mathbf{E}_2 = \mathbf{E}_a \cos(\omega t + \mathbf{kr}), \tag{13.1}$$

propagating in the opposite directions in vacuum, interplay with the hydrogen-like ions having the charge number of the nucleus Z_a. We will assume that $\lambda \gg a$, where a is the characteristic size of the atomic system and λ is the wavelength of a pump wave (for the HHG this condition is always satisfied).

At the photoionization of an atom/ion in the strong traveling wave field taking into account the relativistic drift due to the magnetic field, one can expect that the probability of the ionized electron recombination with the ionic core could be non-negligible only if the electron is initially born with a nonzero velocity oppositely directed to the incident laser beam. The probability of tunneling ionization with the nonzero initial velocity of the photoelectron is given by the quantum mechanical tunneling theory:

$$W_{ion} \propto e^{-2\left(Z_a^2 + \mathrm{v}^2\right)^{3/2}/(3E)}, \tag{13.2}$$

where v is the photoelectron initial velocity, and E is the electric field strength of the wave (here and below, unless stated otherwise, we employ atomic units). However, according to (13.2), the ionization probability falls off exponentially if this velocity v is larger than the characteristic atomic velocities, irrespective of its direction. Since we study the case of superstrong laser fields with $\xi \equiv E/c\omega \sim 1$ when the energy of the interaction of an electron with the field over a wavelength becomes comparable to electron rest energy, the required velocities becomes comparable with the light speed c ($c = 137\,\text{a.u.}$). Hence, the probability (13.2) in such fields is practically zero. Therefore, in considering the case of a standing wave formed by the laser beams (13.1), a significant input in the HHG process will be conditioned by the ions situated near the stationary maxima of the standing wave. For this points the magnetic fields of the counterpropagating waves cancel each other. Since the HHG is essentially produced at the lengths $l \ll \lambda$ near the electric field maximums, we will assume the effective field to be:

$$\mathbf{E}(t) = \widehat{\mathbf{e}} E_0 \cos \omega t, \tag{13.3}$$

where $E_0 = 2E_a$, and $\widehat{\mathbf{e}}$ is the unit polarization vector.

We will consider ions with the charge $Z_a \ll 137$ and photons frequencies: $\omega \ll c^2$ restricting laser intensities by the values $\xi \sim 1$. Under these circumstances, one can ignore the spin-interaction of a photoelectron with the external fields, as well as the spin-orbital interaction in the field-free states and solve the Klein–Gordon equation instead of Dirac equation. To find out the relativistic probabilities of HHG in the field

(13.3) on the base of the Klein–Gordon equation, we arise from the Feshbach-Villars representation:

$$i\frac{\partial \Psi}{\partial t}=\left(\left(\widehat{\tau}_3+i\widehat{\tau}_2\right)\frac{\widehat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2}+c^2\widehat{\tau}_3+\frac{Z_a}{r}-\mathbf{rE}\left(t\right)\right)\Psi, \tag{13.4}$$

where the matrixes

$$\widehat{\tau}_2=\begin{pmatrix}0 & -i\\ i & 0\end{pmatrix}, \widehat{\tau}_3=\begin{pmatrix}1 & 0\\ 0 & -1\end{pmatrix},$$

and $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ is the operator of the kinetic momentum ($\widehat{\mathbf{p}}=-i\nabla$). Here Ψ is the two-component column vector

$$\Psi=\begin{pmatrix}\varphi\\ \chi\end{pmatrix} \tag{13.5}$$

and (13.4) represents a set of the two coupled differential equations of the first order. The Feshbach-Villars representation (13.4) of Klein–Gordon equation is more convenient, since we have unitary evolution similar to Schrödinger equation, and separation of the particle–antiparticle degree of freedom along with a single particle interpretation of Ψ are more explicit. In this representation, the mean value of an operator $\widehat{L}$ is defined by the following way:

$$\langle\widehat{L}\rangle=\int\Psi^{\dagger}\widehat{\tau}_3\widehat{L}\Psi d\mathbf{r}.$$

We denote the atomic-bound states by ψ_{η}, where η indicates the set of quantum numbers that characterizes the state. The time-dependent wave function can be expanded as

$$|\Psi\rangle=\left(C_0\left(t\right)\psi_{\eta_0}+\int d\mathbf{p}C\left(\mathbf{p},t\right)\Phi_{\mathbf{p}}\left(\mathbf{r}\right)\right)e^{-i\varepsilon t}. \tag{13.6}$$

Here ψ_{η_0} is the initial bound state's wave function with the energy ε. Since we consider hydrogen-like atoms/ions with $Z_a \ll 137$, the initial velocities of atomic electrons are nonrelativistic, and as an initial-state wave function ψ_{η_0} in the expansion (13.6) one can take the ground-state's wave function for the hydrogen-like atom in the nonrelativistic limit:

$$\psi_{\eta_0}=\frac{Z_a^{3/2}}{\sqrt{\pi}}\begin{pmatrix}1\\ 0\end{pmatrix}e^{-Z_a r}, \tag{13.7}$$

with the corresponding energy: $\varepsilon=c^2-Z_a^2/2$. Concerning the relativism of the photoelectron continuum states $\Phi_{\mathbf{p}}\left(\mathbf{r}\right)$, it should be noted that already at the wave intensities $\xi\sim 10^{-1}$ the relativistic effects become observable, and the continuum states of the photoelectron should be described in the scope of the relativistic theory. Thus, in the expansion (13.6), we will take the Klein–Gordon free solutions with the positive energies $\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}) = \sqrt{c^2\mathbf{p}^2 + c^4}$:

$$\Phi_{\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{2(2\pi)^{3/2}}\sqrt{\frac{1}{c^2\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p})}}\begin{pmatrix} c^2 + \mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}) \\ c^2 - \mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}) \end{pmatrix} e^{i\mathbf{pr}}. \tag{13.8}$$

In the expansion (13.6), we have excluded the negative energy states, since the input of the particle–antiparticle intermediate states will lead only to small corrections to the process considered. Neglecting the free-free transitions due to the Coulomb field and the depletion of the ground state, i.e., assuming $C_0(t) \simeq 1$, the Klein–Gordon equation for the amplitudes $C(\mathbf{p}, t)$ reads as

$$\frac{\partial C(\mathbf{p}, t)}{\partial t} + \mathbf{E}(t)\frac{\partial C(\mathbf{p}, t)}{\partial \mathbf{p}} + i(\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}) - \varepsilon)C(\mathbf{p}, t) = i\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{p})E(t), \tag{13.9}$$

where $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{p}) = \int \Phi_{\mathbf{p}}^{\dagger}\widehat{\tau}_3(\widehat{\mathbf{e}}\mathbf{r})\psi_{\eta_0}d\mathbf{r}$ is the atomic dipole matrix element for the bound-free transition. Without loss of generality, one can take the polarization vector $\widehat{\mathbf{e}}$ aligned with the z axis of spherical coordinates and for the matrix element $\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{p})$ we obtain

$$\mathcal{D}(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{2^{5/2}Z_a^{5/2}}{\pi c}\frac{c^2 + \mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p})}{\sqrt{\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p})}}\frac{ip_z}{\left(p^2 + Z_a^2\right)^3}. \tag{13.10}$$

Then, from (13.9) for the probability amplitudes $C(\mathbf{p}, t)$, we obtain

$$C(\mathbf{p}, t) = i\int_0^t dt'\mathcal{D}\left(\mathbf{p} + \frac{1}{c}\left(\mathbf{A}(t) - \mathbf{A}(t')\right)\right)E(t')$$

$$\times \exp\left\{-i\int_{t'}^{t}\left[\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p} + \frac{1}{c}\left(\mathbf{A}(t) - \mathbf{A}(t'')\right)\right) - \varepsilon\right]dt''\right\}, \tag{13.11}$$

where $\mathbf{A}(t) = -\widehat{\mathbf{e}}c^2\xi\sin\omega t$ is the vector potential of the resulting electric field of the standing wave.

For the harmonic radiation perpendicular to the polarization direction $\widehat{\mathbf{e}}$, one needs the mean value of the z component of the electron current density

$$J(t) = \frac{1}{2}\int\left(\Psi^{+}\widehat{\tau}(\widehat{\mathbf{e}}\widehat{\mathbf{p}}\Psi) - (\widehat{\mathbf{e}}\widehat{\mathbf{p}}\Psi^{+})\widehat{\tau}\Psi\right)d\mathbf{r}, \tag{13.12}$$

where $\widehat{\tau} = \widehat{\tau}_3(\widehat{\tau}_3 + i\widehat{\tau}_2)$. Using (13.6), (13.11), (13.12), and neglecting the contribution by the free-free transitions, we obtain

$$J(t) = i\int d\mathbf{p}\int_0^t dt'\mathcal{J}\left(\mathbf{p}-\frac{1}{c}\mathbf{A}(t)\right)\mathcal{D}\left(\mathbf{p}-\frac{1}{c}\mathbf{A}(t')\right)E(t')$$

$$\times\exp\left\{-iS\left(\mathbf{p},t,t'\right)+i\varepsilon\left(t-t'\right)\right\}+\text{c.c.}, \tag{13.13}$$

where

$$S(\mathbf{p},t,t') = \int_{t'}^{t}\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}-\frac{1}{c}\mathbf{A}\left(t''\right)\right)dt''$$

$$= \int_{t'}^{t}\sqrt{c^2\left(\mathbf{p}+\widehat{\epsilon}c\xi\,\sin\omega t''\right)^2+c^4}dt'' \tag{13.14}$$

is the relativistic classical action of an electron in the field, and the function $\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p})$ is defined as

$$\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{Z_a^{5/2}}{\pi}\frac{2^{3/2}}{\sqrt{\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p})}}\frac{cp_z}{\left(Z_a^2+p^2\right)^2}. \tag{13.15}$$

As in the nonrelativistic case, the HHG rate is mainly determined by the exponential in the integrand of (13.13) with the exact relativistic classical action. The integral over the intermediate momentum $\mathbf{p}$ and time t' can be calculated using the saddle-point method. The saddle momentum is determined by the equation

$$\frac{\partial S(\mathbf{p},t,t')}{\partial\mathbf{p}} = 0, \tag{13.16}$$

which for momentum components gives $p_{x,y} = 0$, and the z component of the momentum (p_s) is given by the solution of the equation:

$$\int_{t'}^{t}\frac{p_s+c\xi\,\sin\omega t''}{\sqrt{\left(p_s+c\xi\,\sin\omega t''\right)^2+c^2}}dt'' = 0. \tag{13.17}$$

In contrast to nonrelativistic and relativistic cases for a traveling wave, this equation cannot be solved analytically and requires numerical solution. Integrating the latter over $\mathbf{p}$, for the current density we obtain

$$J(t) = (2\pi)^{3/2}\sqrt{i}\int_0^t dt'\frac{e^{-i\left(S(\mathbf{p}_s,t,t')-\varepsilon\left(t-t'\right)\right)}}{\sqrt{\left|\det S''_{\mathbf{pp}}\right|}}E\left(t'\right)$$

$$\times \mathcal{D}\left(\mathbf{p}_s - \frac{1}{c}\mathbf{A}\left(t'\right)\right) \mathcal{J}\left(\mathbf{p}_s - \frac{1}{c}\mathbf{A}\left(t\right)\right) + \text{c.c.}, \tag{13.18}$$

where

$$\det S''_{\mathbf{pp}} = \left(\int_{t'}^{t} \frac{d\tau}{\gamma\left(t', \tau; \xi\right)}\right)^2 \int_{t'}^{t} \frac{d\tau}{\gamma^3\left(t', \tau; \xi\right)},$$
$$\gamma\left(t', \tau; \xi\right) = \left(1 + \left(p_s + c\xi \sin\omega\tau\right)^2 / c^2\right)^{1/2}. \tag{13.19}$$

At $\xi \ll 1$, for $\det S''_{\mathbf{pp}}$ one can recover nonrelativistic result: $\det S''_{\mathbf{pp}} = \left(t - t'\right)^3$.

The complex saddle times t_s are the solutions of the following equation:

$$\frac{\partial S(\mathbf{p}_s, t, t')}{\partial t'} + \varepsilon = 0, \tag{13.20}$$

which may be expressed by the transcendental equation

$$\sqrt{c^2\left(p_s + c\xi \sin\omega t_s\right)^2 + c^4} - \varepsilon = 0. \tag{13.21}$$

Then expressing the saddle time as $t_s = t_b + i\delta$, with $\omega\delta \ll 1$, one can obtain the saddle momentum

$$p_s = -c\xi \sin\omega t_b, \tag{13.22}$$

and the imaginary part of the saddle time

$$\delta = \frac{Z_a}{\left|E\left(t_b\right)\right|}, \tag{13.23}$$

where $E\left(t_b\right) = c\xi\omega\cos\omega t_b$. Taking into account (13.22), from (13.17) for the real part of the saddle time we obtain:

$$\int_{t_b}^{t} \frac{\sin\omega t'' - \sin\omega t_b}{\sqrt{1 + \xi^2\left(\sin\omega t'' - \sin\omega t_b\right)^2}} dt'' = 0. \tag{13.24}$$

As usual, t_b is interpreted as the birth time of the photoelectron which returns at the moment t to the core and generates harmonic radiation. The transition dipole moment has singularity at the saddle times and the integration has been made with the help of the formula

$$\int g(x) \frac{e^{-\lambda f(x)}}{\left(x - x_0\right)^{\nu}} dx \simeq i^{\nu} \sqrt{\pi}\, g(x_0) \left[2 f''\left(x_0\right)\lambda\right]^{\frac{\nu-1}{2}} \frac{\Gamma\left(\nu/2\right) e^{-\lambda f(x_0)}}{\Gamma\left(\nu\right)}. \tag{13.25}$$

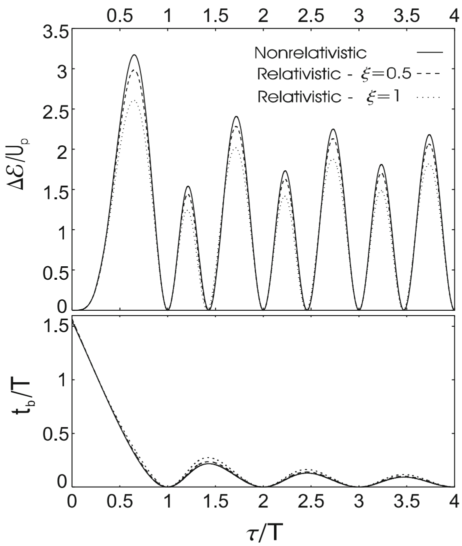


Fig. 13.1 The photoelectron energy gain in units of ponderomotive energy $U_p = c^2\xi^2/4$ and ionization time versus the electron time evolution in the continuum for the various laser intensities (t_b and τ are normalized to the standing wave period T)

Thus, taking into account (13.16–13.25), we obtain the ultimate formula for current density:

$$J(t) = \sum_{t_b} C_{\text{ion}}(t_b)\, C_{\text{pr}}(t, t_b)\, C_{\text{rec}}(t, t_b) + \text{c.c.}. \tag{13.26}$$

The formula (13.26) is the analogous to the nonrelativistic formula for the dipole moment in the three-step model. Here the summation is carried out over the solutions of (13.24). The tunneling ionization amplitude $C_{\text{ion}}(t_b)$ is

$$C_{\text{ion}}(t_b) = \frac{i}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{Z_a^{\frac{3}{2}}}{E(t_b)} e^{-\frac{Z_a^3}{3|E(t_b)|}}. \tag{13.27}$$

The propagation amplitude is given by the expression

$$C_{\text{pr}}(t, t_b) = \frac{(2\pi)^{3/2}}{\sqrt{i}} \frac{\exp\{-iS(\mathbf{p}_s, t, t_b) + i\varepsilon(t - t_b)\}}{\sqrt{\left|\det S''_{\mathbf{pp}}\right|}}, \tag{13.28}$$

and the recombination amplitude is:

$$C_{\text{rec}}(t, t_b) = \mathcal{J}\left(\mathbf{p}_s - \frac{1}{c}\mathbf{A}(t)\right). \tag{13.29}$$

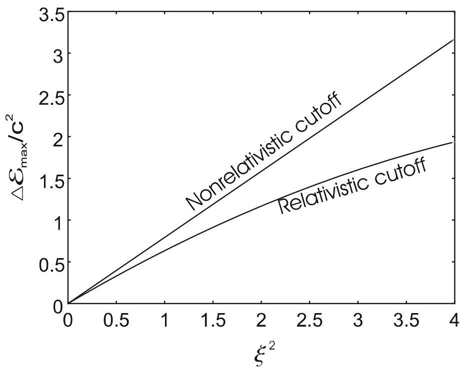


Fig. 13.2 Maximum energy gain of photoelectron (in units of its rest energy c^2) which defines the cutoff frequency as a function of the dimensionless relativistic parameter of the wave intensity

The formula (13.26) has been obtained assuming tunneling ionization regime, which is valid for the fields $E \ll E_{at}$, where $E_{at} = Z_a^3$ ($Z_a^3 m_e^2 |e|^5 / \hbar^4$ in usual units) is the atomic characteristic electric field strength.

As is seen from (13.27), (13.28), and (13.29), except of the normalization amplitude (see, (13.15) and $C_{\text{rec}}(t, t_b)$), the relativistic effects are considerable only for propagation amplitude $C_{\text{pr}}(t, t_b)$, which is evident since photoelectron may become relativistic (for large ξ) irrespective of its initial state.

13.2 Relativistic High-Order Harmonic Emission

In the considered relativistic theory, the saddle time and energy gain essentially depend on the intensity of a pump wave. The latter leads to the modification of the HHG spectrum compared with nonrelativistic one. In Fig. 13.1, we present the solution of (13.24) for the born times t_b which are limited to a quarter of the laser period. Figure 13.1 also illustrates the photoelectron energy gain (in units of ponderomotive energy $U_p = c^2\xi^2/4$) versus the electron's time evolution in the continuum (return time) for various laser intensities. The cutoff energies are defined by the maximal kinetic energy gain of the photoelectron in the laser field. The latter due to the quasiclassical nature of the wave function $\exp\{-iS_{cl}\}$ corresponds to the maximal kinetic energy gain following the relativistic classical equation of motion for the case when the electron appears in the continuum with zero initial momentum at the moment t_b (and returns at the moment t to the core generating harmonic radiation). In Fig. 13.2, the maximum energy gain of the photoelectron as a function of the relativistic parameter of the wave intensity ξ^2 is displayed. As we see, the relativistic cutoff essentially differs from the nonrelativistic one for $\xi \gtrsim 1$, and the shift of the cutoff position to the lower values of the harmonic order for the same laser intensity becomes evident. Figure 13.1 also reveals the multiplateau character of the harmonic spectrum like to the nonrelativistic one.

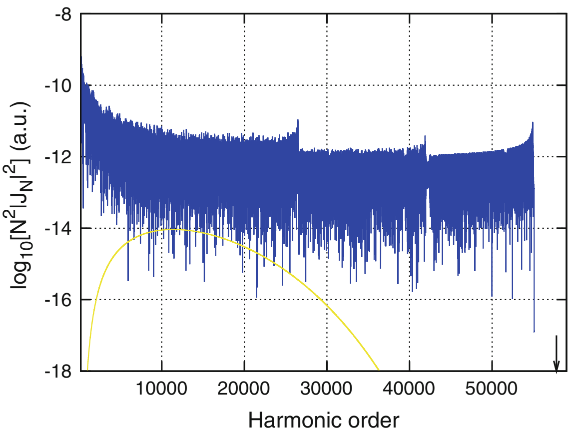


Fig. 13.3 (Color online) Harmonic emission rate via $\log_{10}\left(N^2 |J_N|^2\right)$, as a function of the photon energy (in units of ω), for an ion with $Z_a = 4$, $\xi = 0.47$ (4.72×10^{17} W/cm^2), and frequency $\omega = 0.057$ a.u. (800 nm). The gray (*yellow*) curve represents the HHG spectrum for a traveling wave. The *arrow* shows the position of the harmonic cutoff according to nonrelativistic theory

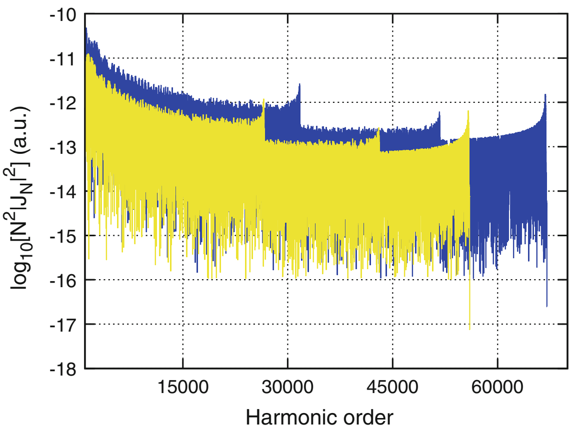


Fig. 13.4 (Color online) Harmonic emission rate as a function of the photon energy (in units of ω) for an ion with $Z_a = 8$ and standing wave of frequency $\omega = 0.184$ a.u.(248 nm). The black (*blue*) line corresponds to standing wave intensity 2.2×10^{19} W/cm^2 ($\xi = 1$); the gray (*yellow*) line corresponds to a standing wave intensity of 1.8×10^{19} W/cm^2 ($\xi = 0.9$)

The emission rate of Nth harmonic is proportional to $|N|^2 |J_N|^2$, where J_N is the Nth Fourier component of the field-induced current density (13.26). To find out J_N, the Fast Fourier Transform algorithm has been used.

Figure 13.3 displays the harmonic emission rate for an ion with $Z_a = 4$ and Ti:sapphire laser ($\lambda = 800$ nm, $\omega = 0.057$ a.u.) with the intensity 4.72×10^{17} W/cm^2 ($\xi = 0.47$). For the comparison, we have also presented the spectrum for a traveling wave. As we see from this figure, with the increase of the laser intensity, the HHG rate for a standing wave field by many orders of magnitude is larger than the HHG rate for a traveling wave.

For large charge numbers of nuclei Z_a, it is more desirable to consider laser fields of higher frequencies. For this reason in Fig. 13.4, we have presented high-order harmonic spectra for KrF laser ($\lambda = 248$ nm, $\omega = 0.184$ a.u.). Here we have taken $Z_a = 8$ for standing wave intensities 2.2×10^{19} W/cm^2 ($\xi = 1$) and 1.8×10^{19} W/cm^2 ($\xi = 0.9$). The cutoff frequencies are $2.62U_p(\xi)$, (0.33 MeV), and $2.7U_p(\xi)$ (0.28 MeV). For these setups, the cutoff positions are in good agreement with the semiclassical analysis (see Fig. 13.2). For the considered values of interaction parameters, the harmonic emission rates for a traveling wave are negligible; meanwhile, the relativistic rates of HHG for a standing wave field at photons energies approaching to MeV region, are considerable.

For efficient HHG, one should overcome the problem connected with the realization of the phase-matched emission of harmonics from different ions. In case of a nonrelativistic HHG with a traveling wave, one can expect phase-matching in principle from total number of ions in the interaction volume; in relativistic HHG, because of magnetic drift, we have to employ a standing wave configuration at which only a small fraction of ions make contribution in HHG that is the area close to antinodes of resultant electric field. Taking into account the propagation effect of counterpropagating pulses and the fact that the tunneling ionization is exponentially small for a single laser pulse (at $E_a = E_0/2$ in (13.2)), the phase-matched harmonic radiation is expected to be propagated in both directions along the pulses' wave-vectors $\mathbf{k}$ and $-\mathbf{k}$ (x axis). The number of coherently emitting ions can be estimated as $N = L_c S N_0$, where N_0 is the density of ions, S is the transverse size of an interaction region, and L_c is the coherence length over which the s-th harmonic can be radiated coherently. For a standing wave configuration, net emission arises from the contribution of the ions situated at the antinodes with dimension $k\Delta x \ll 1$ (in accordance with the our model; let $\Delta x \lesssim 10^{-1}/k$). Hence, the effective coherence length can be estimated to be: $L_c \approx r_0\lambda/20\pi$, where r_0 is the number of antinodes in the standing wave (separated by $\lambda/2$). At short laser pulses, one can assume, e.g., $r_0 \sim 10$ and for coherence length we have: $L_c \approx \lambda/2\pi$. It is evident that in relativistic HHG, the coherence length for a standing wave configuration is much smaller compared with its counterpart for a traveling wave in nonrelativistic HHG (for the latter $L_c \gg \lambda$). However, due to exponential suppression of relativistic harmonics rates in case of a traveling wave, the standing wave configuration is more preferable for ultimate relativistic HHG due to the efficient single-atom emission.

13.3 Relativistic HHG with Copropagating Ultrastrong Laser and Ion Beams in Plasma

As was mentioned above, for HHG in relativistic regime one needs to exclude the relativistic drift of a photoelectron due to the magnetic field of a strong electromagnetic wave, i.e., the magnetic component of a traveling wave. This can be achieved in the plasma-like medium with a refractive index $n_p < 1$. Indeed, let a plane, transverse, and linearly polarized strong EM wave with a frequency $\omega_0 > \omega_p$ propagates in plasma, where ω_p is the effective (in general, taking into account the intensity effect of a strong wave) plasma frequency. Since we study the case of strong laser fields with $\xi \equiv eE/mc\omega_0 \sim 1$, the effective plasma frequency depends on the intensity (ξ^2) of the wave. It is well known that only circularly polarized modes of transverse EM waves may propagate in plasma as pure transverse waves. In case of other polarizations, particularly, for a linear one a longitudinal component (along the wave propagation direction) of the electric field is also generated. However, for two boundary cases of our interest—for cancellation of relativistic magnetic drift effect by traveling wave in HHG process, this longitudinal (E_l) component with great accuracy may be neglected. Thus, when $n_p(\omega_0, \xi^2) \ll 1$ (the group velocity of the wave in plasma in this case is: $v_g = cn_p \ll c$), this longitudinal component $E_l \sim n_p(\omega_0, \xi^2)E$ and, consequently: $|\mathbf{E}_l| \ll |\mathbf{E}|$. The other boundary case corresponds to plasma refractive index: $1 - n_p(\omega_0, \xi^2) \ll 1$ ($\omega_0 \gg \omega_p$ and $\mathrm{v}_g \lessapprox c$). In this case, for the moderate relativism of the laser beam intensities ($\xi^2 < 0.5$), the longitudinal electric field component oscillates with the frequency $2\omega_0$ and the amplitude of this mode can be approximated as $E_{l\,\max} \simeq \omega_p^2 \xi E_{\max}/8\omega_0^2$. Hence, in this case $|\mathbf{E}_l| \ll |\mathbf{E}|$ too (because of small factors $\omega_p^2/\omega_0^2 \ll 1$ and $\xi/8 \ll 1$), and with great accuracy one can assume that the incident transverse linearly polarized wave remains transverse in plasma for both considered cases. So, for the electric and magnetic field strengths, one can write

$$\mathbf{E} = \mathbf{E}_a \cos(\omega_0 t - \mathbf{k}_0 \mathbf{r}), \ \mathbf{H} = \frac{c}{\omega_0} [\mathbf{k}_0 \times \mathbf{E}], \tag{13.30}$$

where $|\mathbf{k}_0| = n_p(\omega_0, \xi^2)\omega_0/c$. As we noted in the Introduction, one can eliminate the relativistic magnetic drift in plasma (via the exact cancellation of the wave magnetic component) considering the copropagating ion beam moving in plasma with a mean velocity V equal to a laser beam group velocity: $\mathrm{V} = cn_p(\omega_0, \xi^2)$. In this case, in the rest frame of the ions (R), the wave vector of a plane pulse $\mathbf{k}' \equiv 0$ and the traveling electromagnetic wave is transformed into the uniform periodic electric field

$$\mathbf{H}' \equiv 0, \ \mathbf{E}' = \mathbf{E}_a \frac{\omega_p}{\omega_0} \cos \omega t',$$

where

$$\omega = \omega_0 \sqrt{1 - n_p^2(\omega_0, \xi^2)} \equiv \omega_p. \tag{13.31}$$

Hence, at $\mathrm{V} = cn_p(\omega_0, \xi^2)$, in the R frame the problem of HHG in plasma is reduced to one in vacuum with the uniform periodic electric field.

When $\omega_0 \gg \omega_p$, one needs relativistic ion beams for cancellation of the relativistic magnetic drift effect in HHG. Concerning the ion beams of requiring relativism with Lorentz factor $\gamma_L = \left(1 - \mathrm{V}^2/c^2\right)^{-1/2} = \omega_0/\omega_p$, note that relativistic ion beams in arbitrary charge states, with the Lorentz factor up to about 30 is supposed to be realized at the new accelerator complex at Gesellschaft für Schwerionenforschung (GSI) (Darmstadt,Germany). In the other boundary case when $n_p(\omega_0, \xi^2) \ll 1$, the laser beam group velocity: $\mathrm{v}_g \ll c$ and consequently the ion beam should be nonrelativistic. Note that an alternative to conventional accelerator ion beams can serve quasimonoenergetic and low emittance ions bunches of solid densities with nonrelativistic energies, generated from ultrathin foils—nanotargets by supershort laser pulses of relativistic intensities. Moreover, in the radiation pressure-dominant regime, acceleration of the ion beams up to relativistic energies is foreseen.

To find out the HHG rate, it is convenient to solve the problem in the rest frame of the ions, and for simplicity, hereafter, we will omit the prime for the quantities in the R frame, writing:

$$\mathbf{E}(t) = \widehat{\mathbf{e}} E_0 \cos \omega t, \tag{13.32}$$

where $\mathbf{E}_0 = \mathbf{E}_a \omega_p / \omega_0$ and $\widehat{\mathbf{e}}$ is the unit polarization vector.

To find out the relativistic probabilities of HHG in the field (13.32), we start from the Dirac equation:

$$i \frac{\partial |\Psi\rangle}{\partial t} = \left(c \widehat{\alpha} \widehat{\mathbf{p}} + \widehat{\beta} c^2 + \frac{Z_a}{r} - \mathbf{r}\mathbf{E}(t) \right) |\Psi\rangle, \tag{13.33}$$

where $\widehat{\alpha}$ and $\widehat{\beta}$ are the Dirac matrices in the standard representation, $\sigma = (\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z)$ are the Pauli matrices and $\hat{\mathbf{p}}$ is the operator of the kinetic momentum ($\widehat{\mathbf{p}} = -i\nabla$). Here and below, unless stated otherwise, we employ atomic units. Without loss of generality, one can take the polarization vector $\widehat{\mathbf{e}}$ aligned with the z axis of the spherical coordinates.

We denote the atomic-bound states by $|\eta\rangle$, where η indicates the set of quantum numbers that characterizes the state: $\eta = \{n, j, l, M\}$. Here n is the principal quantum number, j is the whole moment, l is the orbital moment and M is the magnetic quantum number.

Here it is convenient to expand the time-dependent wave function as

$$|\Psi\rangle = \left(C_0(t) |\eta_0\rangle + \sum_{\mu} \int d\mathbf{p} C_{\mu}(\mathbf{p}, t) |\mathbf{p}, \mu\rangle \right) e^{-i\varepsilon t}, \tag{13.34}$$

where the bispinor wave functions

$$|\mathbf{p}, \mu\rangle = \frac{1}{(2\pi)^{3/2}} \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}) + c^2}{2\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p})}} \begin{pmatrix} \varphi_{\mu} \\ \frac{c(\sigma\mathbf{p})}{\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}) + c^2} \varphi_{\mu} \end{pmatrix} e^{i\mathbf{p}\mathbf{r}} \tag{13.35}$$

are the Dirac free solutions with the energy $\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}) = \sqrt{c^2\mathbf{p}^2 + c^4}$ and polarization states $\mu = 1, -1$:

$$\varphi_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \varphi_{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{13.36}$$

As an initial bound state wave function $|\eta_0\rangle$, we assume the ground-state bispinor wave function for the hydrogen-like ion with the quantum numbers $n = 1$, $j = 1/2$,

$l = 0$, and $M = 1/2$:

$$|\eta_0\rangle = \frac{Z_a^{3/2}}{\sqrt{\pi \Gamma(3-2\epsilon)}} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2-\epsilon} \\ 0 \\ i \cos\theta \sqrt{\epsilon} \\ i \sin\theta e^{i\varphi} \sqrt{\epsilon} \end{pmatrix} (2r Z_a)^{-\epsilon} e^{-Z_a r}. \tag{13.37}$$

Here $\Gamma(x)$ is the Euler gamma function, θ and φ are the polar and azimuthal angles, $\epsilon = 1 - \sqrt{1 - Z_a^2/c^2}$, and $\varepsilon = c^2(1-\epsilon)$ is the energy of the ground state. We consider ions with $Z_a \ll 137$, i.e., $\epsilon \simeq Z_a^2/2c^2 \ll 1$ and photons frequencies: $\omega \ll c^2$. Under the circumstances, one can ignore the spin-orbital interaction in the ground-state and spin flip due to the free-free transitions. In expansion (13.34), we have also excluded the negative energy states, since at the considered intensities the excitation of the Dirac sea and, consequently, the probability of the electron–positron pair production is negligibly small. Neglecting the depletion of the ground state $C_0(t) \simeq 1$ and the free-free transitions due to the Coulomb field, the Dirac equation for the probability amplitude $C_\mathbf{1}(\mathbf{p}, t)$ reads

$$\frac{\partial C_1(\mathbf{p}, t)}{\partial t} + E(t) \frac{\partial C_1(\mathbf{p}, t)}{\partial p_z} + i(\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{p}) - \varepsilon) C_1(\mathbf{p}, t) = i\mathcal{D}_\mathbf{1}(\mathbf{p}) E(t), \tag{13.38}$$

where

$$\mathcal{D}_1(\mathbf{p}) = \langle \mathbf{p}, 1| z |\eta_0\rangle \tag{13.39}$$

is the atomic dipole matrix element for the bound-free transition. The latter can be calculated with the help of the integral

$$\int_0^\pi e^{ic_1 \cos\theta \cos\Theta} J_m(c_1 \sin\theta \sin\Theta) P_l^m(\cos\theta) \sin\theta d\theta$$

$$= \left(\frac{2\pi}{c_1}\right)^{1/2} i^{l-m} P_l^m(\cos\Theta) J_{l+1/2}(c_1),$$

where $P_l^m(\cos\Theta)$ is an associated Legendre polynomial of degree l and order m, J_m is a Bessel function of the order m. Thus, for the atomic dipole matrix element $\mathcal{D}_1(\mathbf{p})$, we have:

$$\mathcal{D}_1(\mathbf{p}) = i \frac{2^{3-\epsilon}}{\pi} \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E} + c^2}{2\mathcal{E}}} \frac{Z_a^{5/2-\epsilon} \Gamma(3-\epsilon)}{\sqrt{\Gamma(3-2\epsilon)}} \frac{p_z}{\left(p^2 + Z_a^2\right)^{3-\epsilon}}$$

$$\times \left[\frac{1}{4c\sqrt{2\epsilon}} \frac{Z_a^{3-\epsilon}}{2p^2} \left(\Upsilon^{3-\epsilon} + \Upsilon^{\dagger 3-\epsilon} - \frac{i\left(p^2 + Z_a^2\right)}{(2-\epsilon) Z_a p} \left(\Upsilon^{2-\epsilon} - \Upsilon^{\dagger 2-\epsilon}\right) \right) \right.$$

$$+\frac{1}{\mathcal{E}+c^2}\sqrt{\frac{1}{2\left(2-\epsilon\right)}}\frac{iZ_a^{3-\epsilon}}{8p}\left(\left(\Upsilon^{3-\epsilon}-\Upsilon^{\dagger 3-\epsilon}\right)-\frac{2i\left(p^2+Z_a^2\right)}{\left(2-\epsilon\right)Z_a p}\left(\Upsilon^{2-\epsilon}+\Upsilon^{\dagger 2-\epsilon}\right)\right.$$

$$\left.-\frac{2\Gamma\left(1-\epsilon\right)}{\Gamma\left(3-\epsilon\right)}\frac{\left(p^2+Z_a^2\right)^2}{Z_a^2 p^2}\left(\Upsilon^{1-\epsilon}-\Upsilon^{\dagger 1-\epsilon}\right)\right)\Bigg], \tag{13.40}$$

where

$$\Upsilon=1-i\frac{p}{Z_a},\ \Upsilon^{\dagger}=1+i\frac{p}{Z_a}. \tag{13.41}$$

Note that at $\epsilon \ll 1$ the matrix element $\mathcal{D}_1\left(\mathbf{p}\right)$ can be approximated as:

$$\mathcal{D}_{\mathbf{1}}\left(\mathbf{p}\right)=\frac{2^{5/2}}{i\pi}\sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E}+c^2}{2\mathcal{E}}}Z_a^{5/2}\frac{p_z}{\left(p^2+Z_a^2\right)^3}. \tag{13.42}$$

Then, from (13.38) for the amplitude $C_{\mathbf{1}}\left(\mathbf{p},t\right)$ we obtain:

$$C_{\mathbf{1}}\left(\mathbf{p},t\right)=i\int_0^t dt'\mathcal{D}_{\mathbf{1}}\left(\mathbf{p}+\frac{1}{c}\left(\mathbf{A}\left(t\right)-\mathbf{A}\left(t'\right)\right)\right)E\left(t'\right)$$

$$\times\exp\left\{-i\int_{t'}^{t}\left[\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{p}+\frac{1}{c}\left(\mathbf{A}\left(t\right)-\mathbf{A}\left(t''\right)\right)\right)-\varepsilon\right]dt''\right\}, \tag{13.43}$$

where $\mathbf{A}\left(t\right)=-\widehat{\mathbf{e}}c^2\xi\sin\omega t$ is the vector potential of the laser field in plasma.

For the harmonic radiation perpendicular to the polarization direction $\widehat{\mathbf{e}}$, one needs the mean value of the z component of the photoelectron current density $J\left(t\right)=c\left\langle\Psi\right|\widehat{\alpha}_z\left|\Psi\right\rangle$. Using (13.34), (13.43), we obtain:

$$J\left(t\right)=i\int d\mathbf{p}\int_0^t dt_1\mathcal{J}_1\left(\mathbf{p}-\frac{1}{c}\mathbf{A}\left(t\right)\right)\mathcal{D}_{\mathbf{1}}\left(\mathbf{p}-\frac{1}{c}\mathbf{A}\left(t_1\right)\right)E\left(t_1\right)$$

$$\times\exp\left\{-iS\left(\mathbf{p},t,t_1\right)+i\varepsilon\left(t-t_1\right)\right\}+\text{c.c.}, \tag{13.44}$$

where the function $S(\mathbf{p}, t, t_1)$ is the relativistic classical action of an electron in the field, given in the Sect. 13.1 of this chapter, by (13.14), and the matrix element $\mathcal{J}_1(\mathbf{p})$ is:

$$\mathcal{J}_1(\mathbf{p}) = c \langle \eta_0 | \widehat{\alpha}_z | \mathbf{p}, 1 \rangle . \tag{13.45}$$

At $\epsilon \ll 1$, for $\mathcal{J}_1(\mathbf{p})$ one can obtain:

$$\mathcal{J}_1(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{2^{1/2} Z_a^{5/2}}{\pi} \sqrt{\frac{\mathcal{E} + c^2}{2\mathcal{E}}} \frac{p_z}{\left(p^2 + Z_a^2\right)^2} \left(1 + \frac{2c^2}{\mathcal{E} + c^2}\right). \tag{13.46}$$

As in the case of a standing wave, the HHG rate is mainly determined by the exponential in the integrand of (13.44) with the exact relativistic classical action $S(\mathbf{p}, t, t_1)$. The integral over the intermediate momentum $\mathbf{p}$ and time t_1 can be calculated by the same way that has been made in Sect. 13.1 of this chapter using the saddle-point method. Therefore, we will not repeat the derivations for calculation of the current density $J(t)$ in (13.44), presented by the formulae (13.16)–(13.29). As appear (13.27), (13.28), and (13.46), the relativistic effects for HHG in plasma, as in the case of a standing wave, are considerable for propagation and recombination amplitudes, which is evident since for large ξ a photoelectron becomes relativistic irrespective of its initial state.

Because of the saddle time and energy gain, nonlinear dependence on the intensity of stimulated laser radiation, the essential modification of the HHG spectrum in relativistic domain, occurs as in the case of a standing wave. Thus, omitting the detailed analysis made in Sect. 13.1, lets us represent only the main results of the numerical simulations for relativistic HHG in plasma with the copropagating ultraintense laser and ion beams moving with the laser pulse group velocity.

Figure 13.5 displays the harmonic emission rate for an ion with $Z_a = 4$ and Nd:GAY laser ($\omega_0 = 0.043$ a.u.) with the intensity 2.47×10^{17} W/cm^2 ($\xi = 0.45$)

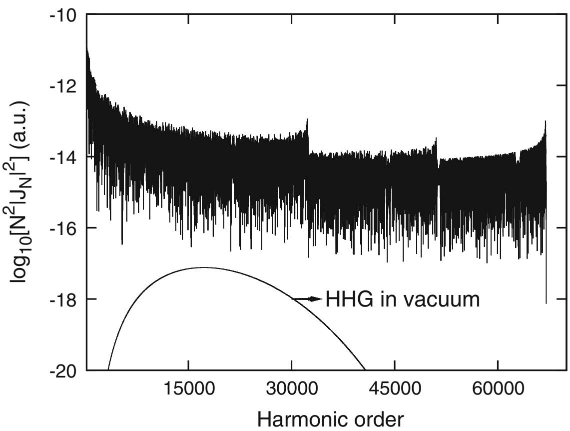


Fig. 13.5 Harmonic emission rate in a plasma via $\log_{10}\left(N^2 |J_N|^2\right)$, as a function of the photon energy (in units of ω), for an ion with $Z_a = 4$, $\xi = 0.45$ (2.47×10^{17} W/cm^2), and frequency $\omega = 0.043$ a.u. The *lower curve* represents the HHG spectrum for a traveling wave in vacuum

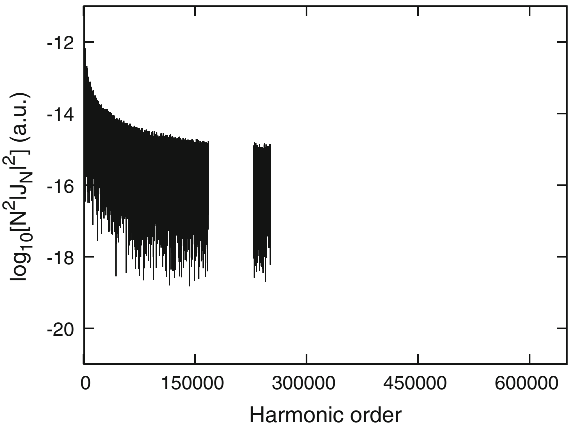


Fig. 13.6 Harmonic emission rate in a plasma as a function of the photon energy (in units of ω) for a moving ion ($Z_a = 2$) with $\gamma_L = \omega_0/\omega_p = 10$ and wave of frequency $\omega_0 = 0.057$ a.u. The relativistic invariant parameter of the wave intensity is taken to be $\xi = 0.5$

in plasma of the density $N_e \simeq 10^{21}$ cm^{-3} (in this case $v_g \ll c$). For comparison, we also include the spectrum for a traveling wave in vacuum. As we see from this figure, with the increase of the laser intensity, the HHG rate in plasma is larger by many orders of magnitude than the HHG rate for a traveling wave in vacuum. The cutoff frequency is $\mathcal{E}_{\text{cut}}(\omega) = 3.03U_p \simeq 78$ keV, where $U_p = c^2\xi^2/4$ is the ponderomotive energy . As we see, the relativistic harmonic cutoff is shifted to the lower values compared with the nonrelativistic one ($3.17U_p$).

Figure 13.6 displays the harmonic emission rate in the R frame for an ion ($Z_a = 2$) with the Lorentz factor $\gamma_L = \omega_0/\omega_p \simeq 10$ and Ti:sapphire laser ($\omega_0 = 0.057$ a.u.) with the intensity 5.34×10^{17} W/cm^2 ($\xi = 0.5$). The cutoff frequency is: $\mathcal{E}_{\text{cut}}(\omega) \simeq 2.98U_p \simeq 95$ keV. For the fulfillment of the condition $V_{\text{ion}} \simeq cn_p$, one needs a plasma with the density $N_e \simeq 1.7 \times 10^{19}$ cm^{-3}.

The maximal energy of radiated photon in the laboratory frame of reference is obtained in the forward direction, for which: $\omega_{\max} \simeq 2\gamma_L\mathcal{E}_{\text{cut}}(\omega)$ and for the setups of Fig. 13.6 we have: 1.9 MeV. For the considered values of the interaction parameters, the harmonic emission rates for a traveling wave in vacuum are negligible; whereas the relativistic rates of HHG in plasma at the photon energies in the MeV region are significant.

For efficient HHG toward the implementation of coherent γ-ray sources, one should overcome the problem connected with the realization of the phase-matched emission of harmonics from the different ions. In the plasma, where the field of the form (13.3) is realized, the photoelectrons from the different ions are excited simultaneously and emit harmonics synchronously but from the different spatial points. With the random distribution of N_i ions, the net emission proportional to N_i^2 in this case will be vanished. To obtain coherent emission from the ion beam proportional to N_i^2, one should have spatially ordered ion bunches—modulated ion beams.

13.4 HHG by Intense Coherent X-Ray on Highly-Charged Hydrogen-like Ions

Let us now consider resonant interaction of a hydrogen-like ion with moderately strong X-ray coherent radiation field . In this case, if a radiation field is not so strong to make dominant the ionization process, rather than to consider the whole atomic wave packet, one can reduce the interaction dynamics to a few levels only. For a large charge number of the nucleus Z_a, the relativistic effects play important role and, therefore, should be taken into account. For the considered x-ray frequencies and multiphoton resonances, the dipole approximation is still applicable: $\lambda \gg a$, where a is the characteristic size of the atomic system and λ is the wavelength of the X-ray wave. Hence, as in the Sect. 11.1 we will take into account only electrical-dipole transitions $E1$ as the main coupling transitions between the states with the main quantum numbers $n_0 = 1, 2$. It is supposed that the pump field is much smaller than characteristic atomic fields: $E_0 \ll E_{at} \sim Z_a^3$ and ionization rates can be neglected. So, the Dirac equation in linearly polarized X-ray radiation field with unit polarization vector $\widehat{\mathbf{z}}$, slowly varying amplitude E_0, and carrier frequency ω_X, reduces to the two independent sets of four equations for each magnetic quantum number $M = \pm 1/2$, whole moment $j = 1/2, 3/2$, and the state parity $P = \pm 1$. The latter is defined via the orbital moment l. So, the resonant interaction of a X-ray coherent radiation field with a hydrogen-like ion can be described by the 4×4 effective Hamiltonian:

$$\widehat{H} = \begin{pmatrix} \varepsilon_1 & V_{12} & V_{13} & 0 \\ V_{12}^* & \varepsilon_2 & 0 & V_{24} \\ V_{13}^* & 0 & \varepsilon_3 & V_{34} \\ 0 & V_{24}^* & V_{34}^* & \varepsilon_3 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{13.47}$$

Here we have assumed the following basis $|\eta\rangle$, where $\eta = \{n_0, j, l, M\}$ indicates the set of quantum numbers as follow:

$$|1\rangle \equiv |1, 1/2, 0, -1/2\rangle\,, \ |2\rangle \equiv |2, 3/2, 1, -1/2\rangle\,,$$
$$|3\rangle \equiv |2, 1/2, 1, -1/2\rangle\,, \ |4\rangle \equiv |2, 1/2, 0, -1/2\rangle\,.$$

The method of solving of the Dirac equation for Hamiltonian has been described in detail in the Chap. 11 and will not be repeated here. Hence, we will adopt the wave function obtained in the Sect. 11.1. At the n -photon resonance and under the generalized rotating wave approximation , the time-dependent wave function can be expanded as:

$$|\Psi(t)\rangle = e^{-i\varepsilon_1 t}\left\{\left[\overline{b}_1(t) + \beta_1(t)\right]\left|1'\right\rangle\right.$$

$$+\left[\overline{b}_2(t) + \beta_2(t)\right]\exp\left[-i\left(n\omega_X t - \int_0^t d_{22} E dt\right)\right]\left|2'\right\rangle$$

$$+\left[\overline{b}_3(t)+\beta_3(t)\right]\exp\left[-in\omega_X t\right]\left|3'\right\rangle$$

$$+\left[\overline{b}_4(t)+\beta_4(t)\right]\exp\left[-i\left(n\omega_X t-\int_0^t d_{44}E dt\right)\right]\left|4'\right\rangle\Bigg\}, \tag{13.48}$$

where $\overline{b}_i(t)$ are the time-averaged probability amplitudes and $\beta_i(t)$ are rapidly oscillating functions on the scale of the pump wave period. The time-averaged amplitudes $\overline{b}_i(t)$ are:

$$\overline{b}_i=\sum_{j=1}^{4}C_{ij}\exp(i\lambda_j t), \tag{13.49}$$

where C_{ij} are the constants of the integration determined by the initial conditions, and the factors λ_j are the solutions of the fourth-order characteristic equation:

$$\left\|\begin{matrix} 2\Delta+\lambda & L_{12}^{(n)} & 0 & L_{14}^{(n)} \\ L_{21}^{(n)} & \Delta-\delta+\lambda & 0 & \tilde{\Delta} \\ 0 & 0 & -\delta+\lambda & 0 \\ L_{41}^{(n)} & \tilde{\Delta} & 0 & \Delta-\delta+\lambda \end{matrix}\right\|=0, \tag{13.50}$$

with the terms:

$$L_{12}^{(n)}=(L_{21}^{(n)})^{*}=i(-1)^{n+1}\frac{d_{12}}{d_{22}}n\omega_X J_n(\rho), \tag{13.51}$$

$$L_{14}^{(n)}=(L_{41}^{(n)})^{*}=i\frac{d_{12}}{d_{22}}n\omega_X J_n(\rho), \tag{13.52}$$

describing the time-averaged probability amplitudes, and

$$\Delta=\omega_X\left(\frac{d_{12}}{d_{22}}\right)^2\sum_{k\neq n}\frac{k^2J_k^2(\rho)}{k-n}. \tag{13.53}$$

$$\tilde{\Delta}=\omega_X\left(\frac{d_{12}}{d_{22}}\right)^2\sum_{k\neq n}\frac{(-1)^k k^2J_k^2(\rho)}{k-n}. \tag{13.54}$$

are dynamic Stark shifts . The argument of the ordinary Bessel function $J_n(\rho)$ is the dipole interaction energy in the units of the pump wave photon energy: $\rho=|d_{22}E_0/\omega_X|$. For the relatively small nuclear charges, $(\alpha Z_a)^2\ll 1$ one can neglect the terms $O((\alpha Z_a)^2)$ and obtain compact expressions in (13.50). In deriving these equations, we have applied well-known expansion of exponent through the Bessel functions with real arguments (11.19) and introduced the resonance detuning

$$\delta = \varepsilon_1 + n\omega - \varepsilon. \tag{13.55}$$

Assuming smooth turn-on of the pump wave, the relation between the rapidly and slowly oscillating parts of the probability amplitudes can be written as:

$$\beta_1(t) = \overline{b}_2(t)\frac{d_{12}}{d_{22}}\sum_{k\neq n}\frac{(-1)^k kJ_k(\rho)\, e^{i(k-n)\omega_X t}}{k-n}$$

$$+\,\overline{b}_4(t)\frac{d_{14}}{d_{44}}\sum_{k\neq n}\frac{kJ_k(\rho)\, e^{i(k-n)\omega_X t}}{k-n}, \tag{13.56}$$

$$\beta_2(t) = -\overline{b}_1(t)\frac{d_{12}^*}{d_{22}}\sum_{k\neq n}\frac{(-1)^k kJ_k(\rho)\, e^{-i(k-n)\omega_X t}}{k-n}, \tag{13.57}$$

$$\beta_3(t) = O((\alpha Z_a)^2), \tag{13.58}$$

$$\beta_4(t) = -\overline{b}_1(t)\frac{d_{14}^*}{d_{44}}\sum_{k\neq n}\frac{kJ_k(\rho)\, e^{-i(k-n)\omega_X t}}{k-n}. \tag{13.59}$$

The coherent part of the dipole spectrum in the Schroedinger picture has the form:

$$S_c = \left|\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt e^{-i\omega t}\langle D(t)\rangle\right|^2, \tag{13.60}$$

where

$$\langle D(t)\rangle = \langle\Psi(t)|\,\hat{\mathbf{z}}\cdot\hat{\mathbf{d}}(0)\,|\Psi(t)\rangle \tag{13.61}$$

is the time-dependent expectation value of the dipole operator. With the help of expressions (13.56)–(13.59), one can analytically calculate (13.48) for arbitrary initial atomic state and, therefore, the expectation value of the dipole operator (13.61). Then the solution (13.49) for the system initially situated in the ground state, when the dynamic Stark shifts are compensated by appropriate detuning, is:

$$\overline{b}_1(t) = e^{-i2\Delta t}\cos(\Omega_R t/2),$$

and

$$\overline{b}_3(t) = -\overline{b}_2(t) = \frac{e^{-i2\Delta t}}{\sqrt{2}}\sin(\Omega_R t/2). \tag{13.62}$$

Here

$$\Omega_R \equiv \left| 2\sqrt{2}\frac{d_{12}}{d_{22}} n\omega_X J_n(\rho) \right| \tag{13.63}$$

is the generalized Rabi frequency at the n-photon resonance, which has a nonlinear dependence on the amplitudes of the wave fields through the Bessel functions.

Replacing the probability amplitudes in (13.48) by the corresponding expressions (13.62) and putting in (13.61), one can derive analytical expression for $\langle D(t)\rangle$. Here, one can neglect the second-order terms of the rapidly oscillating parts of the probability amplitudes, since $\beta_l^2(t) \sim (d_{12}/d_{22})^2 \ll 1$. This leads to the compact analytic formula:

$$\langle D(t)\rangle = \sum_k [S_k \sin((2k+1)\omega_X t) + C_k \cos((2k+1)\omega_X t)], \tag{13.64}$$

where

$$S_k = \sqrt{2} d_{12} \frac{n J_{2k+1+n}(\rho)}{2k+1} \sin(\Omega_R t), \tag{13.65}$$

$$C_k = \frac{d_{12}^2}{d_{22}} \sum_{s \neq n} \left\{ (-1)^{n-s} - 1 - [3 + (-1)^{n-s}] \cos(\Omega_R t) \right\} \times \frac{s J_{2k+1+s}(\rho) J_s(\rho)}{s-n}. \tag{13.66}$$

The expression for $\langle D(t)\rangle$ shows that intensities of the harmonics are mainly determined by the behavior of the Bessel function. Since the latter: $J_m(\rho)$ steeply decreases with the increase of an index $m \gtrsim \rho$, the cutoff harmonic s_c is determined from the condition $s_c - n \sim \rho$. From this estimation for the cutoff harmonic follows that the upper limit of the energy ω_c, which can be effectively generated by the direct n-photon excitation, is higher for the systems with a larger difference of energy in the stationary states ($\omega_c - (\varepsilon_2 - \varepsilon_1) \sim d_{22}E$). The latter has quadratic dependence on the nuclear charge Z_a.

For the large nuclear charges, the spontaneous decay of the excited states becomes significant since the rates $\sim Z_a^4$. Thus, in order to develop the microscopic theory of the multiphoton interaction of hydrogen-like ions with a strong radiation field, we need to solve the master equation for the density matrix:

$$\frac{d\widehat{\rho}}{dt} = i\left(\widehat{\rho}\widehat{H} - \widehat{H}\widehat{\rho}\right) + \mathcal{L}\widehat{\rho}, \tag{13.67}$$

where

$$\widehat{\rho} \equiv \rho_{\mu\nu};\ \ \mu, \nu = 1, 2, 3, 4 \tag{13.68}$$

is the density matrix. The decay processes with the rates

$$\gamma_i = \frac{4\left(\varepsilon_i - \varepsilon_1\right)^3}{3c^3} \left|z_{1i}\right|^2;\ i = 2, 3 \tag{13.69}$$

have been incorporated into evolution equation (13.67) by the damping term:

$$\mathcal{L}\widehat{\rho} = -\begin{pmatrix} -\gamma_2\rho_{22} - \gamma_3\rho_{33} & \frac{\gamma_2}{2}\rho_{12} & \frac{\gamma_3}{2}\rho_{13} & 0 \\ \frac{\gamma_2}{2}\rho_{21} & \gamma_2\rho_{22} & \frac{\gamma_2+\gamma_3}{2}\rho_{23} & \frac{\gamma_2}{2}\rho_{24} \\ \frac{\gamma_3}{2}\rho_{31} & \frac{\gamma_2+\gamma_3}{2}\rho_{32} & \gamma_3\rho_{33} & \frac{\gamma_3}{2}\rho_{34} \\ 0 & \frac{\gamma_2}{2}\rho_{42} & \frac{\gamma_3}{2}\rho_{43} & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{13.70}$$

Here the operator $\mathcal{L}\widehat{\rho}$ represents the norm-conserving spontaneous decay of the population from the excited states $|2\rangle$ and $|3\rangle$ into the ground state $|1\rangle$. The decay process $|2\rangle \to |4\rangle$ has been neglected due to the smallness of its rate compared with the $\gamma_{2,3}$. The time-dependent expectation value of the dipole operator now is determined by the density matrix $\widehat{\rho}$:

$$< \widehat{D}(t) >= \mathrm{Tr}\left(\widehat{\rho}\,(t)\left(\widehat{\mathbf{z}} \cdot \hat{\mathbf{d}}\right)\right) = \mathrm{Re}\left(\rho_{21}z_{12} + \rho_{31}z_{13} + \rho_{42}z_{24} + \rho_{43}z_{34}\right). \tag{13.71}$$

For comparison with the obtained analytical results, semi-infinite pulses with smooth turn-on, in particular, with the hyperbolic tangent $\tanh(t/\tau_r)$ envelope is considered. Here the characteristic rise time τ_r chosen to be $\tau_r = 20T_X$, where $T_X = 2\pi/\omega_X$ is the X-ray wave period. For the turn-on/off of the wave field, the latter is described by the envelope function $E_0\,(t) = E_0 f\,(t)$:

$$f\,(t) = \begin{cases} \sin^2\left(\pi t/\tau\right); & 0 \leqslant t \leqslant \tau \\ 0; & t < 0, \quad t > \tau \end{cases}, \tag{13.72}$$

where τ characterizes the pulse duration. It should be noted that the current X-ray facilities, such as the Linac Coherent Light Source (LCLS), operate in the self-amplified spontaneous emission (SASE) regime and produce pulses with the partial temporal coherence and a spiky temporal profile. However, the rapid development of X-ray sources and self-seeding techniques makes relevant of consideration of the seeding pulses with the high temporal coherence.

For the numerical calculations, we assume that a hydrogen-like atomic system is situated initially in the ground state ($\rho_{11}\,(0) = 1$). The time evolution of the system (13.67) is found with the help of the standard fourth-order Runge–Kutta algorithm and for estimation of the power spectra the fast Fourier transform algorithm of the expectation value of the dipole operator (13.71) is used.

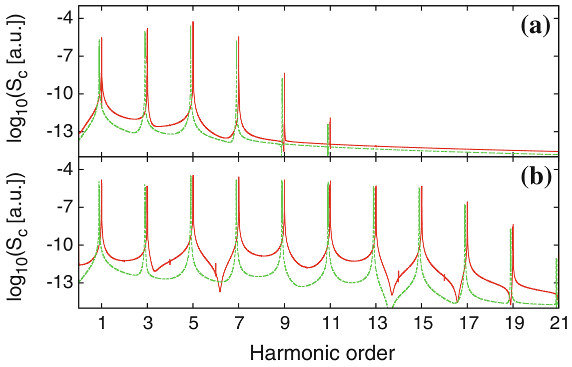


Fig. 13.7 (Color online) Coherent part of the harmonic emission as a function of the harmonic order at resonant excitation of hydrogen-like atomic system with nuclear charge $Z_a = 20$. **a** for a five-photon resonance $E_0 = 280\,\text{a.u.}$, $\delta_n = 0.021\omega_X$ and **b** ten-photon resonance $E_0 = 550\,\text{a.u.}$ and $\delta_n = 0.173\omega_X$

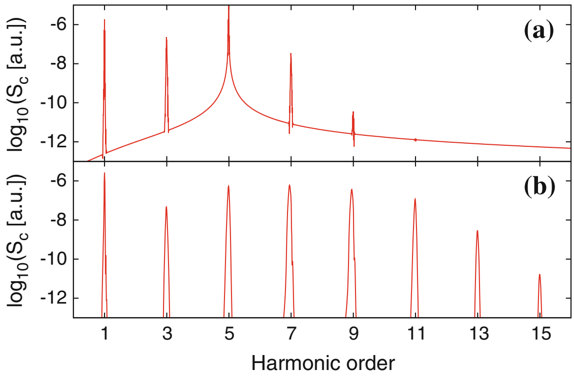


Fig. 13.8 Harmonic emission rate as a function of the harmonic order for short X-ray pulses. **a** for hydrogen-like atomic system with nuclear charge $Z_a = 30$ and at five-photon resonance ($E_0 = 1000\,\text{a.u.}$, $\omega_X = 68.68\,\text{a.u.}$), and **b** $Z_a = 40$ and eight-photon resonance ($E_0 = 3800\,\text{a.u.}$ and $\omega_X = 77.49\,\text{a.u.}$)

Here and below, for achieving the almost complete population transfer, the dynamic Stark shift is compensated by the appropriate detuning. In Fig. 13.3, we plot the dipole spectrum as a function of harmonic order for five ($n = 5$) and ten-photon ($n = 10$) resonant excitation of the hydrogen-like atomic system with nuclear charge $Z_a = 20$ for the semiinfinite pulse. The pump field strength and frequency are set to be $E_0 = 280\,\text{a.u.}$ and $\omega_X = 30.293\,\text{a.u.}$ for five-photon resonance, $E_0 = 550\,\text{a.u.}$ and $\omega_X = 15.349\,\text{a.u.}$ for ten-photon resonance. For better visibility, the spectrum corresponding to analytical calculations has been slightly shifted to the left. As we can see from Fig. 13.7, the analytical formula (13.64) is in good agreement with the numerical result.

We have also performed calculations for a short X-ray pulse. Figure 13.8 shows the dipole spectrum as a function of the harmonic order at the multiphoton resonant excitation of the hydrogen-like atomic systems ($Z_a = 30$ and $Z_a = 40$) with the X-ray pulse of the duration $\tau = 100T_X$. As is seen from this figure, short laser pulses broaden the harmonics spectra.

Let us make some estimations for the total radiation power of the ensemble of the hydrogen-like atoms. Thus, for considered X-ray pump fields, the radiated wavelengths are much smaller than the transverse size of the interaction region. The latter is assumed to be limited due to the X-ray beam size with a waist of w_0, which is typically $w_0 \simeq 10^{-4}$ cm for currently available X-ray FELs. The longitudinal size of the interaction region is determined by Rayleigh length $L = \pi w_0^2/\lambda$, where λ is the pump X-ray wavelength. Thus, we have a cigar-shaped active medium ($L \gg w_0$), and the coherent radiation will occur primarily along the propagation axis of the pump laser beam and will cover only a tiny solid angle $\sim \lambda_s^2/\left(\pi w_0^2\right)$ (λ_s is the sth-harmonic wavelength).

Then, for the radiation power, we have

$$P_s = P_s^{(1)} \left(\mathcal{V} N_0\right)^2 \mu_s,$$

where N_0 is the atomic density, $P_s^{(1)} = 4s^4\omega_X^4 \left|d_s\right|^2 /3c^3$ is the single-atom total radiation power with the Fourier component of the dipole moment d_s. The interference factor μ_s is defined by the shape of an active medium. For the cylindrical system it can be estimated as $\mu_s = 3\lambda_s^2/\left(8\pi^2 w_0^2\right)$. In particular, for the setup of Fig. 13.8a $\lambda = 0.664$ nm, and the interaction volume becomes $\mathcal{V} = \pi w_0^2 L \simeq 1.5 \times 10^{-8}\,\text{cm}^3$. For the 5th harmonic $\mu_5 \simeq 6.7 \times 10^{-10}$ and $P_5^{(1)} \simeq 1.3 \times 10^{-2}$ W. Thus, for the atomic density $N_0 \simeq 10^{18}\,\text{cm}^{-3}$ the total power at the hard X-ray frequencies $\sim$10 keV is estimated to be $P_{10\,\text{keV}} \simeq 2 \times 10^9$ W .

13.5 Effective Hamiltonian for Collective Two-Photon Decay of Positronium Atoms

The singlet (1^1S_0) state of positronium (Ps), so called para-positronium (p-Ps) , mainly decays into two photons with the lifetime of 125 ps, while the triplet (1^3S_1) state of Ps, so called ortho-positronium (o-Ps) , mainly decays into three photons with a relatively long lifetime of 142 ns. As far as o-Ps have relatively long lifetime, in laboratory-based experiment it will be more suitable to obtain a Bose–Einstein condensate (BEC) for o-Ps. The use of spin-polarized positrons will eventually lead to a gas of spin-polarized Ps, which does not undergo the mutual spin-conversion reaction. Thus, in the ensemble of Ps atoms rapid annihilation of the singlet states and collisions among the various triplet substates will cause the Ps atoms to become completely polarized into a pure $m = 1$ triplet state. Then to initiate two-photon annihilation, one should induce the triplet to the singlet transition. The latter can be realized via the ground state hyperfine transition either by resonant sub-THz radiation (0.2 THz) or strong electromagnetic field.

We begin our study with construction of the Hamiltonian which governs the quantum dynamics of considered process. Here and below, except where it is stated otherwise, we employ natural units ($c = \hbar = 1$).

To obtain dynamic equations, we will arise from the second quantized formalism. For this purpose let us introduce creation and annihilation operators for p-Ps and o-Ps. The operator describing creation of p-Ps in the internal ground state with the total center-of-mass momentum **p** can be written as

$$\widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}}^{+} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{V}}} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}'} \varphi \left(\mathbf{p}' - \frac{\mathbf{p}}{2}\right) \left[\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}',s_+}^{+} \widehat{b}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{p}',s_-}^{+} - \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}',s_-}^{+} \widehat{b}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{p}',s_+}^{+}\right], \tag{13.73}$$

where $\varphi(\mathbf{p})$ is the Fourier transform of the ground-state wave function:

$$\varphi(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{8\sqrt{\pi a_0^3}}{\left(1 + \mathbf{p}^2 a_0^2\right)^2}, \tag{13.74}$$

$a_0 = 2/(m\alpha_0)$ is the Bohr radius for Ps, m is the electron mass, and α_0 is the fine structure constant. For the phase-space integration, we have introduced the notation $d\Phi_{\mathbf{q}} = \mathcal{V} d^3\mathbf{q}/(2\pi)^3$ ($\mathcal{V}$ is the quantization volume). In (13.73) $\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p},s}^{+}$ and $\widehat{b}_{\mathbf{p},s}^{+}$ are the creation operators for electrons and positrons, respectively. The quantum number s describes the spin state of the particles. The operators $\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p},s}^{+}$ and $\widehat{b}_{\mathbf{p},s}^{+}$ satisfy the fermionic anticommutation rules

$$\left\{\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p},s}, \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}',s'}^{+}\right\} = \frac{(2\pi)^3}{\mathcal{V}} \delta\left(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}'\right) \delta_{ss'}. \tag{13.75}$$

The commutator for the p-Ps operator is

$$\widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}} \widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}'}^{+} - \widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}'}^{+} \widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}} \simeq \frac{(2\pi)^3}{\mathcal{V}} \delta\left(\mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}'\right) - \mathcal{O}\left(a_0^3 \frac{N_0}{\mathcal{V}}\right). \tag{13.76}$$

This is a Bosonic commutation relation for a relatively small number of p-Ps atoms N, i.e., at $N/\mathcal{V} \ll a_0^{-3} \sim 10^{24}\,\mathrm{cm}^{-3}$. However, at high densities one should take into account the deviations from the Bosonic nature. The operator describing the creation of o-Ps in the pure $m = 1$ triplet state can be written as

$$\widehat{\Xi}_{\mathbf{p}}^{+} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{V}}} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}'} \varphi \left(\mathbf{p}' - \frac{\mathbf{p}}{2}\right) \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}',s_+}^{+} \widehat{b}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{p}',s_+}^{+}. \tag{13.77}$$

The total Hamiltonian consists of four parts:

$$\widehat{H} = \widehat{H}_{\mathrm{Ps}} + \widehat{H}_{\mathrm{ph}} + \widehat{H}_{\mathrm{o}\to\mathrm{p}} + \widehat{H}_{2\gamma}. \tag{13.78}$$

Here the first part is the Hamiltonian of free Ps atoms of two species:

$$\widehat{H}_{\mathrm{Ps}} = \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}} \mathcal{E}_{\Pi}(\mathbf{p}) \widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}}^{+} \widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}} + \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}} \mathcal{E}_{\Xi}(\mathbf{p}) \widehat{\Xi}_{\mathbf{p}}^{+} \widehat{\Xi}_{\mathbf{p}}, \tag{13.79}$$

where

$$\mathcal{E}_{\Pi}(\mathbf{p}) = \sqrt{\left(2m + \mathcal{E}_{S_0}\right)^2 + \mathbf{p}^2},\ \mathcal{E}_{\Xi}(\mathbf{p}) = \sqrt{\left(2m + \mathcal{E}_{S_1}\right)^2 + \mathbf{p}^2}, \tag{13.80}$$

are the total energies of the p-Ps and o-Ps with the momentum **p** of the center-of-mass motion, and $\mathcal{E}_{S_0}$, $\mathcal{E}_{S_1}$ are the binding energies, respectively. The origin of the energy difference between the ground states of the o-Ps and p-Ps (hyperfine splitting) is the spin-spin interaction. In the lowest order of α_0 , the latter is

$$\mathcal{E}_{S_1} - \mathcal{E}_{S_0} \equiv \varepsilon_{\text{hfs}} = \frac{7}{12} m\alpha_0^4 \simeq 0.85 \text{ meV}. \tag{13.81}$$

The second term in (13.78) is the Hamiltonian of the free photons

$$\widehat{H}_{\text{ph}} = \sum_{\zeta} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}} \omega\left(\mathbf{k}\right) \widehat{c}^{+}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta} \widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}, \tag{13.82}$$

where $\widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}$ ($\widehat{c}^{+}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}$) is the annihilation (creation) operator of the photon with the momentum

$$\mathbf{k} = \omega(\sin\vartheta \cos\varphi, \sin\vartheta \sin\varphi, \cos\vartheta). \tag{13.83}$$

As two independent basis vectors of the polarization, we have chosen

$$\epsilon_{(\zeta)} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left\{\zeta \cos\vartheta \cos\varphi + i \sin\varphi, \zeta \cos\vartheta \sin\varphi - i \cos\varphi, -\zeta \sin\vartheta\right\}, \tag{13.84}$$

which corresponds to the certain helicity ($\zeta = \pm 1$) of photons:

$$\epsilon^{(\zeta)} \epsilon^{*(\zeta')} = \delta_{\zeta\zeta'}; \; \mathbf{k}\epsilon^{(\zeta)} = 0.$$

The third part in (13.78) is the Hamiltonian that is responsible for the triplet to the singlet transition:

$$\widehat{H}_{\text{o}\to\text{p}} = \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}} \left(\Lambda\left(t\right) \widehat{\Pi}^{+}_{\mathbf{p}} \widehat{\Xi}_{\mathbf{p}} + \Lambda^{*}\left(t\right) \widehat{\Xi}^{+}_{\mathbf{p}} \widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}}\right) \tag{13.85}$$

Here it is assumed that o-Ps $\Longrightarrow$ p-Ps transition is recoilless (the generalization of obtained results for the transition with momentum transfer is straightforward) and

$$\Lambda\left(t\right) = \Lambda_0 e^{i\omega_f t}; \; \Lambda_0 = \frac{1}{2} \mu_B B_0, \tag{13.86}$$

where Λ_0 is the amplitude of the spin-magnetic field interaction, $\mu_B = e/2m = 5.8\times 10^{-5}$ eV $\times$ T^{-1} is the Bohr magneton, B_0 is the amplitude of the applied magnetic field, and ω_f is the frequency of the applied wave field. The last term in (13.78)

$$\widehat{H}_{2\gamma} = \sum_{\zeta,\zeta'} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}} \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}} \Big[\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p})\, \widehat{c}^{+}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta} \widehat{c}^{+}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\zeta'} \widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}}$$

$$+ \mathcal{M}^{*}_{\zeta,\zeta'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p})\, \widehat{\Pi}^{+}_{\mathbf{p}} \widehat{c}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\zeta'} \widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta} \Big] \qquad (13.87)$$

is the Hamiltonian of the two-photon decay of a p-Ps. The amplitude $\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p})$ for the annihilation of a p-Ps into the two photons are given by the Feynman diagrams that can be derived from the amplitude for annihilation of a free electron–positron pair with the momenta $\mathbf{p}_-$ and $\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{p}_-$ into the two photons with the polarizations $\epsilon_{(\zeta)}, \epsilon_{(\zeta')}$ and momenta $\mathbf{k}, \mathbf{k}' = \mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k}$. Taking into account the definition (13.73), we obtain

$$\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}) = \frac{\pi\alpha_0}{\mathcal{V}^{3/2}} \int \frac{d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}_-} \varphi\left(\mathbf{p}_- - \frac{\mathbf{p}}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{2\omega\omega'\varepsilon\left(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{p}_-\right)\varepsilon\left(\mathbf{p}_-\right)}}$$

$$\times \left\{ \bar{v}^{(s_+)}(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{p}_-) \left[\not{\epsilon}^{*}_{(\zeta')} \frac{1}{\not{p}_- - \not{k} - m} \not{\epsilon}^{*}_{(\zeta)} \right.\right.$$

$$\left.\left. + \epsilon^{*}_{(\zeta)} \frac{1}{\not{p}_- - \not{k}' - m} \not{\epsilon}^{*}_{(\zeta')} \right] u^{(s_-)}(\mathbf{p}_-) - (s_+ \Leftrightarrow s_-) \right\}, \qquad (13.88)$$

where $\not{a} \equiv a_\mu \gamma^\mu$, $\gamma^\mu \equiv \left\{\gamma^0, \gamma^1, \gamma^2, \gamma^3\right\}$—are the Dirac matrices, $\varepsilon(\mathbf{p})$ is given by the free electron dispersion relation, $u^{(\alpha)}(\mathbf{p})$ and $v^{(\alpha)}(\mathbf{p})$ are the bispinor amplitudes of a free Dirac particle corresponding to electron and positron, respectively.

We consider dilute system of Ps atoms when $na_t^3 \ll 1$, and interaction between the Ps atoms is neglected. For the considered process of γ-ray annihilation decay, this is justified for the uniform system of Ps atoms and for the condensate confined by a box with sufficiently (infinitely) hard walls (see Sect. 13.8).

13.6 Spontaneous Two-Photon Decay of a Para-Positronium

Before considering the collective annihilation decay of the p-Ps, it will be useful to consider spontaneous decay of a single p-Ps from the quantum dynamic point of view. For this propose, we need the Hamiltonian (13.78), without $\widehat{H}_{\mathrm{o}\to\mathrm{p}}$ and o-Ps part in (13.79):

$$\widehat{H} = \int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}} \mathcal{E}_{\Pi}(\mathbf{p})\, \widehat{\Pi}^{+}_{\mathbf{p}} \widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}} + \widehat{H}_{\mathrm{ph}} + \widehat{H}_{2\gamma}. \qquad (13.89)$$

For the spontaneous decay, we consider initial condition in which the photonic field starts in the vacuum state, while p-Ps field is prepared in a Fock state with a one p-Ps in the rest ($\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{0}$). From (13.73) follows that such state can be represented as $|\Psi(0)\rangle = |0_{\mathrm{ph}}\rangle \otimes \widehat{\Pi}^{+}_{\mathbf{0}} |0_{\mathrm{Ps}}\rangle$. Then the state vector for times $t > 0$ is just given by the expansion

$$|\Psi\rangle = C_0(t)\, e^{-i\mathcal{E}_\Pi(\mathbf{0})t}|0_{\mathrm{ph}}\rangle \otimes \widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{0}}^{+}|0_{\mathrm{Ps}}\rangle + \sum_{\alpha,\alpha'}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}} d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}'}$$

$$\times\, C_{\mathbf{k},\alpha;\mathbf{k}',\alpha'}(t)\, e^{-i(\omega+\omega\prime)t}\widehat{c}^{+}_{\mathbf{k},\alpha}\widehat{c}^{+}_{\mathbf{k}',\alpha'}|0_{\mathrm{ph}}\rangle \otimes |0_{\mathrm{Ps}}\rangle, \tag{13.90}$$

where $C_{\mathbf{k}_1,\alpha_1;\mathbf{k}_2,\alpha_2}(t)$ is the probability amplitude for the photonic field to be in the two-photon state, while p-Ps field -in the vacuum state. From the Schrödinger equation one can obtain evolution equations:

$$i\frac{\partial C_{\mathbf{k},\alpha;\mathbf{k}',\alpha'}}{\partial t} = \frac{\mathcal{M}_{\alpha,\alpha'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{0}) + \mathcal{M}_{\alpha',\alpha}\left(\mathbf{k}',\mathbf{0}\right)}{2}$$

$$\times\, C_0 e^{i(2\omega-\mathcal{E}_\Pi(\mathbf{0}))t}\frac{(2\pi)^3}{\mathcal{V}}\delta\left(\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{k}'\right), \tag{13.91}$$

$$i\frac{\partial C_0}{\partial t} = 2\sum_{\zeta,\zeta'}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}}\mathcal{M}^{*}_{\zeta,\zeta'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{0})\, e^{i(\mathcal{E}_\Pi(\mathbf{0})-2\omega)t}C_{\mathbf{k},\zeta;-\mathbf{k},\zeta'}. \tag{13.92}$$

Here we have taken into account the bosonic nature of photons: $C_{\mathbf{k}_1,\alpha_1;\mathbf{k}_2,\alpha_2} = C_{\mathbf{k}_2,\alpha_2;\mathbf{k}_1,\alpha_1}$.

The calculation of the amplitude $\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{0})$ is substantially simplified if one takes into account nonrelativistic nature of the Ps internal degrees of freedom. As follows from (13.74), the wave function $\varphi(\mathbf{p})$ takes sizeable values for momenta $p \lesssim 1/a_0 \sim m\alpha_0 \ll m$. Meanwhile, the momentum scale for positronium annihilation is of the order of m. This corresponds to the well-known fact that positronium decay is only sensitive to the value of the wave function at zero separation of the electron and positron:

$$\phi(0) = \frac{1}{\mathcal{V}}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}_-}\varphi(\mathbf{p}_-) = \sqrt{\frac{m^3\alpha_0^3}{8\pi}}. \tag{13.93}$$

Hence, one can make approximation for the amplitude $\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{0})$ as follow:

$$\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{0}) = \frac{\pi\alpha_0}{\sqrt{2\mathcal{V}}m^2}\left(\frac{1}{\mathcal{V}}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}_-}\varphi(\mathbf{p}_-)\right)$$

$$\times\left\{\bar{v}^{(s_+)}(\mathbf{0})\left[\not{e}^{*}_{(\zeta')}\frac{1}{\not{p}_- - \not{k} - m}\not{e}^{*}_{(\zeta)}\right.\right.$$

$$\left.\left. + \not{e}^{*}_{(\zeta)}\frac{1}{\not{p}_- - \not{k}' - m}\not{e}^{*}_{(\zeta')}\right]u^{(s_-)}(\mathbf{0}) - (s_+ \Leftrightarrow s_-)\right\}. \tag{13.94}$$

In (13.94) $p_- = \{m,0,0,0\}$, $k = \left\{m, m\widehat{\mathbf{k}}\right\}$, and $k' = \left\{m, -m\widehat{\mathbf{k}}\right\}$. After long but straightforward calculations we arrive at

$$\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{0}) = i\frac{4\pi\alpha_0\phi(0)}{m^2\sqrt{2\mathcal{V}}}\widehat{\mathbf{k}}\cdot\left[\epsilon^*_{(\zeta)}\times\epsilon^*_{(\zeta')}\right]. \tag{13.95}$$

Then, taking into account (13.83), (13.84), and (13.93) we have

$$\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta'}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{0}) = -\sqrt{\frac{\pi\alpha_0^5}{m\mathcal{V}}}\zeta\delta_{\zeta,\zeta'}. \tag{13.96}$$

According to perturbation theory we take $C_0(t) \simeq 1$, and for the amplitude $C_{\mathbf{k},\alpha;\mathbf{k}',\alpha'}(t\to\infty)$ from (13.91) we obtain

$$C_{\mathbf{k},\alpha;\mathbf{k}',\alpha'} = i\sqrt{\frac{\pi\alpha_0^5}{m\mathcal{V}}}\frac{(2\pi)^4}{\mathcal{V}}\alpha\delta_{\alpha,\alpha'}\delta\left(\mathbf{k}+\mathbf{k}'\right)\delta\left(2\omega(\mathbf{k})-\mathcal{E}_\Pi(\mathbf{0})\right). \tag{13.97}$$

Then returning to the expansion (13.90), one can write

$$|\Psi\rangle \simeq C_0 e^{-i\mathcal{E}_\Pi(\mathbf{0})t}|0_{\text{ph}}\rangle\otimes\widehat{\Pi}^+_{\mathbf{0}}|0_{\text{Ps}}\rangle + i\frac{\sqrt{\mathcal{V}m^3\alpha_0^5}}{8\pi^{3/2}}|0_{\text{Ps}}\rangle$$
$$\otimes\int d\widehat{\mathbf{k}}e^{-2imt}\left[\widehat{c}^+_{\mathbf{k},+}\widehat{c}^+_{-\mathbf{k},+}|0_{\text{ph}}\rangle - \widehat{c}^+_{\mathbf{k},-}\widehat{c}^+_{-\mathbf{k},-}|0_{\text{ph}}\rangle\right]. \tag{13.98}$$

As is seen from (13.96), the two-photon annihilation amplitude does not depend on $\mathbf{k}$, as a result the two-photon state (13.98) resulting from the p-Ps decay is a maximally entangled (over the helicity) state of the two oppositely propagating photons.

For the decay rate of the process: p-Ps $\to 2\gamma$ one can write

$$\Gamma = \frac{1}{2}\sum_{\alpha_1,\alpha_2}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}_1}d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}_2}\frac{\left|C_{\mathbf{k}_1,\alpha_1;\mathbf{k}_2,\alpha_2}\right|^2}{T},$$

where T is the interaction time and the symmetry factor $1/2!$ takes into account that in the final state there are two identical photons. With the help of (13.97) we obtain the well-known result:

$$\Gamma = \frac{m\alpha_0^5}{2}. \tag{13.99}$$

13.7 Gamma-Ray Laser Based on the Collective Decay of Positronium Atoms in Bose–Einstein Condensate

For analysis of the collective two-photon decay , we will use the Heisenberg representation , where the evolution operators are given by the following equation :

$$i\frac{\partial\widehat{L}}{\partial t}=\left[\widehat{L},\widehat{H}\right], \tag{13.100}$$

and the expectation values are determined by the initial wave function Ψ_0:

$$\left\langle\widehat{L}\right\rangle=\langle\Psi_0|\widehat{L}|\Psi_0\rangle.$$

We will assume that the photonic field begins in the vacuum state, while Ps field is in the Bose–Einstein condensate state. Taking into account, Hamiltonian (13.78), from (13.100), we obtain a set of equations:

$$i\frac{\partial\widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}}{\partial t}=\omega\left(\mathbf{k}\right)\widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}$$

$$+\sum_{\zeta_1}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}}\left\{\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta_1}\left(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}\right)+\mathcal{M}_{\zeta_1,\zeta}\left(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}\right)\right\}\widehat{c}^{+}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\zeta_1}\widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}}, \tag{13.101}$$

$$i\frac{\partial\widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}}}{\partial t}=\mathcal{E}_{\Pi}\left(\mathbf{p}\right)\widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}}+\Lambda\left(t\right)\widehat{\Xi}_{\mathbf{p}}+\sum_{\zeta_1,\zeta_2}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}}\mathcal{M}^{*}_{\zeta_1,\zeta_2}\left(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}\right)\widehat{c}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\zeta_2}\widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta_1}, \tag{13.102}$$

$$i\frac{\partial\widehat{\Xi}_{\mathbf{p}}}{\partial t}=\mathcal{E}_{\Xi}\left(\mathbf{p}\right)\widehat{\Xi}_{\mathbf{p}}+\Lambda^{*}\left(t\right)\widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}}. \tag{13.103}$$

These equations are a nonlinear set of equations with the photonic and Ps fields' operators defined self-consistently. As we are interested in the quantum dynamics of the considered system in the presence of instabilities, we can decouple the photonic and Ps fields treating the dynamics of a photonic field. Passing to the interaction picture:

$$\widehat{\Xi}_{\mathbf{p}}=\widehat{\Theta}_{\mathbf{p}}e^{-i\mathcal{E}_{\Xi}(\mathbf{p})t},\ \widehat{\Pi}_{\mathbf{p}}=\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}}e^{-i\left(\mathcal{E}_{\Xi}(\mathbf{p})-\omega_f\right)t},\ \widehat{c}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}=\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}e^{-i\omega(\mathbf{k})t}, \tag{13.104}$$

for the new operators $\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}$, $\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}}$, and $\widehat{\Theta}_{\mathbf{p}}$, we obtain

$$i\frac{\partial\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}}{\partial t}=\sum_{\zeta_1}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}}\left\{\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta_1}\left(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}\right)+\mathcal{M}_{\zeta_1,\zeta}\left(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}\right)\right\}$$

$$\times\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\zeta_1}\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}}e^{i\left(\omega(\mathbf{k})+\omega(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k})-\mathcal{E}_{\Xi}(\mathbf{p})+\omega_f\right)t}, \tag{13.105}$$

$$i\frac{\partial\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}}}{\partial t}+\Delta_{\mathbf{p}}\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}}=\Lambda_0\widehat{\Theta}_{\mathbf{p}}+\sum_{\zeta_1,\zeta_2}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}}\mathcal{M}^{*}_{\zeta_1,\zeta_2}\left(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}\right)$$

$$\times\,\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\zeta_2}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta_1}e^{-i\left(\omega(\mathbf{k})+\omega(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k})-\mathcal{E}_{\Xi}(\mathbf{p})+\omega_f\right)t},\tag{13.106}$$

$$i\frac{\partial\widehat{\Theta}_{\mathbf{p}}}{\partial t}=\Lambda_0\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}},\tag{13.107}$$

where

$$\Delta_{\mathbf{p}}=\mathcal{E}_{\Xi}\left(\mathbf{p}\right)-\omega_f-\mathcal{E}_{\Pi}\left(\mathbf{p}\right)$$

is the resonance detuning for the triplet to the singlet transition. We assume that the Ps atoms are initially in the triplet state ($m=1$). For driving triplet to singlet transition, we will consider both resonant and nonresonant interactions. At the resonant case $\left|\Delta_{\mathbf{p}}\right|^2\ll\Lambda_0^2$ and in the ultrafast excitation regime (smaller than the lifetime of the o-Ps), when relaxation processes are not relevant, the Rabi oscillation provides a direct control of the states' populations. Thus, with the π-pulse $\int\Lambda_0 dt=\pi$ the population can be transferred from the o-Ps to the p-Ps state and instead of (13.106) and (13.107) one can consider the equation

$$i\frac{\partial\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}}}{\partial t}=\sum_{\zeta_1,\zeta_2}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}}\mathcal{M}^{*}_{\zeta_1,\zeta_2}\left(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}\right)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\zeta_2}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta_1}e^{i(\mathcal{E}_{\Pi}(\mathbf{p})-\omega(\mathbf{k})-\omega(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k}))t}.\tag{13.108}$$

At the nonresonant case $\left|\Delta_{\mathbf{p}}\right|^2\gg\Lambda_0^2$, the pump electromagnetic field is sufficiently far detuned from the resonance for the p-Ps state population to remain small at all times. The intermediate level can then be eliminated in the standard way:

$$\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}}\simeq\frac{\Lambda_0}{\Delta_{\mathbf{p}}}\widehat{\Theta}_{\mathbf{p}},$$

and from (13.105), (13.106), and (13.107) we get

$$i\frac{\partial\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}}{\partial t}=\sum_{\zeta'}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{p}}\left(\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta'}\left(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}\right)+\mathcal{M}_{\zeta',\zeta}\left(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}\right)\right)$$

$$\times\,\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\zeta'}\widehat{\Theta}_{\mathbf{p}}\frac{\Lambda_0}{\Delta_{\mathbf{p}}}e^{i\left(\omega(\mathbf{k})+\omega(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k})-\mathcal{E}_{\Xi}(\mathbf{p})+\omega_f\right)t},\tag{13.109}$$

$$i\frac{\partial\widehat{\Theta}_{\mathbf{p}}}{\partial t}=\frac{\Lambda_0}{\Delta_{\mathbf{p}}}\sum_{\zeta,\zeta'}\int d\Phi_{\mathbf{k}}\mathcal{M}^{*}_{\zeta,\zeta'}\left(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{p}\right)$$

$$\times\,\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k},\zeta'}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}e^{i\left(\mathcal{E}_{\Xi}(\mathbf{p})-\omega_f-\omega(\mathbf{k})-\omega(\mathbf{p}-\mathbf{k})\right)t}.\tag{13.110}$$

To decouple the photonic and Ps fields, we just use the Bogoloubov approximation . If a lowest energy single particle state has a macroscopic occupation, we can separate the field operators ($\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}}, \widehat{\Theta}_{\mathbf{p}}$) into the condensate term and the noncondensate components, i.e., the operator $\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}}$ in (13.105) or $\widehat{\Theta}_{\mathbf{p}}$ in (13.109) is replaced by the c-number as follows:

$$\widehat{F}_{\mathbf{p}} = \sqrt{n_0}\frac{(2\pi)^3}{\mathcal{V}^{1/2}}\delta(\mathbf{p}), \tag{13.111}$$

where n_0 is the number density of atoms in the condensate. Making Bogoloubov approximation, we arrive at a finite set of the Heisenberg equations

$$i\frac{\partial \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}}{\partial t} = \chi_\zeta(\mathbf{k})\,\widehat{a}^+_{-\mathbf{k},\zeta}e^{i\delta(\mathbf{k})t}, \tag{13.112}$$

$$i\frac{\partial \widehat{a}^+_{-\mathbf{k},\zeta}}{\partial t} = -\chi_\zeta(\mathbf{k})\,\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}e^{-i\delta(\mathbf{k})t}, \tag{13.113}$$

which couples the modes $\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}$ to the modes $\widehat{a}_{-\mathbf{k},\zeta}$ with the coupling constant

$$\chi_\zeta(\mathbf{k}) = 2\sqrt{n_{eff}}\mathcal{V}^{1/2}\mathcal{M}_{\zeta,\zeta}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{0}). \tag{13.114}$$

Here

$$\delta(\mathbf{k}) = 2\omega - \mathcal{E}_\Pi(\mathbf{0}) \simeq 2(\omega - m_*) \tag{13.115}$$

is the resonance detuning for the two-photon annihilation, m_* is the half of the Ps mass, which is the electron (positron) mass diminished by the Coulomb attraction: $m_* = m + \mathcal{E}_{S_0}/2$ ($\mathcal{E}_{S_0} = -6.8$ eV). For the joint consideration of resonant and nonresonant cases, we have introduced the effective BEC density $n_{eff} = \varrho n_0$, where the factor $\varrho = 1$ for the resonant triggering and $\varrho = \Lambda_0^2/\Delta_{\mathbf{p}}^2$ for the off-resonant one.

Equations (13.112) and (13.113) are a set of linearly coupled operator equations that can be solved by the method of characteristics whose eigenfrequencies define the temporal dynamics of the photonic field. The existence of an eigenfrequency with an imaginary part would indicate the onset of instability at which the initial spontaneously emitted entangled photon pairs are amplified leading to an exponential buildup of a macroscopic mode population. Solving (13.112) and (13.113), we obtain

$$\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}(t) = e^{i\frac{\delta(\mathbf{k})}{2}t}\Big[\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}(0)\cos\lambda t$$

$$+\frac{1}{i\lambda}\left\{\chi_\zeta(\mathbf{k})\,\widehat{a}^+_{-\mathbf{k},\zeta}(0) + \frac{\delta(\mathbf{k})}{2}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}(0)\right\}\sin\lambda t\Big], \tag{13.116}$$

where

$$\lambda = \sqrt{\frac{\delta^2(\mathbf{k})}{4} - \chi_\zeta^2(\mathbf{k})}. \tag{13.117}$$

The condition for the exponential gain is therefore:

$$\left|\chi_\zeta(\mathbf{k})\right| > |\omega - m_*|,$$

leading to the exponential growth of the modes in the narrow interval of frequencies

$$m_* - \left|\chi_\zeta(\mathbf{k})\right| < \omega < m_* + \left|\chi_\zeta(\mathbf{k})\right|. \tag{13.118}$$

For the interval (13.118), we find that the expectation value of the mode occupation grows exponentially

$$N_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}(t) = \langle 0_{\mathrm{ph}}|\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}(t)\,\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}(t)\,|0_{\mathrm{ph}}\rangle = \frac{\chi_\zeta^2(\mathbf{k})}{4\chi_\zeta^2(\mathbf{k}) - \delta^2(\mathbf{k})}$$
$$\times\left(e^{2\sqrt{\chi_\zeta^2(\mathbf{k}) - \frac{\delta^2(\mathbf{k})}{4}}\,t} + e^{-2\sqrt{\chi_\zeta^2(\mathbf{k}) - \frac{\delta^2(\mathbf{k})}{4}}\,t} - 2\right). \tag{13.119}$$

For the central frequency ($\delta(\mathbf{k}) = 0$), the exponential growth rate is

$$G = 2\left|\chi_\zeta(\mathbf{k})\right|. \tag{13.120}$$

Taking into account (13.114) and derived expression (13.96) for the decay amplitude, we obtain compact expression for the exponential growth rate

$$G = \sqrt{\frac{16\pi n_{eff}\alpha_0^5}{m}}. \tag{13.121}$$

We have solved the issue considering uniform BEC without boundary conditions and, as a consequence, according to (13.121) and (13.119), we have isotropic exponential gain. Due to the BEC coherence, here we have an absolute instability, i.e., the number of photons grows in every point within a BEC. As is seen from (13.121), the gain is scaled as $\sqrt{n_{eff}}$, which means that one might observe the start-up of an annihilation γ-ray laser at lower densities than would be the case for a gain proportional to the density. Indeed, the Dirac rate can be written as

$$G_0 = \frac{2\pi}{m^2}n_{eff}. \tag{13.122}$$

As is seen from (13.121) and (13.122), the gain G is larger than the Dirac rate G_0 up to densities $4.53 \times 10^{20}\,\mathrm{cm}^{-3}$. Besides, as is seen from (13.119), the generation process starts without initial seed.

For laser-like action, i.e., for the directional radiation, we should take an elongated shape of the BEC. In this case, boundary conditions can be incorporated into the derived equation (13.112) and (13.113) by introducing mode damping. The latter is simply due to the propagation of the photonic field, which escapes from the active medium and is inversely proportional to the transit time of a photon in the active medium. This transit time strictly depends on the direction. The latter is equivalent to the finite interaction time strictly depending on the shape of the BEC. For concreteness, we consider a cigar-shaped BEC of width L_w and length L ($L \gg L_w$). It is assumed that initially we have a BEC of spin-polarized o-Ps atoms. Then the applied electromagnetic field triggers collective annihilation of the BEC. Due to the intrinsic instability of recoilless two-photon decay and shape of the condensate, the initial spontaneously emitted entangled photon pairs are amplified leading to an exponential buildup of a macroscopic population into the end-fire-modes. In this case, due to an azimuthal symmetry for effective interaction time, one can write

$$t_{\mathrm{int}}\left(\vartheta, \chi, L\right) = \frac{L}{\sqrt{\cos^2\vartheta + \chi^2 \sin^2\vartheta}}, \tag{13.123}$$

where $\chi = L/L_w \gg 1$. In this case, for the photon number density in the frequency interval (13.118)

$$n_\gamma \simeq \sum_\zeta \int \frac{d^3\mathbf{k}}{(2\pi)^3} N_{\mathbf{k},\zeta}\left(t_{\mathrm{int}}\left(\vartheta, \chi, L\right)\right) \tag{13.124}$$

we have

$$n_\gamma \simeq \frac{G}{2\pi^2 \lambda_c^2} \int_0^1 dx \int_0^\pi d\vartheta \frac{\sin\vartheta}{1-x^2} \sinh^2\left(\frac{\sqrt{1-x^2}\Lambda}{2\sqrt{\cos^2\vartheta + \chi^2\sin^2\vartheta}}\right) \tag{13.125}$$

where $\lambda_c = \hbar/mc$ is the electron Compton wavelength and the dimensionless interaction parameter $\Lambda = GL$ defines the amplification regime. In Fig. 13.9, we show the density of generated γ-ray photons n_γ versus the effective density of p-Ps atoms in a BEC for the given length $L = 1.5\,\mathrm{cm}$ and various widths. The ratio $\chi = L/L_w$ defines the angular width of the end-fire-modes. For the densities, when $\Lambda > 1$, we have high gain regime and the radiation is concentrated in the end-fire-modes. In Fig. 13.10, the angular distribution of the density of generated γ-ray photons $dn_\gamma/d\vartheta$ for the given interaction length $L = 1.5\,\mathrm{cm}$ and density $10^{21}\,\mathrm{cm}^{-3}$ is shown. As is seen, due to the intrinsic instability of the two-photon collective decay of BEC and its shape the initial spontaneously emitted entangled photon pairs are amplified, leading to an exponential buildup of a macroscopic population into the end-fire-modes. Since

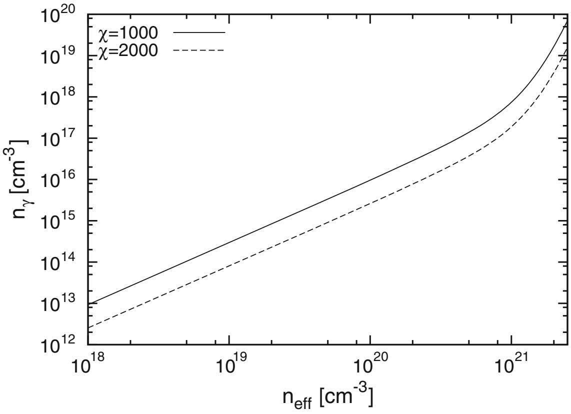


Fig. 13.9 In the logarithmic scale it is shown the density of generated γ-ray photons versus effective density of p-Ps atoms in BEC for the given interaction length $L = 1.5$ cm and various widths: $L_w = L/\chi$

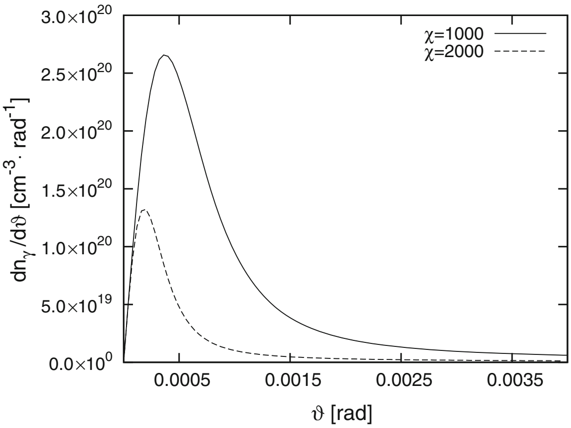


Fig. 13.10 Angular distribution of the density of generated γ-ray photons for the given interaction length $L = 1.5$ cm, density 10^{21} cm^{-3}, and various widths: $L_w = L/\chi$. There is a similar peak close to $\vartheta \simeq \pi$

we have not considered BEC depletion, the obtained solution (13.125) is applicable for the time scales when the number of photons N_γ is much smaller than the total number of Ps atoms (N): $N_\gamma \ll N$.

Let us consider the parameters required for an efficient γ-ray laser. The BEC occurs below a critical temperature, which for a uniform gas of Ps atoms with the density n_0 is given by the formula

$$T_c \simeq 1.66 \frac{\hbar^2}{mk_B} n_0^{2/3}, \tag{13.126}$$

where k_B is the Boltzmann constant. The maximal amplification length is taken to be $L_m \simeq c\tau_p \simeq 3.75$ cm. For an exponential amplification, we need $GL_m > 1$, which defines minimal densities $\sim 2 \times 10^{18}$ cm^{-3} for realization of the γ-ray laser. As a maximal density, we take $n_0 \simeq 1/\left(4a_s^3\right) \simeq 2.8 \times 10^{21}$ cm^{-3}. With the further increase of the density, the deviation from the bosonic nature of Ps atoms becomes considerable (see (13.76)). At high densities, the bound states of electron-positron pairs do not survive making electron-positron plasma. It should be noted that for the BEC realized in the trap with the potential that varies relatively smoothly in the space, the critical temperature and the number of Ps atoms in the condensate strongly defined by the parameters of the trap (see next paragraph).

13.8 The Influence of the Confinement and Interaction Between the Positronium Atoms on the γ-Ray Generation Process

Although we consider dilute system of Ps atoms when $na_t^3 \ll 1$, for the trapped atoms the interaction can have a strong influence on the ground state of the BEC and on the critical temperature of condensation. In this case, the starting point is the Gross–Pitaevskii equation for the order parameter of an inhomogeneous BEC well below the critical temperature. The Gross–Pitaevskii equation for the order parameter $\Psi(\mathbf{r})$ of a BEC has the well-known form:

$$\left(-\frac{\hbar^2}{2m_a}\Delta + V_{tr}(\mathbf{r}) + \frac{4\pi\hbar^2 a_t}{m_a}|\Psi(\mathbf{r})|^2\right)\Psi(\mathbf{r}) = \mu\Psi(\mathbf{r}), \tag{13.127}$$

where $m_a = 2m_*$ is the Ps mass, $V_{tr}(\mathbf{r})$ is the trap confining potential. The nonlinear term takes into account interaction between the Ps atoms parametrized by the s-wave scattering length a_t. The chemical potential μ is fixed by the normalization condition:

$$\int n(\mathbf{r})\, d\mathbf{r} = N; \;\; n(\mathbf{r}) = |\Psi(\mathbf{r})|^2, \tag{13.128}$$

where $n(\mathbf{r})$ is the density of the atoms with the total number N. When the number of atoms is large and interaction is repulsive ($a_t > 0$), an accurate expression for the ground-state $\Psi(\mathbf{r})$ may be obtained within the Thomas–Fermi approximation. The latter is valid when the dimensionless parameter $Na_t/\overline{a}$ is very large. Here $\overline{a}$ is the characteristic length of the confining potential. In this case, the kinetic energy term $\sim\Delta$ can be neglected in the Gross–Pitaevskii equation (13.127), and we have

$$n(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{m_a}{4\pi\hbar^2 a_t}\left(\mu - V_{tr}(\mathbf{r})\right) \tag{13.129}$$

in the region where the right-hand side of (13.129) is positive and $n(\mathbf{r}) = 0$ otherwise. The boundary of the BEC cloud is given by the relation $\mu = V_{tr}(\mathbf{r})$. The Thomas–Fermi approach fails near the edge of the cloud when kinetic energy term should be taken into account. In this case, the characteristic length is the healing length $l_h = 1/\sqrt{8\pi n a_t}$, which describes the distance over which the density tends to its bulk value from the boundary. For the considered densities $n = 10^{18}\mathrm{cm}^{-3} - 10^{21}\mathrm{cm}^{-3}$, the healing length $l_h \simeq 10^{-6} - 5 \times 10^{-8}$cm $\ll L, L_w$. As a consequence, the boundary effects can be neglected. Thus, for the condensate confined by a box with sufficiently (infinitely) hard walls the above consideration is valid and one can consider a homogeneous condensate with the density

$$n(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{m_a}{4\pi\hbar^2 a_t}\mu = n_0. \tag{13.130}$$

For a confining potential that varies relatively smoothly in the space, the inhomogeneous nature of BEC should be taken into account. For an anisotropic three-dimensional harmonic-oscillator potential $V_{tr}(\mathbf{r})$ given by

$$V_{tr}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{2}m_a\omega_0^2\left(x^2 + y^2 + \frac{z^2}{\chi^2}\right) \tag{13.131}$$

the solution (13.129) becomes

$$n(x, y, z) = n_{\max}\left[1 - \frac{1}{R_0^2}\left(x^2 + y^2 + \frac{z^2}{\chi^2}\right)\right], \tag{13.132}$$

with

$$n_{\max} = \frac{15^{2/5}}{8\pi\overline{a}^2 a_t}\left(\frac{Na_t}{\overline{a}}\right)^{2/5}; \; R_0 = \frac{15^{1/5}}{\chi^{1/3}}\left(\frac{Na_t}{\overline{a}}\right)^{1/5}\overline{a}. \tag{13.133}$$

where $\overline{a} = \sqrt{\hbar/m_a\overline{\omega}}$ and $\overline{\omega} = \omega_0\chi^{-1/3}$ is the geometrical mean frequency of an anisotropic oscillator. As far as γ-ray wavelength $\sim \lambda_c \ll L, L_w$, we can use the expression (13.121) for the exponential growth rate with the density defined through (13.132):

$$G(x, y, z) = \sqrt{\frac{16\pi\varrho n(x, y, z)\alpha_0^5}{m}}. \tag{13.134}$$

Then, the dimensionless interaction parameter in the exponent of (13.125) for the end-fire-modes can be written as

$$\Lambda = \int_{-\chi R_0}^{\chi R_0} G(0, 0, z)\, dz = \frac{\chi\pi R_0}{2}\sqrt{\frac{16\pi\varrho n_{\max}\alpha_0^5}{m}}. \tag{13.135}$$

As is seen from (13.135), the effective interaction length is $\chi\pi R_0/2$. Taking into account the interaction of Ps atoms, the critical temperature for BEC in the trap (13.131) is defined as:

$$T_c \simeq 0.94\frac{\hbar\overline{\omega}}{k_B}N^{1/3}\left(1 - 1.33\frac{a_t}{\overline{a}}N^{1/6}\right). \tag{13.136}$$

Thus, for a system of 10^{12} Ps atoms, interacting with a scattering length $a_t \simeq 1.6 \times 10^{-8}$ cm, which is trapped in an anisotropic harmonic potential fixed by $\overline{a} \simeq 10^{-5}$ cm with the anisotropy parameter $\chi = 2000$ the dimensionless interaction parameter will be $\Lambda \simeq 1.12$. At that the critical temperature, (13.136) will be $T_c \simeq 330^{\circ}$K . Note that the γ-ray line broadening due to the uncertainty in the momentum of Ps atoms confined in a trap $\delta\omega \sim \hbar/\left(2m_a R_0^2\right)$ is considerably smaller than the rate G.

Bibliography

M.D. Perry et al., Opt. Lett. **24**, 160 (1999)
Y.I. Salamin et al., Phys. Rep. **427**, 42 (2006)
A. Pukhov, Nat. Phys. **2**, 439 (2006)
H. Kapteyn et al., Science **317**, 775 (2007)
Ph.H. Bucksbaum, Science **317**, 766 (2007)
F. Krausz, M. Ivanov, Rev. Mod. Phys. **81**, 163 (2009)
P.B. Corkum, Phys. Rev. Lett. **71**, 1994 (1993)
M. Lewenstein et al., Phys. Rev. A **49**, 2117 (1994)
M.Yu. Ivanov, T. Brabec, N. Burnett, Phys. Rev. A **54**, 742 (1996)
P. Salières et al., Adv. At. Mol. Opt. Phys. **41**, 83 (1999)
T. Brabec, F. Krausz, Rev. Mod. Phys. **72**, 545 (2000)
M.W. Walser et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **85**, 5082 (2000)
D.B. Milosevic, S.X. Hu, W. Becker, Phys. Rev. A **63**, 011403 (2000)
C.C. Chirila et al., Phys. Rev. A **66**, 063411 (2002)
T.Z. Esirkepov et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **89**, 175003 (2002)
X.Q. Yan et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **103**, 135001 (2009)
H.K. Avetissian, A.G. Markossian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. A **84**, 013418 (2011)
D.H.H. Hoffmann et al., Laser Part. Beams **23**, 47 (2005)
M. Marklund, P.K. Shukla, Rev. Mod. Phys. **78**, 591 (2006)
R. Kienberger et al., Science **305**, 1267 (2004)
A. Baltuska et al., Nature **421**, 611 (2003)
M. Hentschel et al., Nature **414**, 509 (2001)
R. Battesti, C. Rizzo, Rep. Prog. Phys. **76**, 016401 (2013)
P. Emma et al., Nat. Photon. **4**, 641 (2010)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. ST AB **14**, 101301 (2011)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. E **66**, 016502 (2002)
T. Nakamura et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **108**, 195001 (2012)
H. Chen et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **102**, 105001 (2009)
C.P. Ridgers et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **108**, 165006 (2012)
V. Malka et al., Nature **4**, 447 (2008)
J. Meyer-ter-Vehn et al., Plasma Phys. Control. Fusion **47**, B807 (2005)
T. Esirkepov et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **92**, 17 (2004)
B.M. Hegelich et al., Nature **439**, 441 (2006)
D.H.H. Hoffmann et al., Int. J. Mod. Phys. E-Nucl. Phys. **18**(2), 381 (2009)
P.B. Corkum, F. Krausz, Nat. Phys. **3**, 381 (2007)
J.J. Honrubia, J. Meyer-ter-Vehn, Plasma Phys. Control. Fusion **51**, 014008 (2009)
T. Tajima, G. Mourou, Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams **5**, 031301 (2002)
H. Schwoerer et al., Nature **439**, 445 (2006)
S.P.D. Mangles et al., Nature **431**, 535 (2004)
I. Blumenfeld et al., Nature **445**, 741 (2007)

S. Kersch et al., New J. Phys. **9**, 415 (2007)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. A **66**, 033403 (2002)
H.K. Avetissian, B.R. Avchyan, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. A **74**, 063413 (2006)
M. Deutsch, Phys. Rev. **82**, 455 (1951)
S.G. Karshenboim, Phys. Rep. **422**, 1 (2005)
P.M. Platzman, A.P. Mills Jr, Phys. Rev. B **49**, 454 (1994)
D.B. Cassidy et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **95**, 195006 (2005)
D.B. Cassidy, A.P. Mills Jr, Nature **449**, 195 (2007)
D.B. Cassidy, A.P. Mills Jr, Phys. Rev. Lett. **100**, 013401 (2008)
D.B. Cassidy, V.E. Meligne, A.P. Mills Jr, Phys. Rev. Lett. **104**, 173401 (2010)
M.H. Anderson et al., Science **269**, 198 (1995)
K.B. Davis et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **75**, 3969 (1995)
S.O. Demokritov et al., Nature **443**, 430 (2006)
J.D. Plumhof et al., Nat. Mater. **13**, 248 (2014)
P.A.M. Dirac, Proc. Cambr. Phil. Soc. **26**, 361 (1930)
F.A. Aharonyan, A.M. Atoyan, R.A. Sunyaev, Astrophys. Space Sci. **93**, 229 (1983)
C.M. Varma, Nature **267**, 686 (1977)
R. Ramaty, J.M. McKinley, F.C. Jones, ApJ **256**, 238 (1982)
M. Bertolotti, C. Sibilia, Appl. Phys. **19**, 127 (1979)
A. Loeb, S. Eliezer, Laser Partic. Beams **4**, 577 (1986)
E.P. Liang, C.D. Dermer, Opt. Commun. **65**, 419 (1988)
A.P. Mills Jr, D.B. Cassidy, R.G. Greaves, Mater. Sci. Forum **445**, 424 (2004)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. E **65**, 046505 (2002)
H.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. ST Accel. Beams **10**, 030703 (2007)
A. Smerzi et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **79**, 4950 (1997)
D. Nagy et al., Eur. Phys. J. D **55**, 659 (2009)
M.E. Peskin, D.V. Schroeder: *An Introduction to Quantum Field Theory* (Addison-Wesley, Reading, 1995)
P. Coleman, *Positron Beams and Their Applications* (World Scientific Publisher, Singapore, 2000)
C.M. Surko, M. Leventhal, A. Passner, Phys. Rev. Lett. **62**, 901 (1989)
N. Cui et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **108**, 243401 (2012)
H.K. Avetissian, A.K. Avetissian, G.F. Mkrtchian, Phys. Rev. Lett. **113**, 023904 (2014)

Chapter 14
"Relativistic" Nonlinear Electromagnetic Processes in Graphene

Abstract As a condensed matter with unique nonlinear electromagnetic properties and, moreover, of "relativistic" nature of the interaction with strong electromagnetic radiation fields, in this chapter we will consider induced multiphoton coherent processes in graphene. The graphene—a single sheet of carbon atoms in a honeycomb lattice—possesses with such physical characteristics (quasiparticle states in graphene behave like massless "relativistic" Dirac fermions and in the interaction parameter instead of the light speed the much less Fermi velocity stands for) due to which the multiphoton effects at the interaction with external fields occur at incomparable small intensities than that are necessary in the common condensed matter with the bound–bound transitions, or free–free ones in case of charged particle beams. Thus, the nonlinear excitation of the Dirac sea and formation of multiphoton Rabi oscillations in graphene occur at billion time smaller intensities that are required for excitation of the electron–positron vacuum and, in general, for revealing of nonlinear effects in the ordinary materials. Owing to the mentioned unique property of graphene, the microscopic theory of such physical systems, in general, and specifically the description of electromagnetic processes in graphene-like nanostructures are succeeded on the basis of the "relativistic" Dirac theory, thereby connecting the microscopic theory of the condensed matter physics with the quantum electrodynamics. The significance of graphene nonlinear electromagnetic properties and, in general, the role of graphene in contemporary physics are difficult to exaggerate. Besides the various applications in nanoelectronics–nanooptics, the graphene physics opens wide research field unifying low-energy condensed matter physics and quantum electrodynamics. Many fundamental nonlinear QED processes, specifically, electron–positron pair production in superstrong laser fields of ultrarelativistic intensities, observation of which is problematic yet even in the current superintense laser fields, have their counterparts in graphene where considerably weaker electromagnetic fields are required for realization of production of the antimatter. In this connection one can note Klein paradox, Schwinger mechanism, and Zitterbewegung for particle-hole excitation, as well as diverse physical and applied effects based on Zitterbewegung, e.g., minimal conductivity at vanishing carrier concentration, etc. At the particle-hole annihilation from that induced by pump field coherent superposition states of quasiparticles in a graphene, the wave mixing and high harmonics generation processes occur with great efficiency. Due to the massless energy spectrum, the Compton wavelength for

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7_14

graphene quasiparticle tends to infinity. On the other hand, in the QED the Compton wavelength is characteristic length for particle–antiparticle pair creation and annihilation. So, at the interaction of an electromagnetic field with an intrinsic graphene, there is no quasiclassical limit, since no matter how weak the applied field is and how small the photon energy is, the particle-hole pairs will be created during the whole interaction process—at the arbitrary distances. One can change the topology of the Fermi surface in the low-energy region and many important features of a graphene using the multilayer graphene of diverse structure and geometry. The multilayer graphene is of great interest, since its electronic states are considerably richer than that of a monolayer graphene. For example, in case of a bilayer graphene, the interlayer coupling between the two graphene sheets changes the monolayer's Dirac cone inducing a trigonal warping on the band dispersion and changing the topology of the Fermi surface. Thus, bilayer graphene (AB-stacked) may have better potential than a single-layer graphene for photonic applications due to its anisotropic band structure and widely tunable bandgap. For the intrinsic bilayer graphene trigonal warping effects in the energy spectrum are considerable for the low-energy excitations $E \lesssim 10$ meV. Hence, one can expect essential enhancement of nonlinear electromagnetic response of a bilayer graphene compared with a monolayer one in the THz domain where high-power THz generators and frequency multipliers are of special interest for THz science.

14.1 Effective “Relativistic” Hamiltonian for Graphene Quasiparticles

Let us, before the consideration of a graphene interaction with an external electromagnetic field, represent the effective Hamiltonian in the tight-binding approximation and dispersion law for a graphene applicable in the full Brillouin zone of a hexagonal nanostructure. In the vicinity of the K points of the Brillouin zone this Hamiltonian with great accuracy turns into the “relativistic” Dirac Hamiltonian of a massless fermion. Hence, we will describe here the microscopic theory and the stated electromagnetic problems in graphene on the base of the “relativistic” Dirac theory.

The honeycomb lattice of a graphene is shown in Fig. 14.1. The vectors which connect the nearest-neighbor carbon atoms are

$$\delta_1 = \frac{a}{2}\left(\sqrt{3}\widehat{\mathbf{x}} + \widehat{\mathbf{y}}\right), \ \delta_2 = \frac{a}{2}\left(-\sqrt{3}\widehat{\mathbf{x}} + \widehat{\mathbf{y}}\right), \ \delta_3 = -a\widehat{\mathbf{y}}. \tag{14.1}$$

Triangular Bravais lattice is spanned by the basis vectors

$$\mathbf{a}_1 = \frac{\sqrt{3}a}{2}\left(\widehat{\mathbf{x}} + \sqrt{3}\widehat{\mathbf{y}}\right), \quad \mathbf{a}_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}a}{2}\left(-\widehat{\mathbf{x}} + \sqrt{3}\widehat{\mathbf{y}}\right). \tag{14.2}$$

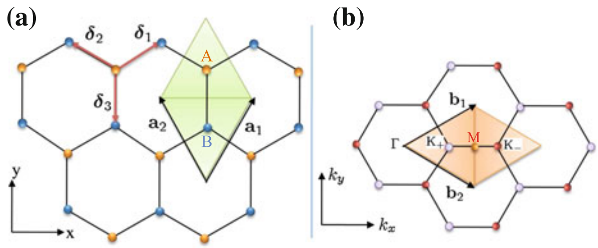


Fig. 14.1 **a** Graphene honeycomb lattice. The vectors δ_1, δ_2, and δ_3 connect nearest-neighbor carbon atoms, separated by a distance $a = 0.142$ nm. As a basis vectors of the triangular Bravais lattice we have choosen $\mathbf{a}_1 = \delta_1 - \delta_3$ and $\mathbf{a}_2 = \delta_2 - \delta_3$. The *shaded region* represents conventional unit cell with two atoms. **b** Reciprocal lattice of the triangular lattice. Its basis vectors are $\mathbf{b}_1$ and $\mathbf{b}_2$. The reciprocal lattice unit cell is shown as a *shaded rhombic area*, with its inequivalent K_+ and K_- points. It is also shown central point Γ of the Brillouin zone and M point (van Hove singularity point)

The reciprocal lattice unit cell is a rhombus formed by two vectors

$$\mathbf{b}_1 = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{3}a}\left(\widehat{\mathbf{x}} + \frac{\widehat{\mathbf{y}}}{\sqrt{3}}\right), \quad \mathbf{b}_2 = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{3}a}\left(\widehat{\mathbf{x}} - \frac{\widehat{\mathbf{y}}}{\sqrt{3}}\right). \tag{14.3}$$

The modules of the basis vectors yield the lattice spacings: $\overline{a} = \sqrt{3}a$ and $k_b = 4\pi/3a$ in conventional and reciprocal space, respectively. The important crystallographic points which are crucial for graphene electronic properties are also shown. High-energy excitations are situated in the vicinity of the Γ point. Low-energy excitations are centered around the two points K_+ and K_- represented by the vectors

$$\mathbf{K}_+ = \frac{k_b}{\sqrt{3}}\widehat{\mathbf{x}}, \quad \mathbf{K}_- = \frac{2k_b}{\sqrt{3}}\widehat{\mathbf{x}}. \tag{14.4}$$

Finally, it is shown M point ($\mathbf{M} = \sqrt{3}k_b\widehat{\mathbf{x}}/2$) where van Hove singularity takes place, i.e., the density of states diverges. The Hamiltonian for electrons in a monolayer graphene sheet can be written as

$$\widehat{H_0} = \int d\mathbf{r}\, \hat{\psi}^\dagger(\mathbf{r}) \left\{ \frac{\widehat{\mathbf{p}}^2}{2m} + U_L(\mathbf{r}) \right\} \hat{\psi}(\mathbf{r}). \tag{14.5}$$

It describes the motion of the electrons of mass m in the periodic lattice potential $U_L(\mathbf{r})$. We treat $\widehat{H_0}$ in the tight-binding approximation and expand the field operators in terms of the carbon wave functions,

$$\hat{\psi}(\mathbf{r}) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{R}_A} e^{i\mathbf{k}\mathbf{R}_A} \varphi(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_A)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k}}$$

$$+ \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{\mathbf{k},\mathbf{R}_B} e^{i\mathbf{k}\mathbf{R}_B} \varphi(\mathbf{r} - \mathbf{R}_B) \widehat{b}_{\mathbf{k}}. \tag{14.6}$$

Here the sum is over N different unit cells, and $\mathbf{R}_A$ and $\mathbf{R}_B$ denote the positions of the carbon atoms on each sublattice. In (14.6), operators $\hat{a}_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $\hat{b}_{\mathbf{k}}$ annihilate a particle in the state $|\mathbf{k}\rangle$ on the sublattices A and B, respectively. The carbon $2p_z$ orbital is $\varphi(\mathbf{r}) = re^{-r/2d} \cos\vartheta/\sqrt{32\pi d^5}$, with $d \simeq 0.15A$. Taking into account only nearest-neighbor overlapping, from (14.5) and (14.6) for the free part of the Hamiltonian we obtain

$$\widehat{H}_0 = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \left(\Upsilon(\mathbf{k}) \widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{k}} \widehat{b}_{\mathbf{k}} + \Upsilon^{*}(\mathbf{k}) \widehat{b}^{+}_{\mathbf{k}} \widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k}} \right), \tag{14.7}$$

where

$$\Upsilon(\mathbf{k}) = -\gamma_0 \sum_{j=1}^{3} e^{i\mathbf{k}\delta_j} \tag{14.8}$$

and γ_0 is the nearest-neighbor hopping parameter. For the latter we take $\gamma_0 = 2.7$ eV. Here we consider intrinsic graphene, so Fermi energy is taken to be zero.

One can diagonalize the Hamiltonian (14.7) by introducing annihilation (creation) operators for conduction ($\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}}$) and valence ($\widehat{e}_{\nu\mathbf{k}}$) bands:

$$\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \left(\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}} - \widehat{e}_{\nu\mathbf{k}} \right), \tag{14.9}$$

$$\widehat{b}_{\mathbf{k}} = \frac{\Upsilon^{*}(\mathbf{k})}{\sqrt{2}\,|\Upsilon(\mathbf{k})|} \left(\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}} + \widehat{e}_{\nu\mathbf{k}} \right). \tag{14.10}$$

With the help of the new operators the total Hamiltonian can be represented as follows:

$$\widehat{H} = \sum_{\mathbf{k}} \mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k}) \left(\widehat{e}^{+}_{c\mathbf{k}} \widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}} - \widehat{e}^{+}_{\upsilon\mathbf{k}} \widehat{e}_{\upsilon\mathbf{k}} \right), \tag{14.11}$$

where

$$\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k}) = |\Upsilon(\mathbf{k})| = \gamma_0 \sqrt{3 + 2\left(\cos \mathbf{a}_1\mathbf{k} + \cos \mathbf{a}_2\mathbf{k} + \cos \mathbf{a}_3\mathbf{k}\right)} \tag{14.12}$$

is the dispersion law of a graphene which is applicable to the full Brillouin zone of a hexagonal tight-binding nanostructure.

Before considering the low-energy excitations around the two points K_+ and K_- let us define an effective single-particle tight-binding Hamiltonian arising from (14.7). The later can be defined as

$$\widehat{H}_s(\mathbf{k}) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \Upsilon^*(\mathbf{k}) \\ \Upsilon(\mathbf{k}) & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{14.13}$$

The eigenstates of the effective Hamiltonian (14.13) are the spinors

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} = \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} \\ \beta_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} \end{bmatrix},$$

the components of which are the probability amplitudes of the Bloch wave function on the two sublattices A and B. The index "σ" is associated with positive ($\sigma = 1$) and negative ($\sigma = -1$) energy solutions. The solution of the eigenvalue equation

$$\widehat{H}_s(\mathbf{k})\,\Psi_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} = \mathcal{E}_\sigma(\mathbf{k})\,\Psi_{\mathbf{k},\sigma}$$

yields to wave function

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{k},\sigma} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ \sigma e^{iarg(\Upsilon(\mathbf{k}))} \end{bmatrix}. \tag{14.14}$$

As is expected, the wave function (14.14) represents an equal probability to find an electron on the sublattices A and B.

In order to describe the low-energy excitations, i.e., electronic excitations with energy that is much smaller than the γ_0, one may restrict the excitations to quantum states in the vicinity of the so-called Dirac points K_+ and K_- and expand the dispersion law around these $K_\pm$ points. Hence, the wave vector is decomposed as $\mathbf{k} = \mathbf{K}_\pm + \mathbf{p}/\hbar$, where $|\mathbf{p}|\,a/\hbar \ll 1$. Expanding $\Upsilon_\pm \equiv \Upsilon(\mathbf{K}_\pm + \mathbf{p}/\hbar)$, we obtain

$$\Upsilon_\pm \simeq \pm\frac{3a\gamma_0}{2\hbar}\left(p_x \pm i p_y\right). \tag{14.15}$$

Taking into account (14.15), from the effective Hamiltonian (14.13) we obtain

$$\widehat{H}_s(\mathbf{p},\zeta) = \zeta \mathrm{v}_F \left(p_x\sigma_x + \zeta p_y \sigma_y\right), \tag{14.16}$$

where we have defined the Fermi velocity

$$\mathrm{v}_F = \frac{3a\gamma_0}{2\hbar}.$$

In (14.16) σ_x, σ_y are Pauli matrices and we have introduced the valley quantum number $\zeta = \pm 1$, where $\zeta = 1$ denotes the K_+ point and $\zeta = -1$ denotes the K_- point. It is clear that the effective Hamiltonian (14.16) represents two copies of the massless Dirac-like Hamiltonian with v_F instead of the light speed. Thus, dispersion law in the vicinity of the Dirac points is "ultrarelativistic":

$$\mathcal{E}_\sigma(\mathbf{p}) = \sigma p \mathrm{v}_F. \tag{14.17}$$

The last equation for dispersion law shows that one can expect that many fundamental nonlinear and relativistic QED processes should have their counterparts in graphene, where, however, incomparably weaker electromagnetic fields will be required for their revelation. Thus, the wave–particle interaction in graphene can be characterized by the dimensionless parameter

$$\chi = \frac{eE\mathrm{v}_F}{\omega}\frac{1}{\hbar\omega},$$

which represents the work of the wave electric field E on a period $1/\omega$ in the units of photon energy $\varepsilon_\gamma = \hbar\omega$. Here v_F is the Fermi velocity: $\mathrm{v}_F \approx c/300$, and e is the elementary charge. The average intensity of the wave expressed by χ can be estimated as

$$I_\chi = \chi^2 \times 3.07 \times 10^{11}\ \mathrm{W\ cm^{-2}}[\hbar\omega/\mathrm{eV}]^4.$$

Depending on the value of this parameter χ, one can distinguish three different regimes in the wave–particle interaction process. Thus, $\chi \ll 1$ corresponds to one-photon interaction regime, $\chi \sim 1$—to multiphoton interaction regime, and $\chi \gg 1$ corresponds to static field limit or Schwinger regime. As is seen, the intensity I_χ strongly depends on the photon energy. Particularly, for infrared photons, $\varepsilon_\gamma \sim 0.1$ eV, multiphoton interaction regime can be achieved already at the intensities $I_\chi = 3.07 \times 10^7$ W cm^{-2}, while for example in case of free electrons at the same photon energies the multiphoton effects take place at the intensities $I \sim 10^{16}$ W cm^{-2} (see Chap. 1). Such a huge difference, as well as the gapless particle-hole energy spectrum in graphene, makes realistic the implementation of considered nonlinear QED processes via multiphoton excitation of the Dirac vacuum by laser fields of ordinary strengths.

14.2 Microscopic Theory of Strong Laser Fields Interaction with Graphene

Let us consider the graphene interaction with an external strong electromagnetic wave. Specifically, in case of a laser radiation we assume that the pulse propagates in the perpendicular direction to the graphene plane (XY) when the laser pulse electric field $\mathbf{E}(t)$ lies in the graphene plane, to exclude the effect of the wave magnetic field. In this case the action of the magnetic field can proceed only in the plane perpendicular to the graphene layer; however, the Coulomb interaction of the graphene electrons with the ions–crystal lattice considerably exceeds the Lorentz force for considering moderately strong laser fields, and the resulting electron motion cannot obey the Lorentz force to go out from the graphene plane.

For the interaction Hamiltonian we will use the length gauge describing the interaction by the potential energy

$$\widehat{V} = e\mathbf{r}\mathbf{E}(t). \tag{14.18}$$

Here $\mathbf{r} = \{x, y\}$ is the 2D position operator. The Hamiltonian of the system in the second quantization formalism can be presented in the form

$$\widehat{H} = \int \widehat{\Psi}^{+}\widehat{H}_{s}\widehat{\Psi}d\mathbf{r}, \tag{14.19}$$

where $\widehat{\Psi}$ is the field operator for quasiparticles of the Fermi-Dirac sea in the graphene, and $\widehat{H}_s$ is the single-particle Hamiltonian in the external electric field $\mathbf{E}(t)$. This Hamiltonian in the vicinity of the K point can be written as (here we omit the real spin and valley quantum numbers)

$$\widehat{H}_s = \mathrm{v}_F\begin{pmatrix} 0 & \widehat{p}_x - i\widehat{p}_y \\ \widehat{p}_x + i\widehat{p}_y & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} e\mathbf{r}\mathbf{E}(t) & 0 \\ 0 & e\mathbf{r}\mathbf{E}(t) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{14.20}$$

where $\hat{\mathbf{p}} = \left\{\widehat{p}_x, \widehat{p}_y\right\}$ is the electron momentum operator. The first term in (14.20) describes the Hamiltonian of two-dimensional quasiparticles in the graphene (14.16), and the second term is the interaction Hamiltonian.

Expanding the fermionic field operator over the free Dirac states

$$\widehat{\Psi}(\mathbf{r}, t) = \sum_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}(t)\Psi_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}(\mathbf{r}), \tag{14.21}$$

where the creation and annihilation operators, $\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}(t)$ and $\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}(t)$, associated with positive ($\sigma = 1$) and negative ($\sigma = -1$) energy solutions, satisfy the anticommutation rules at equal times and using the free Dirac wave functions:

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}(x, y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2S}}\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sigma e^{i\Theta(\mathbf{p})} \end{pmatrix} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p}\mathbf{r}}, \tag{14.22}$$

the second quantized Hamiltonian can be expressed in the following form:

$$\widehat{H} = \sum_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}\mathcal{E}_{\sigma}(p)\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{p}\sigma}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}\sigma} + e\mathbf{E}(t)\sum_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}\sum_{\mathbf{p}',\sigma'}\mathbf{D}_{\sigma\sigma'}\left(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}'\right)\widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}',\sigma'}, \tag{14.23}$$

where

$$\mathbf{D}_{\sigma\sigma'}\left(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}'\right) = \frac{1}{2S}\left[1 + \sigma\sigma' e^{i\left(\Theta(\mathbf{p}') - \Theta(\mathbf{p})\right)}\right]\int \mathbf{r}e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathbf{p}'-\mathbf{p})\mathbf{r}}d\mathbf{r}. \tag{14.24}$$

In (14.22) the parameter S is the quantization area-graphene layer surface area, and function

$$\Theta(\mathbf{p}) = \arctan\left(\frac{p_y}{p_x}\right) \tag{14.25}$$

is the angle in momentum space. The energies $\mathcal{E}_\sigma(p)$ (where $\sigma = \pm 1$) in (14.23) are defined by dispersion law of quasiparticles in the graphene: $\mathcal{E}_\sigma(p) = \sigma \mathrm{v}_F \sqrt{p_x^2 + p_y^2}$.

Then we will pass to Heisenberg representation where operators obey the evolution equation (8.17) and expectation values are determined by the initial density matrix (8.18). We will define the single-particle density matrix in the momentum space as follows:

$$\rho_{\sigma_1\sigma_2}(\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, t) = \langle \widehat{a}^{+}_{\mathbf{p}_2,\sigma_2}(t)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}_1,\sigma_1}(t)\rangle \tag{14.26}$$

and for the initial state of the graphene quasiparticles we assume an ideal Fermi gas in equilibrium. According to the latter, the initial single-particle density matrix will be a diagonal, and we will have the Fermi-Dirac distribution:

$$\rho_{\sigma\sigma'}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}', 0) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{\frac{\mathcal{E}_\sigma(p) - \mu}{T}}} \delta_{\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}'} \delta_{\sigma,\sigma'}. \tag{14.27}$$

Including in (14.27) quantity μ is the chemical potential, and T is the temperature in energy units.

Taking into account the definition (14.26), from (8.17) one can obtain evolution equation for the single-particle density matrix in graphene:

$$i\hbar \frac{\partial \rho_{\sigma_1\sigma_2}(\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, t)}{\partial t} = \left[\mathcal{E}_{\sigma_1}(p_1) - \mathcal{E}_{\sigma_2}(p_2)\right] \rho_{\sigma_1\sigma_2}(\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}_2, t)$$

$$- e\mathbf{E}(t) \sum_{\mathbf{p},\sigma} \left[\mathbf{D}_{\sigma\sigma_2}\left(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2\right) \rho_{\sigma_1\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}, t) - \mathbf{D}_{\sigma_1\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_1, \mathbf{p}) \rho_{\sigma\sigma_2}(\mathbf{p}, \mathbf{p}_2, t)\right]. \tag{14.28}$$

Then, using the known formulae with the Dirac delta function $\delta(\alpha)$:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x e^{-i\alpha x} dx = 2\pi i \frac{\partial}{\partial \alpha} \delta(\alpha) \tag{14.29}$$

and passing from the sum to the integral

$$\sum_{\mathbf{p}} \to \frac{S}{(2\pi\hbar)^2} \int d\mathbf{p}, \tag{14.30}$$

we will obtain the following closed set of equations for the single-particle density matrix elements:

$$\frac{\partial \rho_{\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t)}{\partial t} - e\mathbf{E}(t)\left.\frac{\partial \rho_{\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_1,\mathbf{p},t)}{\partial \mathbf{p}_1}\right|_{\mathbf{p}_1=\mathbf{p}} - e\mathbf{E}(t)\left.\frac{\partial \rho_{\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}_2,t)}{\partial \mathbf{p}_2}\right|_{\mathbf{p}_2=\mathbf{p}}$$

$$= i\frac{e\mathbf{E}(t)}{2}\frac{\partial \Theta(\mathbf{p})}{\partial \mathbf{p}}\left[\rho_{\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t) - \rho_{-\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t)\right], \tag{14.31}$$

$$\frac{\partial \rho_{\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t)}{\partial t} - e\mathbf{E}(t)\left.\frac{\partial \rho_{\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_1,\mathbf{p},t)}{\partial \mathbf{p}_1}\right|_{\mathbf{p}_1=\mathbf{p}} - e\mathbf{E}(t)\left.\frac{\partial \rho_{\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}_2,t)}{\partial \mathbf{p}_2}\right|_{\mathbf{p}_2=\mathbf{p}}$$

$$= \frac{2}{i\hbar}\mathcal{E}_\sigma(p)\,\rho_{\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t) - \frac{e\mathbf{E}(t)}{2i}\frac{\partial \Theta(\mathbf{p})}{\partial \mathbf{p}}\left[\rho_{\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t) - \rho_{-\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t)\right]. \tag{14.32}$$

To solve these equations one need to eliminate the terms with the partial derivatives over the momentum. Using the method of characteristics, we obtain

$$\mathbf{p} = \mathbf{p}_0 + \mathbf{p}_E(t), \tag{14.33}$$

where

$$\mathbf{p}_E(t) = -e\int_0^t \mathbf{E}\left(t'\right)dt' \tag{14.34}$$

is the momentum given by the wave field. Now the (14.31) and (14.32) will have the form

$$\frac{\partial \rho_{\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)}{\partial t} = \frac{i}{2}F(\mathbf{p}_0,t)\left[\rho_{\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t) - \rho_{-\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)\right], \tag{14.35}$$

$$\frac{\partial \rho_{\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)}{\partial t} = \frac{2}{i\hbar}\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_\sigma(\mathbf{p}_0,t)\,\rho_{\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)$$

$$+\frac{i}{2}F(\mathbf{p}_0,t)\left[\rho_{\sigma,\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t) - \rho_{-\sigma,-\sigma}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)\right], \tag{14.36}$$

where the function $F(\mathbf{p}_0,t)$ is

$$F(\mathbf{p}_0,t) = \frac{eE_y(t)\,p_{0x} - eE_x(t)\,p_{0y}}{\left(\mathbf{p}_0 + \mathbf{p}_E(t)\right)^2}, \tag{14.37}$$

and

$$\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_{\sigma}\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)=\sigma \mathrm{v}_F\sqrt{\left(\mathbf{p}_0+\mathbf{p}_E\left(t\right)\right)^2} \tag{14.38}$$

is the classical energy of the graphene electrons in the wave field. Within the (14.33) one can state that

$$\rho_{\sigma,\sigma'}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,0)=\rho_{\sigma,\sigma'}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},0). \tag{14.39}$$

Note that as far as we neglected relaxation processes, here the developed theory is applicable only for limited times: $t<\tau_{\min}$, where $\tau_{\min}$ is the minimal of all relaxation times. Equations (14.35) and (14.36) lead to the conservation law for the particles number:

$$\rho_{1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)+\rho_{-1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)$$
$$=\rho_{1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,0)+\rho_{-1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,0)\equiv \Xi\left(p_0,\mu,T\right). \tag{14.40}$$

The function $\Xi_{p_0,\mu,T}$ is determined by the diagonal elements and according to the (14.27) is

$$\Xi_{p_0,\mu,T}=\frac{1}{1+e^{\frac{\mathrm{v}_F p_0-\mu}{T}}}+\frac{1}{1+e^{\frac{-\mathrm{v}_F p_0-\mu}{T}}}. \tag{14.41}$$

The diagonal elements of density matrix represent distribution functions of the particles, $\mathcal{N}\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)\equiv\rho_{1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)$, and holes, $\mathcal{N}_h\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)=1-\rho_{-1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)$, in graphene. The nondiagonal elements $\rho_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)=\rho^{*}_{-1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)$ describe particle-hole coherent transitions.

Let us now introduce the concept of the interband coherency $\mathcal{J}\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)$ in the interaction picture:

$$\rho_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)=i\mathcal{J}\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)\exp\left\{-i\frac{2}{\hbar}\int\limits_0^t\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t'\right)dt'\right\}. \tag{14.42}$$

Then using the (14.40) and (14.42), from (14.35) and (14.36) one can obtain the following set of equations:

$$\frac{\partial\mathcal{N}\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)}{\partial t}=-\frac{1}{2}F\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)\left[\mathcal{J}\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)\exp\left\{-i\frac{2}{\hbar}\int\limits_0^t\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t'\right)dt'\right\}+\text{c.c.}\right], \tag{14.43}$$

$$\frac{\partial\mathcal{J}\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)}{\partial t}=\frac{1}{2}F\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)\exp\left\{i\frac{2}{\hbar}\int\limits_0^t\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t'\right)dt'\right\}\left[2\mathcal{N}\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)-\Xi_{p_0,\mu,T}\right]. \tag{14.44}$$

The set of equations (14.43) and (14.44) should be solved under the following initial conditions:

$$\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0, 0) = 0; \quad \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0, 0) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{\frac{v_F p_0 - \mu}{T}}}. \tag{14.45}$$

14.3 Multiphoton Resonant Excitation and Rabi Oscillations in Graphene

Equations (14.43) and (14.44) represent linear set of equations with the time-varying coefficients. To clarify the multiphoton resonant excitation picture in graphene, at first, we consider the case of interaction when the laser radiation of arbitrary polarization propagates in perpendicular direction to the graphene plane XY (constant phase connected with the position of the wave pulse maximum with respect to the graphene plane is set zero):

$$\mathbf{E}(t) = \widehat{x} E_{0x} \cos \omega t + \widehat{y} E_{0y} \sin \omega t. \tag{14.46}$$

Assuming adiabatic turn-on/off the interaction, for the momentum of an electron $\mathbf{p}_E(t)$ given by the wave field (14.34), we have

$$\mathbf{p}_E(t) = \left\{ -\frac{eE_{0x}}{\omega} \sin \omega t, \frac{eE_{0y}}{\omega} \cos \omega t \right\}. \tag{14.47}$$

In this case of the interaction with the monochromatic wave, (14.43) and (14.93) are equations with periodic coefficients and those are analogous to the optical Bloch equations which describe Rabi oscillations of states populations of the two-level atomic system under resonant excitation. However, there is a significant difference between the Bloch equations and (14.43), (14.44), which are the following. According to (14.43) and (14.44), the coupling term

$$\Lambda(\mathbf{p}_0, t) = F(\mathbf{p}_0, t) \exp \left\{ i \frac{2}{\hbar} \int_0^t \widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1 \left(\mathbf{p}_0, t' \right) dt' \right\} \tag{14.48}$$

is a quasiperiodic function, that is

$$\Lambda \left(\mathbf{p}_0, t + \frac{2\pi}{\omega} \right) = \exp \left\{ i \frac{2\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0)}{\hbar} \frac{2\pi}{\omega} \right\} \Lambda(\mathbf{p}_0, t), \tag{14.49}$$

where $\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1(\mathbf{p}_0, t) = \mathrm{v}_F\sqrt{\left[\mathbf{p}_0 + \mathbf{p}_E(t)\right]^2}$ and

$$\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0) = \frac{\omega}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi/\omega}\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1(\mathbf{p}_0, t)\,dt$$

$$= \frac{\mathrm{v}_F\omega}{2\pi}\int_0^{2\pi/\omega}\sqrt{\left(p_{0x} - \frac{eE_{0x}}{\omega}\sin\omega t\right)^2 + \left(p_{0y} + \frac{eE_{0y}}{\omega}\cos\omega t\right)^2}\,dt \qquad (14.50)$$

is the quasienergy of a graphene electron in the field (14.46), which coincides with the mean classical energy. Since due to the space homogeneity of the field in specific geometry (14.46), the generalized momentum of a particle conserves and the real transitions in the wave field will occur from a negative energy level $-\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0)$ to the positive energy level $+\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0)$. Hence, the multiphoton probabilities of the particle-hole pair production process will have maximal values for the resonant transitions:

$$2\mathcal{E}_E \simeq n\hbar\omega;\; n = 1, 2, 3, ... \qquad (14.51)$$

Note that these levels are coupled by the term $F(\mathbf{p}_0, t + 2\pi/\omega) = F(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$ which, in turn, contains all harmonics of driving field, in contrast to Bloch equations where coupling contains only oscillation on fundamental frequency ω, which provides only one-photon direct resonant excitation. Besides, if the resonant transitions in atomic systems with discrete energy levels occur at the certain pump photon energies, the transitions in the graphene are always of resonant character to pump radiation of any frequency $\omega > \mu/\hbar$, due to the band structure of the graphene (with the fixed photon energies we have fixed resonant energy bands).

Equations (14.43) and (14.44) contain slow and fast oscillations at the resonant condition (14.51), to decouple of which we will use the periodic properties of the function $\exp\{-2i\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0)\,t/\hbar\}\,\Lambda(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$ and expanding it over Fourier series:

$$e^{-\frac{2i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0)t}\Lambda(\mathbf{p}_0, t) = F(\mathbf{p}_0, t)\,e^{i\frac{2}{\hbar}\int_0^t\left[\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1(\mathbf{p}_0, t') - \mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0)\right]dt'} = \sum_s G_s(\mathbf{p}_0, E)\,e^{-is\omega t}, \qquad (14.52)$$

we can represent (14.43) and (14.44) in the following form:

$$\frac{\partial\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)}{\partial t} = -\frac{1}{2}\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)\sum_s G_s^*(\mathbf{p}_0, E)\,e^{-i\left(\frac{2}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0) - s\omega\right)t} + \mathrm{c.c.}, \qquad (14.53)$$

$$\frac{\partial\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)}{\partial t} = \frac{1}{2}\sum_s G_s(\mathbf{p}_0, E)\,e^{i\left(\frac{2}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0) - s\omega\right)t}\left[2\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0, t) - \Xi_{p_0,\mu,T}\right]. \qquad (14.54)$$

The coupling coefficient corresponding to s-photon resonant interaction is

$$G_s(\mathbf{p}_0, E) = \frac{\omega}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi/\omega} F(\mathbf{p}_0, t)\, e^{i\frac{2}{\hbar}\int_0^t [\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1(\mathbf{p}_0, t') - \mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0)]dt'} e^{is\omega t} dt. \tag{14.55}$$

In (14.53) and (14.54), the main coupling term is the slowly varying term with $s = n$ in the vicinity of resonance (14.51). The other fast oscillating nonresonant terms express only the dynamic Stark shifts. Taking into account these facts, we can define the time average functions $\overline{\mathcal{N}}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$ and $\overline{\mathcal{J}}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$ according to the following equations:

$$\frac{\partial \overline{\mathcal{N}}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)}{\partial t} = -\frac{1}{2} \overline{\mathcal{J}}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)\, G_n^*(\mathbf{p}_0, E)\, e^{-i\delta_n t} + \text{c.c.}, \tag{14.56}$$

$$\frac{\partial \overline{\mathcal{J}}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)}{\partial t} + i\delta_{st} \overline{\mathcal{J}}(\mathbf{p}_0, t) = \frac{1}{2} G_n(\mathbf{p}_0, E)\, e^{i\delta_n t} \left(2\overline{\mathcal{N}}(\mathbf{p}_0, t) - \varXi_{p_0,\mu,T}\right), \tag{14.57}$$

where

$$\delta_n = \frac{2\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0) - n\hbar\omega}{\hbar} \tag{14.58}$$

is the resonance detuning and

$$\delta_{st} = \frac{1}{2\omega} \sum_{s \neq n} \frac{|G_s(\mathbf{p}_0, E)|^2}{(n - s)} \tag{14.59}$$

is the dynamic Stark shift. The latter arises because of nonresonant transitions between the virtual Floquet states. So the problem reduces to the set of ordinary linear differential equations, the solution of which at the initial condition (14.45) is

$$\overline{\mathcal{N}}(\mathbf{p}_0, t) = \frac{\varXi_{p_0,\mu,T}}{2} + \frac{|G_n(\mathbf{p}_0, E)|^2}{2\varOmega_n^2} \varDelta_{p_0,\mu,T} \left[\frac{(\delta_n + \delta_{st})^2}{|G_n(\mathbf{p}_0, E)|^2} + \cos \varOmega_n t\right], \tag{14.60}$$

$$\overline{\mathcal{J}}(\mathbf{p}_0, t) = e^{i\delta_n t} \frac{G_n(\mathbf{p}_0, E)}{2\varOmega_n} \varDelta_{p_0,\mu,T} \left(\sin \varOmega_n t - i\frac{\delta_n + \delta_{st}}{\varOmega_n}(1 - \cos \varOmega_n t)\right), \tag{14.61}$$

where the parameter $\varDelta_{p_0,\mu,T}$

$$\Delta_{p_0,\mu,T} = \frac{1}{1+e^{\frac{\mathrm{v}_F p_0-\mu}{T}}} - \frac{1}{1+e^{\frac{-\mathrm{v}_F p_0-\mu}{T}}} \tag{14.62}$$

is the initial population inversion, and Ω_n is the generalized Rabi frequency:

$$\Omega_n = \sqrt{\left|G_n\left(\mathbf{p}_0, E\right)\right|^2 + \left(\delta_n + \delta_{st}\right)^2}. \tag{14.63}$$

Formula (14.61) represents the Rabi flopping between the particle-hole states in graphene at the multiphoton resonance.

Now let us note the conditions at which the obtained solutions are valid. The expressions (14.60) and (14.61) have been derived under the resonance condition, at which $\overline{\mathcal{N}}\left(\mathbf{p}_0, t\right)$ and $\overline{\mathcal{J}}\left(\mathbf{p}_0, t\right)$ are the slowly varying functions on the scale of the wave period. The latter puts the following restrictions on the characteristic parameters of the system graphene + electromagnetic wave that are coupling coefficient $G_n\left(\mathbf{p}_0, E\right)$, resonance detuning δ_n, and dynamic Stark shift δ_{st}:

$$\left(\left|G_n\left(\mathbf{p}_0, E\right)\right|, \ \left|\delta_n\right|, \ \left|\delta_{st}\right|\right) \ll \omega. \tag{14.64}$$

In the exact resonance, when $\delta_n + \delta_{st} = 0$, the generalized Rabi frequency coincides with the coupling coefficient: $\Omega_n = \left|G_n\left(\mathbf{p}_0, E\right)\right|$ and for the particles distribution functions $\overline{\mathcal{N}}\left(\mathbf{p}_0, t\right)$ and interband coherency $\overline{\mathcal{J}}\left(\mathbf{p}_0, t\right)$ we have

$$\overline{\mathcal{N}}\left(\mathbf{p}_0, t\right) = \frac{\Delta_{p_0,\mu,T}}{2}\cos\Omega_n t + \frac{\Xi_{p_0,\mu,T}}{2}, \tag{14.65}$$

$$\overline{\mathcal{J}}\left(\mathbf{p}_0, t\right) = \frac{\Delta_{p_0,\mu,T}}{2} e^{i\,\arg\left(G_n\left(\mathbf{p}_0, E\right)\right)} \sin\Omega_n t. \tag{14.66}$$

For the weak laser fields when $\chi \ll 1$ and the one-photon interband excitation take place, we can neglect the nonlinear over the pump field terms in (14.55) and the Rabi frequency in the laser field of arbitrary polarization will have

$$\Omega_1 = \frac{e\sqrt{E_{0x}^2 \sin^2\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}_0\right) + E_{0y}^2 \cos^2\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}_0\right)}}{2p_0}. \tag{14.67}$$

Rabi frequency in graphene may be expressed via interaction parameter $\chi_{0x,y} = eE_{0x,y}\mathrm{v}_F/(\hbar\omega^2)$ taking into account the resonant condition $2p_0\mathrm{v}_F \simeq \hbar\omega$. Then it reads

$$\Omega_1 = \omega\sqrt{\chi_{0x}^2 \sin^2\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}_0\right) + \chi_{0y}^2 \cos^2\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}_0\right)}. \tag{14.68}$$

In particular case of a wave circular polarization ($\chi_{0x} = \chi_{0y} \equiv \chi_0$), Rabi frequency does not depend on angle $\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}_0\right)$, and we have isotropic excitation:

$$\Omega_1 = \omega\chi_0, \tag{14.69}$$

while for a linearly polarized ($\chi_{0y} = 0$) wave we have strictly anisotropic excitation:

$$\Omega_1 = \omega \left|\sin \Theta \left(\mathbf{p}_0\right)\right| \chi_{0x}. \tag{14.70}$$

It is clear that for the multiphoton transitions one should have the higher pump wave intensities at which the electron–hole population oscillations in graphene occur with generalized Rabi frequencies (14.63). On the other hand, at strong pump fields the intensity effect considerably changes the quasienergy spectrum in graphene because of the Stark shift due to the free–free intraband transitions, and the dynamic Stark shift due to the virtual nonresonant transitions becomes significant. Thus, at the laser intensities corresponding to the values of the intensity parameter $\chi \sim 1$, the probabilities of the multiphoton transitions are essential up to the photon numbers $n \sim 6$. For such photon numbers, the Stark shift due to the intraband transitions (14.59) is not essential yet; however, the quasienergy spectrum in the graphene because of the dynamic Stark shift is considerably modified. In general, the isolines corresponding to quasienergy spectrum determined by (14.50) were circles in the strong laser field they deformed. Hence, at the multiphoton interaction of graphene with strong laser radiation the excitation of particles distribution function occurs along the modified ellipse-like isolines.

Let us represent the results of numerical simulations. We have integrated (14.43) and (14.44) within the fourth-order adaptive Runge–Kutta method. Since we study the interband multiphoton transitions in graphene, the chemical potential and temperature have been fixed at the certain values; here: $\mu/\hbar\omega = 0.1$ and $T/\hbar\omega = 5 \times 10^{-3}$. For ultrashort laser pulses the wave envelope (13.72) (Chap. 13) is chosen to turn-on/off the interaction by function $f(t)$, where the pulse duration (here $\mathcal{T}_p$) is chosen to be $\mathcal{T}_p = 32\mathcal{T}$ ($\mathcal{T}$ is the wave period).

Figure 14.2 displays the picture of laser excitation of Fermi-Dirac sea in graphene. The quasiparticle distribution function $\mathcal{N}_f(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$ after the interaction is presented. The laser intensity is large enough and, as a consequence, the resonant rings appear corresponding to multiphoton excitation up to 5 photons, and the excitation of Fermi-Dirac sea takes place along the modified isolines of quasienergy spectrum (14.50), in accordance with the analytical treatment. To demonstrate the nonlinear features of the dynamics of multiphoton excitation of Fermi-Dirac sea in graphene and Rabi oscillations dependence on the angle $\Theta(\mathbf{p}_0)$ (14.25), in Fig. 14.3 the colored 4D density plot of Rabi oscillations of the particles resonant distribution function $\mathcal{N}_r(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$ on isosurface $2\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0)/\hbar\omega = 3$ is illustrated in the case of monochromatic wave. Figure 14.3 corresponds to 3-photon resonance for circularly polarized wave with $\chi_0 = 1.0$. It is clearly seen isotropic Rabi oscillations of $\mathcal{N}_r(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$ with the mean period $\mathcal{T}_R \simeq 15\mathcal{T}$.

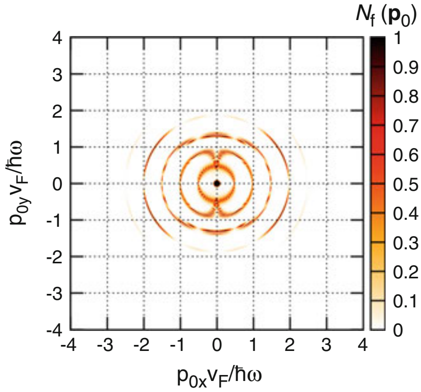


Fig. 14.2 (Color online) Creation of particle-hole pair in graphene at the multiphoton resonant excitation for linearly polarized wave. Particle distribution function $\mathcal{N}_f(\mathbf{p}_0)$ (in arbitrary units) after the interaction as a function of scaled dimensionless momentum components $\{p_{0x}v_F/\hbar\omega, p_{0y}v_F/\hbar\omega\}$. The electric field dimensionless parameter is $\chi_0 = 1$

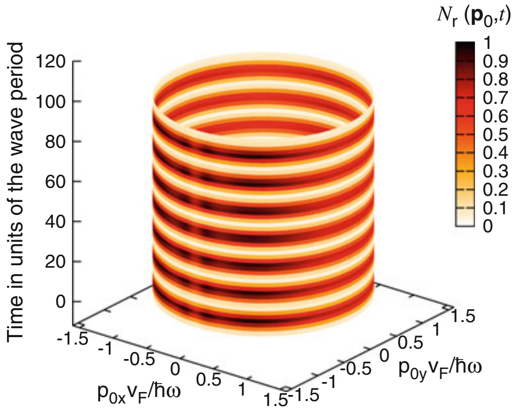


Fig. 14.3 (Color online) Colored 4D plot of Rabi oscillations of the particle distribution function $\mathcal{N}_r(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$ for 3-photon resonance on isosurface $2\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0)/\hbar\omega = 3$ for circularly polarized wave. The electric field dimensionless parameter is $\chi_0 = 1.0$

14.4 Particle-Hole Multiphoton Excitation and High Harmonics Generation in Graphene

Graphene has extensively been considered as a promising material for harmonics generation due to its strongly pronounced nonlinear electromagnetic properties. At the multiphoton resonant excitation of graphene one can expect intense coherent radiation of harmonics of the applied wave field in the result of the particle-hole annihilation from the coherent superposition states. At this, because of inversion symmetry, at the normal incidence of laser radiation on the uniform graphene layer only odd harmonics can be generated. For generation of even harmonics one should break the inversion symmetry.

Here we will consider the possibility of generation as of odd, as well as, even harmonics from the multiphoton excited states of a graphene depending on the laser field polarization and additional perturbation of the initial stationary state of the graphene applying an external static electric field.

To find out the coherent part of the radiation spectrum we need the mean value of the current density operator:

$$\widehat{\mathbf{j}} = -e\mathrm{v}_F \left\langle \widehat{\Psi} \middle| \widehat{\sigma} \middle| \widehat{\Psi} \right\rangle, \tag{14.71}$$

where $\widehat{\sigma} = \{\sigma_x, \sigma_y\}$—Pauli matrices. With the help of (14.21) and (8.18) the expectation value of the total current in components can be written in the following form:

$$j_x(t) = -\frac{e\mathrm{v}_F g_s g_v S}{(2\pi\hbar)^2} \int d\mathbf{p} \left[\cos\Theta(\mathbf{p})\left(\rho_{11}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t) - \rho_{-1-1}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t)\right)\right.$$
$$\left. + i\sin\Theta(\mathbf{p})\left(\rho_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t) - \rho^*_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t)\right)\right], \tag{14.72}$$

$$j_y(t) = -\frac{e\mathrm{v}_F g_s g_v S}{(2\pi\hbar)^2} \int d\mathbf{p} \left[\sin\Theta(\mathbf{p})\left(\rho_{11}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t) - \rho_{-1-1}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t)\right)\right.$$
$$\left. - i\cos\Theta(\mathbf{p})\left(\rho_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t) - \rho^*_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p},t)\right)\right], \tag{14.73}$$

where $g_s = 2$ and $g_v = 2$ are the spin and valley degeneracy factors, respectively. With the help of (14.33), the total current can be expressed through the interband coherence (14.42) and particle-hole distribution functions:

$$j_x(t) = -\frac{e\mathrm{v}_F g_s g_v S}{(2\pi\hbar)^2} \int \frac{d\mathbf{p}_0}{\sqrt{(\mathbf{p}_0 + \mathbf{p}_E(t))^2}}$$
$$\times \left[-\left(p_{0y} + p_{E_y}(t)\right)\left(\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0,t)\exp\left\{-i\frac{2}{\hbar}\int_0^t \widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t'\right)dt'\right\} + \text{c.c.}\right)\right.$$
$$\left. + \left(p_{0x} + p_{E_x}(t)\right)\left(\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0,t) + \mathcal{N}_h(\mathbf{p}_0,t)\right)\right]. \tag{14.74}$$

$$j_y(t) = -\frac{e\mathrm{v}_F g_s g_v S}{(2\pi\hbar)^2} \int \frac{d\mathbf{p}_0}{\sqrt{(\mathbf{p}_0 + \mathbf{p}_E(t))^2}}$$
$$\times \left[\left(p_{0x} + p_{E_x}(t)\right)\left(\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0,t)\exp\left\{-i\frac{2}{\hbar}\int_0^t \widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t'\right)dt'\right\} + \text{c.c.}\right)\right.$$
$$\left. + \left(p_{0y} + p_{E_y}(t)\right)\left(\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0,t) + \mathcal{N}_h(\mathbf{p}_0,t)\right)\right]. \tag{14.75}$$

From (14.74) and (14.75) follows the relation

$$\frac{j_{x,y}}{j_0} = R_{x,y}\left(\omega t;\, \chi_{0x}, \chi_{0y}, \frac{\mu}{\hbar\omega}, \frac{T}{\hbar\omega}\right); \quad j_0 = \frac{e\omega^2 S}{\pi^2 \mathrm{v}_F}, \tag{14.76}$$

where R_x and R_y are periodic (in case of an external monochromatic wave) dimensionless functions, which parametrically depend on the graphene–wave interaction parameters $\chi_{0x,y} = eE_{0x,y}\mathrm{v}_F/(\hbar\omega^2)$ and the graphene-scaled macroscopic parameters.

Now, performing the integration in (14.74) and (14.75) and using the solutions of (14.43) and (14.44), we can calculate the harmonics radiation spectrum with the help of Fourier transform of the functions $R_{x,y}(t)$.

As is seen from (14.74) and (14.75), the spectrum contains, in general, both even and odd harmonics. However, depending on the initial conditions, in particular, for the equilibrium initial state (14.45) and at the smooth turn-on/off of the wave field, the terms containing even harmonics cancel each other, and only the odd harmonics are generated. The emission rate of the Nth harmonics is proportional to $N^2 |j_N|^2$, where $|j_N|^2 = |j_{xN}|^2 + \left|j_{yN}\right|^2$ is determined by j_{xN} and j_{yN}, being the Nth Fourier components of the field-induced current. To find out j_N, the fast Fourier transform algorithm has been used. The inversion symmetry of the system can be broken either by an additional external perturbation of the initial stationary state of the graphene, or the latter should not have spherical symmetry. Here we consider the case of linearly polarized wave $\chi_{0x} = 1$ and additional static uniform electric field $E_s = 2\times 10^{-3} E_{0x}$, which is assumed to be very weak, but it makes possible generation of even harmonics with the rates comparable to odd harmonics. Figure 14.4 display harmonics emission rates in a graphene via $\log_{10}\left(N^2 |R_N|^2\right)$ which contains both even and odd harmonics.

Conversion efficiency for harmonics $\eta_n = I_n/I$ can be estimated as

$$\eta_n \sim 10^{-3}\chi_0^{-2}\,(d/\lambda)^2\, N^2\, |R_N|^2\,, \tag{14.77}$$

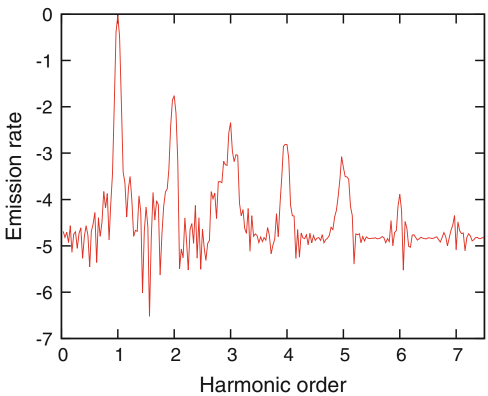


Fig. 14.4 Harmonics emission rate in graphene at the resonant excitation for linearly polarized wave ($\chi_0 = 1$), with additional static uniform electric field of strength $E_s = 2 \times 10^{-3} E_{0x}$

where $\lambda = 2\pi c/\omega$ and $d = \min\{L_g, w\}$, with L_g and w being characteristic sizes of graphene and laser beam waist, respectively. For the setup of Fig. 14.4 depending on the ratio d/λ, one can achieve quite large conversion efficiencies for 3rd, 4th, and 5th harmonics, which are comparable to what one expects to achieve with resonant two-level systems.

14.5 Graphene Interaction with Strong Laser Radiation Beyond the Dirac Cone Approximation

Now let us consider a monolayer graphene interaction with the strong laser fields beyond the Dirac cone approximation which is applicable to the full Brillouin zone of a hexagonal tight-binding nanostructure. We consider nonlinear coherent interaction in the ultrafast excitation regime when relaxation processes are not relevant. Investigations regarding ultrafast interband excitations of energies $\mathcal{E} \gtrsim 1$ eV show that the dominant mechanism for relaxation is electron–phonon coupling via optical phonons, and the relaxation times are about 0.1 ps. Therefore, in graphene, one can coherently manipulate with interband optical transitions on timescales $t \lesssim 100$ fs.

As effective tools in modern Quantum Optics and Informatics for coherent quantum control of quasiparticles states populations and resulting coherent effects, the Rabi oscillations of the particle-hole states, multiphoton excitation of Fermi-Dirac sea, and rapid adiabatic passage for interband population transfer are of interest. Hence, we will consider the scheme of rapid adiabatic passage when the detuning chirping is induced by direct sweeping of the frequency of a laser pulse. So, using strong laser fields of intensities below graphene damage threshold, one can effectively control interband optical transitions on femtosecond timescale.

Let graphene monolayer interact with a plane quasimonochromatic laser radiation. We consider the interaction when the laser wave propagates again in a perpendicular direction to the graphene plane (XY). In this case, as was mentioned in the last paragraph, the effect of the wave magnetic field is excluded, since in the z direction we have strong binding of the graphene electrons. Thus, this traveling wave for graphene electrons becomes a homogeneous quasiperiodic electric field of carrier frequency ω and slowly varying envelope $E_0(t)$ directed along the unit vector $\widehat{\epsilon}$ within the XY plane:

$$\mathbf{E}(t) = \widehat{\epsilon}\frac{E_0(t)}{2}e^{-i\omega t} + \text{c.c.}. \tag{14.78}$$

Taking into account expansion (14.6) the second quantized interaction Hamiltonian

$$\widehat{V} = e\int d\mathbf{r}\ \hat{\psi}^{\dagger}(\mathbf{r})\,(\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{E}(t))\ \hat{\psi}(\mathbf{r}) \tag{14.79}$$

can be represented as

$$\widehat{V} = ie\sum_{\mathbf{k}}\int d\,\mathbf{k}'\left(\mathbf{E}\cdot\frac{\partial\delta\left(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}'\right)}{\partial\mathbf{k}'}\right)\left(\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k}'}^{+}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k}}+\widehat{b}_{\mathbf{k}'}^{+}\widehat{b}_{\mathbf{k}}\right). \tag{14.80}$$

Here we have neglected the terms $\sim D_{AB}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{k}}^{+}\widehat{b}_{\mathbf{k}}$, i.e., the transitions between the sublattices $A \Rightarrow B$, since transition dipole moments $D_{AB} \sim ed$ are very small. With the help of annihilation (creation) operators for conduction ($\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}}$) and valence ($\widehat{e}_{\nu\mathbf{k}}$) bands (14.9) and (14.10), the total Hamiltonian can be represented as follows:

$$\widehat{H} = \sum_{\mathbf{k}}\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{k}\right)\left(\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}}^{+}\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}}-\widehat{e}_{\upsilon\mathbf{k}}^{+}\widehat{e}_{\upsilon\mathbf{k}}\right)$$
$$+ie\sum_{\mathbf{k}}\int d\,\mathbf{k}'\left(\mathbf{E}\cdot\frac{\partial\delta\left(\mathbf{k}-\mathbf{k}'\right)}{\partial\mathbf{k}'}\right)$$
$$\times\left[\mathcal{D}_{\mathbf{k}'\mathbf{k}}^{(+)}\left(\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}'}^{+}\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}}+\widehat{e}_{\nu\mathbf{k}'}^{+}\widehat{e}_{\nu\mathbf{k}}\right)+\mathcal{D}_{\mathbf{k}'\mathbf{k}}^{(-)}\left(\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}'}^{+}\widehat{e}_{\nu\mathbf{k}}+\widehat{e}_{\nu\mathbf{k}'}^{+}\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}}\right)\right]. \tag{14.81}$$

Here $\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{k}\right)$ is given by (14.12) and

$$\mathcal{D}_{\mathbf{k}'\mathbf{k}}^{(\pm)} = \frac{1}{2}\left(1\pm\frac{\Upsilon\left(\mathbf{k}'\right)}{\left|\Upsilon\left(\mathbf{k}'\right)\right|}\frac{\Upsilon^{*}\left(\mathbf{k}\right)}{\left|\Upsilon\left(\mathbf{k}\right)\right|}\right). \tag{14.82}$$

In (14.81) the term proportional to $\mathcal{D}_{\mathbf{k}'\mathbf{k}}^{(+)}$ is responsible for the intraband transitions, while the term proportional to $\mathcal{D}_{\mathbf{k}'\mathbf{k}}^{(-)}$ describes interband transitions. In order to develop microscopic theory of the multiphoton interaction of monolayer graphene with a strong radiation field, we need to solve the evolution equation for the single-particle density matrix

$$\rho_{\sigma_1\sigma_2}(\mathbf{k}_1,\mathbf{k}_2,t) = \langle\widehat{e}_{\sigma_2\mathbf{k}_2}^{+}(t)\widehat{e}_{\sigma_1\mathbf{k}_1}(t)\rangle;\ \sigma_{1,2} = c,\upsilon \tag{14.83}$$

where $\widehat{e}_{\sigma\mathbf{k}}(t)$ obeys the Heisenberg equation (8.17) and expectation values are determined by the initial density matrix. As an initial state we assume Fermi-Dirac distribution. As far as the pump field (14.78) is homogeneous, one can obtain a closed set of equations for the particle occupation number

$$\mathcal{N}\left(\mathbf{k},t\right) = \rho_{cc}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k},t) = \langle\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}}^{+}(t)\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}}(t)\rangle, \tag{14.84}$$

and interband polarization

$$\mathcal{P}\left(\mathbf{k},t\right) = \rho_{\upsilon c}(\mathbf{k},\mathbf{k},t) = \langle\widehat{e}_{c\mathbf{k}}^{+}(t)\widehat{e}_{\upsilon\mathbf{k}}(t)\rangle. \tag{14.85}$$

Taking into account these definitions and second quantized Hamiltonian (14.81), from Heisenberg equation (8.17) one can obtain evolution equations:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k},t)}{\partial t} - \frac{e\mathbf{E}}{\hbar} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k},t)}{\partial \mathbf{k}} = i\Lambda(\mathbf{k},t)\left[\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k},t) - \mathcal{P}^*(\mathbf{k},t)\right], \tag{14.86}$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k},t)}{\partial t} - \frac{e\mathbf{E}}{\hbar} \cdot \frac{\partial \mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k},t)}{\partial \mathbf{k}}$$

$$= \frac{2i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k})\,\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k},t) + i\Lambda(\mathbf{k},t)\left[2\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k},t) - 1\right]. \tag{14.87}$$

The interband coupling is

$$\Lambda(\mathbf{k},t) = \frac{1}{\hbar}\mathbf{E}(t) \cdot \mathbf{d}(\mathbf{k}), \tag{14.88}$$

where the components of transition dipole moment are

$$d_x(\mathbf{k}) = ea\frac{\sqrt{3}\gamma_0^2}{4\mathcal{E}^2(\mathbf{k})}\left[\cos \mathbf{a}_1\mathbf{k} - \cos \mathbf{a}_2\mathbf{k}\right], \tag{14.89}$$

$$d_y(\mathbf{k}) = ea\frac{\gamma_0^2}{4\mathcal{E}^2(\mathbf{k})}\left(3\left(\cos \mathbf{a}_3\mathbf{k} + \frac{1}{2}\right) - \frac{\mathcal{E}^2(\mathbf{k})}{2\gamma_0^2}\right). \tag{14.90}$$

The set of equations (14.86) and (14.87) should be solved with the initial conditions:

$$\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k},0) = 0;\ \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k},0) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k})/T}}, \tag{14.91}$$

where T is the temperature in energy units.

14.6 Coherent Effects and Control of Macroscopic Quantum States in Graphene

For the relatively weak pump fields, when the classical momentum (scaled to $\hbar$) given by the wave field

$$\mathbf{k}_E(t) = -\frac{e}{\hbar}\int_0^t \mathbf{E}\left(t'\right)dt' \tag{14.92}$$

is considerably smaller than the characteristic momentum, $|\mathbf{k}_E| \ll |\mathbf{k}|$, one can omit intraband transitions in (14.93) and (14.87), which are represented by the second terms in the left-hand side of equations. Thus, we have the following set of equations:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k},t)}{\partial t} = i\Lambda(\mathbf{k},t)\left[\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k},t) - \mathcal{P}^{*}(\mathbf{k},t)\right], \tag{14.93}$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k},t)}{\partial t} = \frac{2i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k})\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k},t) + i\Lambda(\mathbf{k},t)\left[2\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k},t) - 1\right]. \tag{14.94}$$

In this case (14.93) and (14.94) are analogous to the optical Bloch equations, which describe Rabi oscillations of state populations of the two-level atomic system under the resonant excitation. Here we also have two-level system. Thus, because of space homogeneity of the field (14.78), the generalized momentum of a particle conserves, so that the real transitions in the field occur from a $-\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k})$ negative energy level to the positive $\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k})$ energy level and, consequently, the probability of particle-hole pair production will have maximal values for the resonant transitions $2\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k}) \simeq \hbar\omega$. For the resonant momenta $|2\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k}) - \hbar\omega| \ll |\Omega_R|$ one can write the explicit solutions of (14.93) and (14.94) in the rotating wave approximation:

$$\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k},t) = i\frac{\Delta_{\omega,T}}{2}e^{\frac{2i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k})t}\sin(\sigma(\mathbf{k},t)), \tag{14.95}$$

$$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k},t) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\Delta_{\omega,T}\cos(\sigma(\mathbf{k},t)), \tag{14.96}$$

where

$$\sigma(\mathbf{k},t) = \int_{0}^{t}\Omega_R\left(\mathbf{k},t'\right)dt' \tag{14.97}$$

is the pulse area,

$$\Omega_R(\mathbf{k},t) = E_0(t)\,\widehat{\epsilon}\mathbf{d}(\mathbf{k}) \tag{14.98}$$

is the Rabi frequency (here we assume $\mathrm{Im}E_0 = 0$ and $\mathrm{Re}E_0 > 0$) and

$$\Delta_{\omega,T} = -\frac{e^{\frac{\hbar\omega}{2T}} - 1}{e^{\frac{\hbar\omega}{2T}} + 1}. \tag{14.99}$$

is the initial population inversion. For optical frequencies and room temperatures $\hbar\omega \gg T$, and $\Delta_{\omega,T} \simeq -1$. The solution (14.96) expresses Rabi flopping among the particle-hole states at the single-photon interband transitions. From the quantum optics it is well known that when the pulse $\sigma(\mathbf{k},t)$ area of the wave is equal to π, complete population transfer of particles on isoline $2\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k}) \simeq \hbar\omega$ can occur from the valence band to the conduction band. The π-pulses method, while effective for two-level atom, is not in general an effective and robust method for population transfer in graphene. Particularly, transfer probability is highly sensitive to variations in the pulse area. Besides, in the considering case transition dipole moments (14.89) and (14.90) depend on momentum, because of which it is impossible for a single pulse to simultaneously satisfy the condition for all transitions:

$$\sigma(\mathbf{k}, t)|_{\mathbf{k}\in\{2\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k})=\hbar\omega\}} \neq \pi \tag{14.100}$$

Thus, for complete population transfer one should use more robust method.

A much more effective and robust method for population transfer is the rapid adiabatic passage. In this scheme, the radiation is tuned above (or below) the resonance frequency, and the radiation frequency is swept through the resonance. If the process is performed adiabatically, then the desired final state can be populated with the 100 % efficiency. The condition for adiabaticity is

$$\Omega^2_{R\max} \gg \left|\frac{d\delta_\omega(t)}{dt}\right|, \tag{14.101}$$

where $\Omega_{R\max}$ is the peak Rabi frequency. The resonance detuning, $\delta_\omega(t)$, is defined as $\hbar\delta_\omega(t) = 2\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k}) - \hbar\omega(t)$, where $\omega(t)$ is the radiation frequency. Besides, the transfer process should be completed rapidly—in timescale small compared to relaxation times. In contrast to π-pulse condition, the condition (14.101) can be satisfied on fairly large part of isoline $\mathbf{k} \in \{2\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k}) = \hbar\omega\}$. For this propose we have made numerical calculations with chirped laser pulses. Here we consider linear temporal chirp, which can be achieved by linear optical methods. For definiteness we consider a Gaussian form for the electric field, which can be written as

$$\mathbf{E}(t) = \widehat{\epsilon}\frac{E_0}{2}e^{-\frac{t^2}{2\tau^2} - i\omega t - i\frac{\alpha}{2}t^2} + \text{c.c.} \tag{14.102}$$

where E_0 is the peak amplitude, τ is the pulse duration, and α is the coefficient of the linear temporal chirp ($\omega(t) = \omega + \alpha t/2$). As an example, we consider Nd:YAG laser of frequency $\omega = 1.17$ eV/$\hbar$ and Ti:sapphire laser of frequency $\omega = 1.8$ eV/$\hbar$. For the pulse duration and chirp coefficient we assume $\tau = 20\mathcal{T}$ and $\alpha = 7.5 \times 10^{-3}/\mathcal{T}^2$, respectively.

In Fig. 14.5 the creation of the particle-hole pair in graphene via the rapid adiabatic passage is shown. As is seen from these figures, one can achieve almost complete population transfer on isoline $2\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k}) \simeq \hbar\omega$ from valence to conduction band by chirped Gaussian pulse on the femtosecond timescale. With the chirped laser pulses the population transfer is uniform, except of the points where $d_x(\mathbf{k}) = 0$.

With the increasing of the pump wave intensity and approaching to the domain $|\mathbf{k}_E| \sim |\mathbf{k}|$ the multiphoton excitations take place and the Rabi oscillations appear corresponding to multiphoton transitions. In this case intraband transitions in (14.86) and (14.87) become essential, and one should solve the set of equations with the partial derivatives $\partial/\partial\mathbf{k}$. One can eliminate these terms based on the characteristics of (14.86) and (14.87). Thus, with the new variables $\mathbf{k}_0 = \mathbf{k} - \mathbf{k}_E(t)$ and t, (14.86) and (14.87) read

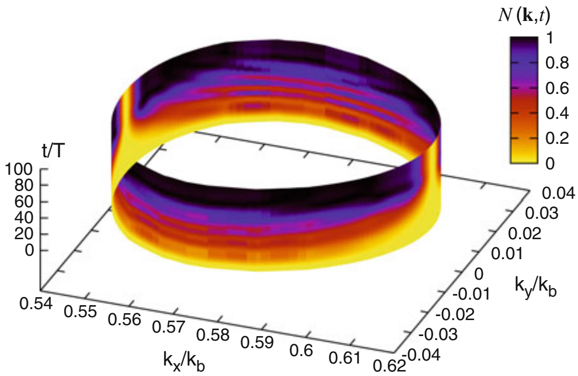


Fig. 14.5 (Color online) Creation of particle-hole pair in graphene via rapid adiabatic passage. It is shown complete population transfer on isoline $2\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k}) \simeq \hbar\omega$ from valence to conduction band by chirped Gaussian pulse for Nd:YAG laser of intensity 5×10^9 W/cm^2, duration $\tau = 70$ fs, and chirp $\alpha = 7.5 \times 10^{-3}/\mathcal{T}^2$

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k}_0, t)}{\partial t} = i\Lambda(\mathbf{k}_0 + \mathbf{k}_E(t), t)\left[\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k}_0, t) - \mathcal{P}^*(\mathbf{k}_0, t)\right], \tag{14.103}$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k}_0, t)}{\partial t} = \frac{2i}{\hbar}\mathcal{E}(\mathbf{k}_0 + \mathbf{k}_E(t))\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k}_0, t)$$
$$+ i\Lambda(\mathbf{k}_0 + \mathbf{k}_E(t), t)\left[2\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k}_0, t) - 1\right]. \tag{14.104}$$

Here one can apply generalized rotating wave approximation. For a monochromatic wave the coupling term $\Lambda(\mathbf{k}_0 + \mathbf{k}_E(t), t)$ in (14.103) and (14.104) is a periodic function and contains harmonics of the pump wave. Hence, there is a direct multiphoton resonant coupling of the interband transitions. Besides, one should also take into account the intensity effect of the pump wave on the quasienergy spectrum (Stark shift due to the free–free intraband transitions) and, consequently, the multiphoton probabilities of particle-hole pair creation will have maximal values for the resonant transitions (14.51), where

$$\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{k}_0) = \frac{1}{\mathcal{T}}\int_0^{\mathcal{T}} \mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{k}_0 + \mathbf{k}_E(t))\,dt \tag{14.105}$$

is the mean value of classical energy (quasienergy) in the field (14.78). Then the n-photon coupling term G_n will be

$$G_n = \frac{2}{\mathcal{T}}\int_0^{\mathcal{T}} \Lambda(\mathbf{k}_0 + \mathbf{k}_E(t), t)$$

$$\times e^{-\frac{2i}{\hbar}\int_0^t \left(\mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{k}_0+\mathbf{k}_E\left(t'\right)\right)-\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{k}_0)+\frac{n\hbar\omega}{2}\right)dt'}dt, \tag{14.106}$$

Along the isoline $\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{k}_0) \simeq n\hbar\omega/2$ the solutions of (14.103) and (14.104) become

$$\mathcal{P}(\mathbf{k}_0, t) = i\frac{\Delta_{n\omega,T}}{2}e^{\frac{2i}{\hbar}\int_0^t \mathcal{E}\left(\mathbf{k}_0+\mathbf{k}_E\left(t'\right)\right)dt'+i\arg(G_n)}\sin\Omega_n t, \tag{14.107}$$

$$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k}_0, t) = \frac{1}{2}\Delta_{n\omega,T}\cos\Omega_n t + \frac{1}{2}, \tag{14.108}$$

where

$$\Delta_{n\omega,T} = -\frac{e^{\frac{n\hbar\omega}{2T}}-1}{e^{\frac{n\hbar\omega}{2T}}+1}. \tag{14.109}$$

The solution (14.108) expresses Rabi flopping among the particle-hole states at the multiphoton resonance with the generalized Rabi frequency:

$$\Omega_n = |G_n|. \tag{14.110}$$

The solutions (14.107) and (14.108) are valid for the slowly varying functions $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{k}_0, t)$ and $\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{k}_0, t)$ on the scale of the wave period, which put the following restrictions:

$$|G_n| \ll \omega. \tag{14.111}$$

Equations (14.103) and (14.104) have integrated numerically for the wave field describing the envelope function $E_0(t) = E_0 f(t)$ (13.72) (Chap. 13), where pulse duration τ is chosen to be $\tau = 50$ fs. In Fig. 14.6 photoexcitations of Fermi-Dirac sea on the full reciprocal lattice unit cell are presented. Particle distribution function $\mathcal{N}\left(\mathbf{k}, t_f\right)$ after the interaction with a laser field of intensity 5×10^{11} W/cm^2 and diverse frequencies are shown. The wave is assumed to be linearly polarized along the x-axis. As is seen, with the increasing of the wave intensity the states with absorption of several photons appear in the Fermi-Dirac sea, in accordance with analytical treatment (14.108). The high-energy excitations are trigonally warped and strongly depend on the laser field polarization direction. Besides, multiphoton excitation of isoline $2\gamma_0 = n\hbar\omega$ is possible, corresponding to the van Hove singularity.

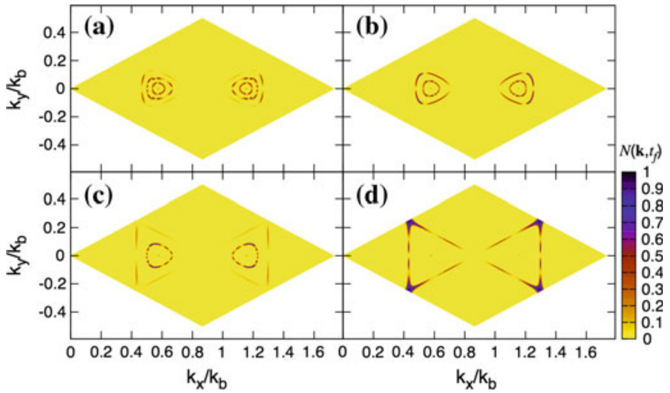


Fig. 14.6 (Color online) Particle distribution function $\mathcal{N}\left(\mathbf{k}, t_f\right)$ (in arbitrary units) after the interaction, as a function of scaled dimensionless momentum components $(k_x/k_b, k_y/k_b)$. The wave is assumed to be linearly polarized along the x-axis with intensity 5×10^{11} W/cm^2 and duration 50 fs. It is shown the multiphoton excitation with the trigonal warping effect for the photon energies **a** $\hbar\omega = 1.35\,\text{eV}$, **b** $\hbar\omega = 1.8\,\text{eV}$, **c** $\hbar\omega = 2.7\,\text{eV}$, and **d** $\hbar\omega = 2\gamma_0 \simeq 5.4\,\text{eV}$

14.7 Resonant Excitations of Fermi-Dirac Sea in a Bilayer Graphene

Let us now consider nonlinear interaction of strong coherent EM radiation with a bilayer graphene. We consider multiphoton resonant interaction in the ultrafast excitation regime, when relaxation processes are not relevant. In the AB-stacked bilayer, graphene low-energy excitations which are much smaller than the vertical interlayer hopping γ_1 can be described by an effective 2×2 Hamiltonian. Thus, for the energies $|\mathcal{E}| \ll \gamma_1 = 0.39$ eV the effective Hamiltonian is

$$\widehat{H}_\zeta = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & h_\zeta^*(\mathbf{p}) \\ h_\zeta(\mathbf{p}) & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{14.112}$$

where

$$h_\zeta(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{1}{2m}\left(\zeta p_x + i p_y\right)^2 + \mathrm{v}_3\left(\zeta p_x - i p_y\right), \tag{14.113}$$

$\hat{\mathbf{p}} = \left\{\widehat{p}_x, \widehat{p}_y\right\}$ is the momentum operator, $\zeta = \pm 1$ for $K_\pm$ points (valley quantum number); $m = \gamma_1/(2\mathrm{v}_F^2)$ is the effective mass, with v_F being the Fermi velocity in monolayer graphene; $\mathrm{v}_3 = \sqrt{3}a\gamma_3/(2\hbar)$ is the effective velocity related to oblique interlayer hopping $\gamma_3 = 0.32\,\text{eV}$ ($a \approx 0.246\,\text{nm}$ is the distance between the nearest A sites). The first term in (14.113) gives a pair of parabolic bands $\mathcal{E} = \pm p^2/(2m)$, while the second term coming from γ_3 causes the trigonal warping in the band dispersion. In the low-energy region Lifshitz transition (separation of the Fermi surface) occurs at the energy $\mathcal{E}_{\mathrm{L}} = m\mathrm{v}_3^2/2 \simeq 1\,\mathrm{meV}$, and two touching parabolas are reformed into four separate 'pockets.' The eigenstates of the effective Hamiltonian (14.112) are the spinors:

$$\Psi_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}(x, y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \sigma e^{i\Theta(\mathbf{p})} \end{pmatrix} e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}\mathbf{p}\cdot\mathbf{r}}, \tag{14.114}$$

corresponding to energies

$$\mathcal{E}_{\sigma}(\mathbf{p}) = \sigma \sqrt{(\mathrm{v}_3 p)^2 + \zeta \frac{\mathrm{v}_3 p^3}{m} \cos 3\vartheta + \left(\frac{p^2}{2m}\right)^2}. \tag{14.115}$$

Here band index $\sigma = \pm 1$,

$$\Theta(\mathbf{p}) = \arctan\left(\frac{\mathrm{Im} h_{\zeta}(\mathbf{p})}{\mathrm{Re} h_{\zeta}(\mathbf{p})}\right),$$

and $\vartheta = \arctan\left(p_y/p_x\right)$. Although there is no degeneracy upon the valley quantum number ζ, for the considered issue there are no intervalley transitions and valley index ζ can be considered as a parameter (otherwise one can formally introduce bispinors and provide orthogonality of eigenstates for different valleys).

Let a bilayer graphene interact with a plane quasimonochromatic EM radiation of carrier frequency ω and slowly varying envelope. We consider the case of interaction when the wave propagates in perpendicular direction to graphene sheets (XY) to exclude the effect of magnetic field. Here the x-axis is considered to be along the line connecting atoms of same sublattice while the y-axis along the line connecting atoms of alternating sublattice. In this geometry the traveling wave for electrons in the bilayer graphene becomes a homogeneous time-periodic electric field of carrier frequency ω and slowly varying envelope $E_0(t)$ directed along the unit vector $\widehat{\epsilon}$ within the (XY) plane:

$$\mathbf{E}(t) = \widehat{\epsilon} E_0(t) \cos \omega t. \tag{14.116}$$

The single-particle Hamiltonian in the presence of a uniform time-dependent electric field $\mathbf{E}(t)$ reads

$$\widehat{H}_s = \widehat{H}_{\zeta} + \begin{pmatrix} e\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{E}(t) & 0 \\ 0 & e\mathbf{r}\cdot\mathbf{E}(t) \end{pmatrix}, \tag{14.117}$$

where for the interaction Hamiltonian we have used length gauge, describing the interaction by the potential energy. The latter is given in terms of the gauge-independent field $\mathbf{E}(t)$. As is known, in this gauge it is straightforward to study quantum transitions via intermediate states and obtain gauge-independent transition probabilities.

Using the Fermi-Dirac field operator

$$\widehat{\Psi}(\mathbf{r},t)=\sum_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}(t)\Psi_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}(\mathbf{r}), \tag{14.118}$$

the second quantized Hamiltonian is obtained

$$\widehat{H}=\sum_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}\mathcal{E}_{\sigma}\left(\mathbf{p}\right)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}^{+}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}+e\mathbf{E}\left(t\right)\sum_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}\sum_{\mathbf{p}',\sigma'}\mathbf{D}_{\sigma\sigma'}\left(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}'\right)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}^{+}\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}',\sigma'}, \tag{14.119}$$

where

$$\mathbf{D}_{\sigma\sigma'}\left(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}'\right)=\frac{1}{2}\left[1+\frac{h_{\zeta}^{*}\left(\mathbf{p}\right)h_{\zeta}\left(\mathbf{p}'\right)}{\mathcal{E}_{\sigma}\left(\mathbf{p}\right)\mathcal{E}_{\sigma'}\left(\mathbf{p}'\right)}\right]\int\mathbf{r}e^{\frac{i}{\hbar}(\mathbf{p}'-\mathbf{p})\cdot\mathbf{r}}d\mathbf{r}. \tag{14.120}$$

In order to develop microscopic theory of the multiphoton interaction of a bilayer graphene with a strong radiation field, we need to solve the Liouville–von Neumann evolution equation for the single-particle density matrix

$$\rho_{\sigma_1\sigma_2}(\mathbf{p}_1,\mathbf{p}_2,t)=\langle\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}_2,\sigma_2}^{+}(t)\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p}_1,\sigma_1}(t)\rangle, \tag{14.121}$$

where $\widehat{a}_{\mathbf{p},\sigma}(t)$ obeys the Heisenberg equation (8.17). As an initial state we assume ideal Fermi gas in equilibrium:

$$\rho_{\sigma,\sigma'}(\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}',0)=\frac{1}{1+e^{\frac{\mathcal{E}_{\sigma}(\mathbf{p})-\mu}{T}}}\delta_{\mathbf{p},\mathbf{p}'}\delta_{\sigma,\sigma'}. \tag{14.122}$$

Here μ is the chemical potential, and T is the temperature in energy units. Taking into account the definition (14.121) and second quantized Hamiltonian (14.119), from (8.17) one can obtain the evolution equation for the single-particle density matrix:

$$\frac{\partial\rho_{1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)}{\partial t}=i\Lambda\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)$$

$$\times\left[\rho_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)-\rho_{-1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)\right], \tag{14.123}$$

$$\frac{\partial\rho_{-1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)}{\partial t}=-\frac{\partial\rho_{1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)}{\partial t}, \tag{14.124}$$

$$\frac{\partial\rho_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)}{\partial t}=\frac{2}{i\hbar}\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)\rho_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)$$

$$+i\Lambda\left(\mathbf{p}_0,t\right)\left[\rho_{1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)-\rho_{-1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0,\mathbf{p}_0,t)\right], \tag{14.125}$$

$$\rho_{-1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, t) = \rho^*_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, t). \tag{14.126}$$

In these equations we have made change of variables $(t, \mathbf{p}) \Longrightarrow (t, \mathbf{p}_0 = \mathbf{p} - \mathbf{p}_E(t))$ and transformed partial differential equation into the ordinary one. Here

$$\mathbf{p}_E(t) = -e \int_0^t \mathbf{E}\left(t'\right) dt' \tag{14.127}$$

is the classical momentum given by the wave field, and consequently energy

$$\widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1(\mathbf{p}_0, t) = \mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p}_0 + \mathbf{p}_E(t)). \tag{14.128}$$

The interband coupling is

$$\Lambda(\mathbf{p}_0, t) = \frac{1}{\hbar}\mathbf{E}(t) \cdot \mathbf{d}(\mathbf{p}_0 + \mathbf{p}_E(t)), \tag{14.129}$$

where the components of transition dipole moment are

$$d_x(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{e\hbar}{2\mathcal{E}_1^2(\mathbf{p})}\left[\left(-\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m} + m\mathrm{v}_3^2\right)\frac{\zeta p_y}{m} + \frac{\mathrm{v}_3}{m}p_x p_y\right], \tag{14.130}$$

$$d_y(\mathbf{p}) = \frac{e\hbar}{2\mathcal{E}_1^2(\mathbf{p})}\left[\left(\frac{\mathbf{p}^2}{2m} - m\mathrm{v}_3^2\right)\frac{\zeta p_x}{m} + \frac{\mathrm{v}_3}{2m}\left(p_x^2 - p_y^2\right)\right]. \tag{14.131}$$

Equations (14.123) and (14.124) yield the conservation law for the particle number:

$$\rho_{1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, t) + \rho_{-1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, t)$$

$$= \rho_{1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, 0) + \rho_{-1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, 0) \equiv \Xi(\mathbf{p}_0, \mu, T). \tag{14.132}$$

Here we have introduced the notation $\Xi(\mathbf{p}_0, \mu, T)$, which according to (14.122) is

$$\Xi_{\mathbf{p}_0,\mu,T} = \frac{1}{1 + e^{\frac{\mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p}_0)-\mu}{T}}} + \frac{1}{1 + e^{\frac{-\mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p}_0)-\mu}{T}}}. \tag{14.133}$$

In (14.123) and (14.124) the diagonal elements represent particle $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0, t) \equiv \rho_{1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, t)$ and hole $(1 - \rho_{-1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, t))$ distribution functions, while nondiagonal elements $\rho_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, t) = \rho^*_{-1,1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, t)$ describe the particle-hole coherent transitions. Introducing the interband coherence $\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$

$$\rho_{1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, t) = i\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)\, e^{i\frac{2}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{p}_0}(t)}, \tag{14.134}$$

where

$$S_{\mathbf{p}_0}(t) = -\int_0^t \widetilde{\mathcal{E}}_1(\mathbf{p}_0, t')\, dt', \tag{14.135}$$

and taking into account that $\rho_{-1,-1}(\mathbf{p}_0, \mathbf{p}_0, t) = \Xi(\mathbf{p}_0, \mu, T) - \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$, from (14.123)–(14.126) we obtain the following set of equations:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)}{\partial t} = -\Lambda(\mathbf{p}_0, t)\left[\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)\, e^{i\frac{2}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{p}_0}(t)} + \text{c.c.}\right], \tag{14.136}$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)}{\partial t} = \Lambda(\mathbf{p}_0, t)\, e^{-i\frac{2}{\hbar}S_{\mathbf{p}_0}(t)} \times \left[2\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0, t) - \Xi(\mathbf{p}_0, \mu, T)\right]. \tag{14.137}$$

This set of equations should be solved with the initial conditions:

$$\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0, 0) = 0; \quad \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0, 0) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{\frac{\mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p}_0) - \mu}{T}}}. \tag{14.138}$$

Note that here we consider coherent interaction of the bilayer graphene with the pump wave in the ultrafast excitation regime, which is correct only for the times $t < \tau_{\min}$, where $\tau_{\min}$ is the minimum of all relaxation times. For the considered excitations of energies $\mathcal{E} \ll \gamma_1 = 0.39$ eV, the dominant mechanism for relaxation will be electron–phonon coupling via longitudinal acoustic phonons. In the low-temperature limit $T \ll 2c_{ph}/\mathrm{v}_F\sqrt{\mathcal{E}\gamma_1}$, where $c_{ph} \simeq 2 \times 10^6$ cm/s is the velocity of the longitudinal acoustic phonon, the relaxation time for the energy level $\mathcal{E}$ can be estimated as

$$\tau(\mathcal{E}) \simeq \left(\frac{\pi D^2 T^2}{8\rho_m \hbar^3 \mathrm{v}_F c_{ph}^3}\sqrt{\frac{\gamma_1}{\mathcal{E}}}\right)^{-1}. \tag{14.139}$$

Here $D \simeq 20$ eV is the electron–phonon coupling constant, and $\rho_m \simeq 15 \times 10^{-8}$ g/cm^2 is the mass density of the bilayer graphene. For $\mathcal{E} \simeq 10^{-2}$ eV, at the temperatures $T \sim 0.25$ meV, from (14.139) we obtain $\tau(\mathcal{E}) \simeq 300$ ps. Thus, in this energy range, one can coherently manipulate with interband multiphoton transitions in the bilayer graphene on the timescales $t \lesssim 100$ ps.

From (14.115), (14.128), and (14.129) it is seen that in the bilayer graphene, the wave–particle interaction at the photon energies $\hbar\omega > \mathcal{E}_{\mathrm{L}}$ can be characterized by the dimensionless parameter $\chi = eE_0/(\omega\sqrt{m\hbar\omega})$, which is the ratio of the amplitude of the momentum given by the wave field to momentum at the one-photon absorption. For the frequencies much smaller than the Lifshitz energy, the effective interaction parameter is $\chi_{\mathrm{L}} = eE_0\mathrm{v}_3/\left(\hbar\omega^2\right)$. Our consideration is mainly focused at the relatively high photon energies. The average intensity of the wave, expressed by χ, can be estimated as

$$I_{\chi} = \chi^{2} \times 6 \times 10^{10}\ \mathrm{W\ cm^{-2}}\ [\hbar\omega/\mathrm{eV}]^{3}. \tag{14.140}$$

The intensity I_{χ} strongly depends on the photon energy $\hbar\omega$. At $\chi \sim 1$ the multiphoton effects become essential. Particularly, for THz photons (wavelengths from 30 μm to 3 mm), multiphoton interaction regime can be achieved at the intensities $I_{\chi} \sim 10-10^{5}\ \mathrm{W/cm^{2}}$. In the opposite limit $\chi \ll 1$, the multiphoton effects are suppressed. For the clearness we consider these two regimes separately.

For the weak pump fields $\chi \ll 1$, when $|\mathbf{p}_{E}(t)| \ll |\mathbf{p}_{0}|$, one can omit nonlinear over E_{0} terms in (14.136) and (14.137) which yields the following set of equations:

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p},t)}{\partial t} = -\Omega_{1}(\mathbf{p}) \cos\omega t \left[\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p},t)\, e^{-i\frac{2\mathcal{E}_{1}(\mathbf{p})t}{\hbar}} + \mathrm{c.c.} \right] \tag{14.141}$$

$$\frac{\partial \mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p},t)}{\partial t} = \Omega_{1}(\mathbf{p}) \cos\omega t e^{i\frac{2\mathcal{E}_{1}(\mathbf{p})t}{\hbar}} \left[2\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p},t) - \Xi_{\mathbf{p},\mu,T} \right]. \tag{14.142}$$

where

$$\Omega_{1}(\mathbf{p}) = E_{0}\widehat{\epsilon\mathbf{d}}(\mathbf{p}) \tag{14.143}$$

In this case, (14.141) and (14.142) are analogous to the optical Bloch equations, which describe Rabi oscillations of state populations of the two-level atomic system under the resonant excitation. Here we also have two-level system. Thus, because of space homogeneity of the field (14.116), the generalized momentum of a particle conserves, so that the real transitions in the field occur from a $-\mathcal{E}_{1}(\mathbf{p})$ negative energy level to the positive $\mathcal{E}_{1}(\mathbf{p})$ energy level and, consequently, the probability of particle-hole pair production will have maximal values for the resonant transitions $2\mathcal{E}_{1}(\mathbf{p}) \simeq \hbar\omega$. For the resonant momenta $|2\mathcal{E}_{1}(\mathbf{p}) - \hbar\omega| \ll |\Omega_{1}(\mathbf{p})|$ one can write the explicit solutions of (14.141) and (14.142) in the rotating wave approximation as

$$\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p},t) = \frac{\Delta_{\mathbf{p},\mu,T}}{2} \sin\left(\Omega_{1}(\mathbf{p})\, t\right), \tag{14.144}$$

$$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p},t) = \frac{\Xi_{\mathbf{p},\mu,T}}{2} + \frac{1}{2}\Delta_{\mathbf{p},\mu,T} \cos\left(\Omega_{1}(\mathbf{p})\, t\right), \tag{14.145}$$

where

$$\Delta_{\mathbf{p},\mu,T} = \frac{1}{1+e^{\frac{\mathcal{E}_{1}(\mathbf{p})-\mu}{T}}} - \frac{1}{1+e^{\frac{-\mathcal{E}_{1}(\mathbf{p})-\mu}{T}}} \tag{14.146}$$

is the initial population inversion. The Rabi frequency in this case is $|\Omega_{1}(\mathbf{p})|$. Thus, choosing photon energy $\hbar\omega$ one can excite the desired isoline in the time scale $\sim 1/|\Omega_{1}(\mathbf{p})|$.

With increasing of the pump wave intensity and approaching it to the domain $\chi \sim 1$, the multiphoton excitations take place and the Rabi oscillations appear corresponding to multiphoton transitions. Here one can apply generalized rotating wave approximation. For a monochromatic wave the coupling term (14.129) in (14.136) and (14.137) is a periodic function and contains harmonics of the pump wave. Hence, there is a direct multiphoton resonant coupling of interband transitions. Besides, one should also take into account the intensity effect of the pump wave on the quasienergy spectrum (Stark shift due to the free–free intraband transitions) and, consequently, the multiphoton probabilities of the particle-hole pair production will have maximal values for the resonant transitions (14.51), where

$$\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0) = \frac{1}{\mathcal{T}} \int_0^{\mathcal{T}} \mathcal{E}_1(\mathbf{p}_0 + \mathbf{p}_E(t))\, dt \tag{14.147}$$

is the mean value of the classical energy (quasienergy) in the field (14.116) and $\mathcal{T} = 2\pi/\omega$ is the wave period. Then the n-photon coupling term G_n will be

$$G_n = \frac{2}{\mathcal{T}} \int_0^{\mathcal{T}} \Lambda(\mathbf{p}_0, t)\, e^{-i\frac{2}{\hbar}\left(S_{\mathbf{p}_0}(t) + \mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0)t - \frac{n\hbar\omega t}{2}\right)} dt. \tag{14.148}$$

Along the isoline $\mathcal{E}_E(\mathbf{p}_0) \simeq n\hbar\omega/2$ the solutions of (14.136) and (14.137) become

$$\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0, t) = \frac{\Delta_{\mathbf{p}_0,\mu,T}}{2} e^{i\arg(G_n)} \sin \Omega_n t, \tag{14.149}$$

$$\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0, t) = \frac{\Delta_{\mathbf{p}_0,\mu,T}}{2} \cos \Omega_n t + \frac{\Xi_{\mathbf{p}_0,\mu,T}}{2}. \tag{14.150}$$

The solution (14.150) expresses Rabi flopping among the particle-hole states at the multiphoton resonance with the generalized Rabi frequency:

$$\Omega_n = |G_n|. \tag{14.151}$$

The solutions (14.149) and (14.150) are valid for slowly varying functions $\mathcal{N}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$ and $\mathcal{J}(\mathbf{p}_0, t)$ on the scale of the wave period, which put the following restrictions:

$$|G_n(\mathbf{p}_0, E_0)| \ll \omega. \tag{14.152}$$

We have also integrated (14.136) and (14.137) numerically with the fourth-order adaptive Runge–Kutta method. For turn-on/off of the wave field, the latter is described by the envelope function $E_0(t) = E_0 f(t)$ (13.72) (Chap. 13), where the pulse duration ($\tau \equiv \mathcal{T}_p$) is chosen to be $\mathcal{T}_p = 32\mathcal{T}$. The wave is assumed to be linearly polarized along the y-axis. Similar calculations for a wave linearly polarized along

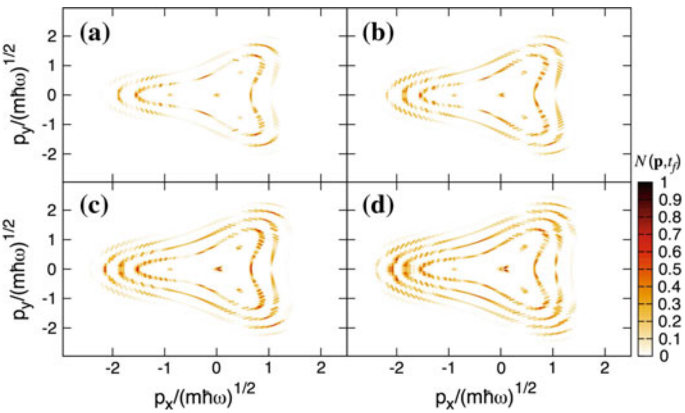


Fig. 14.7 (Color online) Creation of particle-hole pair in bilayer graphene at the multiphoton resonant excitation. Particle distribution function $\mathcal{N}\left(\mathbf{p}, t_f\right)$ (in arbitrary units) after the interaction is displayed for various wave intensities. The chemical potential and temperature are taken to be $\mu = 0$ and $T/\hbar\omega = 0.01$. The wave is assumed to be linearly polarized along the y-axis with the frequency $\omega = 10\mathcal{E}_{\mathrm{L}}/\hbar \simeq 10\,\mathrm{meV}/\hbar$. The results are for the valley $\zeta = 1$: **a**–**d** correspond to dimensionless field parameter $\chi = 0.2$, $\chi = 0.3$, $\chi = 0.4$, and $\chi = 0.5$, respectively

the x-axis show qualitatively same picture. In Fig. 14.7 the creation of the particle-hole pair in the bilayer graphene is shown for various pump wave intensities but fixed frequency $\omega = 10\mathcal{E}_{\mathrm{L}}/\hbar \simeq 10\,\mathrm{meV}/\hbar$ (pulse duration $\mathcal{T}_p = 32\mathcal{T} \simeq 12.5\,\mathrm{ps}$). The chemical potential and temperature are taken to be $\mu = 0$ and $T/\hbar\omega = 0.01$. As is seen, with the increasing of the wave intensity the states with the absorption of more photons appear in the Fermi-Dirac sea, in accordance with the analytical treatment (14.150). The multiphoton excitation of the Fermi-Dirac sea takes place along the trigonally warped isolines of the quasienergy spectrum modified by the wave field.

14.8 Generation of Harmonics in a Bilayer Graphene at the Particle-Hole Multiphoton Excitation

At the multiphoton resonant excitation, the particle-hole annihilation from the coherent superposition states will cause intense coherent radiation of harmonics of the applied wave field. Here we consider the possibility of generation of harmonics from the multiphoton excited states depending on the pump field intensity and temperature of the initial stationary state. For the coherent part of the radiation spectrum one needs the mean value of the current density operator:

$$\widehat{\mathbf{j}}_\zeta = -e\left\langle \widehat{\Psi} \right| \widehat{\mathbf{v}}_\zeta \left| \widehat{\Psi} \right\rangle, \tag{14.153}$$

where $\widehat{\mathbf{v}}_\zeta = \partial \widehat{H}_\zeta / \partial \widehat{\mathbf{p}}$ is the velocity operator. For the effective 2×2 Hamiltonian (14.112) the velocity operator in components reads

$$\widehat{\mathrm{v}}_{\zeta x} = \zeta \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{1}{m}\left(\zeta \widehat{p}_x - i\widehat{p}_y\right) + \mathrm{v}_3 \\ \frac{1}{m}\left(\zeta \widehat{p}_x + i\widehat{p}_y\right) + \mathrm{v}_3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \tag{14.154}$$

$$\widehat{\mathrm{v}}_{\zeta y} = i \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\frac{1}{m}\left(\zeta \widehat{p}_x - i\widehat{p}_y\right) + \mathrm{v}_3 \\ \frac{1}{m}\left(\zeta \widehat{p}_x + i\widehat{p}_y\right) - \mathrm{v}_3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}. \tag{14.155}$$

With the help of (14.153), (14.154), (14.155), and (14.121) the expectation value of the current for the valley ζ in components can be written as

$$j_{\zeta,x} = -\frac{eg_s}{(2\pi\hbar)^2}\int d\mathbf{p}\zeta\left(\rho_{1,1} - \rho_{-1,-1}\right)\left[\left(\frac{\zeta p_x}{m} + \mathrm{v}_3\right)\cos\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}\right)\right.$$
$$\left. + \frac{p_y}{m}\sin\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}\right)\right] + \frac{eg_s}{(2\pi\hbar)^2}\int d\mathbf{p}i\left(\rho_{1,-1} - \rho_{-1,1}\right)$$
$$\times\left[\zeta\frac{p_y}{m}\cos\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}\right) - \zeta\left(\frac{\zeta p_x}{m} + \mathrm{v}_3\right)\sin\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}\right)\right], \tag{14.156}$$

$$j_{\zeta,y} = -\frac{eg_s}{(2\pi\hbar)^2}\int d\mathbf{p}\left(\rho_{1,1} - \rho_{-1,-1}\right)\left[\left(\frac{\zeta p_x}{m} - \mathrm{v}_3\right)\sin\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}\right)[]\right.$$
$$\left. - \frac{p_y}{m}\cos\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}\right)\right] + \frac{eg_s}{(2\pi\hbar)^2}\int d\mathbf{p}i\left(\rho_{1,-1} - \rho_{-1,1}\right)$$
$$\times\left[\left(\frac{\zeta p_x}{m} - \mathrm{v}_3\right)\cos\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}\right) + \frac{p_y}{m}\sin\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}\right)\right], \tag{14.157}$$

where $g_s = 2$ is the spin degeneracy factor, and

$$\cos\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}\right) = \frac{1}{\mathcal{E}_1\left(\mathbf{p}\right)}\left(\frac{1}{2m}\left(p_x^2 - p_y^2\right) + \zeta \mathrm{v}_3 p_x\right), \tag{14.158}$$

$$\sin\Theta\left(\mathbf{p}\right) = \frac{1}{\mathcal{E}_1\left(\mathbf{p}\right)}\left(\frac{\zeta p_x}{m} - \mathrm{v}_3\right)p_y. \tag{14.159}$$

Since there is no degeneracy upon valley quantum number ζ, the total current is obtained by the summation over ζ:

$$j_x = j_{1,x} + j_{-1,x}, \tag{14.160}$$

$$j_y = j_{1,y} + j_{-1,y}. \tag{14.161}$$

From (14.156) and (14.157), it is easy to see that

$$\frac{j_{x,y}}{j_0} = R_{x,y}\left(\omega t; \chi, \frac{\mathcal{E}_\mathrm{L}}{\hbar\omega}, \frac{\mu}{\hbar\omega}, \frac{T}{\hbar\omega}\right), \tag{14.162}$$

where

$$j_0 = \frac{e\omega^2}{\pi^2 \mathrm{v}_F}\sqrt{\frac{\gamma_1}{2\hbar\omega}}, \tag{14.163}$$

and R_x and R_y are the dimensionless periodic (for monochromatic wave) functions, which parametrically depend on the interaction parameter χ, scaled Lifshitz energy, and macroscopic parameters of the system. Thus, having solutions of (14.136) and (14.137), and making integration in (14.156) and (14.157), one can calculate harmonics radiation spectrum with the help of Fourier transform of the function $R_{x,y}(t)$. The emission rate of the nth harmonics is proportional to $n^2 |j_n|^2$, where $|j_n|^2 = |j_{xn}|^2 + |j_{yn}|^2$, with j_{xn} and j_{yn} being the nth Fourier components of the field-induced total current. To find out j_n, the fast Fourier transform algorithm has been used. For the plots we have used normalized current density (14.162).

As is clear from Hamiltonian (14.112), (14.156), and (14.157), inversion symmetry for separate valleys does not hold and consequently Fourier components of the field-induced currents for each valley contain, in general, both even and odd harmonics. Since for the total system the inversion symmetry holds, at the normal incidence of radiation on the uniform bilayer graphene, only odd harmonics are generated (for equilibrium initial state (14.138) and smooth turn-on/off of the wave field). Figure 14.8 shows the dependence of harmonics emission rate on the wave intensity in bilayer graphene at the multiphoton excitation. The chemical potential and temperature are taken to be $\mu = 0$ and $T/\hbar\omega = 0.01$. The wave is assumed to be linearly polarized along the y-axis with the frequency $\omega = 10\mathcal{E}_\mathrm{L}/\hbar \simeq 10\,\mathrm{meV}/\hbar$. As shown from this figure, the process of harmonics generation is strictly nonlinear and with the moderate change of interaction parameter χ one can achieve generation of higher harmonics with reasonable rates.

Comparing the amplitude j_0 (14.163) with its counterpart for a single-layer graphene, one can see that j_0 for bilayer graphene is larger by the factor $(\gamma_1/2\hbar\omega)^{1/2}$. Besides, the cut-off harmonics is larger than in the case of monolayer graphene, which is a result of strong nonlinearity caused by the trigonal warping. Hence, for considered setups $\hbar\omega \ll \gamma_1$, the harmonics radiation intensity is at least by one order of magnitude larger than in the monolayer graphene. Conversion efficiency for harmonics $\eta_n = I_n/I$ can be estimated as

$$\eta_n \sim 10^{-3}\chi_0^{-2}\,(d/\lambda)^2\, n^2\, |R_n|^2\,,$$

where $\lambda = 2\pi c/\omega$ and d is the characteristic size of bilayer graphene sheet. For the setup of Fig. 14.8, depending on the ratio d/λ, one can achieve conversion efficiencies

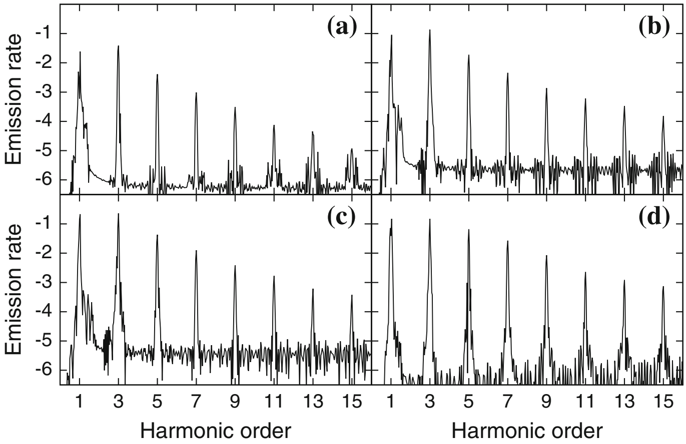


Fig. 14.8 Harmonics emission rate in bilayer graphene at the multiphoton excitation via $\log_{10}(n^2 R_n)$ (in arbitrary units), as a function of the photon energy (in units of $\hbar\omega$), is shown for various wave intensities. The chemical potential and temperature are taken to be $\mu = 0$ and $T/\hbar\omega = 0.01$. The wave is assumed to be linearly polarized with the frequency $\omega = 10\mathcal{E}_L/\hbar \simeq 10\,\text{meV}/\hbar$. The results are for **a** $\chi = 0.2$, **b** $\chi = 0.3$, **c** $\chi = 0.4$, and **d** $\chi = 0.5$

$\eta_n \sim 10^{-2}$ for up to 9th harmonics. Note that these quite large conversion efficiencies are obtained for a single bilayer graphene sheet, which are comparable to what one expects to achieve with resonant two-level systems in nonlinear optics.

Bibliography

K.S. Novoselov et al., Science **306**, 666 (2004)
A.H. Castro, Neto et al. Rev. Mod. Phys. **81**, 109 (2009)
A.K. Geim, Science **324**, 1530 (2009)
K.S. Novoselov et al., Nature **438**, 197 (2005)
G.W. Semenoff, Phys. Rev. Lett. **53**, 2449 (1984)
M.I. Katsnelson, K.S. Novoselov, A.K. Geim, Nature Phys. **2**, 620 (2006)
V.V. Cheianov, V.I. Fal'ko, B.L. Altshuler, Science **315**, 1252 (2007)
M.I. Katsnelson, K.S. Novoselov, Solid State Commun. **143**, 3 (2007)
M.I. Katsnelson, Materials Today **10**, 20 (2007)
V.V. Cheianov, V.I. Fal'ko, Phys. Rev. B **74**, 041403 (2006)
C.W.J. Beenakker, Rev. Mod. Phys. **80**, 1337 (2008)
M.I. Katsnelson, Eur. Phys. J. B **51**, 157 (2006)
B. Dóra, R. Moessner, Phys. Rev. B **81**, 165431 (2010)
K. Ziegler, Phys. Rev. B **75**, 233407 (2007)
E.G. Mishchenko, Phys. Rev. Lett. **103**, 246802 (2009)
P.N. Romanets, F.T. Vasko, Phys. Rev. B **81**, 241411(R) (2010)
B. Dóra et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **102**, 036803 (2009)
S.A. Mikhailov, Europhys. Lett. **79**, 27002 (2007)
K.L. Ishikawa, Phys. Rev. B **82**, 201402(R) (2010)

S.A. Mikhailov, Phys. Rev. B **84**, 045432 (2011)
M.M. Glazov, JETP Lett. **93**, 366 (2011)
L. Perfetti et al., New J. Phys. **10**, 053019 (2008)
O.V. Kibis, Phys. Rev. B **81**, 165433 (2010)
S.E. Savel'ev, A.S. Alexandrov, Phys. Rev. B **84**, 035428 (2011)
R.R. Nair et al., Science **320**, 1308 (2008)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. B **85**, 115443 (2012)
H.K. Avetissian et al., J. Nanophoton. **6**, 061702 (2012)
O.V. Kibis, Phys. Rev. B. **81**, 165433 (2010)
S.A. Mikhailov, K. Ziegler, J. Phys. Condens. Matter **20**, 384204 (2008)
E. Hendry et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **105**, 097401 (2010)
T. Ohta et al., Science **313**, 951 (2006)
Y. Zhang et al., Nature **459**, 820 (2009)
E. McCann, V.I. Fal'ko, Phys. Rev. Lett. **96**, 086805 (2006)
F. Guinea, A.H. Castro, Neto, N.M.R. Peres. Phys. Rev. B **73**, 245426 (2006)
M. Koshino, T. Ando, Phys. Rev. B **73**, 245403 (2006)
M. Tonouchi, Nature Photonics **1**, 97 (2007)
D.S.L. Abergel, T. Chakraborty, Appl. Phys. Lett. **95**, 062107 (2009)
E. Suarez Morell, L.E.F. Foa Torres, Phys. Rev. B 86, 125449 (2012)
J.J. Dean, H.M. van Driel, Phys. Rev. B **82**, 125411 (2010)
S. Wu et al., Nano Lett. **12**, 2032 (2012)
Y.S. Ang, S. Sultan, C. Zhang, Appl. Phys. Lett. **97**, 243110 (2010)
N. Kumar et al., Phys. Rev. B **87**, 121406(R) (2013)
E.H. Hwang, S. Das, Sarma. Phys. Rev. B **77**, 115449 (2008)
J.K. Viljas, T.T. Heikkilä, Phys. Rev. B **81**, 245404 (2010)
T. Stauber, N.M.R. Peres, A.K. Geim, Phys. Rev. B **78**, 085432 (2008)
C. Zhang, L. Chen, Z. Ma, Phys. Rev. B **77**, 241402 (2008)
M.L. Kiesel et al., Phys. Rev. B **86**, 020507 (2012)
R. Nandkishore, L. Levitov, A. Chubukov, Nature Physics **8**, 158 (2012)
A. Roberts et al., Appl. Phys. Lett. **99**, 051912 (2011)
J.M. Dawlaty et al., Appl. Phys. Lett. **92**, 042116 (2008)
D. Sun et al., Phys. Rev. Lett. **101**, 157402 (2008)
R.W. Newson et al., Opt. Express **17**, 2326 (2009)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. B **88**, 165411 (2013)
H.K. Avetissian et al., Phys. Rev. B **88**, 245411 (2013)

Index

H.K. Avetissian, *Relativistic Nonlinear Electrodynamics*,
Springer Series on Atomic, Optical, and Plasma Physics 88,
DOI 10.1007/978-3-319-26384-7

D

E

F

G

X